Canon

Cum se utilizează acest manual
Imprimarea acestui manual

Ghid de bază
Descrie pe scurt acest produs.

Ghid avansat
Descrie în detaliu funcţiile acestui produs.

Depanare

Canon

Cum se utilizează acest manual
Imprimarea acestui manual

MP-3299-V1.00

Ghid avansat

Cuprins

Privire de ansamblu asupra aparatului

Componentele principale
Indicaţiile LED-ului şi operaţii de bază

Copierea

Copierea documentelor
Copierea fotografiilor
Copierea cu încadrare în pagină

Scanare

Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer

Imprimarea de pe computerul dumneavoastră

Imprimarea fotografiilor (Easy-PhotoPrint EX)
Imprimarea documentelor (Windows)
Imprimarea documentelor (Macintosh)

Alte utilizări

Imprimarea fotografiilor de pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge (numai pentru MP270 series)
Aplicaţii software utile

Încărcarea hârtiei / documentelor originale

Încărcarea hârtiei
Încărcarea documentelor originale

Întreţinere de rutină

Când imprimarea devine ştearsă sau culorile sunt incorecte
Înlocuirea unui cartuş FINE
Curăţarea aparatului

Anexă

Limitări legale privind utilizarea produsului dumneavoastră şi utilizarea imaginilor
Sfaturi pentru utilizarea aparatului dumneavoastră

Privire de ansamblu asupra aparatului

Această secţiune prezintă denumirile componentelor aparatului şi descrie operaţiile de bază pe care trebuie să le cunoaşteţi înainte de a-l utiliza.

Componentele principale

Vizualizare frontală
Vizualizare din spate
Vizualizare din interior
Panoul de operare

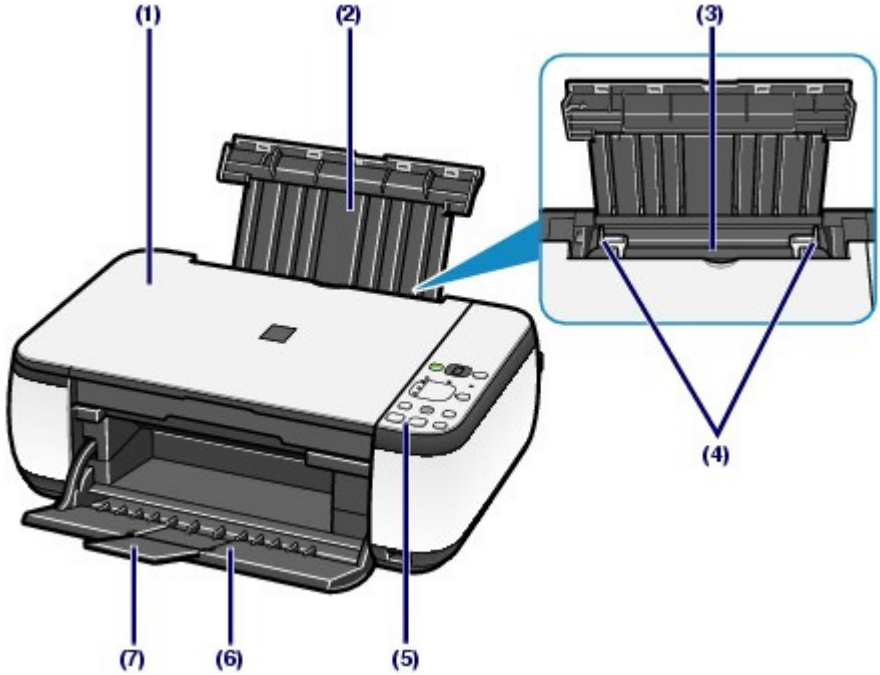
Indicaţiile LED-ului şi operaţii de bază

În partea superioară a paginii

Componentele principale

➡ Vizualizare frontală
➡ Vizualizare din spate
➡ Vizualizare din interior
➡ Panoul de operare

■ Vizualizare frontală



(1) Capacul pentru documente

Deschideţi-l pentru a încărca un document original pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

(2) Suportul pentru hârtie

Ridicaţi-l şi înclinaţi-l pe spate pentru a încărca hârtia în tava din spate.

(3) Tava din spate

Încărcaţi hârtie de diferite dimensiuni şi de diferite tipuri ce pot fi utilizate de aparat. Două sau mai multe foi de aceeaşi dimensiune şi de acelaşi tip de hârtie pot fi încărcate simultan şi preluate automat una câte una.

Consultaţi Încărcarea hârtiei .

(4) Ghidajele hârtiei

Deplasaţi-le prin glisare pentru a le alinia cu ambele părţi ale stivei de hârtie.

(5) Panoul de operare

Utilizaţi-l pentru a modifica setările sau pentru a manevra aparatul.

Consultaţi Panoul de operare.

Notă

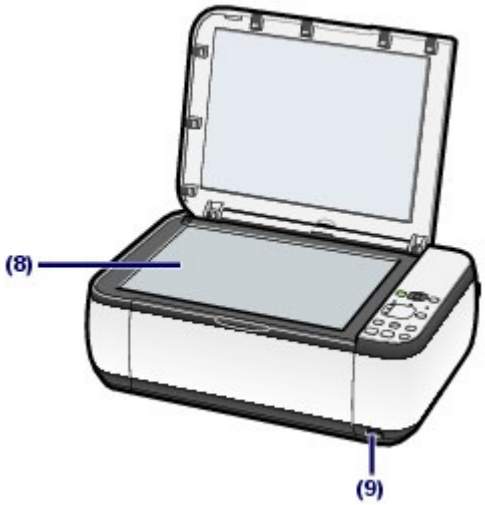
- LED-ul şi lămpile de pe panoul de operare, cu excepţia lămpii **Alimentare (Power)** se vor stinge dacă aparatul nu este utilizat timp de aproximativ 5 minute. Pentru a le activa, apăsaţi orice buton cu excepţia butonului **ACTIVARE (ON)** sau efectuaţi operaţia de imprimare.

(6) Tava de ieşire a hârtiei

Se deschide automat la iniţierea imprimării sau copierii şi foaia de hârtie imprimată este evacuată.

(7) Extensia tăvii de ieşire

Deschideţi extensia pentru a susţine foile imprimate. Deschideţi-o în timpul imprimării sau copierii.



(8) Suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare

Încărcaţi un original pentru copiere sau scanare.

(9) Port de imprimare directă (numai pentru MP270 series)

Pentru a imprima direct, conectaţi un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge, precum o cameră digitală.

Consultaţi Imprimarea fotografiilor de pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge (numai pentru MP270 series) .

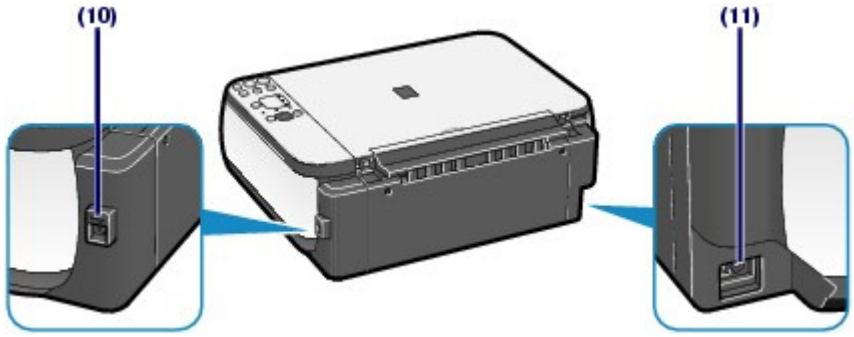
Avertisment

- Nu conectaţi niciun alt echipament în afara dispozitivelor compatibile PictBridge la portul de imprimare directă de la aparat. Acest lucru prezintă risc de incendiu, şocuri electrice sau deteriorare a aparatului.

Important

- Nu atingeţi carcasa metalică.

■ Vedere din spate



(10) Port USB

Introduceţi cablul USB pentru a conecta aparatul la un computer.

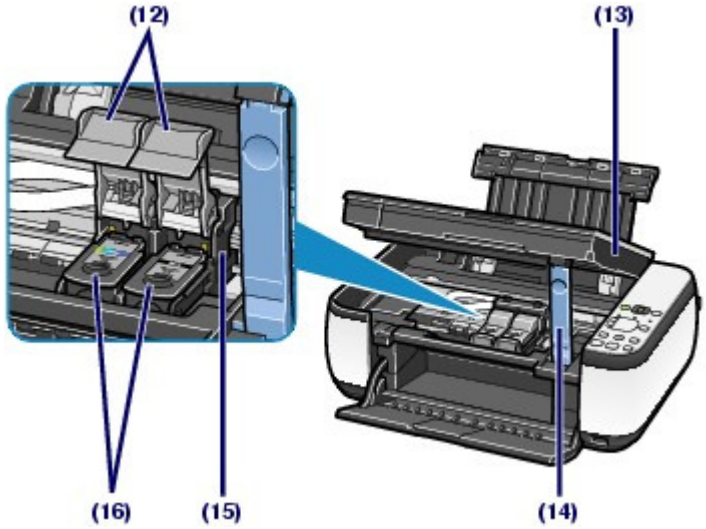
Important

- Nu atingeţi carcasa metalică.
- Nu conectaţi şi nici nu deconectaţi cablul USB în timp ce aparatul imprimă sau scanează documente originale cu computerul.

(11) Conectorul cablului de alimentare

Conectaţi la priză cablul de alimentare furnizat.

■ Vedere din interior



(12) Manetele de blocare ale cartuşului de cerneală

Fixează cartuşele FINE pe poziţie.

(13) Unitate de scanare (Capac)

Scanează documente originale. Deschideţi-o pentru a înlocui cartuşele FINE sau pentru a îndepărta hârtia blocată în interiorul aparatului. Când deschideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul), ridicaţi-o cu capacul pentru documente închis.

(14) Suportul unităţii de scanare

Susţine unitatea de scanare (capacul) în timp ce aceasta este deschisă.

(15) Suportul pentru cartuşe FINE

Instalaţi cartuşele FINE.

Cartuşul FINE color trebuie instalat în slotul din stânga (Ⓒ), iar cartuşul FINE negru în slotul din dreapta (Ⓑ).

(16) Cartuşele FINE (cartuşe de cerneală)

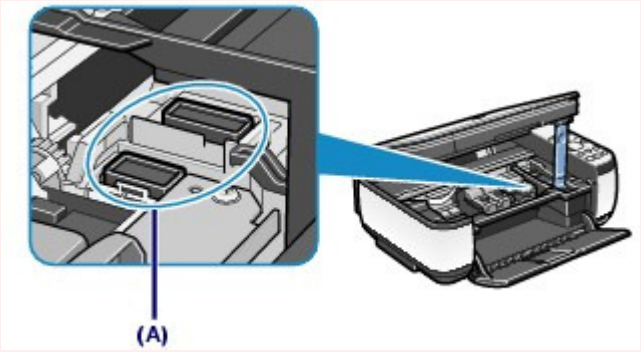
Un cartuş de unică folosinţă, format dintr-un cap de imprimare cu un rezervor de cerneală încorporat.

Notă

- Pentru detalii privind instalarea cartuşelor FINE, consultaţi manualul imprimat: *Ghid de iniţiere*.

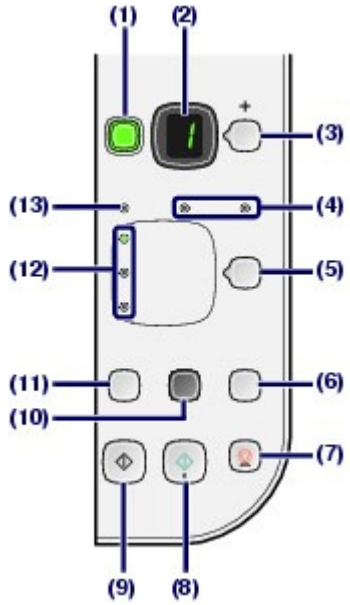
Important

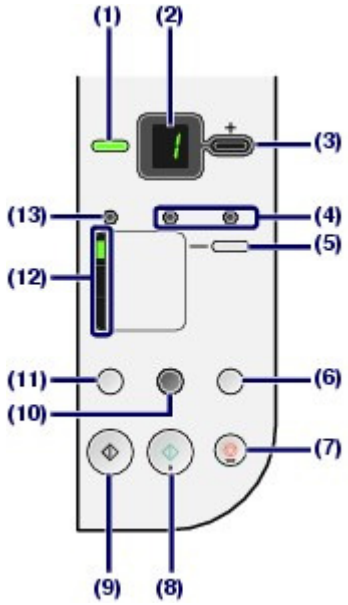
- Zona (A) indicată în figura de mai jos poate fi acoperită de stropi de cerneală. Acest lucru nu afectează funcţionalitatea aparatului.
- Nu atingeţi zona (A). Este posibil ca aparatul să nu imprime corespunzător dacă o atingeţi.



■ Panoul de operare

MP270 series **MP250 series**





(1) Butonul ACTIVARE (ON) / Lampa Alimentare (Power)

Opreşte sau porneşte imprimanta. Înainte de a porni imprimanta, asiguraţi-vă că aţi închis capacul pentru documente.

Important

Deconectarea alimentării

- Când deconectaţi fişa de alimentare după ce aţi oprit alimentarea, nu uitaţi să vă asiguraţi că lampa **Alimentare (Power)** este stinsă. Dacă deconectaţi fişa de alimentare de la priza de perete în timp ce lampa **Alimentare (Power)** este aprinsă sau clipeşte, este posibil ca aparatul să nu mai poată imprima corect, deoarece capul de imprimare nu este protejat.

Notă

Lămpile Alimentare şi Alarmă

- Puteţi verifica starea aparatului cu ajutorul lămpilor **Alimentare (Power)** şi **Alarmă (Alarm)**.
  - Lampa **Alimentare (Power)** este stinsă: Alimentarea electrică este oprită.
  - Lampa **Alimentare (Power)** este aprinsă în verde: Aparatul este pregătit pentru imprimare.
  - Lampa **Alimentare (Power)** clipeşte în verde: Aparatul se iniţializează sau se închide.
  - Lampa **Alarmă (Alarm)** este aprinsă sau clipeşte în portocaliu: A survenit o eroare şi aparatul nu este pregătit pentru imprimare. Pentru detalii, consultaţi „ Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.
  - Lampa **Alimentare (Power)** clipeşte în verde şi lampa **Alarmă (Alarm)** clipeşte în portocaliu, în mod alternativ: A survenit o eroare care necesită contactarea centrului de service. Pentru detalii, consultaţi „ Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.

(2) LED (diodă emiţătoare de lumină)

Afişează numărul de copii, codul de întreţinere sau starea operaţională, cum ar fi un cod de eroare.

(3) Butonul [+]

Specifică numărul de copii.

(4) Lămpi de cerneală

Sunt aprinse sau clipesc în portocaliu când se epuizează cerneala etc. Lampa din stânga indică starea cartuşului color FINE, iar lampa din dreapta indică starea cartuşului FINE negru.

(5) Butonul Hârtie (Paper)

Selectează dimensiunea paginii şi tipul de suport.

(6) Butonul SCANARE

Începe scanarea documentului original pentru a-l salva în computer.

(7) Butonul Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)

Revocă operaţiile. De asemenea, puteţi apăsa acest buton pentru a revoca o lucrare de imprimare, copiere

sau scanare în curs de derulare.

(8) Butonul Culoare (Color)*

Porneşte copierea color. Puteţi apăsa acest buton şi pentru a finaliza selecţia pentru elementul de setare.

(9) Butonul Negru (Black) *

Porneşte copierea alb-negru. Puteţi apăsa acest buton şi pentru a finaliza selecţia pentru elementul de setare.

(10) Butonul Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)/ Lampa Încadrare în pagină

Activează funcţia de copiere cu încadrare în pagină. Puteţi copia documentul original mărit sau micşorat în mod automat pentru a se încadra în dimensiunea de pagină selectată. Când funcţia de copiere cu încadrare în pagină este dezactivată, puteţi efectua copii de aceeaşi dimensiune cu documentul original.

(11) Butonul Întreţinere (Maintenance)

Specifică codul de întreţinere.

(12) Lampa Hârtie (Paper)

Este aprinsă pentru a indica dimensiunea paginii şi tipul de suport selectate cu butonul **Hârtie (Paper)**.

(13) Lampa Alarmă (Alarm)

Se aprinde sau clipeşte în portocaliu când survine o eroare, cum ar fi terminarea hârtiei sau a cernelii.

* În aplicaţiile software sau în manuale, butoanele **Negru (Black)** şi **Culoare (Color)** sunt denumite colectiv butonul „Pornire (Start)” sau „OK”.

În partea superioară a paginii

Indicaţiile LED-ului şi operaţii de bază

Puteţi utiliza aparatul pentru a face copii sau pentru a efectua operaţii de întreţinere fără ajutorul unui computer.
Această secţiune descrie indicaţiile LED-ului şi operaţiile de bază ce se pot efectua la panoul de operare.

Numărul **1** apare în mod normal pe LED la pornirea alimentării.

Afişajul cu LED indică starea aparatului, după cum urmează:

Starea aparatului	Indicaţia LED-ului
În timpul copierii	Număr de copii (clipeşte)
În timpul imprimării, scanării sau efectuării operaţiilor de întreţinere	(clipesc în ordine)
Când survine o eroare	● **E** şi numărul apar alternativ. Pentru detalii privind codurile de eroare, consultaţi „Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*. ● **P** şi numărul apar alternativ. A survenit o eroare care necesită contactarea centrului de service. Pentru detalii, consultaţi „Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.
În timp ce unitatea de scanare (capacul) este deschisă	(clipeşte)

Notă

- Când un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge, cum ar fi o cameră digitală, este conectat la aparat, pe LED apare **C** (numai pentru MP270 series).

Numărul de copii

Când începe copierea, pe LED apare numărul specificat de copii. În timpul copierii, numărul de pe LED clipeşte şi descreşte cu câte o unitate pentru a indica numărul de copii care au rămas de efectuat.

Ori de câte ori apăsaţi butonul [**+**], numărul de pe LED creşte cu câte o unitate. Când apare **F**, numărul de copii este setat la „20”. Apăsaţi din nou butonul [**+**] pentru a reveni la „1”.

Coduri de întreţinere

Pentru a efectua întreţinerea aparatului, apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul (Întreţinere) până când codul dorit apare pe LED, apoi apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)**.

Cod de întreţinere	Operaţie	Consultaţi
A	Imprimă modelul de verificare a duzei.	Imprimarea unui model de verificare a duzei
H	Curăţă capul de imprimare.	Curăţarea capului de imprimare
Y	Curăţă în profunzime capul de imprimare.	Curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare
u	Imprimă foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare.	Alinierea capului de imprimare
U	Scanează foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare pentru a alinia automat capul de imprimare.	Alinierea capului de imprimare
L	Imprimă valorile curente de reglare a poziţiei capului.	Alinierea capului de imprimare
b	Curăţă rola de alimentare cu hârtie.	Curăţarea rolei de alimentare cu hârtie
J	Curăţă interiorul aparatului.	Curăţarea interiorului aparatului (Curăţarea plăcii de la bază)
d	Comută dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate în tava din spate între A4 şi 8,5" x 11" (Letter). (Această setare este utilizată pentru efectuarea copiilor.)	Comutarea dimensiunii paginii între A4 şi 8,5" x 11" (Letter)
r	Setează aparatul pentru a preveni uzura hârtiei.	Consultaţi „Hârtia este pătată/Suprafaţa imprimată este zgâriată” în „Depanare” din manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.

Coduri de eroare

Când survine o eroare, **E** şi numărul apar alternativ pe LED indicând codul de eroare.

de exemplu, „E, 1, 6”

(clipesc în ordine)

Notă

- Pentru detalii privind codurile de eroare, consultaţi „ Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.
- Dacă apare un cod de eroare cu **P**, a survenit o eroare care necesită contactarea centrului de service.
  Pentru detalii, consultaţi „Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.

În partea superioară a paginii

Copierea

În afară de copii standard, puteţi efectua copii mărite sau micşorate ale documentului original pentru a se încadra în dimensiunea paginii şi copii fără chenar ale fotografiilor imprimate.

Copierea documentelor

Comutarea dimensiunii paginii între A4 şi 8,5" x 11" (Letter)

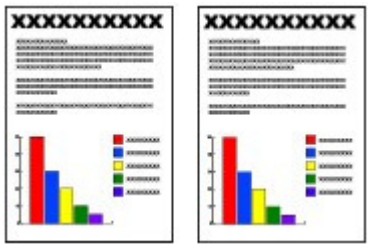
Copierea fotografiilor

Copierea cu încadrare în pagină

În partea superioară a paginii

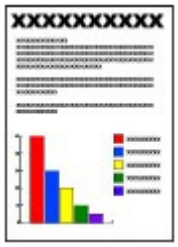
Copierea documentelor

Această secţiune descrie procedura de copiere a documentelor de format A4 sau Letter pe hârtie simplă.
Pentru această operaţie, consultaţi notele şi procedurile de operare descrise în pagina de referinţă.

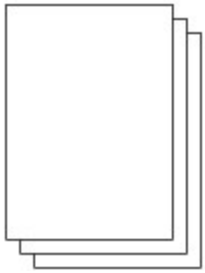


Trebuie să pregătiţi:

Documentele originale pentru copiat. Consultaţi Documentele originale pe care le puteţi încărca.



Hârtia pentru imprimat. Consultaţi Tipuri de suport pe care le puteţi utiliza .



1. Pregătirea pentru copiere.

(1) Porniţi alimentarea.

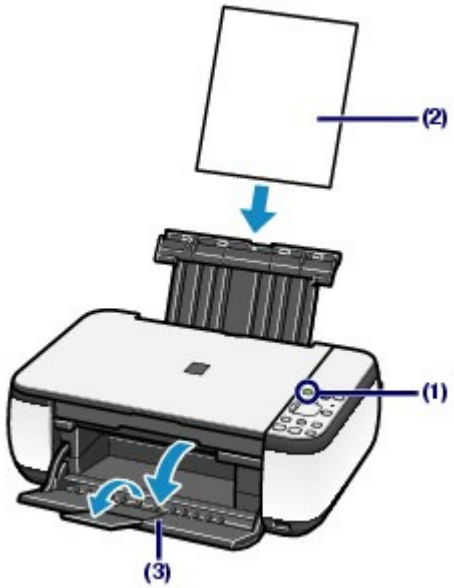
Consultaţi Panoul de operare.

(2) Încărcaţi hârtia.

Consultaţi Încărcarea hârtiei simple/fotografice .

Aici încărcăm o coală de hârtie simplă de dimensiune A4 sau Letter.

(3) Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.



(4) Aşezaţi un document original pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

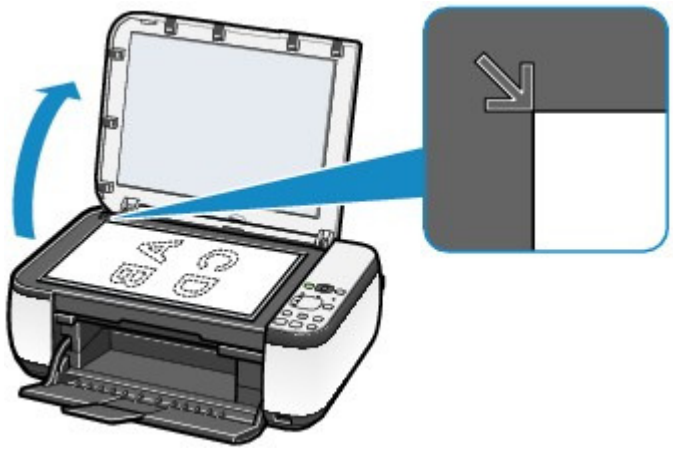
Consultaţi Încărcarea documentelor originale .

Aşezaţi documentul original cu partea de copiat ORIENTATĂ ÎN JOS şi aliniaţi-l cu marcajul de aliniere ↘ după cum se arată mai jos.

Apoi închideţi cu grijă capacul pentru documente.

Notă

- Pentru detalii referitoare la tipurile şi stările documentului original pe care îl puteţi copia, consultaţi Documentele originale pe care le puteţi încărca.



2. Începeţi copierea.

(1) Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul [+] pentru a specifica numărul de copii (max. 20 de copii).

Pentru a efectua de la 1 până la 9 copii sau 20 de copii

Afişaţi pe LED numărul dorit de copii.

Ori de câte ori apăsaţi butonul [**+**], numărul de pe LED creşte cu câte o unitate. Când apare **F**, numărul de copii este setat la „20”. Apăsaţi din nou butonul [**+**] pentru a reveni la „1”.

Pentru a efectua de la 10 până la 19 copii

(1) Afişaţi **F** pe LED.

(2) Încărcaţi doar numărul dorit de foi de copiat.

(2) Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul **Hârtie (Paper)** pentru a selecta dimensiunea paginii şi tipul de suport.

Lampa **Hârtie (Paper)** indică dimensiunea selectată a paginii şi tipul de suport.

Aici selectăm hârtie simplă de dimensiune A4 sau 8,5" x 11".

Notă

- Puteţi să selectaţi următoarele dimensiuni de pagină şi tipuri de suport.
  - Hârtie simplă de dimensiune A4 sau 8,5" x 11"
  - Hârtie fotografică A4 sau 8,5" x 11"
  - Hârtie fotografică de dimensiuni 10 x 15 cm sau 4" x 6"
- Puteţi comuta dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate în tava din spate între A4 şi 8,5" x 11" (Letter) indiferent de dimensiunea indicată pe panoul de operare.
  Consultaţi Comutarea dimensiunii paginii între A4 şi 8,5" x 11" (Letter) .
- Când funcţia de copiere cu încadrare în pagină este activată, puteţi copia documentul original la dimensiunea mărită sau micşorată automat pentru a se încadra în dimensiunea paginii selectate. În acest caz, documentul original este copiat cu chenar pe hârtie simplă şi fără chenar pe hârtie fotografică.
  Pentru a copia un document original la aceeaşi dimensiune, revocaţi funcţia de copiere cu încadrare în pagină.
  Consultaţi Copierea cu încadrare în pagină.

(3) Apăsaţi butonul **Culoare (Color)** pentru copiere color sau butonul **Negru (Black)** pentru copiere alb-negru.

Aparatul începe copierea.

În timpul copierii, numărul de pe LED clipeşte şi descreşte cu câte o unitate pentru a indica numărul de copii care au rămas de efectuat.

Scoateţi documentul original de pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare după ce aţi terminat de copiat.

Pentru a efectua de la 10 până la 19 copii

În cazul în care se epuizează toată hârtia încărcată, va surveni o eroare de epuizare a hârtiei (pe LED va apărea „E, 0, 2”). Apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** pentru a anula eroarea.

Notă

- Puteţi seta calitatea de imprimare la „Fast” (prioritate viteză) doar atunci când pentru dimensiunea paginii şi tipul de suport s-a selectat hârtie simplă de dimensiune A4 sau Letter.

Pentru a seta calitatea imprimării la „Fast” (prioritate viteză)

1. Apăsaţi şi menţineţi apăsat butonul **Culoare (Color)** sau butonul **Negru (Black)** minim 2 secunde în (3) de la pasul 2.
   LED-ul clipeşte o dată.
   * Când apăsaţi butonul **Culoare (Color)** sau butonul **Negru (Black)** mai puţin de 2 secunde, aparatul începe să copieze la calitatea de imprimare „Standard”.
2. Eliberaţi butonul.
   Aparatul începe copierea.

- Când calitatea imprimării este setată la „Fast”, viteza de imprimare are prioritate în raport cu calitatea. Pentru a acorda prioritate calităţii, apăsaţi butonul **Culoare (Color)** sau butonul **Negru (Black)** mai puţin de 2 secunde pentru a copia la calitatea de imprimare „Standard”.

Important

- Nu deschideţi capacul pentru documente şi nu deplasaţi documentul original încărcat până la terminarea copierii.

Notă

- Pentru a revoca operaţia de copiere, apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** .

■ Comutarea dimensiunii paginii între A4 şi 8,5" x 11" (Letter)

Puteţi comuta dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate în tava din spate între A4 şi 8,5" x 11" (Letter). Această setare este folositoare dacă încărcaţi în mod obişnuit hârtie de dimensiune Letter în tava din spate, indiferent de indicaţia „A4” de dimensiune a paginii de pe panoul de operare sau viceversa.

1. Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul (Întreţinere) până când apare **d**.

2. Apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** pentru a selecta A4 sau butonul **Culoare (Color)** pentru a selecta 8,5" x 11" (Letter).

Notă

- Când comutaţi dimensiunea paginii la A4 sau 8,5" x 11" (Letter), încărcaţi hârtia de dimensiunea selectată indiferent de dimensiunea indicată pe panoul de operare.
  - Când dimensiunea paginii este setată la A4, încărcaţi hârtie simplă sau hârtie fotografică de dimensiune A4.
  - Când dimensiunea paginii este setată la 8,5" x 11" (Letter), încărcaţi hârtie simplă sau hârtie fotografică de dimensiune Letter.

În partea superioară a paginii

Copierea fotografiilor

Această secţiune descrie procedura de copiere a unei fotografii imprimate pe hârtie fotografică de dimensiuni 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm.

Trebuie să pregătiţi:

Fotografii imprimate.

Hârtie pentru imprimarea fotografiilor. Consultaţi Tipuri de suport pe care le puteţi utiliza .

1. Pregătirea pentru copierea unei fotografii.

(1) Porniţi alimentarea.
Consultaţi Panoul de operare.

(2) Încărcaţi hârtia.
Consultaţi Încărcarea hârtiei simple/fotografice .

Aici încărcăm hârtie fotografică de dimensiuni 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm.

(3) Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.

(4) Încărcaţi o fotografie pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.
Consultaţi Încărcarea documentelor originale .

2. Începeţi copierea.

(1) Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul [**+**] pentru a specifica numărul de copii.
Consultaţi pasul 2 din Copierea documentelor.

(2) Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul **Hârtie (Paper)** pentru a selecta dimensiunea paginii şi tipul de suport.
Lampa **Hârtie (Paper)** indică dimensiunea selectată a paginii şi tipul de suport.

Aici selectăm hârtie fotografică de dimensiuni 10 x 15 cm sau 4" x 6".

Notă

- Puteţi să selectaţi următoarele dimensiuni de pagină şi tipuri de suport.
  - Hârtie simplă de dimensiune A4 sau 8,5" x 11"

- Hârtie fotografică A4 sau 8,5" x 11"
- Hârtie fotografică de dimensiuni 10 x 15 cm sau 4" x 6"

- Puteţi comuta dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate în tava din spate între A4 şi 8,5" x 11" (Letter) indiferent de dimensiunea indicată pe panoul de operare.
  Consultaţi Comutarea dimensiunii paginii între A4 şi 8,5" x 11" (Letter) .
- Când funcţia de copiere cu încadrare în pagină este activată, puteţi copia documentul original la dimensiunea mărită sau micşorată automat pentru a se încadra în dimensiunea paginii selectate. În acest caz, documentul original este copiat cu chenar pe hârtie simplă şi fără chenar pe hârtie fotografică.
  Pentru a copia un document original la aceeaşi dimensiune, revocaţi funcţia de copiere cu încadrare în pagină.
  Consultaţi Copierea cu încadrare în pagină .

(3) Apăsaţi butonul **Culoare (Color)** pentru copiere color sau butonul **Negru (Black)** pentru copiere alb-negru.

Aparatul începe copierea.

După ce copierea este finalizată, îndepărtaţi fotografia de pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

Important

- Nu deschideţi capacul pentru documente şi nu deplasaţi fotografia încărcată până la finalizarea copierii.

Notă

- Pentru a revoca operaţia de copiere, apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** .

În partea superioară a paginii

Copierea cu încadrare în pagină

Funcţia de copiere cu încadrare în pagină vă permite copierea automată a documentului original mărit sau micşorat pentru a se încadra în dimensiunea selectată a paginii.

1. Pregătirea pentru copiere.

Consultaţi pasul 1 din Copierea documentelor.

2. Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul [**+**] pentru a specifica numărul de copii.

3. Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul **Hârtie (Paper)** pentru a selecta dimensiunea paginii şi tipul de suport.

Notă

- Când pentru tipul de suport se selectează hârtie simplă, documentul original este copiat cu chenar.
  Când pentru tipul de suport se selectează hârtie fotografică, documentul original este copiat fără chenar şi umple întreaga pagină.
- În cazul copierii fără chenar, este posibil să apară o uşoară trunchiere la margini deoarece imaginea copiată este mărită pentru a acoperi întreaga pagină.

4. Apăsaţi butonul **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)** .

Se aprinde lampa **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)** şi funcţia de copiere cu încadrare în pagină se activează. Documentul original este copiat în mod automat la dimensiune mărită sau micşorată pentru a se încadra în dimensiunea de pagină selectată.

Notă

- Apăsaţi din nou butonul **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)** pentru a revoca funcţia de copiere cu încadrare în pagină pentru a copia documentul original la aceeaşi dimensiune.

5. Apăsaţi butonul **Culoare (Color)** pentru copiere color sau butonul **Negru (Black)** pentru copiere alb-negru.

Aparatul începe copierea cu încadrare în pagină.

Îndepărtaţi documentul original de pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare după ce aţi terminat de copiat.

Important

- Nu deschideţi capacul pentru documente şi nu deplasaţi documentul original încărcat până la terminarea copierii.

Notă

- Puteţi seta calitatea de imprimare la „Fast” (prioritate viteză) doar atunci când pentru dimensiunea paginii şi tipul de suport s-a selectat hârtie simplă de dimensiune A4 sau Letter.
  Pentru a seta calitatea imprimării la „Fast”, apăsaţi şi menţineţi apăsat butonul **Culoare (Color)** sau butonul **Negru (Black)** minim 2 secunde în pasul 5.
  Consultaţi Pentru a seta calitatea imprimării la „Fast” (prioritate viteză) .
- Pentru a revoca operaţia de copiere, apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** .

În partea superioară a paginii

Scanare

Puteţi salva datele scanate pe computer şi le puteţi edita sau procesa cu aplicaţia software furnizată.

Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer

Pregătirea pentru scanare cu ajutorul panoului de operare
Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer

În partea superioară a paginii

Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer

Această secţiune descrie procedura de scanare a documentelor originale utilizând panoul de operare pe la aparat şi de salvare a acestora pe computer în conformitate cu setările specificate cu MP Navigator EX.

Pentru operaţia de scanare de la computer, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

Important

- Reţineţi că firma Canon nu va fi răspunzătoare de nicio daună sau pierdere a datelor, indiferent de motiv, chiar şi în perioada de garanţie a aparatului.

■ Pregătirea pentru scanare cu ajutorul panoului de operare

Înainte de a scana documentele originale, verificaţi următoarele.

- Aplicaţiile software necesare (MP Drivers şi MP Navigator EX) sunt instalate?
  Dacă nu sunt instalate aplicaţiile software, consultaţi manualul imprimat: *Ghid de iniţiere*.
- Sunt specificate setările necesare cu MP Navigator EX?
  Când scanaţi pentru a salva documente originale pe computer utilizând panoul de operare, puteţi specifica setările pentru salvarea datelor scanate în Preferences de la MP Navigator EX.
  Pentru detalii privind setările, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.
- Documentul originalul de scanat întruneşte cerinţele pentru a putea fi aşezat pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare?
  Pentru detalii, consultaţi Documente originale pe care le puteţi încărca .
- Aparatul este conectat în mod corespunzător la un computer?
  Asiguraţi-vă de existenţa unei conexiuni sigure fizic între aparat şi computer.

Important

- Nu conectaţi şi nici nu deconectaţi cablul USB în timp ce aparatul scanează documente originale.

● Când utilizaţi Mac OS X v.10.3.9

Trebuie să setaţi MP Navigator EX ca aplicaţie software de start în Image Capture din Applications din Mac OS X.

(1) Selectaţi Applications din meniul Go, apoi faceţi dublu clic pe pictograma Image Capture.

(2) Faceţi clic pe Options în partea din stânga jos a ferestrei scanerului, selectaţi MP Navigator EX 3 în Application to launch when scanner button is pressed, apoi faceţi clic pe OK.
Pentru a părăsi Image Capture, selectaţi Quit Image Capture din meniul Image Capture.

Notă

- Dacă nu apare Options, selectaţi Preferences din meniul Image Capture, faceţi clic pe Scanner şi faceţi clic pe Use TWAIN software whenever possible pentru a şterge opţiunea. Apoi părăsiţi Image Capture şi reporniţi-l.

■ Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer

1. Pregătiţi-vă pentru scanare.

(1) Porniţi alimentarea.
Consultaţi Panoul de operare.

(2) Aşezaţi un document original pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

Consultaţi Încărcarea documentelor originale .

2. Apăsaţi butonul **SCANARE (SCAN)** pentru a porni scanarea.

Documentul original va fi scanat şi salvat pe computer în funcţie de setările specificate cu MP Navigator EX.

Luaţi documentul original de pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare după ce scanarea este finalizată.

Important

- Nu opriţi alimentarea în timp ce aparatul funcţionează.
- Nu deschideţi capacul pentru documente şi nu deplasaţi documentul original încărcat până la terminarea scanării.

Notă

- Este posibil ca poziţia sau dimensiunea documentului original să nu fie scanată corect în funcţie de tipul documentului original.
  În acest caz, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat pentru a modifica setările de la Document Type şi Document Size din MP Navigator EX astfel încât să corespundă cu documentul original şi scanaţi-l.

Când utilizaţi Windows Vista

- Ecranul de selectare a programului poate apărea după parcurgerea pasului 2. În acest caz, selectaţi MP Navigator EX Ver3.0 şi faceţi clic pe OK.

Când utilizaţi Windows XP

- Ecranul de selectare a programului poate apărea după parcurgerea pasului 2 pentru prima dată. În acest caz, specificaţi MP Navigator EX Ver3.0 ca aplicaţie software de utilizat, selectaţi Always use this program for this action, apoi faceţi clic pe OK. Pe viitor, MP Navigator EX va fi pornit automat.

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimarea de pe computerul dumneavoastră

Această secţiune descrie modalitatea de imprimare a fotografiilor sau documentelor utilizând un computer.
Puteţi imprima cu uşurinţă fotografii realizate cu camera dumneavoastră digitală utilizând aplicaţia Easy-PhotoPrint EX furnizată împreună cu aparatul.

Imprimarea fotografiilor (Easy-PhotoPrint EX)

Utilizarea diverselor funcţii ale Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Imprimarea documentelor (Windows)

Imprimarea documentelor (Macintosh)

Pentru Mac OS X v.10.5.x
Pentru Mac OS X v.10.4.x sau Mac OS X v.10.3.9

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimarea fotografiilor (Easy-PhotoPrint EX)

Imprimaţi date imagine salvate pe computerul dumneavoastră utilizând aplicaţia Easy-PhotoPrint EX furnizată împreună cu aparatul.
Această secţiune descrie procedura de imprimare a fotografiilor fără chenar pe hârtie fotografică de dimensiuni 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm.
Pentru detalii privind Easy-PhotoPrint EX, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

Notă

- Ecranele utilizate în această secţiune sunt pentru imprimarea din Windows. Operaţiile sunt aceleaşi şi pentru imprimarea din Macintosh.
- Instalaţi Easy-PhotoPrint EX de pe *CD-ROM-ul de instalare (Setup CD-ROM)* dacă nu a fost instalat sau a dacă fost dezinstalat. Pentru a instala Easy-PhotoPrint EX, selectaţi Easy-PhotoPrint EX în Custom Install.

1. Pregătiţi-vă pentru imprimare.

(1) Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este pus în funcţiune.
Consultaţi Panoul de operare.

(2) Încărcaţi hârtia.
Consultaţi Încărcarea hârtiei simple/fotografice .

Aici încărcăm hârtie fotografică de dimensiuni 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm.

(3) Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.

2. Porniţi Easy-PhotoPrint EX şi selectaţi Photo Print.

(1) Porniţi Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Windows

Faceţi dublu clic pe (Easy-PhotoPrint EX) de pe desktop.

Faceţi clic aici: Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Macintosh

Selectaţi meniul Go, Applications, Canon Utilities, Easy-PhotoPrint EX, apoi faceţi dublu clic pe Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Notă

Windows

- Pentru a porni Easy-PhotoPrint EX din Solution Menu, faceţi dublu clic pe (Solution Menu) de pe desktop şi faceţi clic pe (Print photos or albums, etc.).
  Consultaţi Solution Menu.
- Pentru a porni Easy-PhotoPrint EX din meniul Start, selectaţi Toate programele (All Programs) (sau Programe (Programs)), Canon Utilities, Easy-PhotoPrint EX, apoi Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

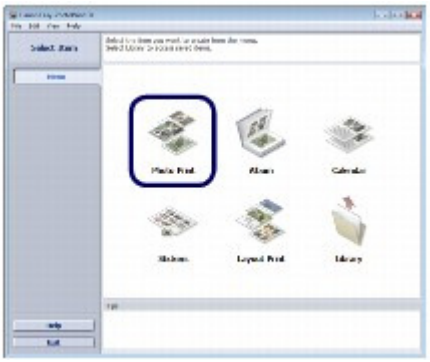
Macintosh

- Pentru a porni Easy-PhotoPrint EX din Solution Menu, faceţi clic pe (Solution Menu) în Dock şi faceţi clic pe (Print photos or albums, etc.).
  Consultaţi Solution Menu.

(2) Faceţi clic pe Photo Print.

Notă

- Puteţi selecta Album, Calendar, Stickers, etc. în plus faţă de Photo Print.
  Consultaţi Utilizarea diverselor funcţii ale Easy-PhotoPrint EX.



3. Selectaţi o fotografie de imprimat.

(1) Selectaţi folderul în care sunt salvate imaginile.

(2) Faceţi clic pe imaginea de imprimat.

Numărul de copii apare ca „1”, iar imaginea selectată apare în zona de afişare a imaginilor selectate (A).
Puteţi selecta două sau mai multe imagini simultan.

Notă

- Pentru a imprima două sau mai multe copii, faceţi clic pe (Săgeată sus) pentru a modifica numărul de copii.
- Pentru a revoca selecţia, faceţi clic pe imaginea de revocat în zona imaginii selectate, apoi faceţi clic pe (Delete Imported Image). Puteţi utiliza şi (Săgeată jos) pentru a modifica numărul de copii la zero.
- Puteţi, de asemenea, corecta sau îmbunătăţi imaginea selectată.
  Consultaţi Utilizarea diverselor funcţii ale Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

(3) Faceţi clic pe Select Paper.

4. Selectaţi hârtia încărcată.

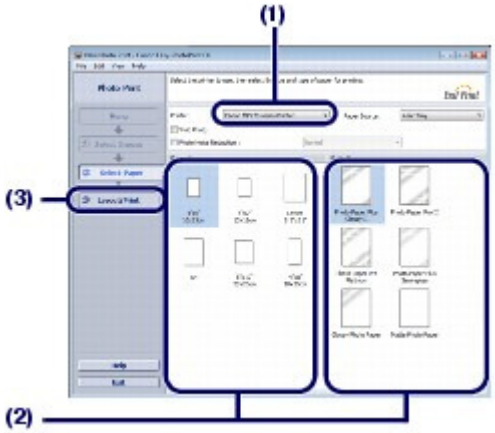
(1) Asiguraţi-vă că denumirea aparatului este selectată în Printer.

(2) Selectaţi formatul şi tipul de hârtie încărcată în Paper Size şi Media Type.
Aici se selectează 4"x6" 10x15cm în Paper Size şi tipul hârtiei fotografice încărcate în Media Type.

Notă

- Dacă selectaţi tipul de suport greşit, aparatul nu va putea imprima cu o calitate de imprimare corespunzătoare.

(3) Faceţi clic pe Layout/Print.



5. Selectaţi un aspect şi porniţi imprimarea.

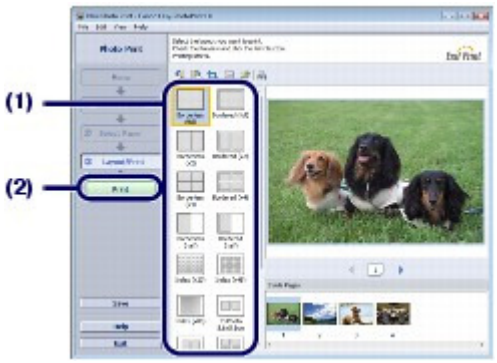
(1) Selectaţi aspectul fotografiei.
Aici selectaţi Borderless (full).

Previzualizarea apare în aspectul selectat pentru confirmarea rezultatului imprimării solicitat.

Notă

- Puteţi modifica orientarea fotografiei sau puteţi trunchia fotografii (ajustare) pentru imprimare.
  Pentru detalii privind operaţia, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

(2) Faceţi clic pe Print.



Notă

Windows

- Pentru a revoca o lucrare de imprimare în curs, apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/ Reset)** de pe aparat sau faceţi clic pe Cancel Printing de pe monitorul de stare al imprimantei.
  Pentru a afişa monitorul de stare al imprimantei, faceţi clic pe Canon XXX Printer (unde „**XXX**” este denumirea aparatului) din bara de activităţi.

Macintosh

- Faceţi clic pe pictograma imprimantei din Dock pentru a afişa lista lucrărilor de imprimare în curs de desfăşurare.
- Pentru a revoca o activitate de imprimare în curs de desfăşurare, selectaţi activitatea dorită în lista Name şi faceţi clic pe Delete.
  Pentru a opri temporar o lucrare în curs, faceţi clic pe Hold. Pentru a opri temporar toate lucrările din listă, faceţi clic pe Pause Printer (sau pe Stop Jobs).

În partea superioară a paginii

Utilizarea diverselor funcţii ale Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Această secţiune prezintă câteva dintre funcţiile utile ale aplicaţiei Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

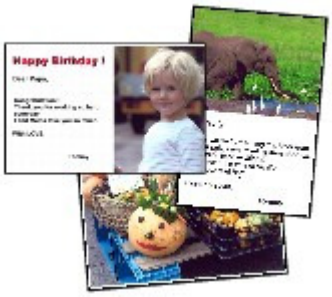
Crearea propriilor imprimări

Puteţi crea un album sau un calendar utilizând fotografiile dumneavoastră.

Album

Calendar

Stickers



Layout Print

Corectarea imaginilor

Puteţi utiliza Red-Eye Correction, Face Sharpener, Digital Face Smoothing, Brightness, Contrast etc. pentru a regla, corecta sau îmbunătăţi imaginile în mod automat sau manual.

Brightness

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimarea documentelor (Windows)

Această secţiune descrie procedura de imprimare a documentelor format A4 pe hârtie simplă.
Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

Notă

- Operaţiile pot diferi în funcţie de aplicaţiile dumneavoastră software. Pentru detalii privind funcţionarea, consultaţi manualul de utilizare al aplicaţiei dumneavoastră.
- Ecranele folosite în această secţiune sunt pentru imprimarea din sistemul de operare Windows Vista Ultimate Edition (denumit în continuare „Windows Vista”).

1. Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este pus în funcţiune.

Consultaţi Panoul de operare.

2. Încărcaţi hârtia.

Consultaţi Încărcarea hârtiei simple/fotografice .

Aici încărcaţi hârtie simplă format A4.

3. Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.

4. Creaţi (sau deschideţi) un document de imprimat utilizând o aplicaţie software corespunzătoare.

5. Deschideţi ferestrea de configurare a driverului de imprimantă

(1) Selectaţi Print din meniul File sau din bara de comenzi în aplicaţia software.

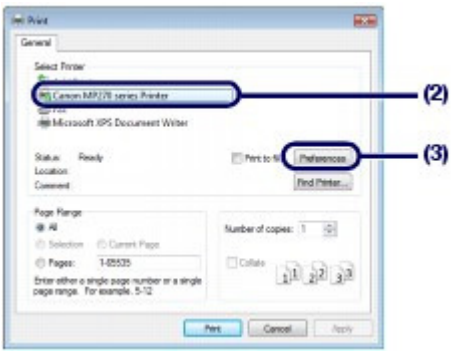
Va apărea caseta de dialog Print.

(2) Asiguraţi-vă că numele aparatului dumneavoastră este selectat.

Notă

- Dacă este selectat numele unei alte imprimante, faceţi clic şi selectaţi numele aparatului.

(3) Faceţi clic pe Preferences (sau Properties).



6. Specificaţi setările de imprimare necesare.

(1) Selectaţi Business Document în Commonly Used Settings.

Notă

- Când obiectul imprimat, cum ar fi Business Document sau Photo Printing este selectat în Commonly Used Settings, elementele din Additional Features vor fi selectate automat. Vor apărea, de asemenea, setările potrivite pentru obiectul imprimat, cum ar fi tipul de suport sau calitatea imprimării.
- Când specificaţi două sau mai multe copii în Copies, caseta de bifare Collate va fi selectată.

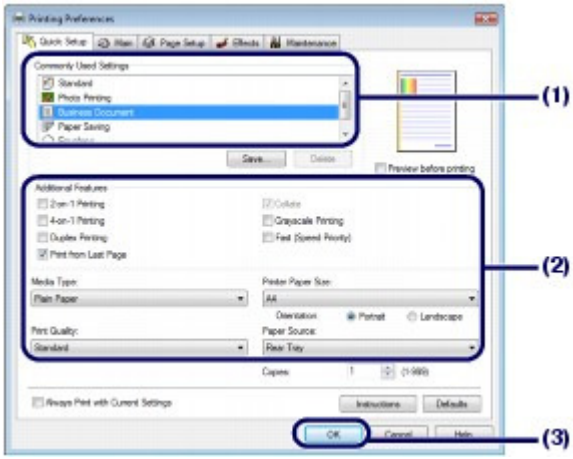
(2) Asiguraţi-vă de setările afişate.

Aici, asiguraţi-vă că sunt selectate opţiunile Plain Paper în Media Type, Standard în Print Quality şi A4 în Printer Paper Size.

Notă

- Setările pot fi modificate.
  Totuşi, după modificarea de la Printer Paper Size, confirmaţi că setarea pentru Page Size din fila Page Setup se potriveşte cu setarea efectuată în aplicaţia software.
  Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.
- Dacă selectaţi tipul de suport greşit, aparatul nu va putea imprima cu o calitate de imprimare corespunzătoare.

(3) Faceţi clic pe OK.

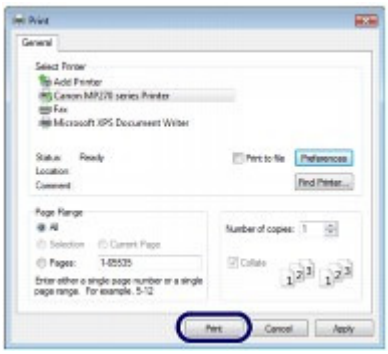


Notă

- Pentru detalii referitoare la funcţiile driverului de imprimantă, faceţi clic pe Help sau Instructions pentru a vizualiza ajutorul online sau manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*. Apare butonul Instructions în filele Quick Setup, Main şi Maintenance, dacă manualul on-screen este instalat pe computerul dumneavoastră.
- Puteţi denumi setările modificate şi le puteţi adăuga la Commonly Used Settings.
  Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.
- Pentru a afişa setările curente data următoare când deschideţi fereastra de configurare a driverului de imprimantă, selectaţi caseta de bifare Always Print with Current Settings. Este posibil ca anumite aplicaţii software să nu aibă această funcţie.
- Pentru a afişa previzualizare care să confirme rezultatul de imprimare, selectaţi caseta de bifare Preview before printing. Este posibil ca anumite aplicaţii software să nu aibă o funcţie de previzualizare.
- Puteţi specifica setările detaliate pentru imprimare în foaia Main sau în foaia Page Setup.
  Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

7. Începeţi imprimarea.

Faceţi clic pe Print (sau pe OK) pentru a porni imprimarea.



Notă

- Mesajul indicând cum să încărcaţi plicurile va apărea în timp ce le imprimaţi. Acest mesaj nu va mai apărea data viitoare, dacă bifaţi caseta de selectare Do not show this message again.
  Pentru detalii despre setările aferente imprimării plicurilor, consultaţi Încărcarea plicurilor .
- Pentru a revoca o lucrare de imprimare în curs, apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/ Reset)** de pe aparat sau faceţi clic pe Cancel Printing de pe monitorul de stare al imprimantei.
  Pentru a afişa monitorul de stare al imprimantei, faceţi clic pe Canon XXX Printer (unde „**XXX**” este denumirea aparatului) din bara de activităţi.
- Dacă liniile ordonate imprimate sunt greşit aliniate sau dacă rezultatele imprimării sunt nesatisfăcătoare, reglaţi poziţia capului de imprimare.
  Consultaţi Alinierea capului de imprimare.

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimarea documentelor (Macintosh)

Această secţiune descrie procedura de imprimare a documentelor format A4 pe hârtie simplă.
Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

Notă

- Operaţiile pot diferi în funcţie de aplicaţiile dumneavoastră software. Pentru detalii privind funcţionarea, consultaţi manualul de utilizare al aplicaţiei dumneavoastră.

■ Pentru Mac OS X v.10.5.x

1. Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este pus în funcţiune.

Consultaţi Panoul de operare.

2. Încărcaţi hârtia.

Consultaţi Încărcarea hârtiei simple/fotografice .

Aici încărcaţi hârtie simplă format A4.

3. Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.

4. Creaţi (sau deschideţi) un document de imprimat utilizând o aplicaţie software corespunzătoare.

5. Deschideţi caseta de dialog Print.

Selectaţi Print din meniul File în aplicaţia dumneavoastră software.

Va apărea caseta de dialog Print.

Notă

- Dacă apare caseta de dialog de mai jos, faceţi clic pe (Săgeată jos).

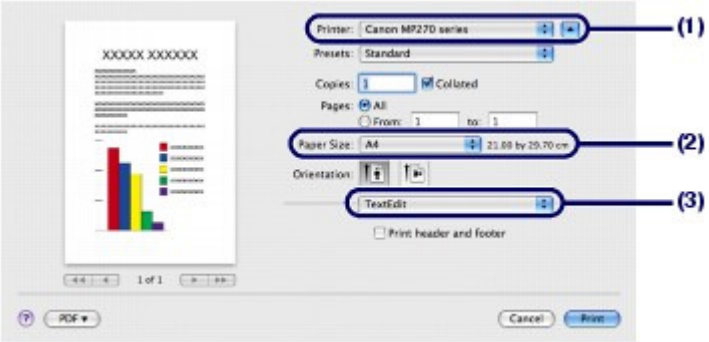
6. Specificaţi setările de imprimare necesare.

(1) Asiguraţi-vă că denumirea aparatului este selectată în Printer.

(2) Selectaţi dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate în Paper Size.

Aici selectăm A4.

(3) Selectaţi Quality & Media în meniul pop-up.



(4) Selectaţi tipul de suport pentru hârtia încărcată din Media Type.
Aici selectaţi Plain Paper.

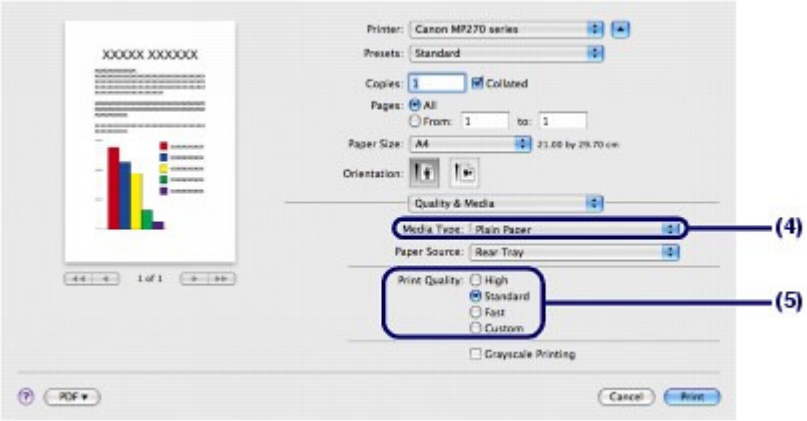
Notă

- Dacă selectaţi tipul de suport greşit, aparatul nu va putea imprima cu o calitate de imprimare corespunzătoare.

(5) Selectaţi calitatea de imprimare în Print Quality.
Aici selectaţi Standard.

Notă

- Pentru detalii privind calitatea imprimării, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.



Notă

- Pentru detalii referitoare la funcţiile driverului de imprimantă, faceţi clic pe (Întrebare) în ecranul Quality & Media, Color Options, Borderless Printing sau Margin.
- Previzualizarea apare în stânga casetei de dialog pentru a confirma rezultatul imprimării. Este posibil ca anumite aplicaţii software să nu aibă o funcţie de previzualizare.

7. Începeţi imprimarea.

Faceţi clic pe Print pentru a porni imprimarea.

Notă

- Faceţi clic pe pictograma imprimantei din Dock pentru a afişa lista lucrărilor de imprimare în curs de desfăşurare.
- Pentru a revoca o activitate de imprimare în curs de desfăşurare, selectaţi activitatea dorită în lista Name şi faceţi clic pe Delete.
  Pentru a opri temporar o lucrare în curs, faceţi clic pe Hold. Pentru a opri temporar toate lucrările din listă, faceţi clic pe Pause Printer.
- Dacă liniile ordonate imprimate sunt greşit aliniate sau dacă rezultatele imprimării sunt

nesatisfăcătoare, reglaţi poziţia capului de imprimare.
Consultaţi Alinierea capului de imprimare.

■ Pentru Mac OS X v.10.4.x sau Mac OS X v.10.3.9

Notă

- Ecranele utilizate în această secţiune sunt pentru imprimarea cu Mac OS X v.10.4.x.

1. Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este pus în funcţiune.
Consultaţi Panoul de operare.

2. Încărcaţi hârtia.
Consultaţi Încărcarea hârtiei simple/fotografice .
Aici încărcaţi hârtie simplă format A4.

3. Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.

4. Creaţi (sau deschideţi) un document de imprimat utilizând o aplicaţie software corespunzătoare.

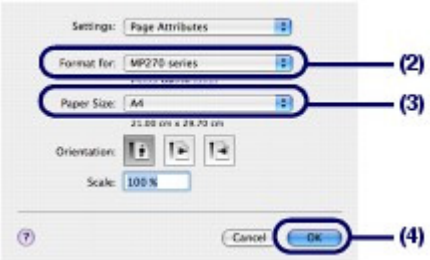
5. Specificaţi dimensiunea paginii.

(1) Selectaţi Page Setup în meniul File din aplicaţia software.
Va apărea caseta de dialog Page Setup.

(2) Asiguraţi-vă că numele aparatului dumneavoastră este selectat în Format for.

(3) Selectaţi dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate în Paper Size.
Aici selectăm A4.

(4) Faceţi clic pe OK.



6. Specificaţi setările de imprimare necesare.

(1) Selectaţi Print din meniul File în aplicaţia dumneavoastră software.
Va apărea caseta de dialog Print.

(2) Asiguraţi-vă că denumirea aparatului este selectată în Printer.

(3) Selectaţi Quality & Media în meniul pop-up.

(4) Selectaţi tipul de suport pentru hârtia încărcată din Media Type.

Aici selectaţi Plain Paper.

Notă

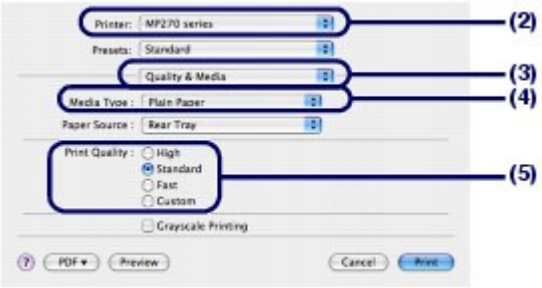
- Dacă selectaţi tipul de suport greşit, aparatul nu va putea imprima cu o calitate de imprimare corespunzătoare.

(5) Selectaţi calitatea de imprimare în Print Quality.

Aici selectaţi Standard.

Notă

- Pentru detalii privind calitatea imprimării, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.



Notă

- Pentru detalii referitoare la funcţiile driverului de imprimantă, faceţi clic pe (Întrebare) în ecranul Quality & Media, Color Options, Special Effects, Borderless Printing sau Margin.
- Pentru a afişa previzualizarea în vederea confirmării rezultatului imprimării, faceţi clic pe Preview. Este posibil ca anumite aplicaţii software să nu aibă o funcţie de previzualizare.

7. Începeţi imprimarea.

Faceţi clic pe Print pentru a porni imprimarea.

Notă

- Faceţi clic pe pictograma imprimantei din Dock pentru a afişa lista lucrărilor de imprimare în curs de desfăşurare.
- Pentru a revoca o activitate de imprimare în curs de desfăşurare, selectaţi activitatea dorită în lista Name şi faceţi clic pe Delete.
  Pentru a opri temporar o lucrare în curs, faceţi clic pe Hold. Pentru a întrerupe temporar toate comenzile din listă, faceţi clic pe Stop Jobs.
- Dacă liniile ordonate imprimate sunt greşit aliniate sau dacă rezultatele imprimării sunt nesatisfăcătoare, reglaţi poziţia capului de imprimare.
  Consultaţi Alinierea capului de imprimare.

În partea superioară a paginii

Alte utilizări

Această secţiune prezintă funcţia de imprimare a fotografiilor de pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge de tipul unei camere digitale care este conectată cu un cablu USB (numai pentru MP270 series).
Această secţiune mai prezintă aplicaţii software utile pe care le puteţi utiliza cu aparatul.

Imprimarea fotografiilor de pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge (numai pentru MP270 series)

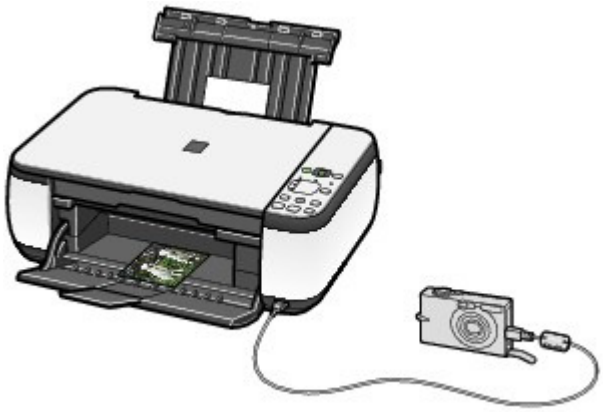
Aplicaţii software utile

- Solution Menu
- My Printer
- Easy-WebPrint EX

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimarea fotografiilor de pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge (numai pentru MP270 series)

Puteţi conecta dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge la acest aparat printr-un cablu USB recomandat de producătorul dispozitivului şi puteţi imprima direct imagini salvate.
Pentru detalii privind modalitatea de imprimare a imaginilor salvate conectând dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.
Pentru detalii cu privire la setările de imprimare ale dispozitivului compatibil PictBridge, consultaţi manualul de instrucţiuni furnizat împreună cu dispozitivul.



Dispozitive care se pot conecta:

Orice dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge poate fi conectat la acest aparat, indiferent de producător sau model, cât timp este conform standardului PictBridge.

Notă

- PictBridge este standardul de imprimare directă a fotografiilor, fără ajutorul unui computer, conectând un dispozitiv precum un aparat foto digital, o cameră video digitală sau un telefon mobil echipat cu cameră.

  (PictBridge) Un dispozitiv cu acest simbol este compatibil PictBridge.

Format de date imagine care se poate imprima:

Acest aparat acceptă imagini* realizate cu o cameră compatibilă cu sistemul Design rule for Camera File şi fişiere PNG.
* compatibile Exif 2.2/2.21

În partea superioară a paginii

Aplicaţii software utile

Aparatul poate fi utilizat cu aplicaţii software utile precum Solution Menu, My Printer şi Easy-WebPrint EX.

■ Solution Menu

Cu ajutorul Solution Menu puteţi porni aplicaţiile software furnizate împreună cu aparatul, sau puteţi afişa instrucţiunile de funcţionare.

Windows

Faceţi dublu clic pe (Solution Menu) de pe desktop.

Faceţi clic aici: Solution Menu

Macintosh

Faceţi clic pe (Solution Menu) din Dock.

* Ecranele de mai jos sunt pentru Windows Vista.

Faceţi clic pe butonul unei funcţii pe care doriţi să o utilizaţi.

După ce aţi pornit Solution Menu faceţi clic pe butonul de pe bara de titlu pentru a reduce dimensiunea ferestrei.

Notă

- Instalaţi Solution Menu de pe *CD-ROM-ul de instalare (Setup CD-ROM)* dacă nu a fost instalat sau dacă a fost dezinstalat. Pentru a instala Solution Menu, selectaţi Solution Menu din Custom Install.
- Butoanele afişate pe ecran pot diferi în funcţie de ţara sau regiunea de cumpărare.

Windows

- Pentru a porni Solution Menu din meniul Start, selectaţi Toate programele (All Programs) (sau Programe (Programs)), Canon Utilities, Solution Menu, apoi Solution Menu.

Macintosh

- Pentru a porni Solution Menu din bara de meniu, selectaţi meniul Go, Applications, Canon Utilities, Solution Menu, apoi faceţi dublu clic pe Solution Menu.

■ My Printer

Cu My Printer, puteţi afişa fereastra de configurare a driverului de imprimantă. De asemenea, furnizează informaţii referitoare la măsurile pe care le puteţi lua în cazul în care aveţi dificultăţi de operare. Opţiunea My Printer nu este disponibilă pentru Macintosh.

Windows

Faceţi dublu clic pe (My Printer) de pe desktop.

Notă

- De asemenea, puteţi porni My Printer din Solution Menu sau de la bara de activităţi.
- Instalaţi My Printer de pe *CD-ROM-ul de instalare (Setup CD-ROM)* dacă nu a fost instalat sau dacă a fost dezinstalat. Pentru a instala My Printer, selectaţi My Printer în Custom Install.
- Pentru a instala My Printer din meniul Start, selectaţi Toate programele (All Programs) (sau Programe (Programs)), Canon Utilities, My Printer, apoi My Printer.

■ Easy-WebPrint EX

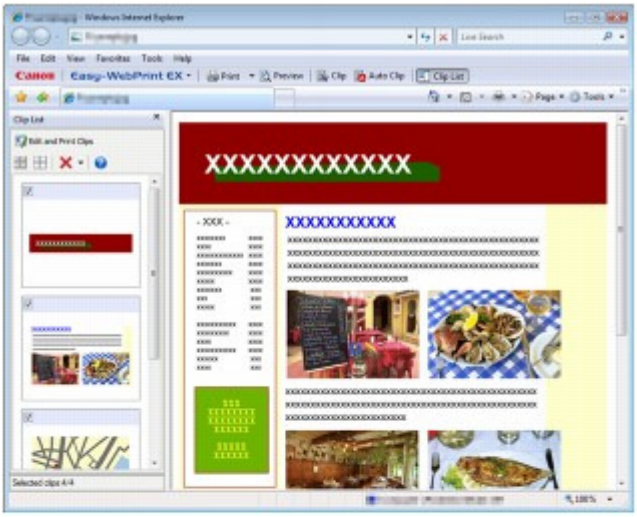
Easy-WebPrint EX asigură o imprimare rapidă şi simplă a paginilor Web pentru Internet Explorer. Puteţi imprima pagini Web redimensionate în mod automat pentru a se încadra în lăţimea hârtiei fără a tăia feţele paginilor sau puteţi previzualiza şi selecta paginile Web pe care doriţi să le imprimaţi. Easy-WebPrint EX nu este disponibil în Windows 2000 şi Macintosh.

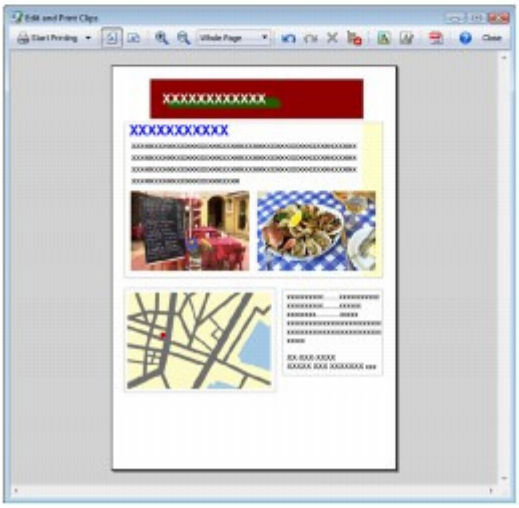
Important

- Este ilegală reproducerea sau editarea lucrărilor protejate prin copyright ale altor persoane fără permisiunea deţinătorului de copyright, cu excepţia celor pentru utilizare personală, utilizare la domiciliu sau pentru alte utilizări în cadrul unei sfere limitate, aşa cum se defineşte prin copyright. În plus, reproducerea sau editarea fotografiilor cu persoane poate încălca drepturile de imagine.

Când este instalat Easy-WebPrint EX, acesta adaugă o bară de instrumente la ecranul Internet Explorer. Bara de instrumente este disponibilă ori de câte ori se execută Internet Explorer.

Funcţia de decupare, de exemplu, vă permite să decupaţi părţile dorite din pagini Web şi să le editaţi pentru imprimare.





Pentru detalii cu privire la imprimarea paginilor Web, faceţi clic pe (Help) pentru a vizualiza ajutorul online.

Notă

Note pentru instalarea aplicaţiei Easy-WebPrint EX

- Dacă aplicaţia Easy-WebPrint EX nu este instalată, instrucţiunile pentru instalarea acesteia pot apărea din bara de activităţi de pe desktop.
  Pentru a instala Easy-WebPrint EX, faceţi clic pe ghidul afişat şi urmaţi instrucţiunile de pe ecran.
- De asemenea, puteţi instala Easy-WebPrint EX de pe *CD-ROM-ul de instalare (Setup CD-ROM)*.
  Pentru a instala Easy-WebPrint EX, selectaţi Easy-WebPrint EX în Custom Install.
- Pentru a instala Easy-WebPrint EX pe computer, este necesar să aveţi Internet Explorer 7 sau o variantă ulterioară şi computerul trebuie să fie conectat la Internet.

În partea superioară a paginii

Încărcarea hârtiei / documentelor originale

Această secţiune descrie tipurile de hârtie sau documente originale pe care le puteţi încărca, cum să încărcaţi hârtia de imprimare în tava din spate şi cum să încărcaţi documentele originale pentru a fi copiate sau scanate.

Încărcarea hârtiei

Încărcarea hârtiei simple/fotografice
Încărcarea plicurilor
Tipuri de suport pe care le puteţi utiliza
Tipuri de suport pe care nu le puteţi utiliza.

Încărcarea documentelor originale

Încărcarea documentelor originale
Documente originale pe care le puteţi încărca

În partea superioară a paginii

Încărcarea hârtiei

➡ Încărcarea hârtiei simple/fotografice
➡ Încărcarea plicurilor
➡ Tipuri de suport pe care le puteţi utiliza
➡ Tipuri de suport pe care nu le puteţi utiliza.

■ Încărcarea hârtiei simple/fotografice

Important

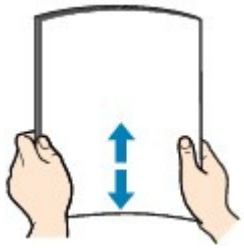
- Dacă tăiaţi hârtia simplă la dimensiuni mici precum 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm, 4" X 8" / 101,6 x 203,2 mm, 5" x 7" / 13 x 18 cm sau 2,16" x 3,58" / 55,0 x 91,0 mm (dimensiuni carte de vizită) pentru imprimări experimentale, hârtia se poate bloca.

Notă

- Recomandăm utilizarea hârtiei fotografice originale Canon pentru a imprima fotografii.
  Pentru detalii despre hârtia originală Canon, consultaţi Tipuri de suport pe care le puteţi utiliza .
- Puteţi folosi hârtie de imprimare obişnuită.
  Pentru detalii despre dimensiunile de pagină şi greutatea hârtiei pe care o puteţi utiliza pentru acest aparat, consultaţi Tipuri de suport pe care le puteţi utiliza .

1. Pregătiţi hârtia.

Îndreptaţi marginile hârtiei. Îndreptaţi hârtia dacă este ondulată.



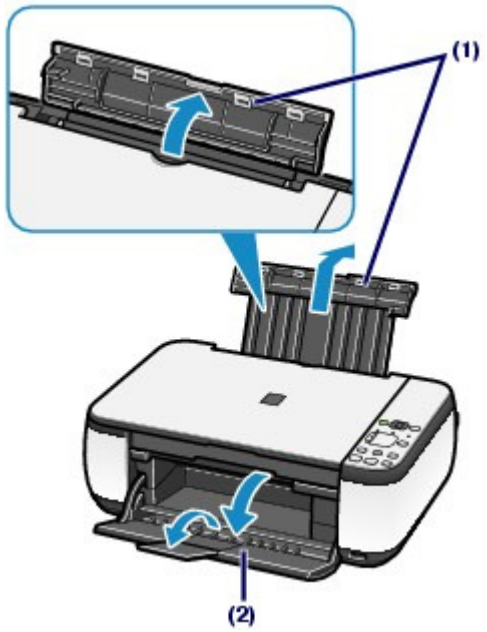
Notă

- Îndreptaţi marginile hârtiei înainte de încărcare. Încărcarea hârtiei fără îndreptarea marginilor poate produce blocarea acesteia.
- Dacă hârtia este încreţită, ţineţi colţurile încreţite opuse şi îndoiţi-le uşor în direcţia opusă până când hârtia devine complet plată.
  Pentru detalii despre cum să îndreptaţi hârtia încreţită, consultaţi „ Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.

2. Încărcaţi hârtia.

(1) Deschideţi suportul pentru hârtie, ridicaţi-l, apoi împingeţi-l înapoi.

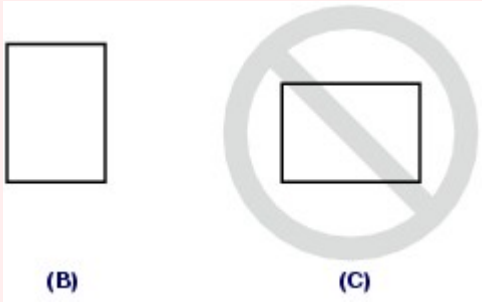
(2) Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.



(3) Glisaţi ghidajele pentru hârtie (A) pentru a le deschide şi aşezaţi hârtia în centrul tăvii din spate, cu FAŢA DE IMPRIMARE ORIENTATĂ CĂTRE DUMNEAVOASTRĂ.

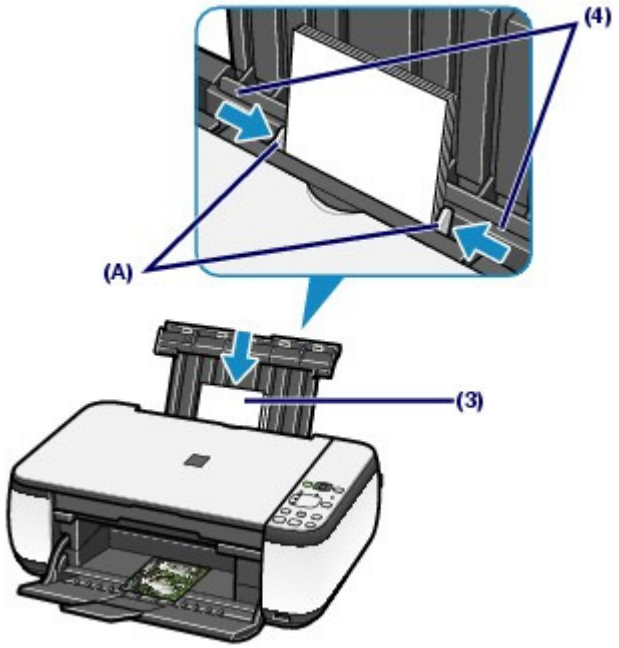
Important

- Întotdeauna încărcaţi hârtia cu orientarea tip portret (B). Încărcarea hârtiei cu orientarea tip vedere (C) poate cauza blocarea hârtiei.



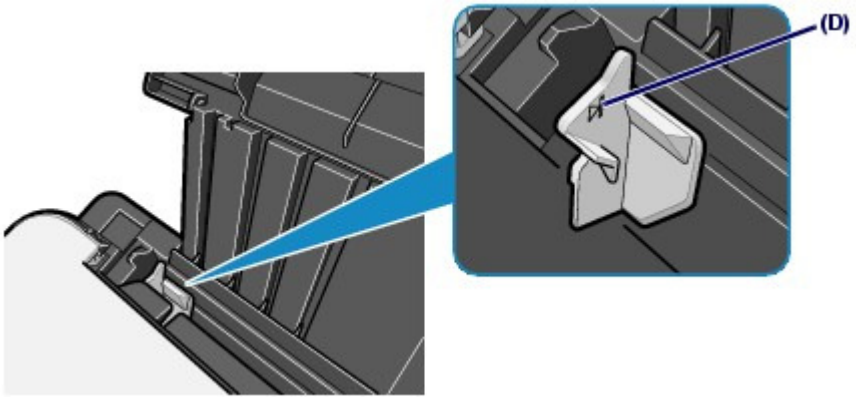
(4) Glisaţi ghidajele de hârtie (A) pentru a le alinia cu ambele părţi laterale ale teancului de hârtie.

Nu culisaţi ghidajele de hârtie prea tare. Alimentarea cu hârtie nu se va realiza corect.



Notă

- Nu încărcaţi mai sus de semnul pentru limita de încărcare (D).



Notă

- Aparatul poate emite un zgomot de funcţionare în timpul alimentării cu hârtie.

După încărcarea hârtiei

- Când copiaţi, selectaţi dimensiunea şi tipul hârtiei încărcate utilizând panoul de operare de la aparat.
  Consultaţi Copierea.
- La imprimarea cu ajutorul unui computer, selectaţi dimensiunile şi tipul hârtiei încărcate în Printer Paper Size (sau Paper Size) şi Media Type din driverul imprimantei.
  Consultaţi Imprimarea documentelor (Windows) sau Imprimarea documentelor (Macintosh).

În partea superioară a paginii

■ Încărcarea plicurilor

Puteţi imprima pe plicuri European DL şi US Comm. plicuri dimensiunea #10
Adresa este rotită şi imprimată automat conform direcţiei plicului prin specificarea corectă cu driverul pentru imprimantă.

Important

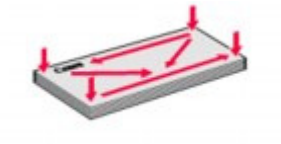
- Puteţi imprima pe plicuri numai utilizând un computer.
- Nu puteţi folosi următoarele plicuri.
  - Plicuri cu suprafaţa tratată sau gofrată
  - Plicuri cu clapete duble (sau clapete cu adeziv)
  - Plicuri ale căror clapete cauciucate sunt deja adezive şi umezite

Notă

- În Windows, mesajul care indică cum să încărcaţi plicurile va apărea în timp ce le imprimaţi. Acest mesaj nu va mai apărea data viitoare, dacă bifaţi caseta de selectare Do not show this message again..

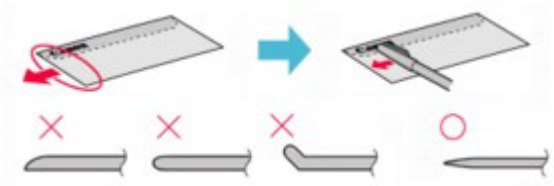
1. Pregătirea plicurilor.

- Apăsaţi cele patru colţuri şi margini ale plicurilor pentru a le îndrepta.



- Dacă plicurile sunt încreţite, ţineţi colţurile opuse şi, încet, îndoiţi-le în direcţia opusă.

- Dacă colţul clapetei plicului este îndoit, îndreptaţi-l.
- Utilizaţi un creion pentru a îndrepta marginea în direcţia introducerii şi accentuaţi pliul.



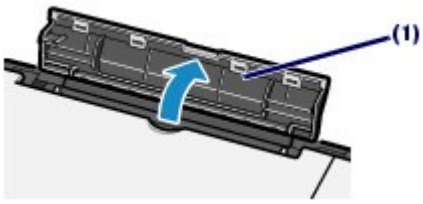
Figurile de mai sus arată o vedere laterală a marginii diriguitoare a plicului.

Important

- Plicurile se pot bloca în aparat dacă nu sunt întinse sau dacă marginile nu sunt aliniate. Asiguraţi-vă că ondulaţia sau umflătura nu depăşeşte 0,1 inchi / 3 mm.

2. Încărcarea plicurilor.

(1) Deschideţi suportul pentru hârtie.
Nu ridicaţi suportul pentru hârtie.

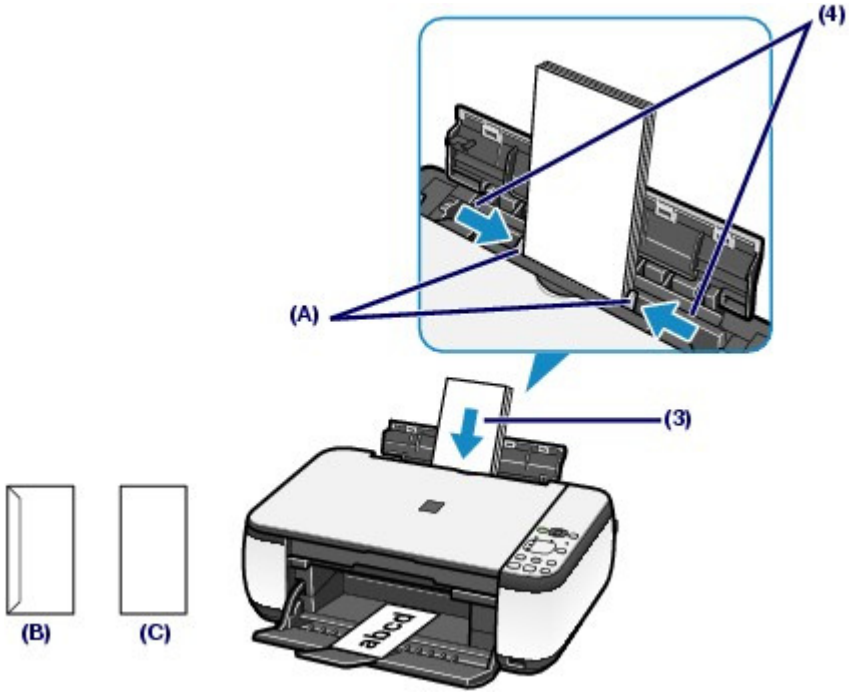


(2) Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.

(3) Glisaţi ghidajele de hârtie (A) pentru a le deschide şi aşezaţi plicurile în centrul tăvii din spate CU PARTEA CU ADRESA ORIENTATĂ CĂTRE DUMNEAVOASTRĂ.
Clapeta îndoită a plicului va fi orientată cu faţa în jos în partea stângă.

Pot fi încărcate până la 10 plicuri odată.

(4) Glisaţi ghidajele de hârtie (A) pentru a le alinia cu ambele părţi ale plicului.
Nu culisaţi ghidajele de hârtie prea tare. Alimentarea cu plicuri nu se va realiza corect.



(B) Partea din spate

(C) Partea cu adresa

3. Specificaţi setările în driverul pentru imprimantă.

Windows

(1) Selectaţi Envelope în Commonly Used Settings din foaia Quick Setup.

(2) Selectaţi DL Env. sau Comm. Env. #10 în fereastra Envelope Size Setting.

(3) Selectaţi Landscape în Orientation.

Macintosh

(1) Selectaţi Envelope în Media Type.

(2) Selectaţi DL Envelope sau #10 Envelope în Paper Size.

(3) Selectaţi orientarea Landscape în Orientation.

Important

- Dacă nu specificaţi corect dimensiunea sau orientarea pentru plic, adresa va fi imprimată invers sau întoarsă la 90 de grade.

Notă

- Aparatul poate emite un zgomot de funcţionare în timpul alimentării cu plicuri.
- În Windows, dacă rezultatul imprimării este răsturnat, deschideţi fereastra de configurare a driverului de imprimantă, selectaţi Envelope în Commonly Used Settings, apoi selectaţi caseta de selectare Rotate 180 degrees din Additional Features.
- Pentru detalii referitoare la setările pentru driverul de imprimantă, consultaţi Imprimarea documentelor (Windows) sau Imprimarea documentelor (Macintosh).

În partea superioară a paginii

■ Tipuri de suport pe care le puteţi utiliza

Alegeţi hârtia adecvată pentru imprimare, pentru cele mai bune rezultate de imprimare. Canon vă pune la dispoziţie diferite tipuri de hârtie pentru a spori bucuria de a imprima, cum ar fi etichete sau hârtie pentru fotografii ori pentru documente. Recomandăm folosirea hârtiei originale Canon pentru a imprima cele mai importante fotografii.

● Tip de suport

Hârtii disponibile în comerţ

Denumirea hârtiei <Nr. model> *1	Limita de încărcare a hârtiei în tava din spate	Limita de încărcare a tăvii de ieşire a hârtiei	Setări ale driverului de imprimantă: Media Type
Plain Paper (Hârtie reciclată) *2 *3	Aprox. 100 de foi	Aprox. 50 de foi	Plain Paper
Plicuri	10 plicuri	*4	Envelope

Hârtie originală Canon

Denumirea hârtiei <Nr. model> *1	Limita de încărcare a hârtiei în tava din spate	Limita de încărcare a tăvii de ieşire a hârtiei	Setări ale driverului de imprimantă: Media Type
Pentru imprimare fotografii:			
Photo Paper Pro Platinum <PT-101> *5	A4, Letter, 5" x 7" / 13 x 18 cm, şi 8" x 10" / 20 x 25 cm: 10 foi 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm: 20 de foi	*4	Photo Paper Pro Platinum
Photo Paper Pro II <PR-201> *5			Photo Paper Pro II
Glossy Photo Paper "Everyday Use" <GP-501> *3 *5			Glossy Photo Paper
Photo Paper Glossy <GP-502> *3 *5			Glossy Photo Paper
Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP- 201> *3 *5			Photo Paper Plus Glossy II
Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss <SG-201> *3 *5			Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss
Matte Photo Paper <MP-101>			Matte Photo Paper
Pentru imprimarea documentelor de afaceri:			

High Resolution Paper <HR-101N>	80 foi	50 foi	High Resolution Paper
Pentru creare imprimări proprii:			
T-Shirt Transfers <TR-301>	1 foaie	*4	T-Shirt Transfers
Autocolante foto <PS-101>*6			Glossy Photo Paper

*1 Hârtia cu număr de model este hârtie originală Canon. Pentru informaţii detaliate despre partea imprimabilă şi note despre manevrarea hârtiei, consultaţi manualul de instrucţiuni furnizat împreună cu hârtia. Pentru informaţii despre dimensiunile de pagină disponibile pentru fiecare tip de hârtie originală Canon, vizitaţi site-ul nostru Web. Există posibilitatea de a nu putea cumpăra hârtie originală Canon în funcţie de ţara sau regiunea de cumpărare. În S.U.A., hârtia nu se vinde după număr de model. Cumpăraţi hârtie după nume.

*2 Alimentarea corespunzătoare se poate să nu fie posibilă la capacitatea maximă în funcţie de tipul de hârtie sau condiţiile de mediu (condiţii de temperatură sau umiditate fie foarte ridicată, fie foarte scăzută). În astfel de cazuri, reduceţi numărul foilor de hârtie pe care le încărcaţi la mai puţin de jumătate (poate fi utilizată hârtie reciclată 100%).

*3 Hârtie care poate fi utilizată pentru efectuarea de copii când se selectează tipul de suport utilizând butonul **Hârtie (Paper)** de la panoul de operare. Puteţi selecta numai hârtie simplă de dimensiuni A4 sau Letter, hârtie fotografică de dimensiuni A4 sau Letter şi hârtie fotografică de 4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm.

*4 Recomandăm să îndepărtaţi coala imprimată anterior din tava de ieşire a hârtiei înainte de a imprima încontinuu pentru a evita neclarităţile şi decolorarea.

*5 Când se încarcă hârtie în stive, latura de imprimare poate fi marcată pe măsură ce este introdusă sau hârtia poate să nu fie introdusă corespunzător. În acest caz, încărcaţi câte o coală pe rând.

*6 Puteţi să specificaţi cu uşurinţă setări de imprimare pentru hârtie autocolantă cu aplicaţia Easy-PhotoPrint EX furnizată pe *CD-ROM-ul de instalare (Setup CD-ROM)* . Instalaţi-o pe computerul dvs.

Notă

- Pentru detalii cu privire la setările aferente dimensiunii paginii şi tipului de suport când imprimaţi de pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat (numai pentru MP270 series).

Dimensiuni pagină

Puteţi folosi următoarele dimensiuni ale paginii.

Notă

- Pe Macintosh, Choukei 3 şi Choukei 4 nu sunt disponibile.

Dimensiuni standard:

- Letter (8,50 x 11,00 inchi / 215,9 x 279,4 mm)
- Legal (8,50 x 14,00 inchi / 215,9 x 355,6 mm)
- A5 (5,83 x 8,27 inchi / 148,0 x 210,0 mm)
- A4 (8,27 x 11,69 inchi / 210,0 x 297,0 mm)
- B5 (7,17 x 10,12 inchi / 182,0 x 257,0 mm)
- 4" x 6" (4,00 x 6,00 inchi / 10 x 15 cm)
- 4" x 8" (4,00 x 8,00 inchi / 101,6 x 203,2 mm)

- 5" x 7" (5,00 x 7,00 inchi / 13 x 18 cm)
- 8" x 10" (8,00 x 10,00 inchi / 20 x 25 cm)
- L (3,50 x 5,00 inchi / 89,0 x 127,0 mm)
- 2L (5,00 x 7,01 inchi / 127,0 x 178,0 mm)
- Hagaki (3,94 x 5,83 inchi / 100,0 x 148,0 mm)
- Hagaki 2 (7,87 x 5,83 inchi / 200,0 x 148, mm)
- Comm. Env. #10 (4,12 x 9,50 inchi / 104,6 x 241,3 mm)
- DL Env. (4,33 x 8,66 inchi / 110,0 x 220,0 mm)
- Choukei 3 (4,72 x 9,25 inchi / 120,0 x 235,0 mm)
- Choukei 4 (3,54 x 8,07 inchi / 90,0 x 205,0 mm)
- Youkei 4 (4,13 x 9,25 inchi / 105,0 x 235,0 mm)
- Youkei 6 (3,86 x 7,48 inchi / 98,0 x 190,0 mm)
- Card (2,16 x 3,58 inchi / 55,0 x 91,0 mm)
- Wide (4,00 x 7,10 inchi / 101,6 x 180,6 mm)

Dimensiuni non-standard:

Puteţi specifica o dimensiune particularizată din următorul interval:

- Dimensiunea minimă: 2,17 x 3,58 inchi / 55,0 x 91,0 mm
- Dimensiunea maximă: 8,50 x 26,61 inchi / 215,9 x 676,0 mm

Greutate hârtie

de la 17 până la 28 lb / de la 64 până la 105 g/m ^{2} (cu excepţia hârtiei originale Canon)
Nu utilizaţi hârtie mai grea sau mai uşoară (cu excepţia hârtiei originale Canon), întrucât se poate bloca înăuntru.

Informaţii despre stocarea hârtiei

- Scoateţi din pachet numai numărul necesar de coli de hârtie, înainte de imprimare.
- Pentru a evita ondularea hârtiei când nu imprimaţi, aşezaţi hârtia nefolosită înapoi în pachet şi păstraţi-o pe o suprafaţă plană. De asemenea, depozitaţi ferit de căldură, umiditate şi lumina directă a soarelui.

Note cu privire la hârtia pentru imprimare fără chenar pe întreaga pagină

- Pentru imprimarea fără chenar pe întreaga pagină nu puteţi utiliza hârtie de dimensiuni A5, B5, Legal şi plicuri.
- Puteţi utiliza hârtie simplă pentru imprimare fără chenar pe întreaga pagină doar atunci când imprimaţi de pe computer. Totuşi, în acest caz calitatea imprimării va fi mai slabă. Vă recomandăm să utilizaţi hârtie simplă pentru o imprimare de probă.

În partea superioară a paginii

■ Tipuri de suport pe care nu le puteţi utiliza

Nu utilizaţi următoarele tipuri de hârtie. Utilizarea acestor tipuri de hârtie nu numai că va cauza rezultate nesatisfăcătoare, dar va conduce la nefuncţionarea sau blocarea aparatului.

- Hârtie îndoită, ondulată sau încreţită
- Hârtie umedă
- Hârtie care este prea subţire (cântăreşte mai puţin de 17 lb / 64 g/m ^{2})
- Hârtie care este prea groasă (cântăreşte mai mult de 28 lb / 105 g/m ^{2}, excepţie pentru hârtie originală Canon)
- Hârtie mai subţire decât o carte poştală, inclusiv hârtie simplă sau hârtie de bloc notes, tăiată la o dimensiune mică (atunci când se imprimă pe hârtie mai mică decât cea de format A5)
- Cărţi poştale cu imagine
- Cărţi poştale cu fotografii sau etichete
- Plicuri cu clapete duble (sau clapete cu adeziv)
- Plicuri cu suprafaţa tratată sau gofrată
- Plicuri ale căror clapete cauciucate sunt deja adezive şi umezite
- Orice tip de hârtie cu găuri
- Hârtie ce nu are forma rectangulară
- Hârtie prinsă cu capse sau lipici
- Hârtie cu adeziv
- Hârtie decorată cu sclipici, etc.

În partea superioară a paginii

Încărcarea documentelor originale

➡ Încărcarea documentelor originale
➡ Documente originale pe care le puteţi încărca

■ Încărcarea documentelor originale

Încărcarea documentelor originale pentru a fi copiate sau scanate pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

Important

- După încărcarea documentului original, asiguraţi-vă că închideţi capacul pentru documente înainte de a începe copierea sau scanarea.
- Când se scanează de pe computer utilizând o aplicaţie software, trebuie să încărcaţi documentul original în alt mod.
  Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

1. Aşezaţi un document original pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

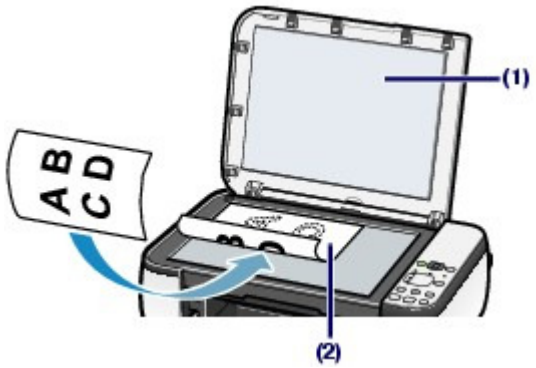
(1) Deschideţi capacul pentru documente.

Important

- Nu aşezaţi niciun obiect pe capacul pentru documente. Vor cădea în tava din spate atunci când capacul pentru documente este deschis, cauzând funcţionarea defectuoasă a aparatului.

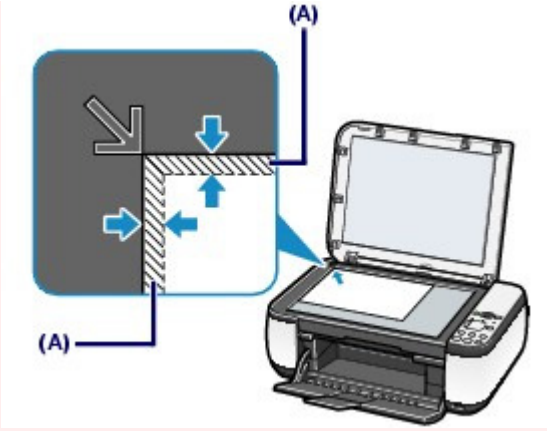
(2) Încărcaţi un document original cu faţa de copiat sau de scanat ORIENTATĂ ÎN JOS pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

Aliniaţi colţul documentului original cu semnul de aliniere ↘.



Important

- Nu aşezaţi niciun obiect cu greutatea mai mare de 4,4 lb / 2,0 kg pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.
- Nu apăsaţi sau aşezaţi pe documentul original greutăţi mai mari de 4,4 lb / 2,0 kg. Procedând astfel puteţi produce disfuncţionalităţi scanerului sau suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare se poate sparge.
- Aparatul nu poate scana zona întunecată (A) (0,04 inchi / 1 mm de la marginile suprafeţei de sticlă de scanare).



2. Închideţi uşor capacul pentru documente.

În partea superioară a paginii

■ Documente originale pe care le puteţi încărca

Puteţi copia sau scana următoarele documente originale.

Tipuri de documente originale:	Document text, revistă sau ziar Fotografie imprimată, carte poştală cu imagine, carte de vizită sau DVD/CD
Dimensiune (l x L):	Max. 8,5 x 11,7 inchi / 216,0 x 297,0 mm

Notă

- Când pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare încărcaţi un document original gros de tipul unei cărţi, aveţi posibilitatea să scoateţi capacul pentru documente de la aparat.
  Pentru detalii referitoare la modul în care puteţi scoate sau ataşa capacul pentru documente, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

În partea superioară a paginii

Întreţinere de rutină

Această secţiune descrie modul de curăţare a aparatului când rezultatul imprimării este slab, modul de înlocuire a cartuşelor FINE când acestea se golesc sau modul de acţionare când alimentarea cu hârtie nu se face corespunzător.

Când imprimarea devine ştearsă sau culorile sunt incorecte

Imprimarea unui model de verificare a duzei
Examinarea unui model de verificare a duzei
Curăţarea capului de imprimare
Curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare
Alinierea capului de imprimare

Înlocuirea unui cartuş FINE

Procedura de înlocuire
Verificarea nivelului de cerneală

Curăţarea aparatului

Curăţarea rolei de alimentare cu hârtie
Curăţarea interiorului aparatului (Curăţarea plăcii de la bază)
Curăţarea elementelor proeminente din interiorul aparatului

În partea superioară a paginii

Când imprimarea devine ştearsă sau culorile sunt incorecte

Dacă rezultatele imprimării sunt neclare sau culorile nu sunt imprimate corect, duzele capului de imprimare (cartuşele FINE) sunt, probabil, înfundate. Urmaţi procedura de mai jos pentru a imprima modelul de verificare a duzei, verificaţi starea duzei capului de imprimare, apoi curăţaţi capul de imprimare.
Dacă liniile regulate imprimate sunt aliniate greşit sau rezultatele imprimării sunt nesatisfăcătoare în alt mod, calitatea imprimării poate fi îmbunătăţită prin alinierea capului de imprimare.

Important

- Nu clătiţi şi nu ştergeţi cartuşele FINE. Acest fapt poate crea probleme la cartuşele FINE.

Notă

Înaintea efectuării întreţinerii

- Verificaţi dacă a mai rămas cerneală în cartuşul FINE.
  Consultaţi Verificarea nivelului de cerneală .
- Verificaţi instalarea corectă a cartuşului FINE.
  Consultaţi Procedura de înlocuire.
- Verificaţi dacă banda portocalie de protecţie din partea de jos a cartuşului FINE este îndepărtată.
  Consultaţi Procedura de înlocuire.
- Dacă lampa **Alarmă (Alarm)** se aprinde sau clipeşte în portocaliu, consultaţi „ Depanare" în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.
- Sporirea calităţii imprimării prin setările driverului imprimantei poate îmbunătăţi rezultatul imprimării.
  Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

Când rezultatele imprimării sunt neclare sau inegale:

Etapa 1

Consultaţi Imprimarea modelului de verificare a duzei.
Consultaţi Examinarea modelului de verificare a duzei .

Dacă lipsesc linii sau există dungi albe orizontale în model:

Pasul 2

Consultaţi Curăţarea capului de imprimare.

Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea capului de imprimare de două ori:

Pasul 3

Consultaţi Curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare.

Dacă problema nu se rezolvă, opriţi alimentarea şi curăţaţi capul de imprimare în profunzime din nou după 24 de ore.

Dacă problema persistă:

Pasul 4

Consultaţi Înlocuirea unui cartuş FINE.

După curăţarea capului de imprimare, imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei şi analizaţi-l.

Notă

- Dacă problema persistă după înlocuirea cartuşului FINE, contactaţi centrul de service.

Când rezultatele imprimării sunt neuniforme, cum ar fi alinierea greşită a liniilor:

Consultaţi Alinierea capului de imprimare.

Notă

- Puteţi, de asemenea, efectua operaţiunile de întreţinere de pe computerul dumneavoastră.
  Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

În partea superioară a paginii

■ Imprimarea modelului de verificare a duzei

Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei pentru a stabili dacă cerneala iese corespunzător din duzele capului de imprimare.

Notă

- Dacă nivelul cernelii rămase este scăzut, modelul de verificare a duzei nu va fi imprimat corect.
  Înlocuiţi cartuşul FINE cu nivel scăzut de cerneală.
  Consultaţi Înlocuirea unui cartuş FINE .

Trebuie să pregătiţi: o foaie de hârtie simplă de dimensiuni A4 sau Letter

1. Asiguraţi-vă că alimentarea este pornită.

2. Încărcaţi o foaie de hârtie simplă de format A4 sau Letter în tava din spate.

3. Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.

4. Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei.

(1) Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul (Întreţinere) până când apare **A**.

(2) Apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau butonul **Culoare (Color)**.
Modelul de verificare a duzei va fi imprimat.

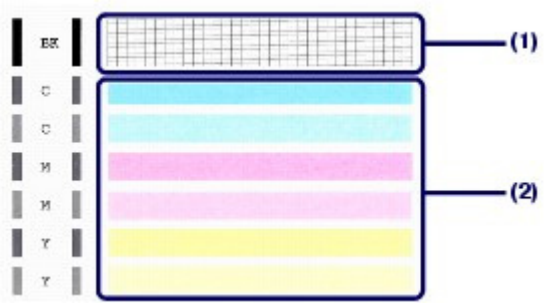
5. Examinaţi modelul de verificare a duzei.
Consultaţi Examinarea modelului de verificare a duzei .

În partea superioară a paginii

■ Examinarea modelului de verificare a duzei

Examinaţi modelul de verificare a duzei şi curăţaţi capul de imprimare, dacă este necesar.

1. Verificaţi dacă lipsesc linii din model (1) sau dacă modelul prezintă dungi albe orizontale (2).



(1) Verificaţi dacă lipsesc linii din acest model.

Dacă da, este necesară curăţarea.

Consultaţi Curăţarea capului de imprimare.

(A) Corect

(B) Incorect (Lipsesc linii)

(2) Verificaţi dacă există linii albe orizontale în acest model.

Dacă da, este necesară curăţarea.

Consultaţi Curăţarea capului de imprimare.

(A) Corect

(B) Incorect (Sunt prezente dungi albe orizontale)

În partea superioară a paginii

■ Curăţarea capului de imprimare

Curăţaţi capul de imprimare dacă există linii lipsă sau linii albe orizontale în modelul de verificare a duzelor imprimate. Prin curăţare, duzele sunt degajate şi starea capului de imprimare este restabilită. Curăţarea capului de imprimare consumă cerneală. Curăţaţi capul de imprimare doar dacă este necesar.

1. Asiguraţi-vă că alimentarea este pornită.

2. Curăţaţi capul de imprimare.

(1) Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul (Întreţinere) până când apare **H**.

(2) Apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau butonul **Culoare (Color)**.

Aparatul începe curăţarea capului de imprimare.

Nu efectuaţi alte operaţiuni până când imprimanta nu a finalizat curăţarea capului de imprimare. Această operaţie durează între 1 şi 2 minute.

3. Verificaţi starea capului de imprimare.

Când curăţarea s-a finalizat, LED-ul revine la modul standby pentru copiere.

Pentru a verifica starea capului de imprimare, imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei.

Consultaţi Imprimarea modelului de verificare a duzei.

Notă

- Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea capului de imprimare de două ori, curăţaţi capul de imprimare în profunzime.
  Consultaţi Curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare.

În partea superioară a paginii

■ Curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare

Dacă, după curăţarea standard a capului de imprimare, nu se îmbunătăţeşte calitatea imprimării, curăţaţi capul de imprimare în profunzime. Curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare consumă mai multă cerneală decât curăţarea standard, de aceea curăţaţi capul de imprimare în profunzime numai atunci când este nevoie.

1. Asiguraţi-vă că alimentarea este pornită.

2. Curăţaţi în profunzime capul de imprimare.

(1) Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul (Întreţinere) până când apare **y**.

(2) Apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau butonul **Culoare (Color)**.

Imprimanta începe curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare.

Nu efectuaţi alte operaţiuni până când imprimanta nu a finalizat curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare. Aceasta durează aproximativ 2 minute.

3. Verificaţi starea capului de imprimare.

Când curăţarea în profunzime a fost finalizată, LED-ul revine la modul standby pentru copiere.

Pentru a verifica starea capului de imprimare, imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei.

Consultaţi Imprimarea modelului de verificare a duzei.

Dacă problema nu se rezolvă, opriţi alimentarea şi curăţaţi capul de imprimare în profunzime din nou după 24 de ore.

Dacă problema tot nu este rezolvată, înlocuiţi cartuşul FINE cu unul nou.

Consultaţi Înlocuirea unui cartuş FINE.

Dacă problema persistă după înlocuirea cartuşului FINE, contactaţi centrul de service.

În partea superioară a paginii

Alinierea capului de imprimare

Dacă liniile regulate imprimate nu sunt aliniate sau rezultatele imprimării sunt nesatisfăcătoare în alt mod, reglaţi poziţia capului de imprimare.

Notă

- Dacă nivelul cernelii rămase este scăzut, foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare nu va fi imprimată corect. Înlocuiţi cartuşul FINE cu nivel scăzut de cerneală.
  Consultaţi Înlocuirea unui cartuş FINE .

Trebuie să pregătiţi: o foaie de hârtie simplă de dimensiuni A4 sau Letter*

* Asiguraţi-vă că utilizaţi hârtie albă şi curată pe ambele feţe.

1. Asiguraţi-vă că alimentarea este pornită.

2. Încărcaţi o foaie de hârtie simplă de format A4 sau Letter în tava din spate.

3. Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.

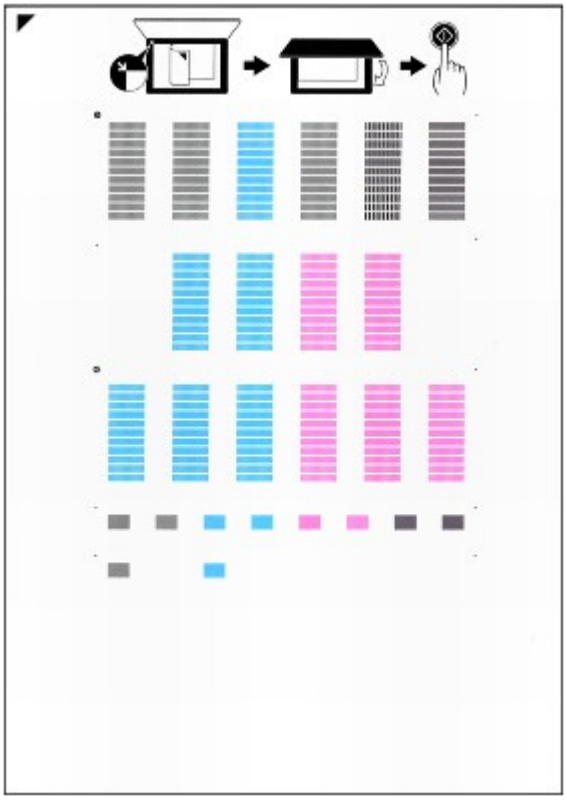
4. Imprimaţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare.

   (1) Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul (Întreţinere) până când apare **u** („u” mic).

   (2) Apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau butonul **Culoare (Color)**.
   Se va imprima foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare.

Important

- Nu atingeţi nicio parte imprimată de pe foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare.
- Aveţi grijă să nu murdăriţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare. Dacă foaia este pătată sau încreţită, este posibil să nu poată fi scanată corect.



5. Scanaţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare pentru a regla poziţia capului de imprimare.

(1) Încărcaţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

Aşezaţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare cu partea imprimată ÎN JOS şi aliniaţi marcajul ◤ de pe colţul din stânga-sus al foii cu marcajul de aliniere ⇲ .

(2) Închideţi cu grijă capacul pentru documente, asiguraţi-vă că pe LED apare **U** („U ” mare) şi apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)**.

Aparatul începe să scaneze foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare şi poziţia capului de imprimare va fi reglată automat.

La finalizarea reglării poziţiei capului de imprimare, LED-ul revine la modul standby pentru copiere. Luaţi foaia de pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

Important

- Nu deschideţi capacul pentru documente şi nu deplasaţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare până când nu este finalizată reglarea poziţiei capului de imprimare.
- Dacă nu s-a reuşit reglarea poziţiei capului de imprimare, pe LED va apărea codul de eroare. Apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** pentru a anula eroarea, apoi confirmaţi următoarele.
  - Suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare şi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare nu sunt murdare.
  - Foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare este aşezată în poziţia corectă cu faţa imprimată în jos.

  Pentru detalii, consultaţi „Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.

Notă

- Dacă rezultatele imprimării sunt tot nesatisfăcătoare după reglarea poziţiei capului de imprimare conform descrierii de mai sus, reglaţi manual poziţia capului de imprimare, de la computer. Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.
- Pentru a imprima şi verifica valorile curente de reglare a poziţiei capului de imprimare, afişaţi **L**pe LED, apoi apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)**.

În partea superioară a paginii

Înlocuirea unui cartuş FINE

Când se epuizează cerneala în timp ce imprimarea este în curs, pe LED va apărea codul de eroare „E, 1, 6”. Lampa **Alarmă (Alarm)** se va aprinde şi lampa **Cerneală (Ink)** va începe să clipească.
Verificaţi ce cartuş FINE a epuizat cerneala şi înlocuiţi-l cu unul nou.

Notă

- Pentru informaţii despre cartuşele FINE compatibile, consultaţi manualul imprimat: *Ghid de iniţiere*.

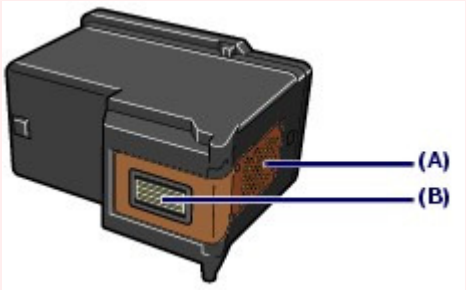
■ Procedura de înlocuire

Când cartuşele FINE se golesc, urmaţi procedura de mai jos pentru a le înlocui.

Important

Manipularea cartuşelor FINE

- Nu atingeţi contactele electrice (A) sau duzele capului de imprimare (B) de pe cartuşul FINE. Este posibil ca aparatul să nu imprime corespunzător dacă o atingeţi.



- Pentru a menţine calitatea optimă a imprimării, se recomandă folosirea cartuşelor FINE specifice produse de Canon.
  Nu se recomandă reumplerea cu cerneală.
- Dacă îndepărtaţi un cartuş FINE, înlocuiţi-l imediat. Nu lăsaţi imprimanta fără cartuşe FINE.
- Pentru înlocuire folosiţi cartuşe FINE noi. Instalarea cartuşelor FINE uzate poate duce la înfundarea duzelor.
  Mai mult, cu astfel de cartuşe, imprimanta nu va putea să vă informeze corect când trebuie înlocuite cartuşele.
- După instalarea unui cartuş FINE, nu-l scoateţi din aparat şi nu îl lăsaţi afară. Astfel, se va produce uscarea cartuşului FINE, iar aparatul nu mai poate funcţiona corespunzător când acesta este reinstalat. Pentru a păstra calitatea optimă de imprimare, utilizaţi un cartuş FINE maxim şase luni de la prima utilizare.

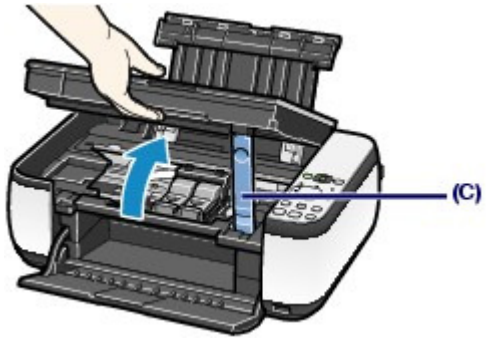
Notă

- Dacă un cartuş FINE se goleşte, puteţi imprima cu cartuşul FINE color sau negru în care a rămas cerneală, dar numai pentru o scurtă perioadă de timp. Totuşi, calitatea imprimării poate fi redusă comparativ cu imprimarea cu ambele cartuşe. Se recomandă folosirea de cartuşe FINE noi pentru a obţine calitatea optimă.
  Chiar şi când imprimaţi cu o singură cerneală, faceţi-o lăsând instalat cartuşul FINE gol. Dacă unul dintre cartuşele FINE, color sau negru, nu rămâne instalat, are loc o eroare şi aparatul nu poate imprima.
  Pentru informaţii despre configurarea acestei setări, consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.
- Cerneala color se poate consuma chiar şi când se imprimă un document alb-negru sau când este specificată imprimarea alb-negru.
  Atât cerneala color, cât şi cerneala neagră se consumă, de asemenea, la curăţarea standard şi în profunzime a capului de imprimare, care poate fi necesară pentru menţinerea funcţionării imprimantei. Atunci când cerneala s-a terminat, înlocuiţi imediat cartuşul FINE cu unul nou.

1. Asiguraţi-vă că alimentarea este pornită şi deschideţi tava de ieşire a hârtiei.

2. Ridicaţi unitatea de scanare (capacul), apoi menţineţi-o deschisă cu ajutorul suportului unităţii de scanare (C).

Suportul cartuşului FINE se mută în poziţia pentru înlocuire.



Atenţie

- Nu prindeţi de suportul cartuşului FINE pentru a-l opri sau pentru a-l mişca forţat. Nu atingeţi suportul cartuşului FINE până când acesta nu se opreşte definitiv.

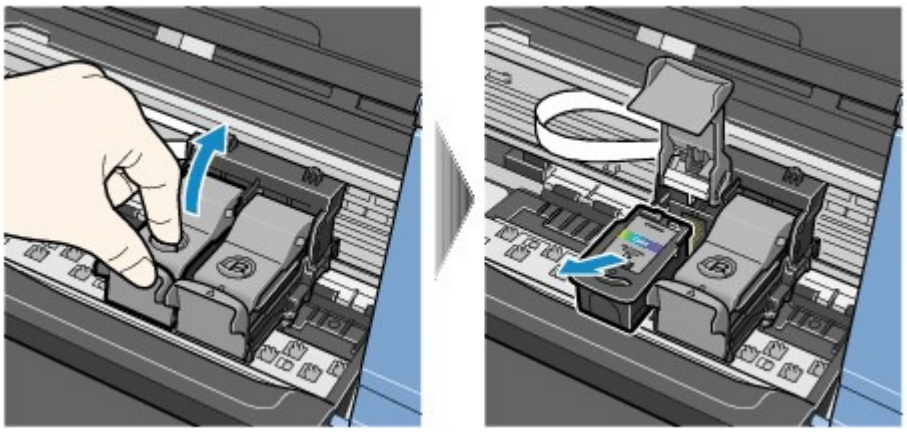
Important

- Interiorul imprimantei poate fi murdar de cerneală. Înlocuiţi cu grijă cartuşele FINE pentru a evita pătarea mâinilor şi a hainelor. Puteţi şterge cu uşurinţă cerneala din interiorul aparatului cu un şerveţel sau ceva similar.
  Pentru detalii despre curăţare, consultaţi manualul imprimat: *Ghid de iniţiere*.
- Nu aşezaţi niciun obiect pe capacul pentru documente. Vor cădea în tava din spate atunci când capacul pentru documente este deschis, cauzând funcţionarea defectuoasă a aparatului.
- Când deschideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul), ridicaţi-o cu capacul pentru documente închis.
- Nu atingeţi părţile metalice sau alte părţi din interiorul aparatului.
- Dacă unitatea de scanare (capacul) este lăsată deschisă, suportul cartuşului FINE se mută către dreapta. În acest caz, închideţi şi redeschideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul).

3. Îndepărtaţi cartuşul FINE gol.

(1) Desfaceţi legăturile şi deschideţi capacul de izolare a cartuşelor de cerneală.

(2) Scoateţi cartuşul FINE.



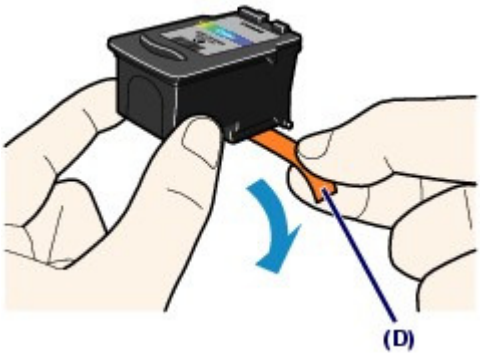
Important

- Manipulaţi cu grijă cartuşele FINE pentru a evita pătarea hainelor şi a zonelor înconjurătoare.
- Aruncaţi cartuşele FINE goale conform legilor şi normelor locale privind dezafectarea

consumabilelor.

4. Pregătiţi noul cartuş FINE.

(1) Scoateţi un nou cartuş FINE din ambalajul său şi îndepărtaţi uşor banda protectoare portocalie(D).



Important

- Dacă scuturaţi un cartuş FINE, cerneala se poate vărsa şi poate murdări mâinile şi zonele înconjurătoare. Manipulaţi cu atenţie cartuşul FINE.
- Manipulaţi cu atenţie pentru a nu vă păta mâinile şi zonele înconjurătoare cu cerneala de pe banda protectoare.
- Nu lipiţi din nou banda protectoare după ce aţi îndepărtat-o. Aruncaţi-o conform legilor şi normelor locale privind dezafectarea consumabilelor.
- Nu atingeţi contactele electrice sau duzele capului de imprimare de pe un cartuş FINE. Este posibil ca aparatul să nu imprime corespunzător dacă o atingeţi.

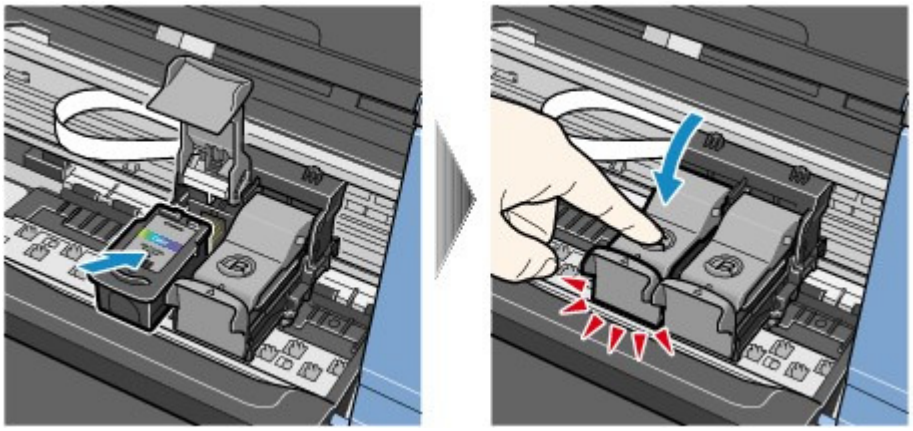
5. Instalaţi cartuşul FINE.

(1) Aşezaţi un cartuş FINE nou în suportul pentru cartuşul FINE.

Cartuşul FINE color trebuie instalat în slotul din stânga, iar cartuşul FINE negru în slotul din dreapta.

(2) Închideţi capacul de izolare a cartuşelor cu cerneală pentru a fixa cartuşul FINE.

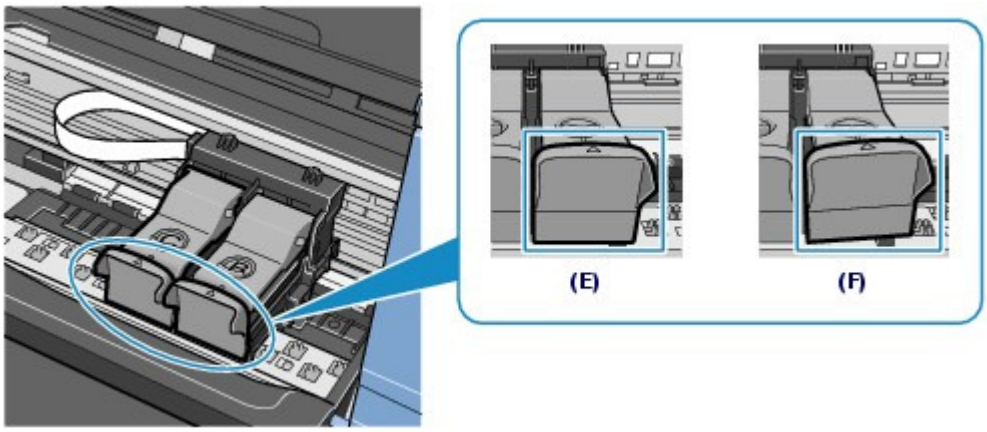
Împingeţi în jos capacul de izolare a cartuşelor de cerneală până când acesta se fixează în poziţie.



(3) Confirmaţi închiderea corectă a capacului de izolare a cartuşelor de cerneală.

Notă

- În cazul în care capacul de izolare a cartuşelor cu cerneală nu este închis corect, împingeţi -l în jos până când se fixează pe poziţie.



(E) Închis corect

(F) Nu este închis corect (capacul este înclinat)

Important

- Dacă nu sunt instalate ambele cartuşe FINE, color şi negru, aparatul nu poate imprima. Asiguraţi-vă că aţi instalat ambele cartuşe FINE.

6. Ridicaţi unitatea de scanare (capacul) pentru a aşeza suportul unităţii de scanare înapoi în poziţia iniţială şi închideţi uşor unitatea de scanare (capacul).

Atenţie

- La aşezarea suportului unităţii de scanare înapoi în poziţia iniţială, ţineţi ferm unitatea de scanare (capacul) şi aveţi grijă să nu vă prindeţi degetele.

Notă

- Dacă lampa **Alarmă (Alarm)** luminează sau clipeşte în portocaliu după ce unitatea de scanare (capacul) s-a închis, consultaţi „Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.
- Când începeţi imprimarea după înlocuirea cartuşului FINE, aparatul începe automat curăţarea capului de imprimare. Nu efectuaţi alte operaţiuni până când imprimanta nu a finalizat curăţarea capului de imprimare.
- Dacă se imprimă linii neregulate sau poziţia capului de imprimare nu este aliniată, reglaţi poziţia capului de imprimare.
  Consultaţi Alinierea capului de imprimare.

În partea superioară a paginii

■ Verificarea nivelului de cerneală

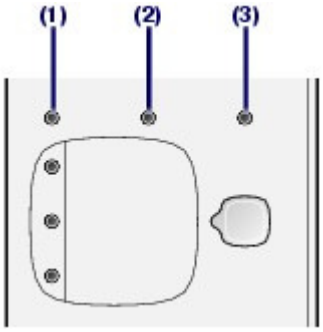
Puteţi verifica nivelul de cerneală pe ecranul computerului sau cu ajutorul lămpilor **Cerneală (Ink)** de pe panoul de operare.

Notă

- Detectorul nivelului de cerneală este montat pe aparat pentru a detecta nivelul cernelii rămase. Aparatul consideră cartuşul plin atunci când un nou cartuş FINE este instalat şi începe să detecteze nivelul de cerneală rămasă. Dacă instalaţi un cartuş FINE folosit, nivelul de cerneală indicat poate să nu fie corect. În acest caz, luaţi ca referinţă doar informaţiile legate de nivelul de cerneală.

● Cu lămpile Cerneală (Ink) de pe panoul de operare

Asiguraţi-vă că LED-ul este în mod standby pentru copiere. Puteţi confirma nivelurile cernelii cu lămpile **Cerneală (Ink)**.



(1) Lampa **Alarmă (Alarm)**
(2) Lampa **Cerneală color (Color Ink)**
(3) Lampa **Cerneală neagră (Black Ink)**

Lampa Cerneală color (Color Ink) sau Cerneală neagră (Black Ink) se aprinde

Nivelul de cerneală este scăzut. Puteţi continua să imprimaţi o vreme, dar se recomandă să aveţi la îndemână un cartuş FINE nou.

Lampa Cerneală color (Color Ink) sau Cerneală neagră (Black Ink) clipeşte, în timp ce lampa Alarmă (Alarm) este aprinsă

- Dacă pe LED apare „E, 1, 6”, cerneala s-a epuizat.

  Consultaţi „Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.
- Dacă pe LED apare „E, 1, 3”, cerneala probabil s-a terminat.

  Consultaţi „Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.

Lampa Cerneală color (Color Ink) sau Cerneală neagră (Black Ink) clipeşte, în timp ce lampa Alarmă (Alarm) este stinsă

Funcţia de detectare a nivelului de cerneală rămasă este dezactivată.

● Cu ecranul computerului

Puteţi confirma nivelul cernelii cu monitorul de stare al imprimantei (Windows) sau Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh).

Windows Macintosh

(A) Verificaţi dacă pe ecran apare vreun simbol.

Cerneala cu (Nivel scăzut cerneală) este pe cale să se epuizeze. Puteţi continua să imprimaţi o vreme, dar se recomandă să aveţi la îndemână un cartuş FINE nou.

Notă

- În timpul imprimării poate apărea un mesaj de eroare. Confirmaţi mesajul şi efectuaţi acţiunea corespunzătoare.

Urmaţi procedura de mai jos pentru a deschide fiecare dintre ecranele de confirmare.

Windows

1. Deschideţi fereastra de configurare a driverului de imprimantă din Panoul de control (Control Panel).

Consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

2. Faceţi clic pe View Printer Status din foaia Maintenance.

Pentru a confirma informaţiile despre cartuşul FINE, faceţi clic pe meniul Ink Details.

Notă

- Puteţi, de asemenea, să afişaţi monitorul de stare a imprimantei făcând clic pe Canon XXX Printer (unde „**XXX**” este numele aparatului) care apare pe bara de activităţi în timpul imprimării.

Macintosh

1. Deschideţi Canon IJ Printer Utility.

Consultaţi manualul on-screen: Ghid avansat.

2. Selectaţi Ink Level Information din meniul vertical.

Pentru a confirma informaţiile despre cartuşul FINE, faceţi clic pe Ink Details.

În partea superioară a paginii

Curăţarea aparatului

Această secţiune descrie modul de curăţare a interiorului aparatului.

➡ Curăţarea rolei de alimentare cu hârtie
➡ Curăţarea interiorului aparatului (Curăţarea plăcii de la bază)
➡ Curăţarea elementelor proeminente din interiorul aparatului

↑ În partea superioară a paginii

■ Curăţarea rolei de alimentare cu hârtie

Dacă rola de alimentare cu hârtie este murdară sau prezintă depuneri de praf, hârtia nu este introdusă corespunzător.
În acest caz, curăţaţi rola de alimentare cu hârtie. Curăţarea va uza rola de alimentare cu hârtie, aşa că efectuaţi această operaţie doar dacă este necesară.

Trebuie să pregătiţi: trei foi de hârtie simplă de dimensiune A4 sau Letter.

1. Asiguraţi-vă că alimentarea este pornită şi îndepărtaţi orice hârtie din tava din spate.

2. Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.

3. Curăţaţi rolele de alimentare a hârtiei.

(1) Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul (Întreţinere) până când apare **b**.

(2) Apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau butonul **Culoare (Color)**.
Rola de alimentare cu hârtie se va roti în timp ce este curăţată.

4. Curăţaţi cu hârtie rola de alimentare cu hârtie.

(1) Asiguraţi-vă că rola de alimentare cu hârtie nu se mai roteşte şi încărcaţi trei foi format A4 sau Letter în tava din spate.

(2) Asiguraţi-vă că pe LED apare **b** şi apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau butonul **Culoare (Color)**.
Aparatul începe curăţarea. Curăţarea va fi finalizată după ce hârtia este eliminată.

Dacă problema persistă după curăţarea rolei de alimentare cu hârtie, contactaţi centrul de service.

Notă

- După finalizarea curăţării, apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** pentru ca LED-ul să revină la modul standby pentru copiere.

■ Curăţarea interiorului aparatului (Curăţarea plăcii de la bază)

Curăţaţi petele din interiorul aparatului. Dacă imprimanta se murdăreşte în interior, se poate murdări şi hârtia imprimată, de aceea se recomandă efectuarea curăţării în mod regulat.

Important

- Nu efectuaţi alte operaţiuni în timpul efectuării operaţiunilor de curăţare a plăcii de la bază.

Trebuie să pregătiţi: o foaie de hârtie simplă de dimensiuni A4 sau Letter

1. Asiguraţi-vă că alimentarea este pornită şi îndepărtaţi orice hârtie din tava din spate.

2. Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.

3. Îndoiţi o singură foaie de hârtie simplă format A4 sau Letter pe jumătate pe lăţime, apoi desfaceţi foaia de hârtie.

4. Încărcaţi doar această foaie de hârtie în tava din spate cu latura deschisă orientată spre dumneavoastră.

5. Curăţaţi aparatul în interior.

   (1) Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul (Întreţinere) până când apare **J**.

   (2) Apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau butonul **Culoare (Color)**.
   Hârtia curăţă imprimanta în interior pe măsură ce avansează.

Verificaţi partea îndoită a hârtiei eliminate. Efectuaţi din nou curăţarea plăcii de la bază dacă hârtia este murdărită cu cerneală.

Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după efectuarea curăţării de două ori a plăcii de la bază, elementele proeminente din interiorul imprimantei pot fi pătate.

Pentru a le curăţa, consultaţi Curăţarea elementelor proeminente din interiorul aparatului.

Notă

- Când efectuaţi din nou curăţarea plăcii de la bază, asiguraţi-vă că folosiţi o altă foaie de hârtie.

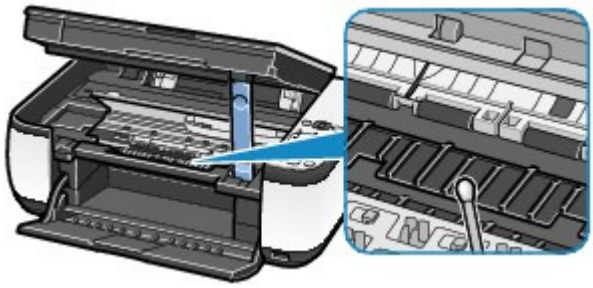
În partea superioară a paginii

■ Curăţarea elementelor proeminente din interiorul aparatului

Atenţie

- Asiguraţi-vă că aţi oprit aparatul şi că aţi întrerupt alimentarea înainte de a curăţa aparatul.

Dacă elementele proeminente din interiorul aparatului sunt pătate, ştergeţi cerneala de pe elementele proeminente folosind un tampon de bumbac sau ceva asemănător.



În partea superioară a paginii

Anexă

Limitări legale privind utilizarea produsului şi utilizarea imaginilor

Sfaturi pentru utilizarea aparatului dumneavoastră

În partea superioară a paginii

Limitări legale privind utilizarea produsului dumneavoastră şi utilizarea imaginilor

Copierea, scanarea, imprimarea sau folosirea reproducerilor după următoarele documente pot fi ilegale.
Lista furnizată nu este exhaustivă. În cazul în care aveţi îndoieli, consultaţi un reprezentant legal din jurisdicţia dumneavoastră.

- Bancnote
- Ordin de plată
- Certificate de depozit
- Timbre poştale (revocate sau nerevocate)
- Embleme sau insigne de identificare
- Documente de recrutare sau de serviciu militar
- Verificări sau documente de lucru emise de agenţiile guvernamentale
- Numere pentru vehicule cu motor sau certificate de proprietate
- Cecuri de călătorie
- Bonuri de masă
- Paşapoarte
- Documente de imigrare
- Timbre fiscale (revocate sau nerevocate)
- Obligaţiuni sau alte certificate de îndatorare
- Certificate de acţiuni
- Lucrările protejate de copyright/lucrările de artă, fără permisiunea deţinătorului de copyright

În partea superioară a paginii

Sfaturi pentru utilizarea aparatului dumneavoastră

Această secţiune vă prezintă sfaturi pentru folosirea aparatului dumneavoastră şi pentru imprimarea la o calitate optimă.

■ Cerneala este folosită în scopuri diverse.

● Cum se foloseşte cerneala şi la altceva în afară de imprimare?

Cerneala se poate folosi şi la altceva pe lângă imprimare. Cerneala nu se foloseşte doar la imprimare, ea poate fi folosită şi la curăţarea capului de imprimare pentru menţinerea unei calităţi optime de imprimare.
Aparatul are funcţia de curăţare automată a duzelor prin care este aruncată cerneala pentru a preveni înfundarea lor. În timpul procesului de curăţare, cerneala este pompată afară din duze. Cerneala utilizată pentru curăţare este limitată la o cantitate mică.

● Imprimarea alb-negru foloseşte cerneală colorată?

Imprimarea alb-negru poate utiliza cerneală color în funcţie de tipul hârtiei de imprimare sau de setările driverului de imprimantă. Prin urmare, cerneala colorată se consumă chiar la imprimarea alb-negru.

■ Imprimarea pe hârtie specială: Cum se imprimă la calitatea optimă!?

● Sfat!: Verificaţi starea aparatului înaintea imprimării!

• Este în regulă capul de imprimare?

Dacă duzele capului de imprimare sunt înfundate, rezultatele de imprimare vor fi neclare şi veţi irosi hârtia. Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei pentru a verifica capul de imprimare.
Consultaţi Când imprimarea devine ştearsă sau culorile sunt incorecte .

• Interiorul imprimantei este pătat cu cerneală?

După imprimarea unor cantităţi mari de hârtie sau imprimarea fără chenar, zona pe unde trec hârtiile se poate păta cu cerneală. Curăţaţi interiorul imprimantei prin Curăţarea tăvii imprimantei.
Consultaţi Curăţarea interiorului aparatului (Curăţarea plăcii de la bază) .

● Sfat!: Verificaţi dacă hârtia se încarcă corect!

• Aţi încărcat hârtia în poziţia corectă?

Încărcaţi hârtia în tava din spate cu faţa de imprimare orientată spre dumneavoastră.

- **Hârtia este ondulată?**

  Hârtia ondulată provoacă blocarea acesteia. Îndreptaţi hârtia ondulată, apoi reîncărcaţi-o.
  Consultaţi „Depanare” în manualul on-screen: *Ghid avansat*.

Sfat!: După încărcarea hârtiei, asiguraţi-vă că aţi specificaţi setările hârtiei!

După încărcarea hârtiei, asiguraţi-vă că aţi selectat hârtia încărcată utilizând opţiunea Media Type de la driverul de imprimantă sau butonul **Hârtie (Paper)** de la panoul de operare. Dacă tipul de hârtie nu este selectat, există posibilitatea să nu obţineţi rezultate satisfăcătoare la imprimare.
Consultaţi Copierea, Imprimarea de pe computerul dumneavoastră şi Tipuri de suport pe care le puteţi utiliza .
Există diferite tipuri de hârtie: hârtie cu strat special pe suprafaţa sa pentru imprimarea fină a fotografiilor şi hârtie potrivită pentru documente. Pentru Opţiunea Media Type din driverul de imprimantă are diferite setări prestabilite pentru fiecare tip de hârtie (cum ar fi utilizarea cernelii, eliminarea cernelii sau distanţa faţă de duze), astfel încât puteţi imprima pe fiecare hârtie la calitatea optimă a imaginii. Butonul **Hârtie (Paper)** de la panoul de operare, care este utilizat pentru efectuarea de copii, are şi unele setări similare cu cele de la opţiunea Media Type a driverului de imprimantă. Puteţi imprima cu diverse setări din Media Type de la driverul de imprimantă sau cu butonul **Hârtie (Paper)** de la panoul de operare, în mod adecvat fiecărui tip de hârtie încărcată.

Utilizaţi butonul Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset) pentru a revoca imprimarea!

Sfat!: Nu apăsaţi niciodată butonul ACTIVARE (ON)!

Dacă apăsaţi butonul **ACTIVARE (ON)** în timp ce imprimarea este în curs de desfăşurare, trimiterea datelor de imprimare de la un computer pune în aşteptare aparatul şi este posibil să nu mai puteţi imprima.
Apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** pentru a revoca imprimarea.

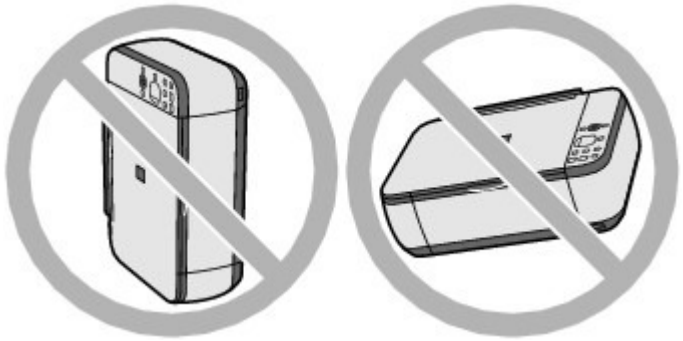
Notă

- Dacă nu puteţi revoca imprimarea apăsând butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** în timpul imprimării de la un computer, deschideţi fereastra de configurare a driverului imprimantei pentru a şterge din programul de monitorizare a stării imprimantei (Windows) lucrările de imprimare care nu sunt necesare.

Aparatul trebuie manipulat cu grijă la utilizare sau la transport?

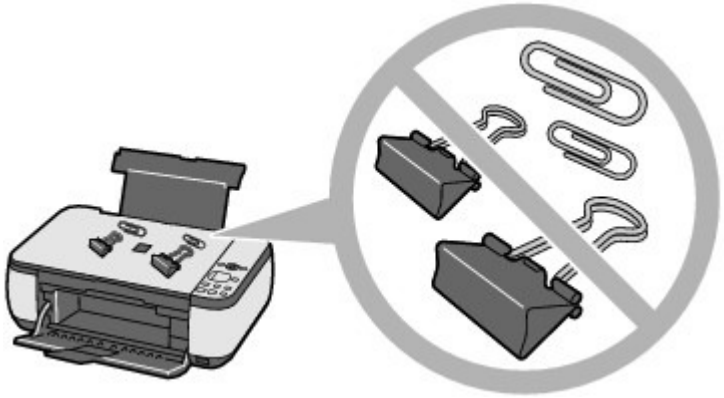
Sfat!: Nu utilizaţi sau nu transportaţi aparatul în poziţie verticală sau înclinată!

Dacă aparatul este utilizat sau transportat în poziţie verticală sau înclinată, acesta se poate deteriora sau cerneala poate curge din aparat.
Asiguraţi-vă că nu utilizaţi sau nu transportaţi aparatul în poziţie verticală sau înclinată.



- Sfat!: Nu aşezaţi niciun obiect pe capacul pentru documente!

  Nu aşezaţi niciun obiect pe capacul pentru documente. Vor cădea în tava din spate atunci când capacul pentru documente este deschis, cauzând funcţionarea defectuoasă a aparatului.
  De asemenea, aşezaţi aparatul unde obiectele nu vor cădea pe acesta.



- Sfat!: Alegeţi cu grijă suprafaţa pe care veţi aşeza aparatul!

  Aşezaţi aparatul la o distanţă de cel puţin 5,91 inchi / 15 cm de alte echipamente electrice de tipul becurilor fluorescente. Dacă aparatul este aşezat în apropierea acestora, este posibil să nu funcţioneze corespunzător datorită perturbaţiilor de la iluminatul fluorescent.

■ Cum se menţine calitatea optimă de imprimare?

Cheia pentru o imprimare la calitatea optimă este să preveniţi uscarea sau înfundarea capului de imprimare. Respectaţi întotdeauna paşii următori pentru a imprima la calitatea optimă.

- **La deconectarea fişei de alimentare, urmaţi procedura de mai jos.**

  1. Apăsaţi butonul **ACTIVARE (ON)** de pe aparat pentru a-l opri.

  2. Asiguraţi-vă că lampa **Alimentare (Power)** este stinsă.

  3. Deconectaţi fişa de alimentare de la priza de perete sau închideţi conectorul cablului de prelungire.

  Dacă apăsaţi butonul **ACTIVARE (ON)** pentru a opri alimentarea, aparatul acoperă automat capul de imprimare (duzele) pentru a preveni uscarea acestuia. Dacă scoateţi din priză fişa de alimentare sau închideţi conectorul cablului de prelungire înainte ca lampa **Alimentare (Power)** să se stingă, capul de imprimare nu va fi acoperit corespunzător, ceea ce va cauza uscarea sau înfundarea acestuia.

  La deconectarea cablului de alimentare, trebuie să urmaţi această procedură.

- **Imprimaţi periodic!**

  Aşa cum vârful unei carioci se usucă şi nu mai poate fi folosit, dacă nu a fost utilizat pe o perioadă îndelungată, chiar dacă a avut capac, şi capul de imprimare se poate usca şi înfunda dacă aparatul nu a mai fost folosit de multă vreme.
  Recomandăm folosirea aparatului cel puţin o dată pe lună.

Notă

- În funcţie de tipul de hârtie, cerneala poate fi neclară dacă marcaţi aria de imprimare cu un marker sau o cariocă sau se poate scurge, dacă apa sau umezeala vine în contact cu aria de imprimare pe părţile imprimate.

■ Culorile sunt neuniforme, rezultatele imprimării sunt neclare.

- Sfat!: Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei pentru a verifica

dacă duzele sunt înfundate.

Dacă duzele capului de imprimare sunt înfundate, culorile pot deveni neuniforme sau rezultatele imprimării pot fi neclare.

În acest caz

Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei

Verificaţi modelul de verificare imprimat pentru a verifica dacă duzele sunt înfundate.

Consultaţi Când imprimarea devine ştearsă sau culorile sunt incorecte .

În partea superioară a paginii

Canon

MC-3817-V1.00

Ghid de bază

Imprimare
Scanare
Copierea
Depanare
Cum se utilizează acest manual
Imprimarea acestui manual
Întreţinere
Modificarea setărilor aparatului
Anexă

Când se afişează acest On-screen Manual în altă limbă decât engleza, este posibil să apară anumite descrieri în limba engleză.

Imprimare

Imprimare de pe un computer

Imprimarea cu pachetul software al aplicaţiei
Ce este Easy-PhotoPrint EX?
Imprimarea fotografiilor
Pornirea aplicaţiei Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selectarea unei fotografii
Selectarea hârtiei
Imprimare
Crearea unui album
Pornirea aplicaţiei Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selectarea hârtiei şi a aspectului
Selectarea unei fotografii
Editare
Imprimare
Imprimarea calendarelor
Pornirea aplicaţiei Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selectarea hârtiei şi a aspectului
Selectarea unei fotografii
Editare
Imprimare
Imprimarea autocolantelor
Pornirea aplicaţiei Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selectarea hârtiei şi a aspectului
Selectarea unei fotografii
Editare
Imprimare
Aspectul imprimării
Pornirea aplicaţiei Easy-PhotoPrint EX
Selectarea hârtiei şi a aspectului
Selectarea unei fotografii
Editare
Imprimare
Corectarea şi îmbunătăţirea fotografiilor
Utilizarea funcţiei de corectare automată a fotografiei
Utilizarea funcţiei de corectare a ochilor roşii
Utilizarea funcţiei de luminare a feţei

Utilizarea funcţiei de definire a conturului feţei
Utilizarea funcţiei de finisare digitală a imperfecţiunilor feţei
Utilizarea funcţiei de îndepărtare a petelor
Ajustarea imaginilor
Fereastra Corectare/Îmbunătăţire imagini
Întrebări şi răspunsuri
Cum pot muta (sau copia) fişierul salvat?
Din care parte a imaginii afişate începe imprimarea?
Cum imprim cu margini egale?
Ce este „C1” sau „C4”?
Setări pentru imprimarea fotografiilor
Imprimarea fotografiilor în culori vii
Reducerea perturbaţiilor din fotografii
Trunchierea fotografiilor (Imprimare fotografie)
Imprimarea datelor pe fotografii (Imprimare fotografie)
Imprimarea mai multor fotografii pe o singură pagină
Imprimarea unui index
Imprimarea fotografiilor ID (Imprimare fotografie ID)
Imprimarea informaţiilor fotografiei
Salvarea fotografiilor
Deschiderea fişierelor salvate
Alte setări
Schimbarea aspectului
Schimbarea fundalului
Adăugarea fotografiilor
Schimbarea poziţiilor fotografiilor
Înlocuirea fotografiilor
Schimbarea poziţiei, unghiului şi dimensiunii fotografiilor
Trunchierea fotografiilor
Încadrarea fotografiilor
Imprimarea datelor pe fotografii
Ataşarea comentariilor la fotografii
Adăugarea textului la fotografii
Salvare
Setarea sărbătorilor
Setarea afişării calendarului
Deschiderea fişierelor salvate
Imprimare cu alt software de aplicaţie
Diferite metode de imprimare
Imprimarea cu Configurare uşoară
Setarea dimensiunii şi orientării paginii
Setarea numărului de copii şi a ordinii de imprimare
Setarea marginii pentru capsare
Imprimarea fără chenar

Imprimarea cu încadrare în pagină
Imprimarea cu scalare
Imprimarea aspectului paginii
Imprimarea posterelor
Imprimarea broşurilor
Imprimarea faţă-verso
Imprimarea marcajelor/fundalului
Înregistrarea unei ştampile
Înregistrarea datelor de imagine pentru utilizarea ca fundal
Imprimarea unui plic
Afişarea rezultatelor imprimării înainte de imprimare
Setarea dimensiunilor hârtiei (dimensiune particularizată)
Modificarea calităţii imprimării şi corectarea datelor de imagine
Selectarea unei combinaţii între nivelul de calitate a imprimării şi metoda semitonurilor
Imprimarea monocromă a unui document color
Specificarea corectării culorii
Imprimarea optimă ca fotografie a datelor de imagine
Ajustarea culorilor folosind driverul de imprimantă
Imprimarea cu Profiluri ICC
Ajustarea echilibrului de culori
Ajustarea luminozităţii
Ajustarea intensităţii
Ajustarea contrastului
Simularea unei ilustraţii
Reprezentarea datelor de imagine cu o singură culoare
Prezentarea datelor de imagine în culori vii
Îndreptarea contururilor în zigzag
Modificarea proprietăţilor culorilor pentru îmbunătăţirea colorării
Reducerea perturbaţiilor din fotografii
Privire de ansamblu asupra driverului de imprimantă
Operaţiile driverului de imprimantă
Driverul de imprimantă Canon IJ
Deschiderea ferestrei de configurare a driverului de imprimantă
Fila Întreţinere
Monitorul de stare Canon IJ
Examinarea Canon IJ

Imprimarea fotografiilor direct de pe un dispozitiv compatibil (numai pentru MP270 series)

Imprimarea fotografiilor direct de pe un dispozitiv compatibil (numai pentru MP270 series)
Imprimarea fotografiilor direct de pe un dispozitiv

compatibil (numai pentru MP270 series)
Despre setările de imprimare PictBridge (numai pentru MP270 series)
Setări pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge

Scanare

Scanarea

Scanarea imaginilor
Scanarea imaginilor
Înaintea scanării
Aşezarea documentelor
Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer cu ajutorul panoului de operare al aparatului
Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer cu ajutorul panoului de operare al aparatului
Anexă: Diferite setări de scanare
Selectarea unui răspuns la comenzile de la panoul de operare, utilizând MP Navigator EX
Scanarea cu pachetul software al aplicaţiei
Ce este MP Navigator EX (Software de scanare furnizat)?
Să încercăm să scanăm
Pornirea aplicaţiei MP Navigator EX
Scanarea fotografiilor şi a documentelor
Scanarea mai multor documente deodată
Scanarea imaginilor mai mari decât geamul plat (Asistare îmbinare)
Scanarea simplă printr-un clic
Funcţii utile din MP Navigator EX
Corectarea/îmbunătăţirea automată a imaginilor
Corectarea/Îmbunătăţirea manuală a imaginilor
Ajustarea imaginilor
Căutarea imaginilor
Clasificarea imaginilor pe categorii
Utilizarea imaginilor în MP Navigator EX
Salvare
Salvarea ca fişiere PDF
Crearea/Editarea fişierelor PDF
Imprimarea documentelor
Imprimarea fotografiilor
Trimitere prin e-mail
Editarea fişierelor
Setarea parolelor pentru fişiere PDF
Deschiderea/editarea fişierelor PDF protejate cu parolă
Ecranele aplicaţiei MP Navigator EX
Ecranul mod navigare
Fila Scanare/Import documente sau imagini
Fila Vizualizare şi utilizare imagini din computer

Fila Scanare personalizată cu un clic
Ecranul Fotografii/Documente (Geam plat) (Fereastra Scanare/Import)
Caseta de dialog Setări scanare (Fotografii/ Documente)
Caseta de dialog Salvare
Caseta de dialog Salvare ca fişier PDF
Caseta de dialog Setări PDF
Fereastra Vizualizare şi utilizare
Fereastra Creare/Editare fişiere PDF
Caseta de dialog Imprimare document
Caseta de dialog Imprimare fotografie
Caseta de dialog Trimitere prin e-mail
Fereastra Corectare/Îmbunătăţire imagini
Ecranul Mod Un clic
Caseta de dialog Scanare automată
Caseta de dialog Salvare (Ecranul Mod Un clic)
Caseta de dialog Setări scanare
Caseta de dialog Salvare
Caseta de dialog Setări Exif
Caseta de dialog PDF
Caseta de dialog Salvare ca fişier PDF
Caseta de dialog E-mail
Caseta de dialog OCR
Caseta de dialog Particularizat
Caseta de dialog Preferinţe
Fila General
Fila Setări buton scaner (Salvare)
Anexă: Deschiderea fişierelor diferite de imaginile scanate
Deschiderea imaginilor salvate pe un computer
Scanarea cu alt software de aplicaţie
Ce este ScanGear (driver de scaner)?
Scanarea cu Setări avansate, utilizând ScanGear (driver de scaner)
Pornirea aplicaţiei ScanGear (driver de scaner)
Scanarea în Modul de bază
Scanarea în Modul avansat
Scanarea în Modul scanare automată
Scanarea mai multor documente simultan cu ScanGear (driver de scaner)
Corectarea imaginilor şi ajustarea culorilor cu ScanGear (driver de scaner)
Corectarea imaginilor (Mască de uniformizare, Reducere praf şi zgârieturi, Corectare estompare etc.)
Ajustarea culorilor utilizând un model de culoare
Ajustarea saturaţiei şi echilibrului culorilor
Ajustarea luminozităţii şi a contrastului

Ajustarea histogramei
Ajustarea curbei de tonuri
Setarea pragului
Ecrane ScanGear (driver de scaner)
Fila Mod de bază
Fila Mod avansat
Setări de intrare
Setări de ieşire
Setări de imagine
Butoane de ajustare a culorilor
Fila Mod scanare automată
Caseta de dialog Preferinţe
Fila Scaner
Fila Examinare
Fila Scanare
Fila Setări culoare
Anexă: Informaţii utile referitoare la scanare
Ajustarea cadrelor de trunchiere
Rezoluţie
Formate de fişier
Potrivire culoare
Alte metode de scanare
Scanarea cu driverul WIA
Scanarea prin utilizarea panoului de control (numai pentru Windows XP)

Copierea

Imprimarea cu ajutorul panoului de operare al aparatului

Copierea
Realizarea de copii
Micşorarea sau mărirea unei copii
Utilizarea funcţiilor utile de copiere
Schimbarea dimensiunii paginii între A4 şi Letter
Copierea fără chenar (Borderless Copy)

Depanare

Depanare

Dacă apare o eroare
Aparatul nu poate fi pornit
Pe LED apare un cod de eroare
Lampa de alarmă este aprinsă în portocaliu
Lampa Power (Alimentare) clipeşte în verde şi lampa Alarm (Alarmă) clipeşte în portocaliu, alternativ
LED-ul nu se poate vedea deloc
Nu se poate face instalarea pentru MP Drivers
Conectarea la computer nu se realizează corespunzător

Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare
- Nu se efectuează imprimarea completă
- Rezultate imprimare inexistente/Imprimarea este neclară/Culorile sunt greşite/Linii albe
- Culorile nu sunt clare
- Liniile sunt aliniate greşit
- Hârtia imprimată se ondulează sau prezintă pete de cerneală
- Hârtia este pătată/Suprafaţa imprimată este zgâriată
- Hârtia este pătată pe verso
- Linii verticale sunt imprimate pe marginile paginii imprimate
- Culorile sunt neuniforme sau prezintă dungi

Imprimarea nu începe

Copierea/Imprimarea se opreşte înainte de a fi finalizată

Aparatul funcţionează, dar nu este eliminată cerneală

Viteza de imprimare este mai mică decât cea aşteptată

Suportul de cartuş FINE nu se mută în poziţia pentru înlocuire

Alimentarea cu hârtie nu se realizează corect

Blocaje de hârtie
- Hârtia este blocată în fanta de ieşire a hârtiei sau în tava din spate
- În alte cazuri

Un mesaj apare pe ecranul computerului
- Se afişează „Număr de eroare: B200 A intervenit o eroare de imprimantă. Opriţi imprimanta şi deconectaţi cablul de alimentare al imprimantei de la sursa de curent. Apoi contactaţi centrul de service.”
- Se afişează „Număr de eroare: **** A intervenit o eroare de imprimantă. Închideţi imprimanta şi încercaţi din nou. Dacă problema nu este rezolvată, consultaţi ghidul utilizatorului pentru mai multe informaţii.”
- Eroare de scriere/Eroare de ieşire/Eroare de comunicare
- Numărul de eroare: 300 este afişat
- Numărul de eroare: 1700 este afişat
- Numărul de informaţii cu privire la cerneală: 1688 este afişat
- Număr de informaţii referitoare la cerneală: 1686 este afişat
- Numărul de eroare: 2001 este afişat (numai pentru MP270 series)
- Numărul de eroare: 2002 este afişat (numai pentru MP270 series)
- Alte mesaje de eroare
- Este afişat ecranul The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program
- Apare pictograma The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program

Pentru utilizatorii Windows
- Monitorul de stare a imprimantei nu este afişat

Apare un mesaj de eroare pe un dispozitiv compatibil

PictBridge (numai pentru MP270 series)
Probleme cu scanarea
Scanerul nu funcţionează
ScanGear (driver de scaner) nu porneşte
Apare un mesaj de eroare şi ecranul ScanGear (driver de scaner) nu apare
Calitatea scanării (imaginea afişată pe monitor) este slabă
Imaginea scanată este înconjurată de zone albe suplimentare
Nu se pot scana mai multe documente deodată
Nu se poate scana corespunzător în Modul scanare automată
Viteză redusă de scanare
Se afişează mesajul „There is not enough memory.”
Computerul se opreşte din funcţionare în timpul scanării
Scanerul nu mai funcţionează după ce s-a făcut upgrade de Windows
Probleme de software
Programul software pentru e-mail pe care doriţi să îl utilizaţi nu apare pe ecranul pentru selectarea unui program software pentru e-mail
Imaginea scanată este imprimată mărită (micşorată)
Imaginea scanată este mărită (micşorată) pe monitorul computerului
Imaginea scanată nu se deschide
Probleme cu MP Navigator EX
Nu se poate scana la dimensiunea corectă
Poziţia sau dimensiunea imaginii nu poate fi detectată corect atunci când se scanează utilizând panoul de operare
Documentul este plasat corect, dar imaginea scanată este înclinată
Documentul este plasat corect, dar orientarea se modifică în imaginea scanată
Dacă nu puteţi rezolva problema
Întrebări frecvente
Instrucţiuni de utilizare (driver de imprimantă)
Note generale (driver de scaner)

Utilizarea aplicaţiei Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Utilizarea aplicaţiei MP Navigator EX

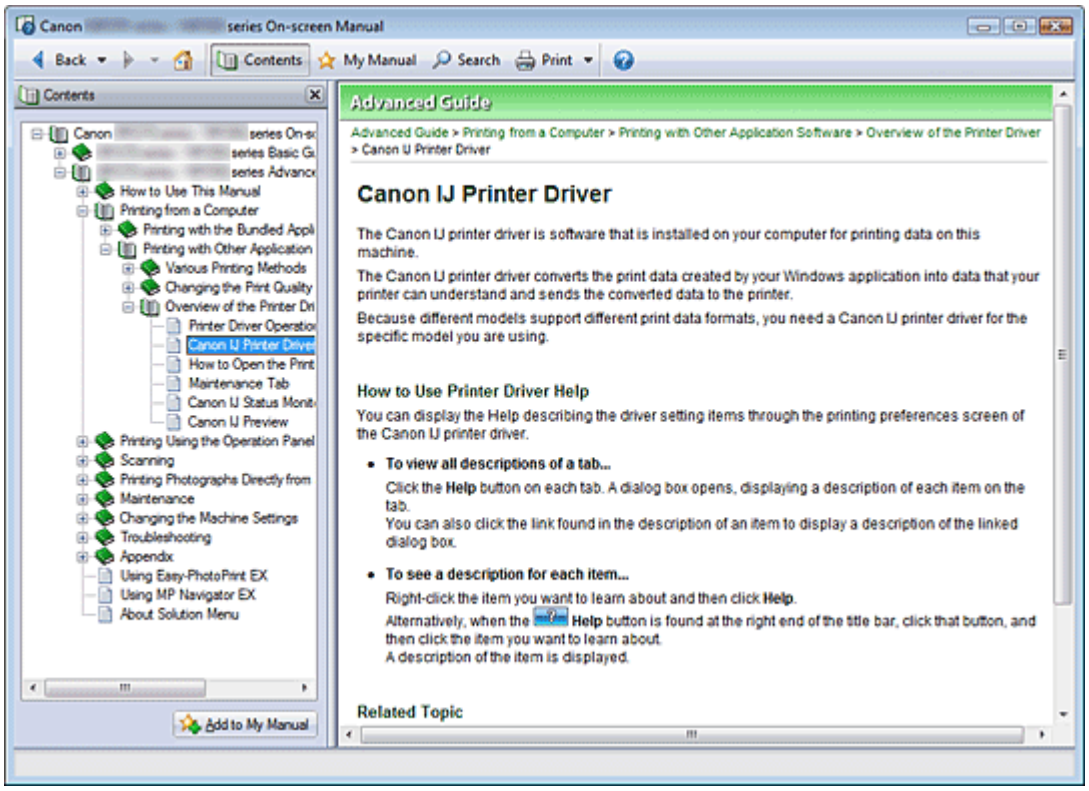
Despre Solution Menu

Cum se utilizează acest manual

- Utilizarea panoului Cuprins (Contents)
- Utilizarea ferestrei Explanation
- Imprimarea acestui manual
- Utilizarea cuvintelor cheie pentru a găsi un document
- Înregistrarea documentelor în Manualul meu (My Manual)
- Simboluri utilizate în acest document
- Mărci comerciale

În partea superioară a paginii

Utilizarea panoului Cuprins (Contents)



Când faceţi clic pe un titlul unui document afişat în panoul de cuprins din partea stângă a On-screen Manual, documentele acelui titlu sunt afişate în fereastra de explicaţii din partea dreaptă.

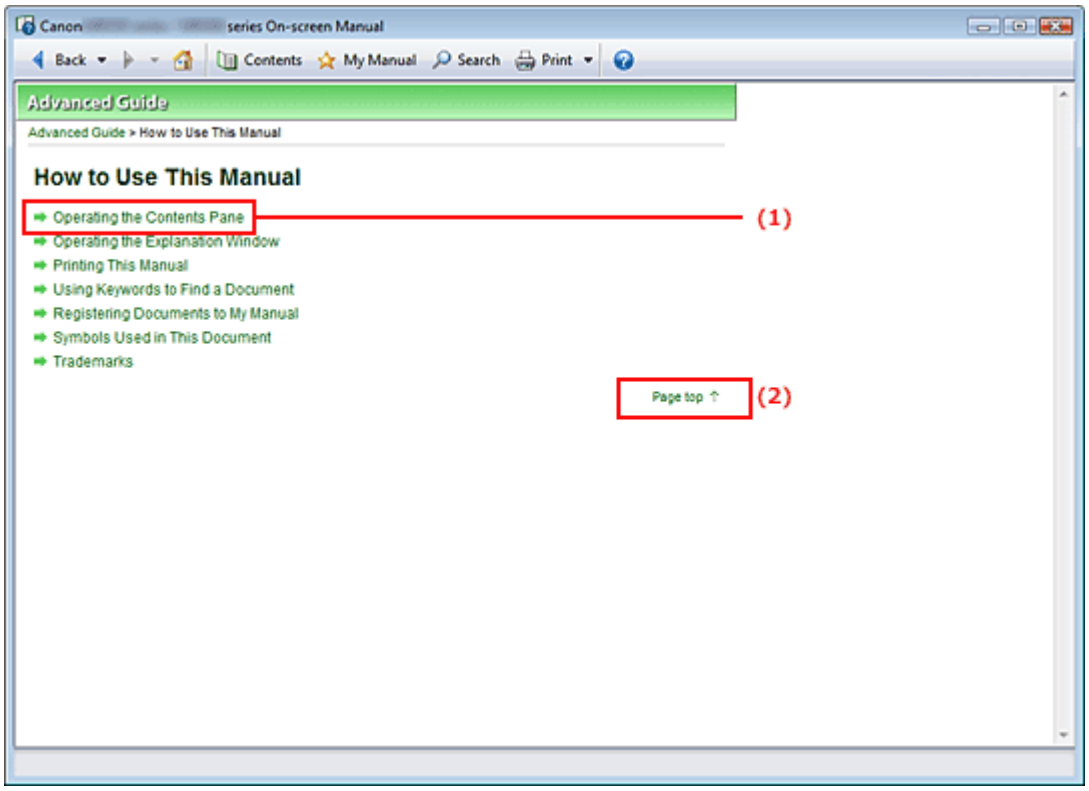
Când faceţi clic pe ⊞ situat în partea stângă faţă de , sunt afişate titlurile documentelor găsite în ierarhiile inferioare.

Notă

- Faceţi clic pe Contents pentru a închide sau pentru a afişa panoul de cuprins.

În partea superioară a paginii

Utilizarea ferestrei Explanation



(1) Faceţi clic pe caracterele verzi pentru a sări la documentul corespunzător.

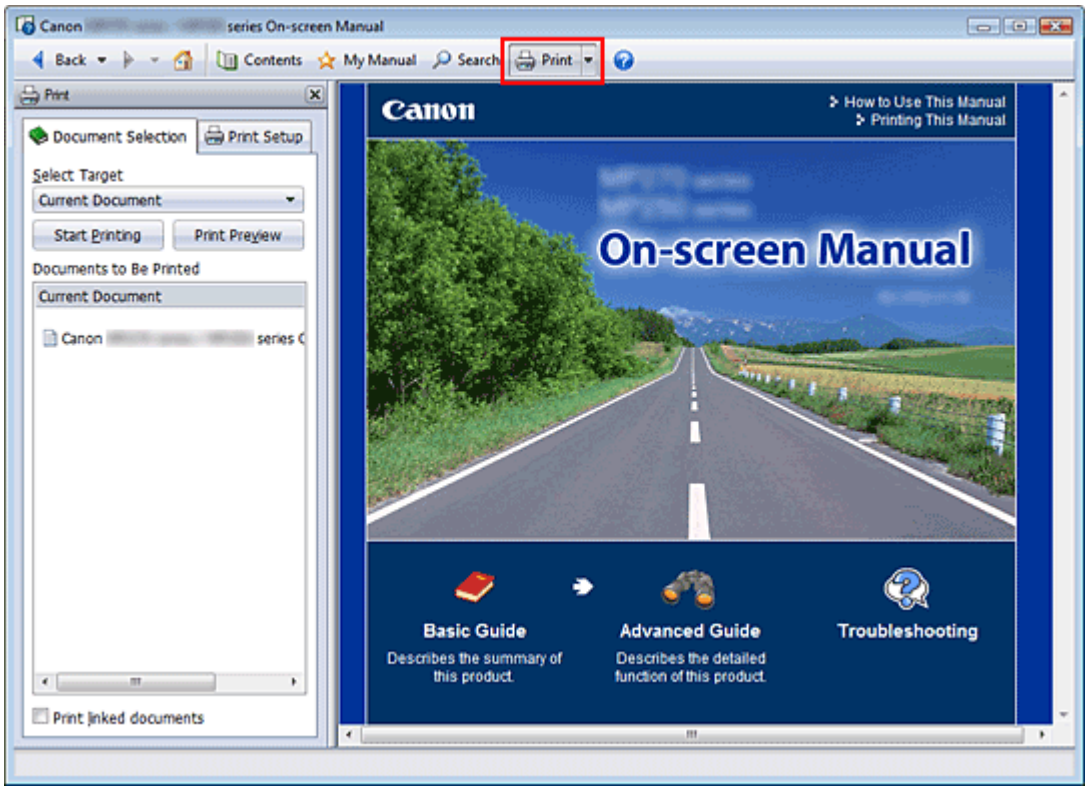
(2) Cursorul sare în partea superioară a acestui document.

Notă

- În acest ghid, diagramele şi ecranele computerului se referă la MP270 series.
  Operaţiile sunt exact aceleaşi ca şi cele pentru MP250 series, dacă nu există alte specificaţii.
- Este posibil ca în anumite ţări/regiuni să nu puteţi achiziţiona unele modele.

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimarea acestui manual



Faceţi clic pe Print pentru a afişa panoul de imprimare în stânga faţă de On-screen Manual.

Notă

- Faceţi clic pe Print pentru a închide sau pentru a afişa panoul de imprimare.
- Când faceţi clic pe , apoi faceţi clic pe Iniţializare pagină (Page Setup), apare caseta de dialog Iniţializare pagină (Page Setup). Apoi puteţi configura cu uşurinţă hârtia de utilizat pentru imprimare.
- Faceţi clic pe , apoi faceţi clic pe Setări imprimare (Print Settings) pentru a afişa caseta de dialog Imprimare (Print). Când este selectată caseta de dialog, selectaţi imprimanta de utilizat pentru imprimare. De asemenea, fila Iniţ. imprimare (Print Setup) vă permite să selectaţi imprimanta de utilizat.
  După selectarea imprimantei de utilizat, faceţi clic pe Proprietăţi... (Properties...) pentru a specifica setările de imprimare.
- Faceţi clic pe , apoi faceţi clic pe Setări opţiune (Option Settings) pentru a afişa caseta de dialog Setări opţiune (Option Settings). Apoi puteţi configura operaţiunea de imprimare.
  - Imprimare titlu document şi număr pagină (Print document title and page number)
    Când această casetă de selectare este bifată, numele manualului şi numărul paginii este imprimat în antet (partea superioară a documentului).
  - Imprimare culoare de fundal şi imagini (Print background color and images)
    Când această casetă de selectare este bifată, sunt imprimate culoarea de fundal şi imaginile. Unele imagini sunt imprimate indiferent dacă această casetă de selectare este bifată sau nu.
  - Verificare număr de pagini de imprimat înainte de imprimare (Check number of pages to be printed before printing)
    Când această casetă de selectare este bifată, înainte de începerea imprimării este afişată caseta de dialog Confirmare contor pagini de imprimat (Print Page Count Confirmation). Această casetă de dialog vă permite să verificaţi câte pagini vor fi imprimate.

În fila Selectare doc. (Document Selection), selectaţi metoda de imprimare a documentului. Sunt disponibile următoarele patru metode de imprimare:

- Imprimarea documentului curent

- Imprimarea documentelor selectate
- Imprimarea pentru Manualul meu (My Manual)
- Imprimarea tuturor documentelor

Notă

- Puteţi să selectaţi tipul de imprimat, apoi să specificaţi cu uşurinţă setările de imprimare în fila Iniţ. imprimare (Print Setup).

Imprimarea documentului curent

Puteţi imprima documentul afişat.

1. Din Selectare ţintă (Select Target), selectaţi Doc. curent (Current Document)

   Titlul documentului afişat este afişat în lista Documente de imprimat (Documents to Be Printed).

   Notă

   - Prin selectarea Imprimare documente legate (Print linked documents), puteţi imprima şi documente care sunt legate de documentul curent. Documentele legate sunt adăugate la lista Documente de imprimat (Documents to Be Printed).
   - Faceţi clic pe Exam. înaintea imp (Print Preview) pentru a afişa şi verifica modul în care vor arăta rezultatele imprimării înainte de a imprima documentul.

2. Faceţi clic pe fila Iniţ. imprimare (Print Setup)

   În fila Iniţializare pagină (Page Setup), selectaţi imprimanta de utilizat şi specificaţi setări simple de imprimare, după cum este necesar.

3. Faceţi clic pe Pornire imprimare (Start Printing)

   Este afişat un mesaj care confirmă numărul de pagini de imprimat.

4. Executaţi imprimarea

   Confirmaţi numărul de pagini care vor fi imprimate, apoi faceţi clic pe Da (Yes).

   Sunt imprimate documentele afişate.

Imprimarea documentelor selectate

Puteţi selecta şi imprima documentele pe care le doriţi imprimate.

1. Din Selectare ţintă (Select Target), selectaţi Doc. selectate (Selected Documents)

   Titlurile tuturor documentelor sunt afişate în lista Documente de imprimat (Documents to Be Printed).

2. Selectaţi documentele de imprimat

   Din lista Documente de imprimat (Documents to Be Printed), selectaţi casetele de selectare ale titlurilor documentelor de imprimat.

   Notă

   - Când selectaţi caseta Selectare automată documente în ierarhii inferioare (Automatically select documents in lower hierarchies), casetele de selectare ale tuturor documentelor găsite în ierarhiile inferioare sunt selectate.
   - Faceţi clic pe Selectare toate (Select All) pentru a selecta casetele de selectare ale tuturor documentelor.
     Faceţi clic pe Golire totală (Clear All) pentru a şterge casetele de selectare ale tuturor documentelor.
   - Faceţi clic pe Exam. înaintea imp (Print Preview) pentru a afişa şi verifica modul în care vor arăta rezultatele imprimării înainte de a imprima documentul.

3. Faceţi clic pe fila Iniţ. imprimare (Print Setup)

În fila Iniţializare pagină (Page Setup), selectaţi imprimanta de utilizat şi specificaţi setări simple de imprimare, după cum este necesar.

4. Faceţi clic pe Pornire imprimare (Start Printing)

Este afişat un mesaj care confirmă numărul de pagini de imprimat.

5. Executaţi imprimarea

Confirmaţi numărul de pagini care vor fi imprimate, apoi faceţi clic pe Da (Yes).

Sunt imprimate toate documentele cu casete de selectare selectate.

Imprimarea pentru Manualul meu (My Manual)

Puteţi selecta şi imprima documente înregistrate în Manual meu (My Manual).

Pentru detalii despre Manual meu (My Manual), consultaţi „ Înregistrarea documentelor în Manualul meu (My Manual)”.

1. Din Selectare ţintă (Select Target), selectaţi Manualul meu (My Manual)

Titlurile documentelor care au fost înregistrate în Manualul meu (My Manual) sunt afişate în lista Documente de imprimat (Documents to Be Printed).

2. Selectaţi documentele de imprimat

Din lista Documente de imprimat (Documents to Be Printed), selectaţi casetele de selectare ale titlurilor documentelor de imprimat.

Notă

- Faceţi clic pe Selectare toate (Select All) pentru a selecta casetele de selectare ale tuturor documentelor.
  Faceţi clic pe Golire totală (Clear All) pentru a şterge casetele de selectare ale tuturor documentelor.
- Faceţi clic pe Exam. înaintea imp (Print Preview) pentru a afişa şi verifica modul în care vor arăta rezultatele imprimării înainte de a imprima documentul.

3. Faceţi clic pe fila Iniţ. imprimare (Print Setup)

În fila Iniţializare pagină (Page Setup), selectaţi imprimanta de utilizat şi specificaţi setări simple de imprimare, după cum este necesar.

4. Faceţi clic pe Pornire imprimare (Start Printing)

Este afişat un mesaj care confirmă numărul de pagini de imprimat.

5. Executaţi imprimarea

Confirmaţi numărul de pagini care vor fi imprimate, apoi faceţi clic pe Da (Yes).

Sunt imprimate toate documentele cu casete de selectare selectate.

Imprimarea tuturor documentelor

Puteţi imprima toate documentele din On-screen Manual.

1. Din Selectare ţintă (Select Target), selectaţi Toate doc. (All Documents)

Titlurile tuturor documentelor sunt afişate în lista Documente de imprimat (Documents to Be Printed) şi casetele de selectare sunt selectate automat.

Notă

- Când debifaţi caseta de selectare a titlului unui document, acel document nu este imprimat.

- Faceţi clic pe Selectare toate (Select All) pentru a selecta casetele de selectare ale tuturor documentelor.
  Faceţi clic pe Golire totală (Clear All) pentru a şterge casetele de selectare ale tuturor documentelor.
- Faceţi clic pe Exam. înaintea imp (Print Preview) pentru a afişa şi verifica modul în care vor arăta rezultatele imprimării înainte de a imprima documentul.

2. Faceţi clic pe fila Iniţ. imprimare (Print Setup)

În fila Iniţializare pagină (Page Setup), selectaţi imprimanta de utilizat şi specificaţi setări simple de imprimare, după cum este necesar.

3. Faceţi clic pe Pornire imprimare (Start Printing)

Este afişat un mesaj care confirmă numărul de pagini de imprimat.

4. Executaţi imprimarea

Confirmaţi numărul de pagini care vor fi imprimate, apoi faceţi clic pe Da (Yes).

Sunt imprimate toate documentele.

Important

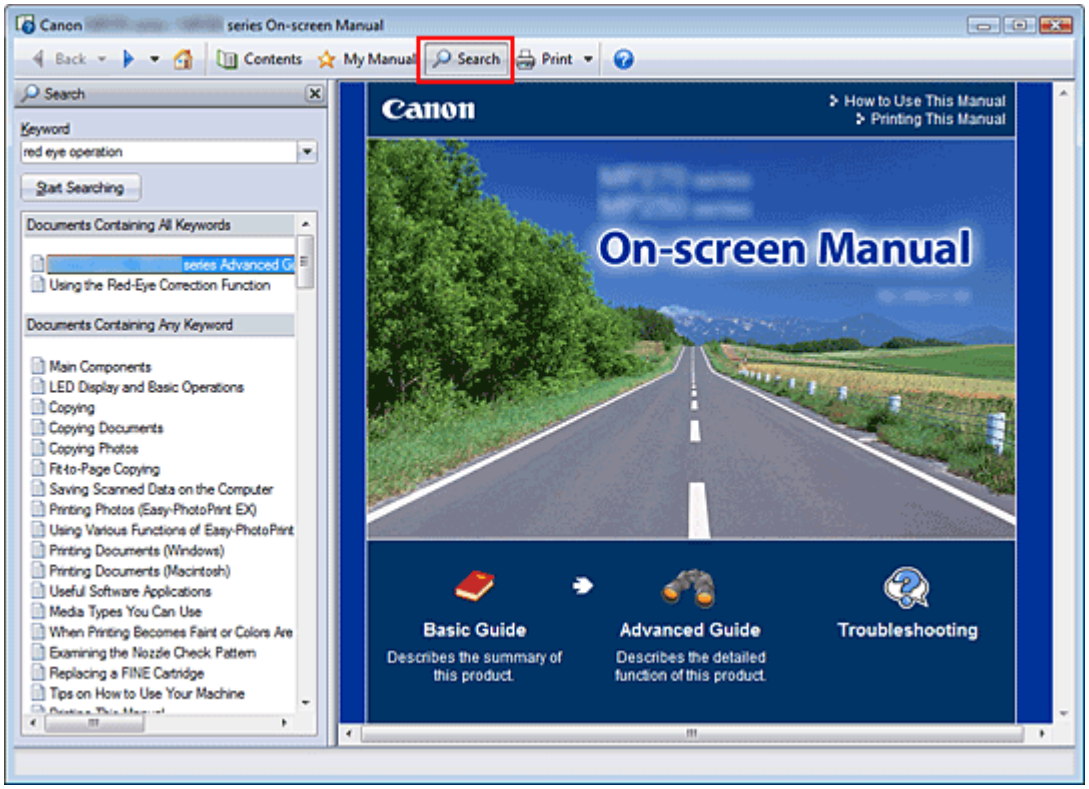
- Pentru imprimarea tuturor documentelor este necesară o cantitate mare de hârtie. Înainte de imprimare, asiguraţi-vă că verificaţi numărul de pagini de imprimat care este afişat în caseta de dialog Confirmare contor pagini de imprimat (Print Page Count Confirmation).
- Caseta de dialog Examinare înaintea imprimării (Print Preview) vă permite să adaptaţi imprimarea la lăţimea hârtiei sau să setaţi raportul de zoom. Cu toate acestea, dacă datele de imprimare ies din foaia de hârtie datorită noului raport de zoom, porţiunea de document care depăşeşte suprafaţa hârtiei nu va fi imprimată.

În partea superioară a paginii

Utilizarea cuvintelor cheie pentru a găsi un document

Puteţi introduce un cuvânt cheie pentru a căuta un document ţintă.

Sunt căutate toate documentele din manualul on-screen afişat.



1. Faceţi clic pe Search

Panoul de căutare este afişat în stânga faţă de On-screen Manual.

Notă

- Faceţi clic pe Search pentru a închide sau pentru a afişa panoul de căutare.

2. Introduceţi un cuvânt cheie

În Cuvânt cheie (Keyword), introduceţi un cuvânt cheie pentru elementul de verificat.

Când doriţi să introduceţi mai multe cuvinte cheie, introduceţi un spaţiu între cuvintele cheie.

Notă

- Puteţi introduce maximum 10 cuvinte cheie de căutare sau maximum 255 de caractere.
- Nu se face diferenţă între litere mari şi mici.
- Programul poate, de asemenea, căuta cuvinte cheie care conţin spaţii.
- O modalitate convenabilă pentru a găsi rapid un document de citit este aceea de a introduce cuvinte cheie conform descrierii de mai jos.
  - Pentru a afla cum se lucrează cu o funcţie pe care o utilizaţi:
    Introduceţi numele meniului afişat pe panoul de operare al acestui aparat sau pe computer (de exemplu, cadru ştergere copiere).
  - Pentru a găsi o explicaţie a operaţiei pentru un anumit scop:
    Introduceţi funcţia + elementul de imprimat (de exemplu, imprimare calendar).

3. Faceţi clic pe Pornire căutare (Start Searching)

Începe căutarea şi titlurile documentelor ce conţin cuvântul cheie sunt afişate în lista rezultatelor căutării.

Când efectuaţi o căutare prin introducerea mai multor cuvinte cheie, rezultatele căutării sunt afişate după cum se arată mai jos.

[Doc. care conţin potriv perfect] ([Documents Containing Perfect Match])
Documente care conţin întregul şir de caractere căutat (inclusiv spaţiile), exact aşa cum sunt introduse (potrivire perfectă)

[Doc. care conţin toate cuvintele cheie] ([Documents Containing All Keywords])
Documente care conţin toate cuvintele cheie introduse

[Doc. care conţin orice cuvânt cheie] ([Documents Containing Any Keyword])
Documente care conţin cel puţin unul dintre cuvintele cheie introduse

4. Afişaţi documentul pe care doriţi să îl citiţi

Din lista de rezultate ale căutării, faceţi dublu clic (sau selectaţi şi apăsaţi Enter) pe titlul documentului pe care doriţi să îl citiţi.

Când documentele titlului respectiv sunt afişate, cuvintele cheie găsite în documentele respective sunt evidenţiate.

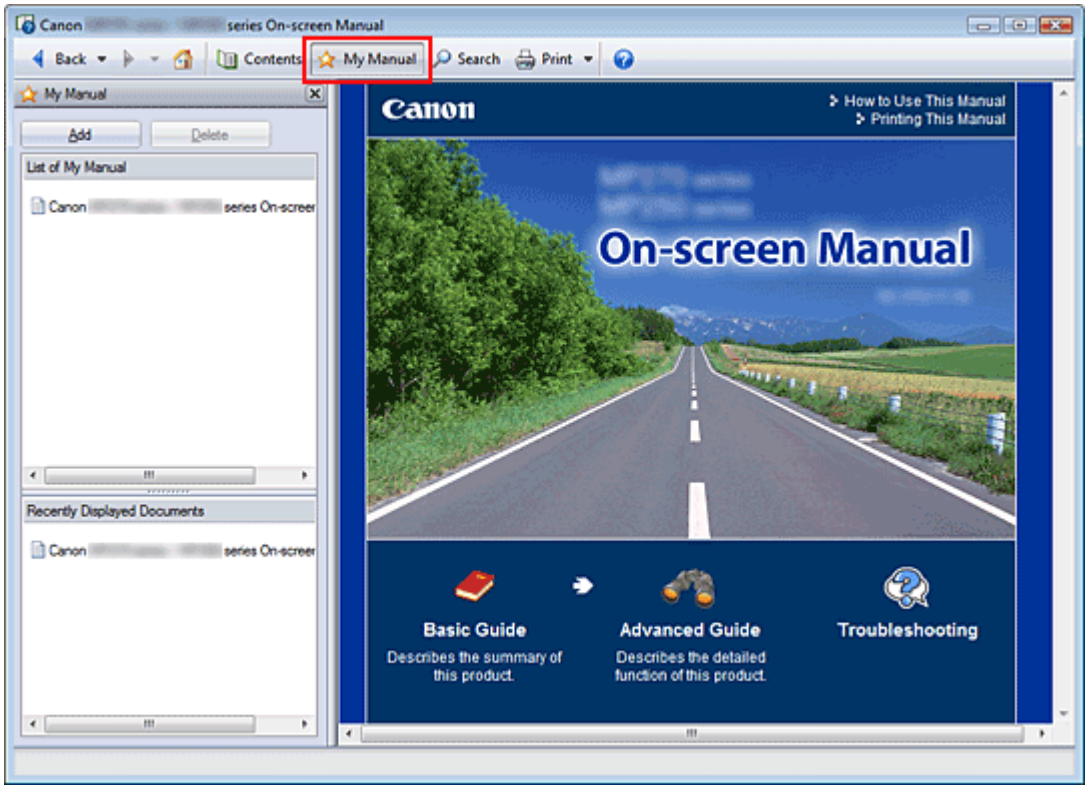
Notă

- Dacă modificaţi intrarea cuvântului cheie şi efectuaţi mai multe căutări, rămâne un istoric al căutărilor. Pentru a şterge istoricul căutărilor, faceţi clic pe situat în dreapta faţă de Cuvânt cheie (Keyword), apoi selectaţi Golire istoric (Clear History), care se afişează.

În partea superioară a paginii

Înregistrarea documentelor în Manualul meu (My Manual)

Înregistraţi documentele citite frecvent ca documente pentru Manualul meu (My Manual), pentru a putea în orice moment să consultaţi mai uşor documentele respective.



1. Afişarea documentului

Afişarea documentului de adăugat la Manualul meu (My Manual).

2. Faceţi clic pe My Manual

Panoul Manualul meu (My Manual) este afişat în stânga faţă de On-screen Manual.

Notă

- Faceţi clic pe My Manual pentru a închide sau pentru a afişa panoul Manualul meu (My Manual).

3. Înregistrarea documentului în Manualul meu (My Manual)

Faceţi clic pe Adăugare (Add).

Titlul documentului afişat este adăugat la Lista Manualului meu (List of My Manual).

Notă

- De asemenea, puteţi adăuga documente la Manualul meu (My Manual) prin următoarele metode. Dacă adăugaţi un document la Manualul meu (My Manual), în pictogramele documentelor din panoul de cuprins este afişat un marcaj ☆.
  - În lista Documente afişate recent (Recently Displayed Documents), faceţi dublu clic pe titlul documentului pe care doriţi să-l adăugaţi la Manualul meu (My Manual) (sau selectaţi documentul şi apăsaţi tasta Enter) pentru a afişa titlul, apoi faceţi clic pe Adăugare (Add).
  - Faceţi clic dreapta pe titlul documentului afişat în panoul de cuprins sau faceţi clic dreapta în fereastra de explicaţii, apoi selectaţi Adăugare la manualul meu (Add to My Manual) din meniul afişat.
  - În panoul de cuprins, selectaţi titlul documentului pe care doriţi să-l adăugaţi la Manualul

meu (My Manual), apoi faceţi clic pe Adăugare la manualul meu (Add to My Manual) din partea din dreapta jos a panoului.

4. Afişare Manualul meu (My Manual)

Când faceţi dublu clic pe (sau selectaţi şi apăsaţi Enter) un titlu de document afişat în Lista Manualului meu (List of My Manual), acel subiect este afişat în fereastra de explicaţii.

Notă

- Pentru a şterge un document din Lista Manualului meu (List of My Manual), selectaţi din listă titlul acelui document, apoi faceţi clic pe Ştergere (Delete) (sau apăsaţi Ştergere (Delete)).

În partea superioară a paginii

Simboluri utilizate în acest document

Avertisment
Instrucţiuni care, dacă nu sunt respectate, pot avea ca rezultat decesul sau vătămarea gravă, cauzate de operarea necorespunzătoare a echipamentului. Acestea trebuie să fie respectate pentru o funcţionare în siguranţă.

Atenţie
Instrucţiuni care, dacă nu sunt respectate, pot avea ca rezultat vătămare corporală sau daune materiale, cauzate de operarea necorespunzătoare a echipamentului. Acestea trebuie să fie respectate pentru o funcţionare în siguranţă.

Important
Instrucţiuni care includ informaţii importante.
Aveţi grijă să citiţi aceste indicaţii.

Notă
Instrucţiuni ca explicaţii pentru funcţionare sau explicaţii suplimentare.

Windows
Indică operaţii în Windows.

Macintosh
Indică operaţii în Macintosh.

În partea superioară a paginii

Mărci comerciale

- Microsoft este marcă comercială înregistrată a Microsoft Corporation.
- Windows este marcă comercială sau marcă comercială înregistrată a Microsoft Corporation în S.U.A. şi/sau alte ţări.
- Windows Vista este marcă comercială sau marcă comercială înregistrată a Microsoft Corporation în S.U.A. şi/sau alte ţări.
- Internet Explorer este marcă comercială sau marcă comercială înregistrată a Microsoft Corporation în S.U.A. şi/sau alte ţări.
- Macintosh şi Mac sunt mărci comerciale ale Apple Inc., înregistrate ín S.U.A. şi/sau alte ţări.
- Bonjour este o marcă comercială a Apple Inc., înregistrată în S.U.A. şi/sau alte ţări.
- Adobe, Adobe Photoshop, Adobe RGB şi Adobe RGB (1998) sunt mărci comerciale înregistrate sau mărci comerciale ale Adobe Systems Incorporated în Statele Unite şi/sau alte ţări.

Exif Print

Acest aparat suportă Exif Print.
Exif Print este un standard pentru îmbunătăţirea comunicaţiilor între camerele digitale şi imprimante. Prin conectarea la o cameră compatibilă cu Exif Print, datele imaginii camerei de la data şi ora fotografierii sunt utilizate şi optimizate, rezultând imprimate de calitate extrem de bună.

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimare de pe un computer

Imprimarea cu pachetul software al aplicaţiei
Imprimare cu alt software de aplicaţie

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimarea cu pachetul software al aplicaţiei

- Ce este Easy-PhotoPrint EX?
- Imprimarea fotografiilor
- Crearea unui album
- Imprimarea calendarelor
- Imprimarea autocolantelor
- Aspectul imprimării
- Corectarea şi îmbunătăţirea fotografiilor
- Întrebări şi răspunsuri
- Setări pentru imprimarea fotografiilor
- Alte setări

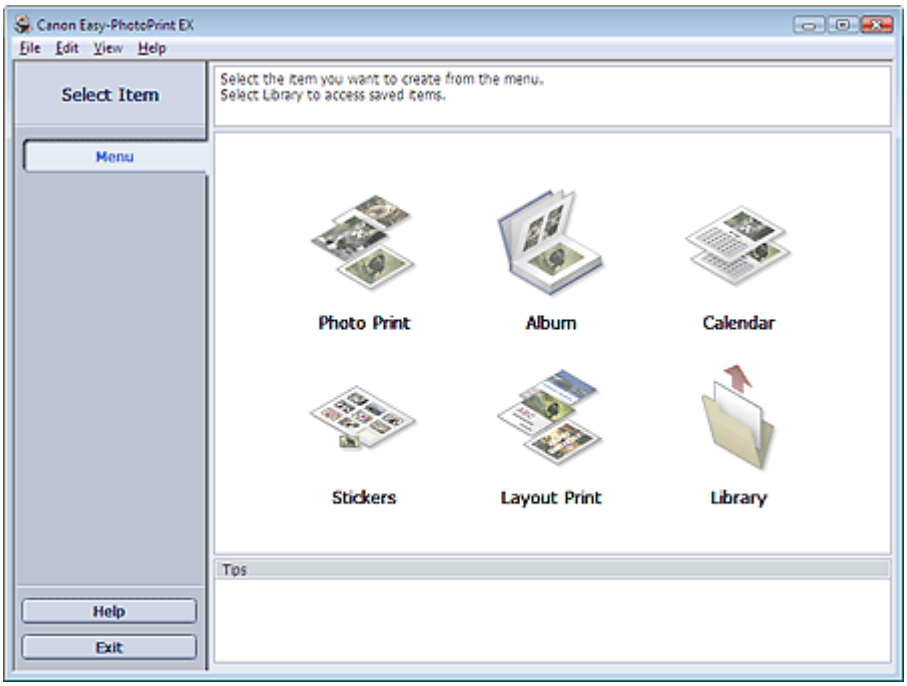
În partea superioară a paginii

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

What Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX?

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create albums, calendars and stickers easily using photos taken with digital cameras.

You can also print borderless photos easily.



Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX does not support Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows Me, or Windows NT4.
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX can only be used with Canon inkjet printers. It does not support some printers, including Canon compact printers (SELPHY CP series).
- If a printer that supports Easy-PhotoPrint EX is not installed, you cannot print items you create.
- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is installed on a computer that already has Easy-LayoutPrint installed, Easy-LayoutPrint will be replaced by Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Note

- Printing on paper larger than A4 is available with supported printers only. See your printer manual for details.
- See Help of Easy-PhotoPrint EX for descriptions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX screens.
  Click Help in a screen or dialog box, or select Easy-PhotoPrint EX Help... from the Help menu. Help appears.

About Exif Print

Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports "Exif Print." Exif Print is a standard for enhancing the communication between digital cameras and printers.

By connecting to an Exif Print-compliant digital camera, the image data at the time of shooting is used and optimized, yielding extremely high quality prints.

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX from Other Applications

Easy-PhotoPrint EX can be started from other applications.

See the application's manual for details on the procedure for starting.

The Photo Print function is available with the following applications:

- MP Navigator EX Ver.1.00 or later
- ZoomBrowser EX Ver.6.0 or later
- Digital Photo Professional Ver.3.2 or later

Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX is subject to the following restrictions when started from Digital Photo Professional:
  - Menu does not appear in the step button area on the left side of the screen.
  - Images cannot be corrected/enhanced.
  - Image display order cannot be changed.
  - Edited images cannot be saved.
  - Options other than Enable ICC Profile cannot be selected for Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box. Therefore, you cannot use the Vivid Photo and Photo Noise Reduction functions.

The Album function is available with the following applications:

- MP Navigator EX Ver.1.00 or later
- ZoomBrowser EX Ver.5.8 or later

Supported Image File Formats (Extensions)

- BMP (.bmp)
- JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg)
- TIFF (.tif, .tiff)
- PICT (.pict, .pct)
- Easy-PhotoPrint image files (.epp)

Important

- When selecting an image, if there is a TIFF file in the selected folder, the image may not be displayed correctly or Easy-PhotoPrint EX may shut down depending on the TIFF format. In such cases, move the TIFF file to another folder or recreate the file in a different file format, and then select the folder again.

Note

- The thumbnails of files in unsupported formats are displayed as (Question Mark).
- When Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from Digital Photo Professional, all image files supported by Digital Photo Professional will be displayed.

File Formats (Extensions) Supported by Easy-PhotoPrint EX

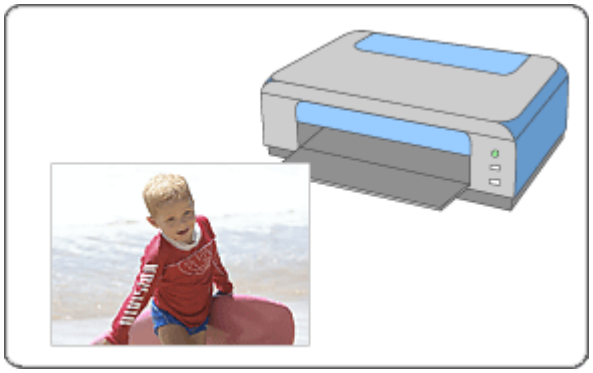
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Photo Print file (.el6)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Album file (.el1)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Stickers file (.el2)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Calendar file (.el4)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Layout file (.el5)

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Photos

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to print your favorite photos in a variety of layouts.
You can also create borderless photos easily.
Corrections suitable for photos will be applied automatically when printing.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting a Photo
3. Selecting the Paper
4. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Printing Vivid Photos
- Reducing Photo Noise
- Cropping Photos (Photo Print)
- Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)
- Printing Multiple Photos on One Page
- Printing an Index
- Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)
- Printing Photo Information
- Saving Photos
- Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?
- How Do I Print with Even Margins?

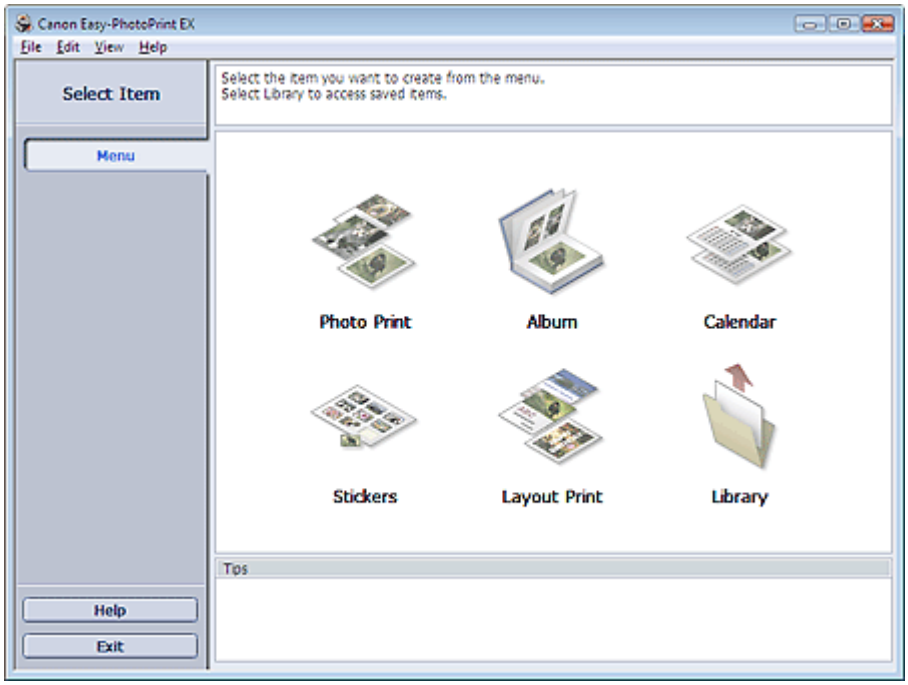
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



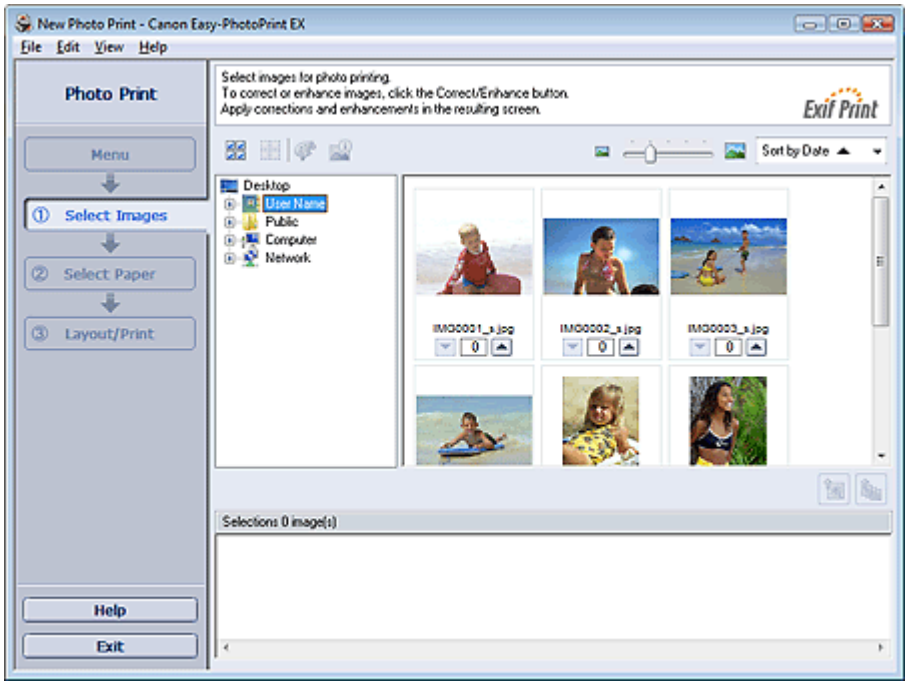
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Photo Print from Menu.

The Select Images screen appears.



Important

- The thumbnails (reduced images) displayed in the screen may appear as follows:
  - A black line appears along an edge of the image.
  - An edge of the image appears cropped.
  However, such images will be displayed normally when enlarged or previewed, and print results will not be affected.

2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Important

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from another application (MP Navigator EX, ZoomBrowser EX or Digital Photo Professional), the folder tree area will not be displayed.
  The images opened in the application will be displayed as thumbnails.

3. Click the image you want to print.

The number of copies appears as "1" below the clicked image, while the selected image itself will appear in the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click

(Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click (Delete All Imported Images).

- To print two or more copies of an image, click (Up arrow) until the number of copies you want is reached. To reduce the number of copies shown in the box, click (Down arrow).
- You can change the order of photos using the list located at the top right corner of the screen. You can select the printing order from Sort by Date and Sort by Name.

Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
  Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

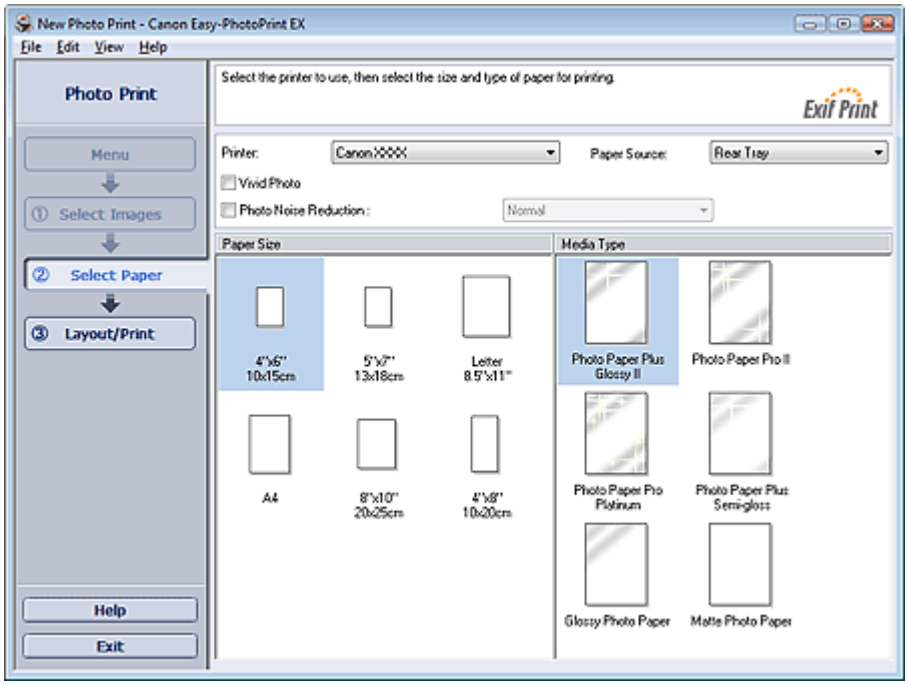
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper

1. Click Select Paper.

The Select Paper screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Paper Source

Paper Size

Media Type

Note

- The paper sizes and media types may vary depending on the printer. See Help for details.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.

Note

- You can print photos with more vivid colors or you can reduce the photo noise.
  - Printing Vivid Photos
  - Reducing Photo Noise
- See Help for details on the Select Paper screen.

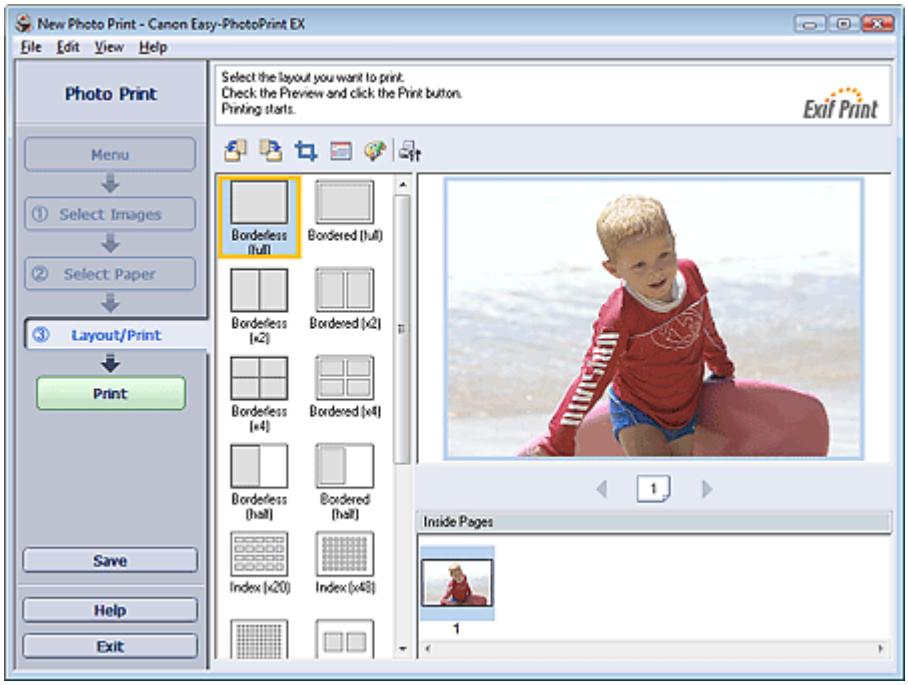
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Layout/Print.

The Layout/Print screen appears.



Important

- The thumbnails (reduced images) displayed in the screen may appear as follows:
  - A black line appears along an edge of the image.
  - An edge of the image appears cropped.
  However, such images will be displayed normally when enlarged or previewed, and print results will not be affected.

2. Select a layout you want to use.

Click a borderless layout to print borderless photos.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the printer, paper size, and media type.

3. Click Print.

Important

- When you print on large size paper such as A3/A3+, some computers cannot print properly if you print more than one page or copy at a time. It is recommended that you print page by page when you print on such paper.
- While printing on paper larger than A4 or printing high-resolution images, data may be printed only to the middle if many images are printed at one time. In such cases, select the Spool print job page by page checkbox in the Preferences dialog box, and then print again.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

- The photo print settings will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the settings. It is recommended that you save the printed image if you want to print it again.
  Saving Photos
- When you print on a bordered layout, the margins on the left and right or the top and bottom may become wider than the other.
  How Do I Print with Even Margins?

Note

- You can crop images or print dates on photos.
  Cropping Photos (Photo Print)
  Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)
- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
  Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- You can specify advanced Photo Print settings (number of copies, print quality, etc.) in the Preferences dialog box.

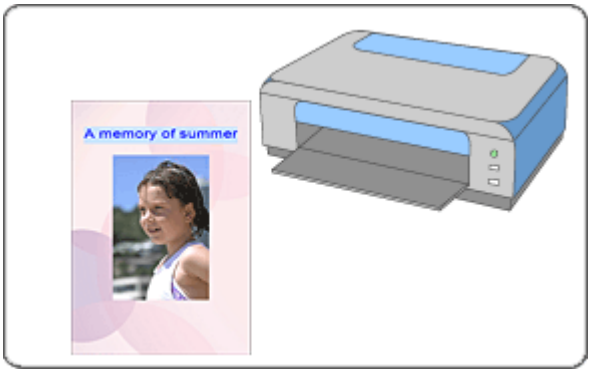
  To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.
- See Help for details on the Layout/Print screen.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Creating an Album

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create your own personalized photo album.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Attaching Comments to Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Saving
- Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- What Is "C1" or "C4"?

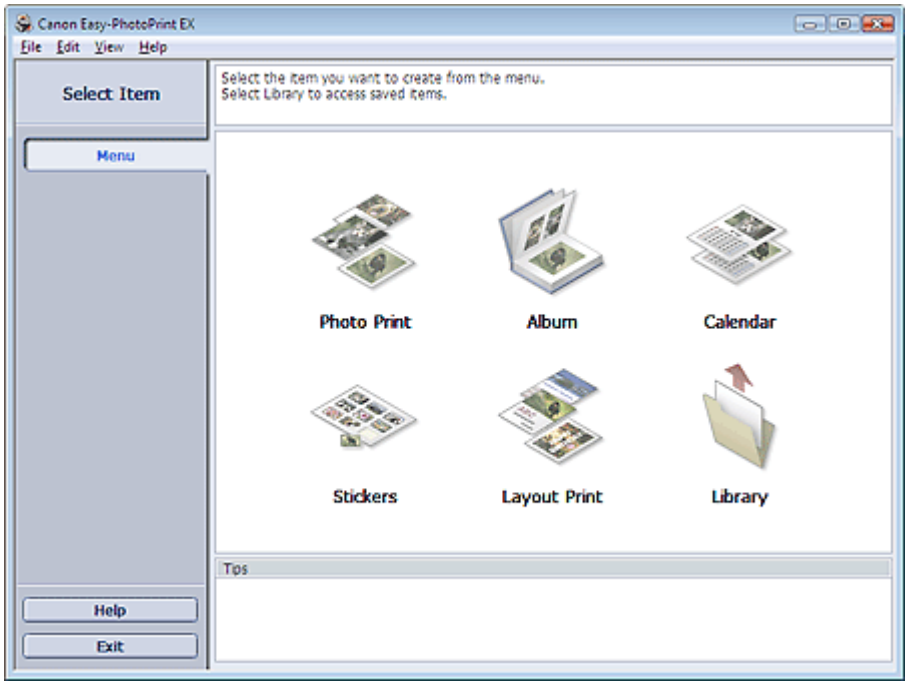
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



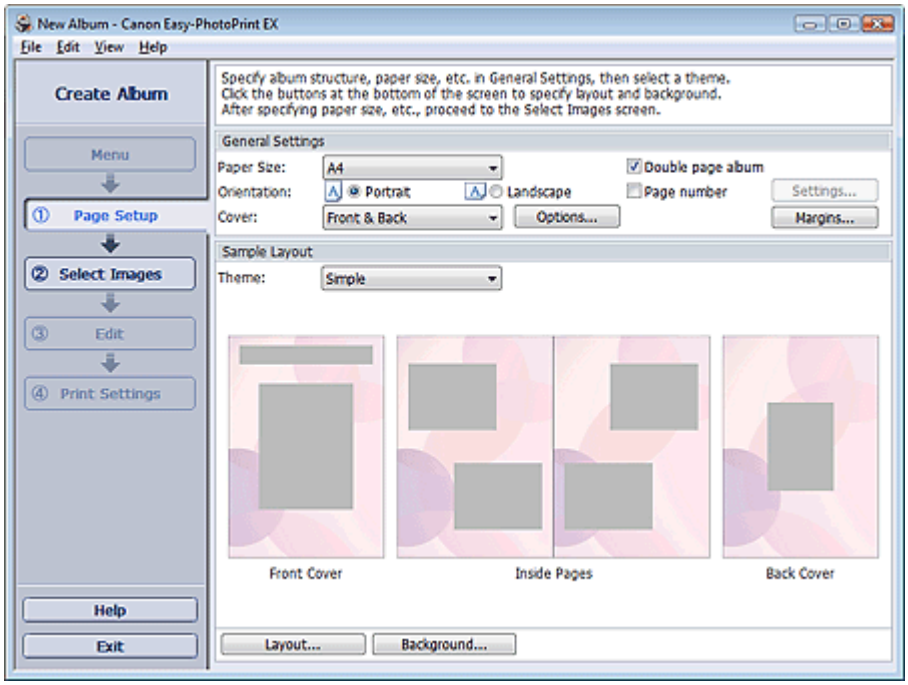
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Album from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Cover

Double page album

Page number

Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can select whether to display images on the inside of the front and back covers in the Cover Options dialog box. To display the Cover Options dialog box, select Front or Front & Back for Cover and click Options....
- Select the Double page album checkbox to enable the spread page layout (consisting of two-page master). In a double-page album, you can arrange an image across the left and right pages.
- You can customize the page numbers (position, font size, etc.) in the Page Number Settings dialog box. To display the Page Number Settings dialog box, select the Page number checkbox and click Settings....
- You can customize the margins of the front cover, inside pages and back cover in the Margin Settings dialog box. To display the Margin Settings dialog box, click Margins....

3. Select the theme you want to use from Theme in Sample Layout.

4. If you want to change the layout, click Layout....

The Change Layout dialog box appears.

In the Change Layout dialog box, you can change the layout or select whether to print the date (on which the picture was taken) on the photo.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size, Orientation, Double page album, or the type of page selected (front cover, inside pages or back cover).
- You can customize the date (position, size, color, etc.) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox in the Change Layout dialog box and click Date Settings....

5. If you want to change the background, click Background....

The Change Background dialog box appears.

In the Change Background dialog box, you can paint the background in a single color or paste an image file to it.

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.

2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Important

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from another application (MP Navigator EX or ZoomBrowser EX), the folder tree area will not be displayed.
  The images opened in the application will be displayed as thumbnails.

3. Select the image(s) you want to print, and click one of the buttons below.

To print on the front cover, click (Import to Front Cover).

To print on the inside pages, click (Import to Inside Pages).

To print on the back cover, click (Import to Back Cover).

The selected image(s) are displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging them into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click (Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

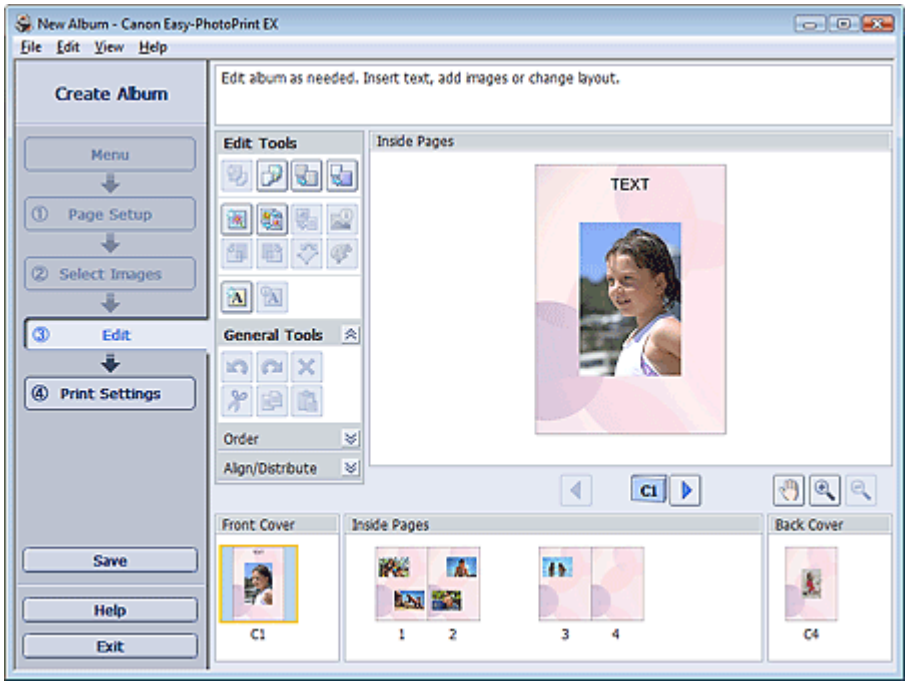
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit your album if necessary.

- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Attaching Comments to Photos
- Adding Text to Photos

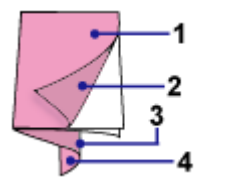
Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited album. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
  The page numbers on the front and back covers of the album are displayed as follows:

  C1: Front cover

  C2: Inside the front cover

  C3: Inside the back cover



C4: Back cover

Saving

Note

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.

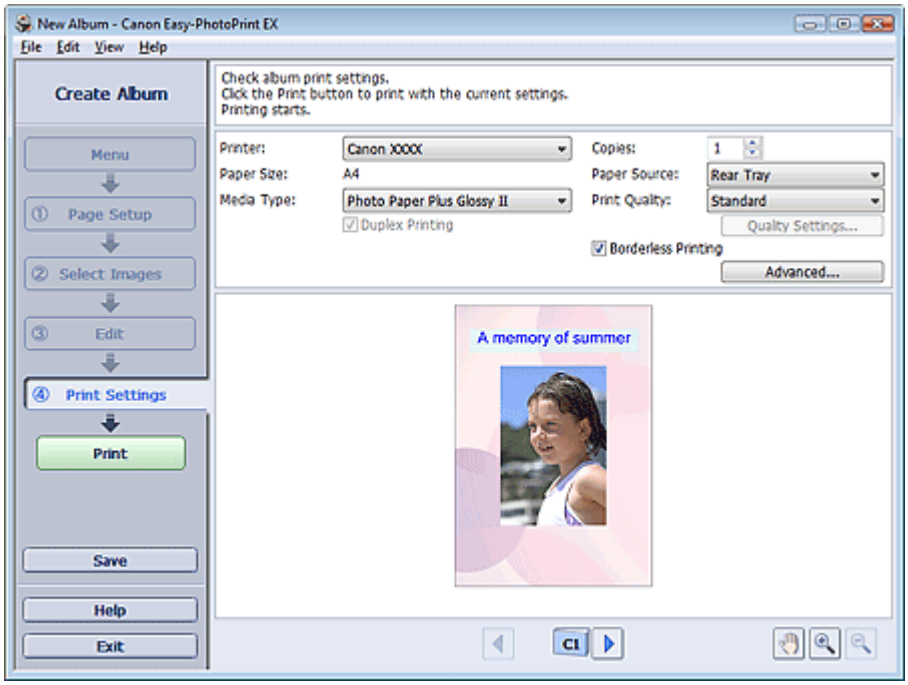
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing

Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- Select the Borderless Printing checkbox to print borderless photos.
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

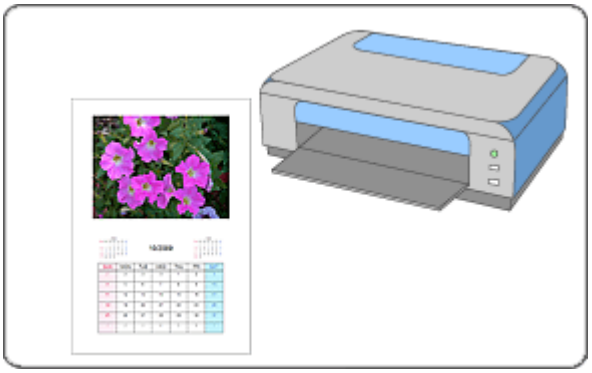
- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Calendars

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create your own calendar using your favorite photos.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Setting Calendar Display
- Setting Holidays
- Saving
- Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

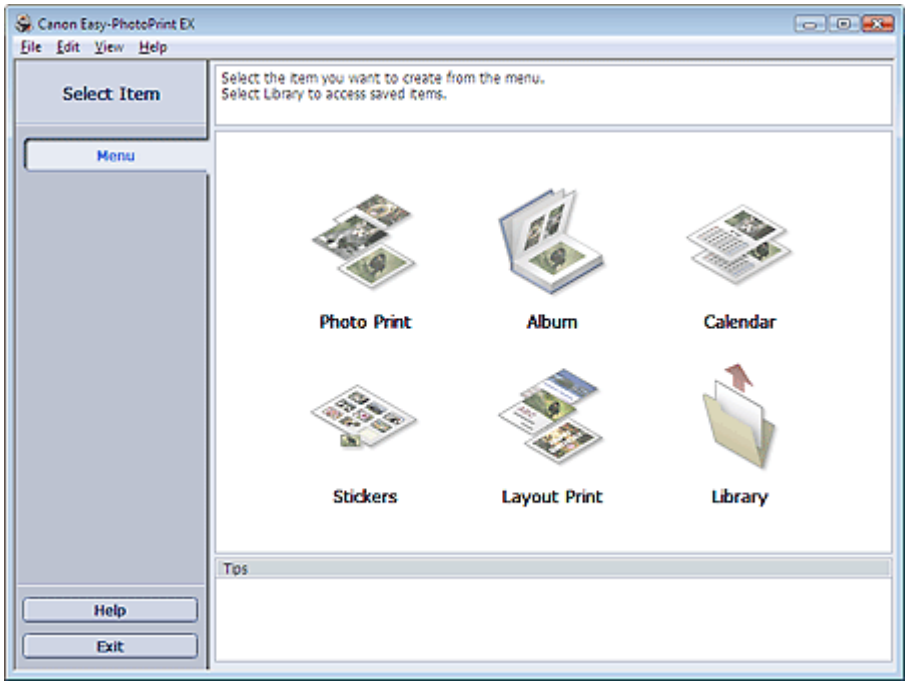
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



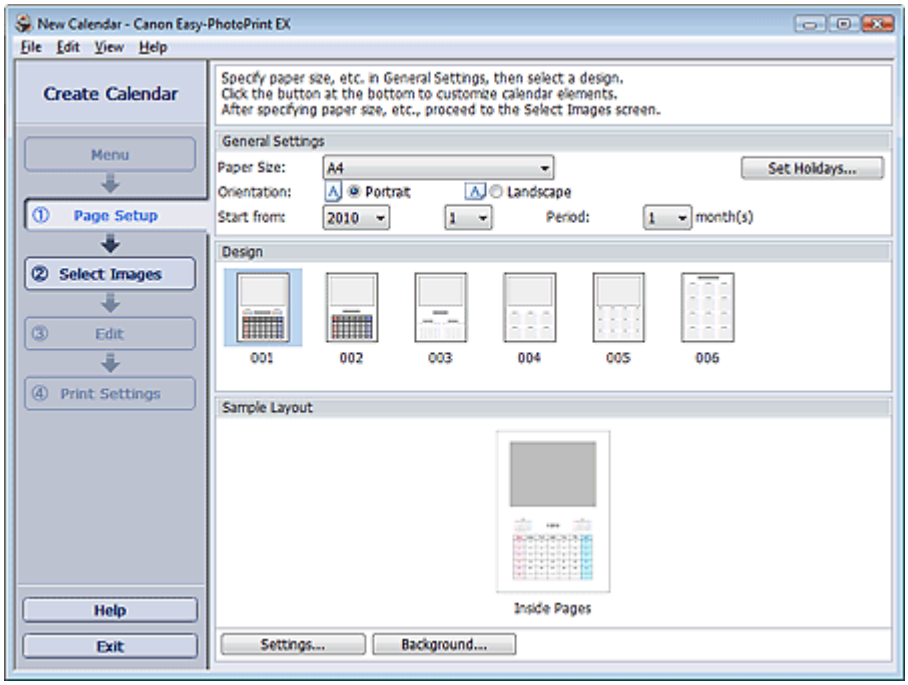
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Calendar from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Start from

Period

Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can add holidays to your calendar.
  ➡ Setting Holidays

3. Select a layout for Design.

If necessary, make advanced settings on the calendar and set the background.

Note

- You can customize the calendar display (font colors of the dates and days of the week, position and size of the calendar, etc.).
  ➡ Setting Calendar Display
- You can paint the background in a single color or paste an image file to it in the Change Background dialog box. To display the Change Background dialog box, click Background....

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.

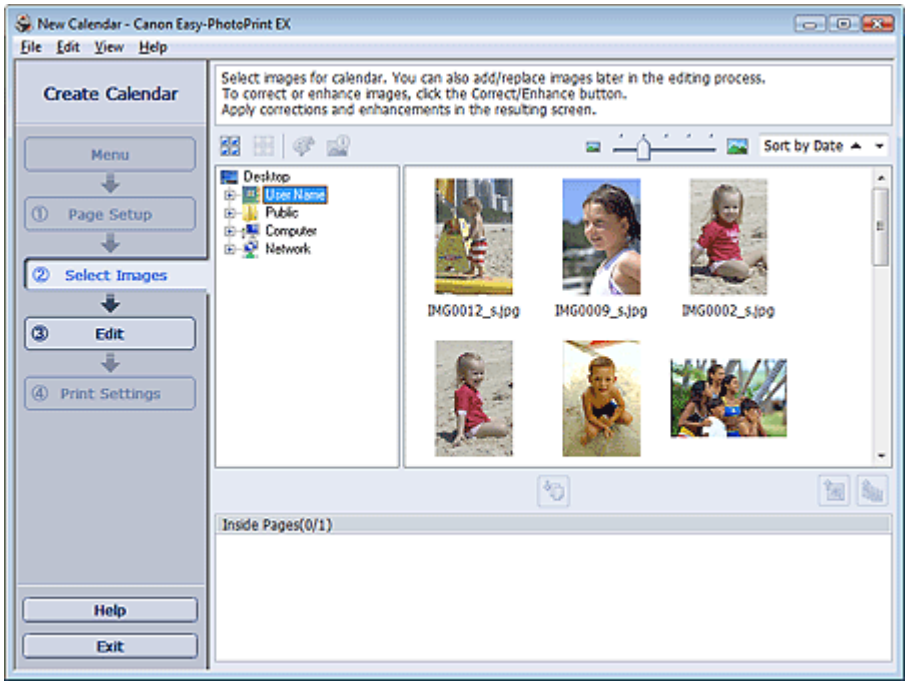
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected image(s) are displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging them into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click (Delete Imported Image).

  To delete all images from the selected image area, click (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

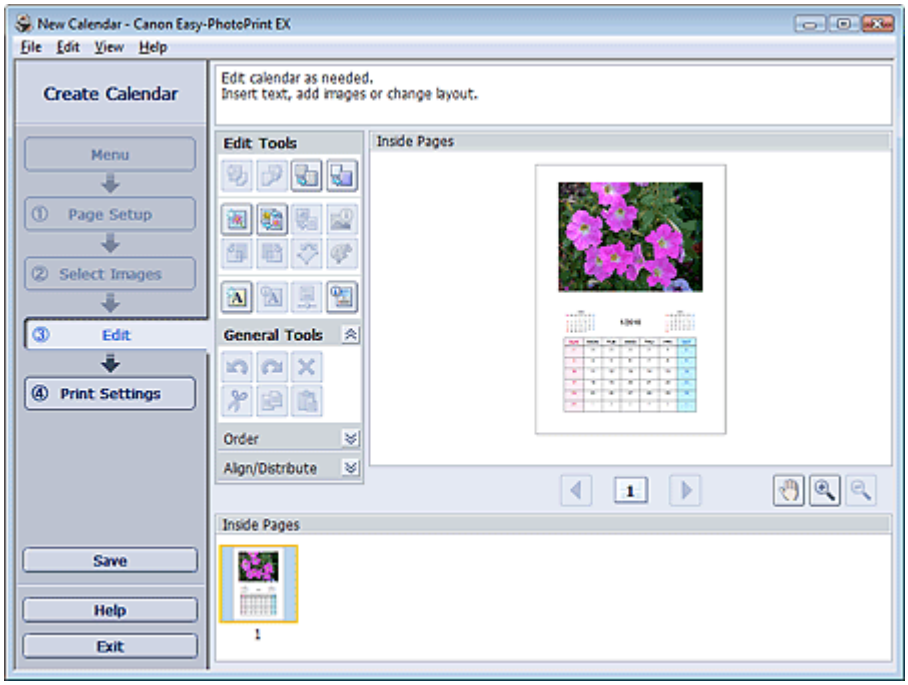
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the calendar if necessary.

- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Setting Calendar Display
- Setting Holidays

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited calendar. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
  - Saving

Note

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.

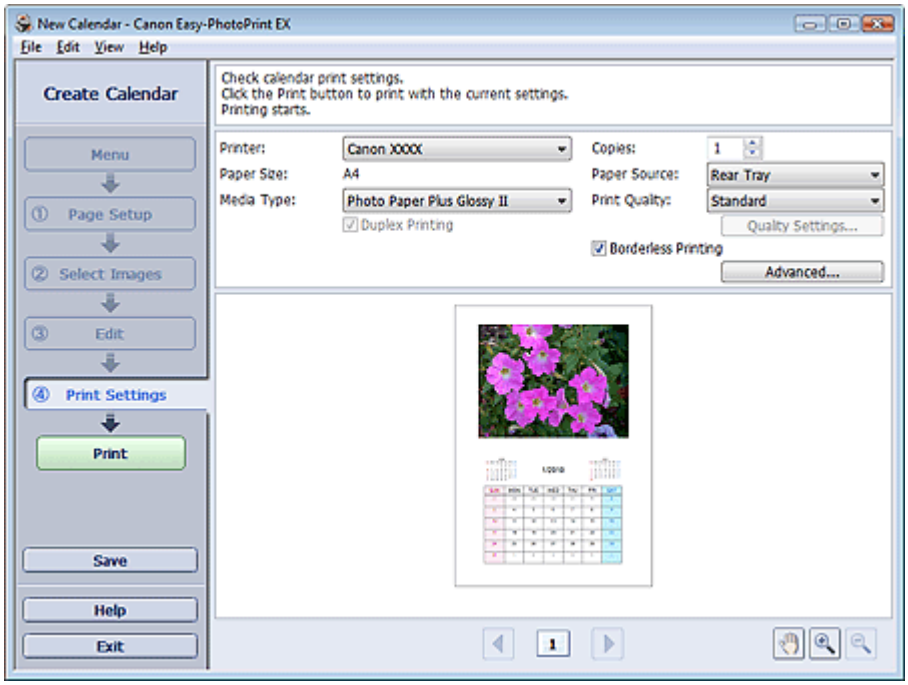
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing

Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

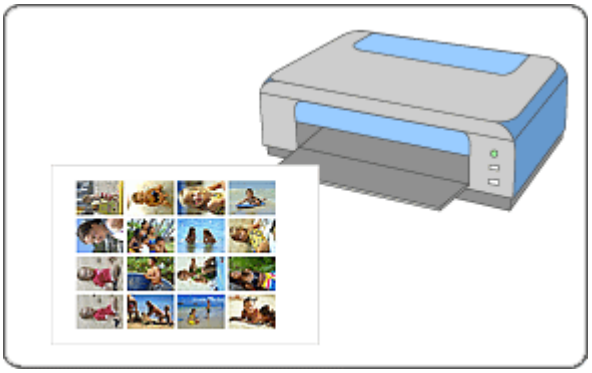
- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Stickers

You can print your favorite photos on compatible sticker sheets.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Saving
- Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

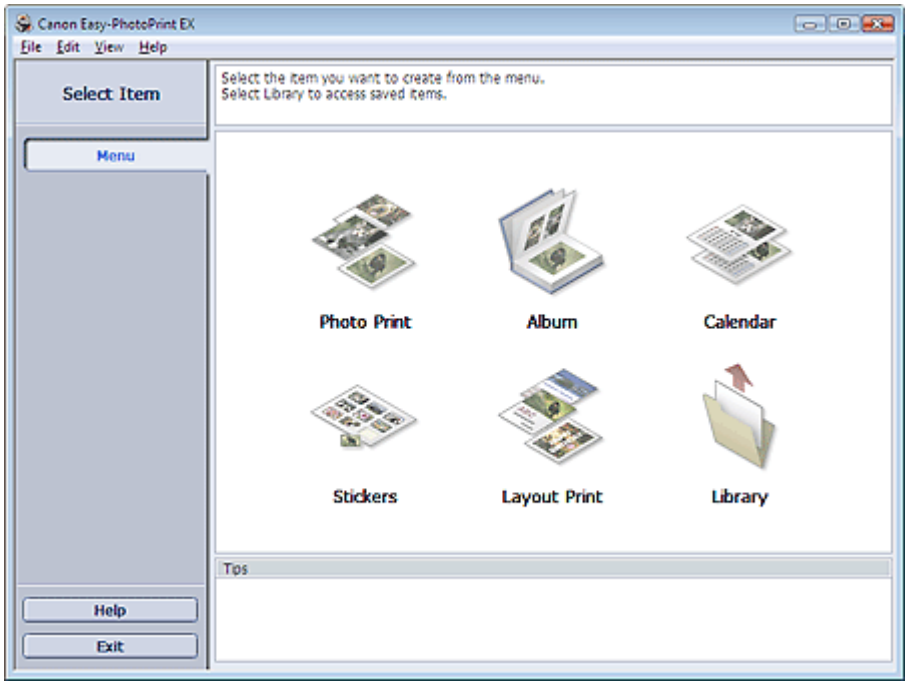
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



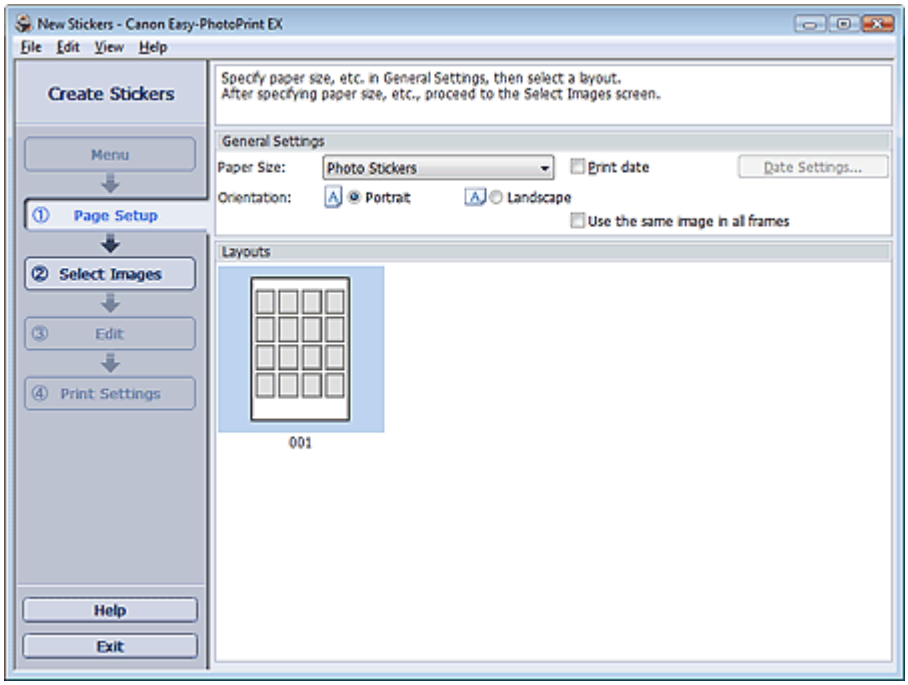
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Stickers from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Print date

Use the same image in all frames

Note

- Paper sizes other than Photo Stickers cannot be selected.
- Select the Use the same image in all frames checkbox to use the same image in all the frames on the page.
- You can customize the date (position, size, color, etc.) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox and click Date Settings....

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.

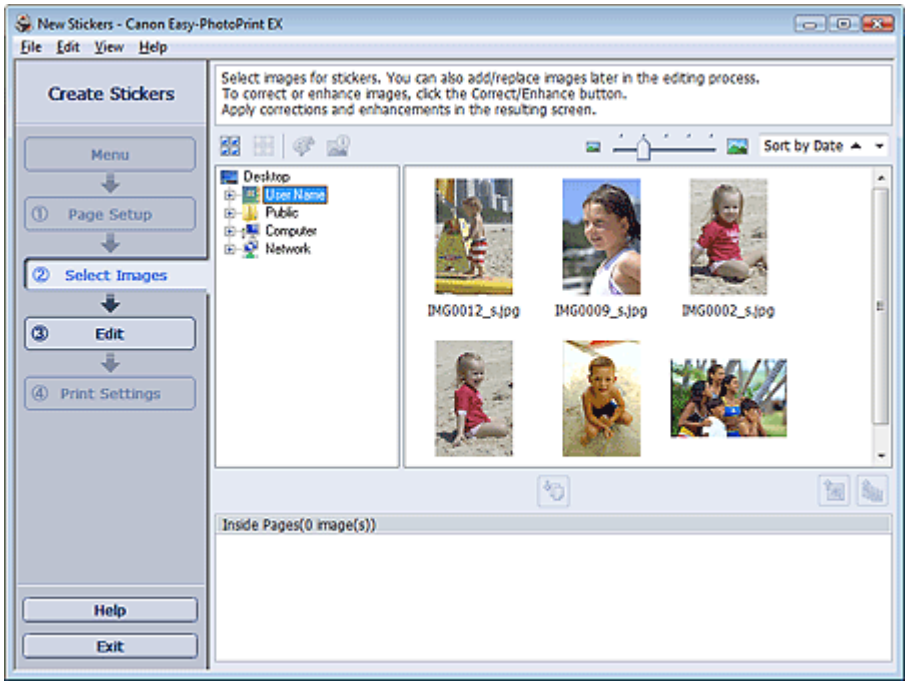
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected image(s) are displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging them into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click (Delete Imported Image).

  To delete all images from the selected image area, click (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

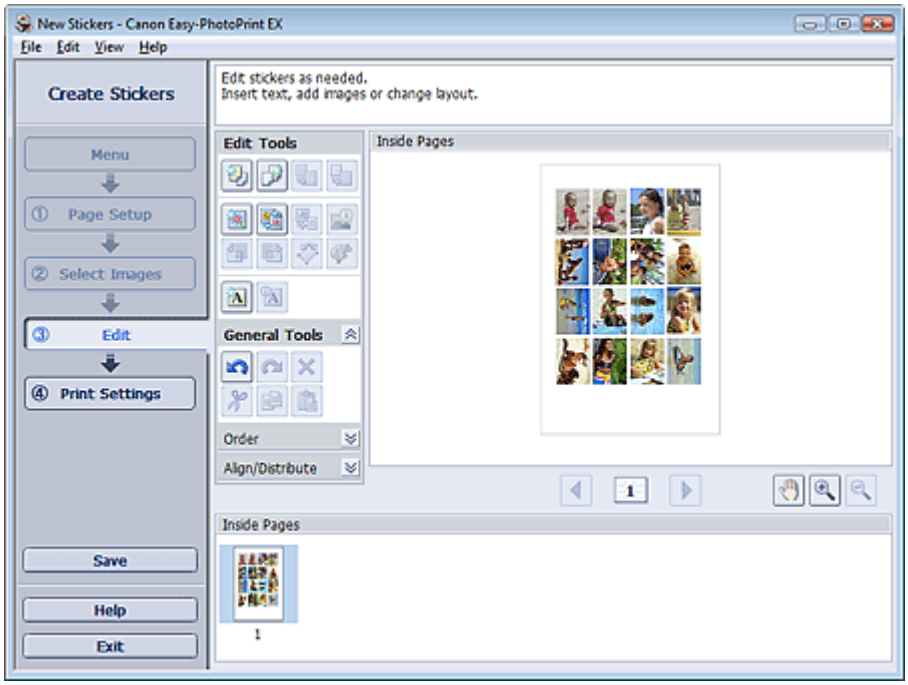
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the stickers if necessary.

- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited stickers. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
  - Saving

Note

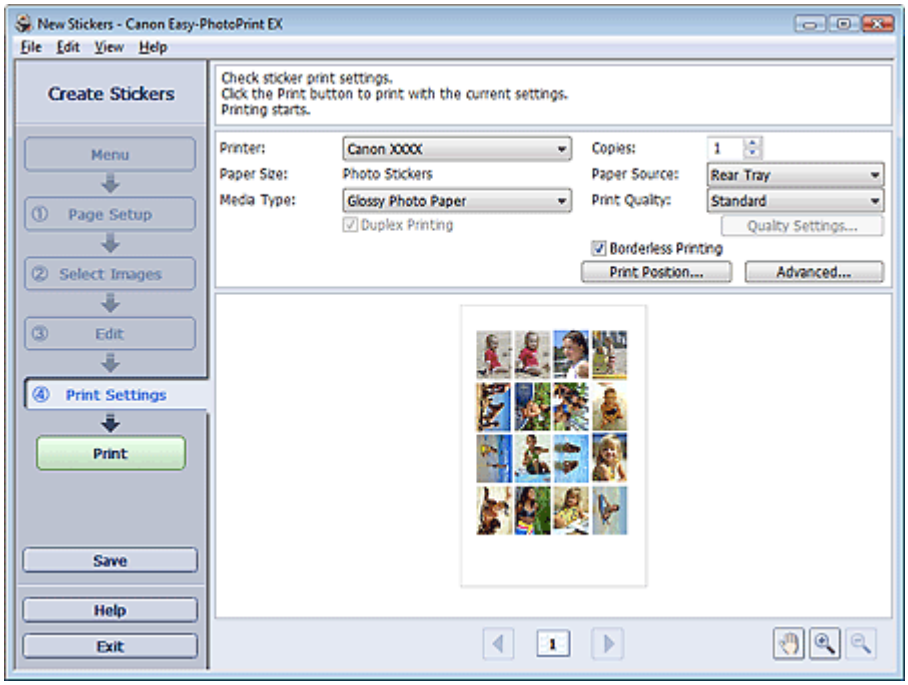
- See Help for details on the Edit screen.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing

Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- You can adjust the printing position in the Adjust Print Position dialog box. To display the Adjust Print Position dialog box, click Print Position....
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

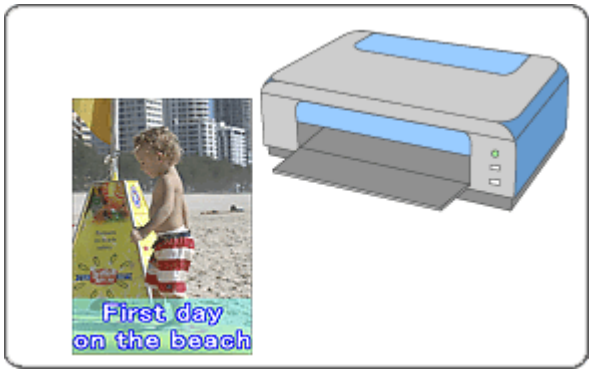
- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Layout

You can add text to your favorite photos and print them in a variety of layouts.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- Changing Layout
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Saving
- Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

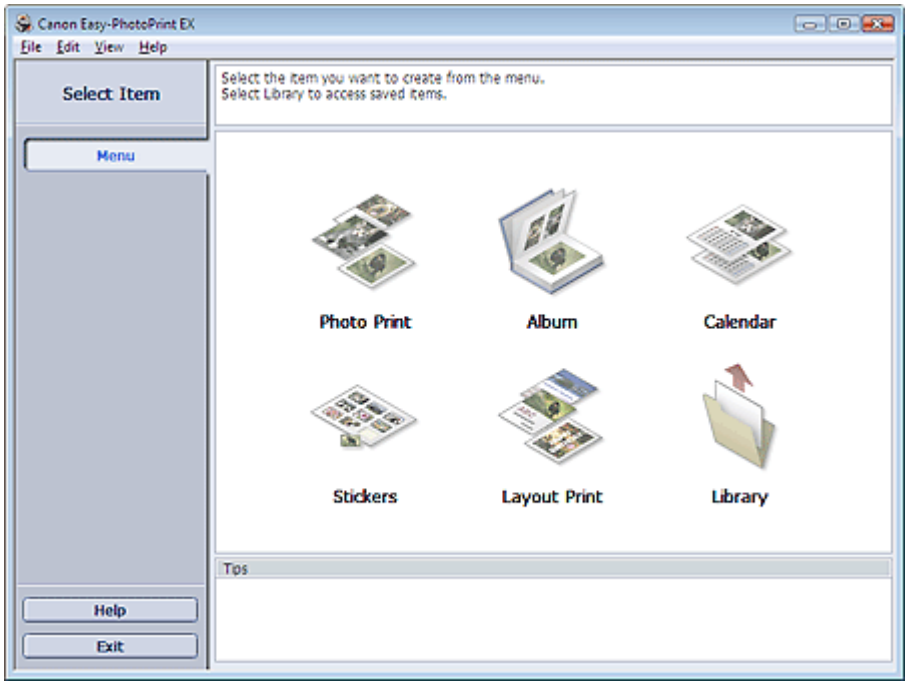
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



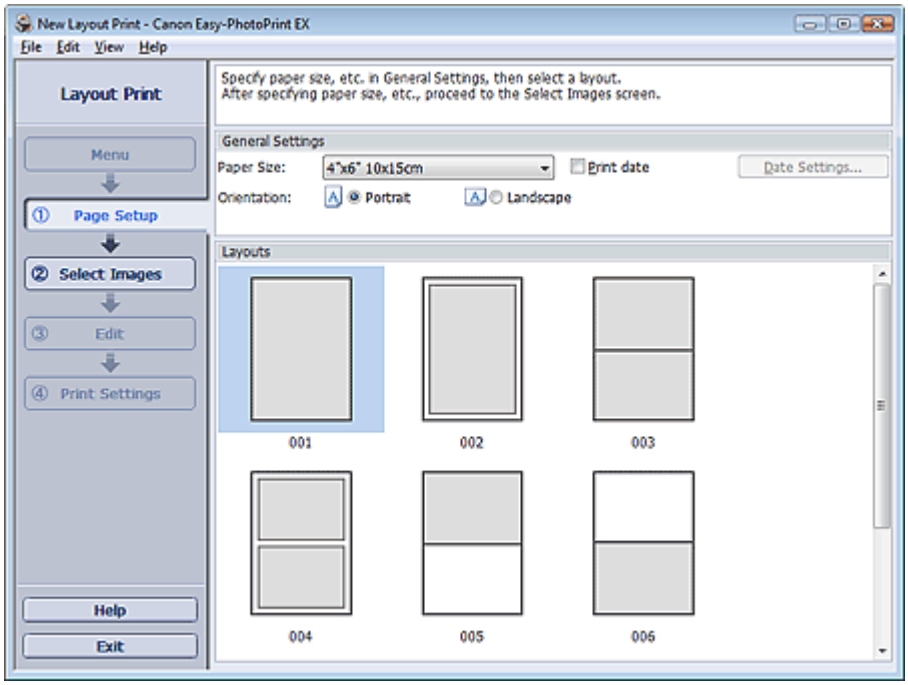
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Layout Print from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Print date

Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can customize the date (position, size, color, etc.) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox and click Date Settings....

3. Select a layout from Layouts.

Note

- The layouts may vary depending on the Orientation.

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.

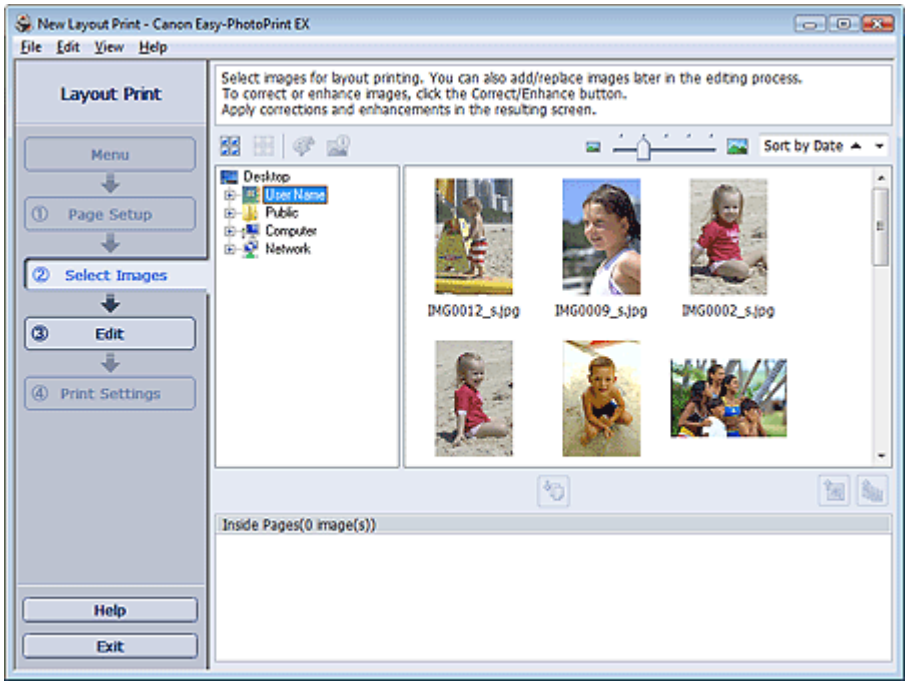
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected image(s) are displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging them into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click (Delete Imported Image).

  To delete all images from the selected image area, click (Delete All Imported Images).

Note

- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

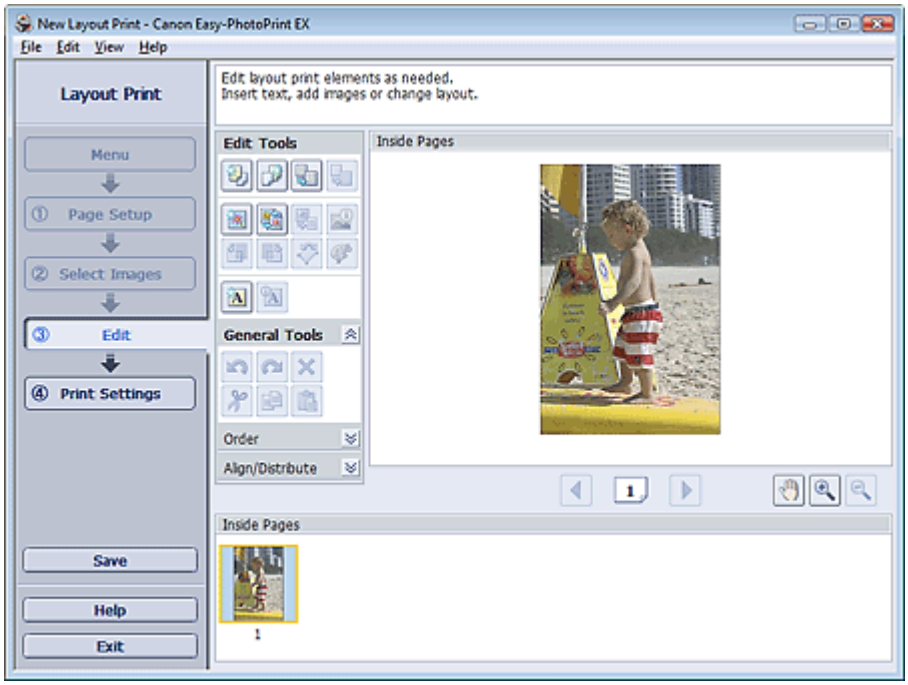
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the layout if necessary.

- Changing Layout
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Adding Text to Photos

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited layout. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
  - Saving

Note

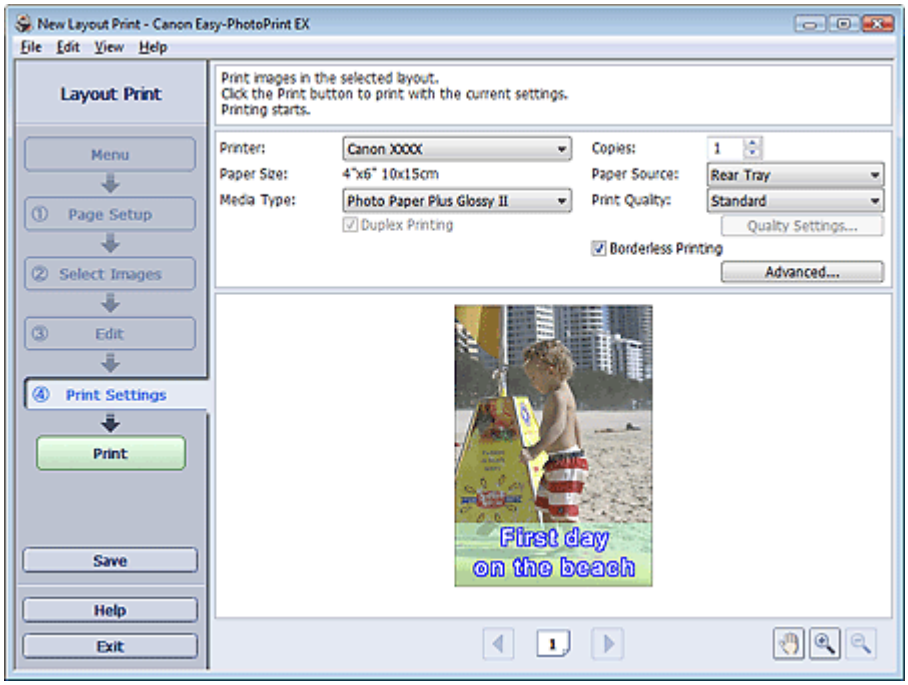
- See Help for details on the Edit screen.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing

Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- Select the Borderless Printing checkbox to print borderless photos.
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Correcting and Enhancing Photos

You can correct and enhance images.

Click (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Select Images or Edit screen, or in the Layout/Print screen of Photo Print. You can make the following corrections and enhancements in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Important

- For Photo Print, if you select Enable ICC Profile in the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box, you cannot correct/enhance images.

Note

- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Auto Photo Fix

This function will automatically analyze the captured scene and apply suitable corrections.

Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

Red-Eye Correction Function

You can correct red eyes caused by a camera flash.

Using the Red-Eye Correction Function

Face Brightener Function

You can brighten dark faces caused by bright background.

Using the Face Brightener Function

Face Sharpener Function

You can sharpen out-of-focus faces in a photo.

Using the Face Sharpener Function

Digital Face Smoothing Function

You can enhance skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function

Blemish Remover Function

You can remove moles.

Using the Blemish Remover Function

Image Adjustment

You can adjust brightness and contrast or sharpen the entire image.

You can also blur the outline of the subjects or remove the base color.

Adjusting Images

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

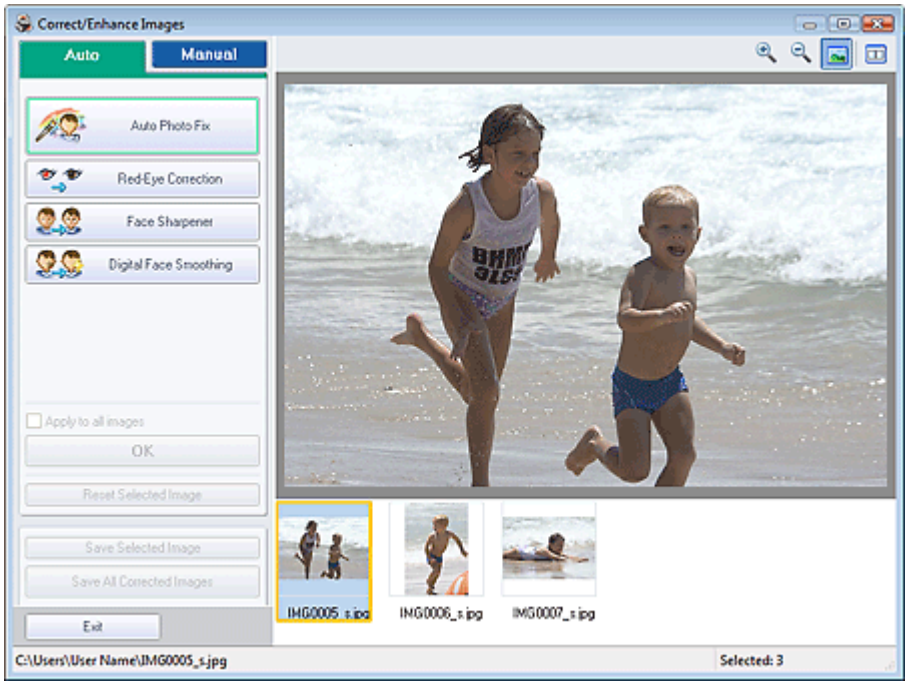
Apply optimum corrections automatically to the photos used for an album, calendar, etc.

Important

- The Auto Photo Fix function is not available for Photo Print. Photo Print allows you to automatically apply suitable corrections to all photos when printing, by selecting Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box. To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.
- Once image is corrected with Auto Photo Fix and saved, it cannot be corrected again with Auto Photo Fix.
  Also, Auto Photo Fix may not be available for images edited using an application, digital camera, etc. manufactured by other companies.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Auto Photo Fix, then click OK.

The entire photo is corrected automatically and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.
- Select the Prioritize Exif Info checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.
  Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

5. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for corrected images.

6. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Red-Eye Correction Function

You can correct red eyes caused by a camera flash.

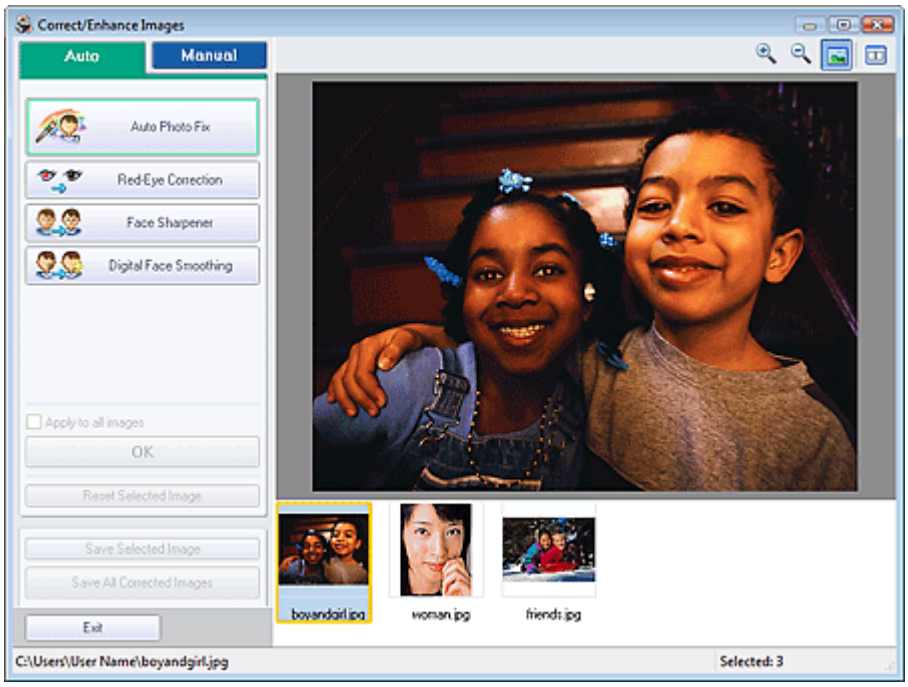
You can perform the Red-Eye Correction function either automatically or manually.

Note

- Photo Print allows you to automatically correct red eyes when printing. To correct automatically, select Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and select the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

Auto Correction

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Red-Eye Correction.

5. Click OK.

   Red eyes are corrected and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Important

- Areas other than the eyes may be corrected depending on the image.

Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Correction

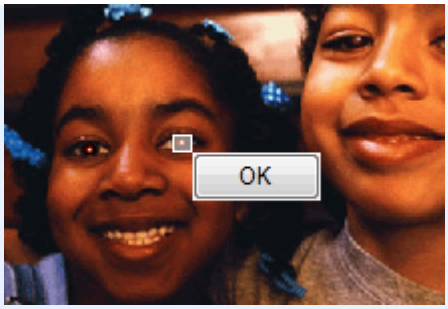
3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

4. Click Red-Eye Correction.

Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Red-Eye Correction.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to (Paintbrush).

5. Drag to select the red area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.



Red eye is corrected and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for corrected images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Face Brightener Function

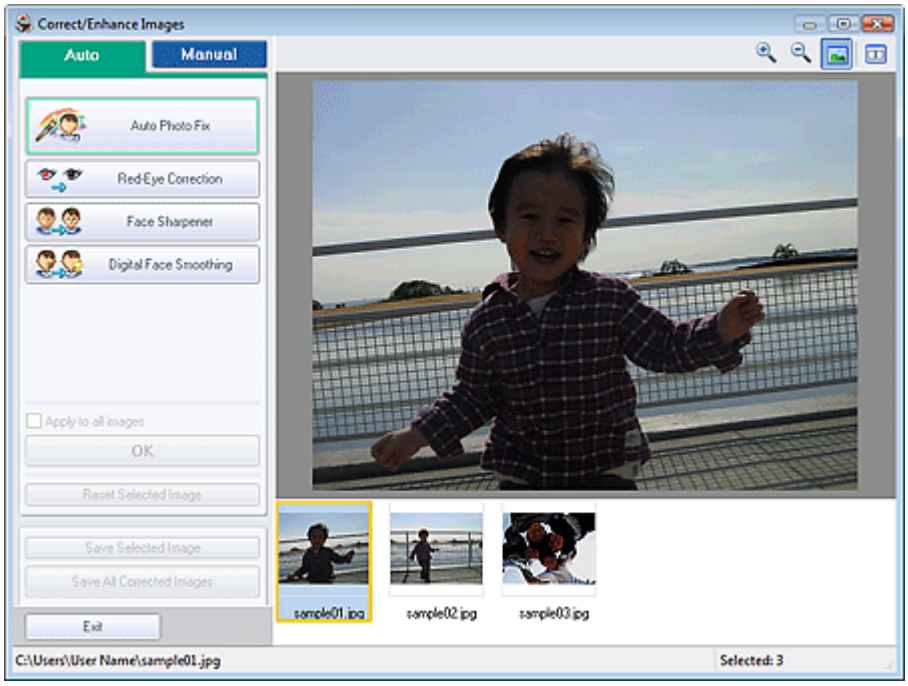
You can brighten dark faces caused by bright background.

Note

- You can brighten dark photos caused by bright background automatically by selecting Auto Photo Fix.
  If the correction had not been made sufficiently, applying Face Brightener function is recommended.
  Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

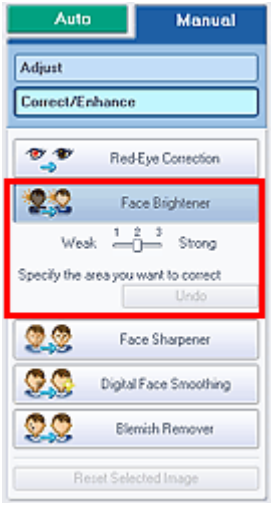
The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

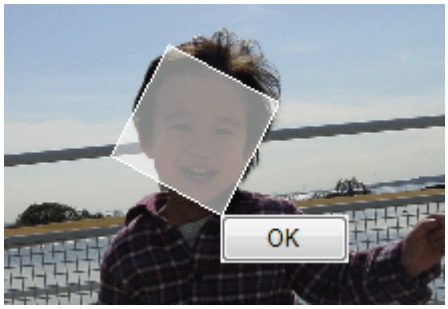
4. Click Face Brightener.



Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Brightener.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to + (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.



The entire image is corrected so that the selected area containing the face becomes brighter, and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for corrected images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

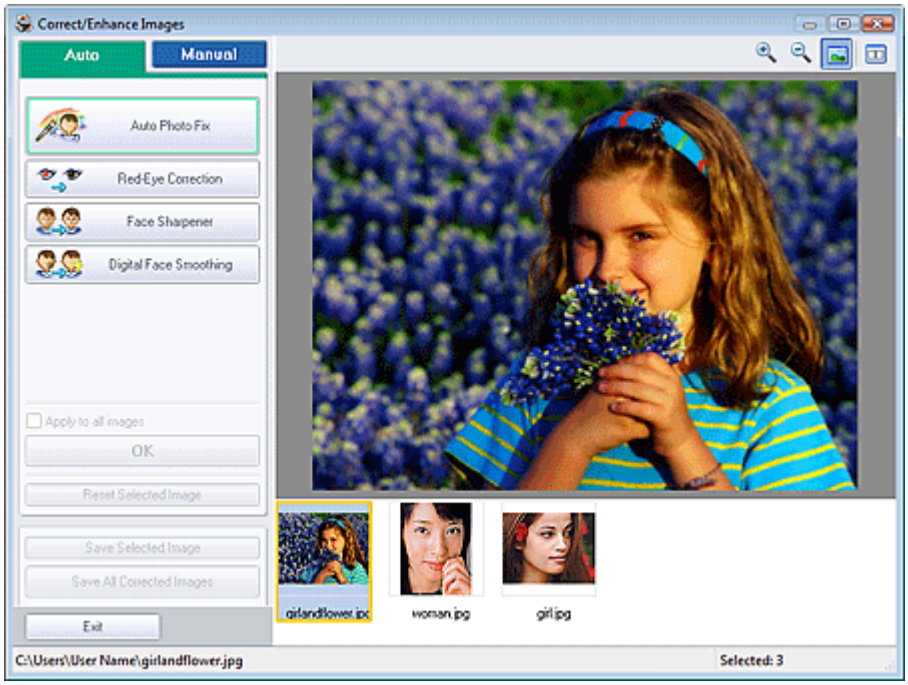
Using the Face Sharpener Function

You can sharpen out-of-focus faces in a photo.

You can perform the Face Sharpener function either automatically or manually.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

   The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

   The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

Auto Correction

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Face Sharpener.

Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Sharpener.

5. Click OK.

The face is sharpened and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Correction

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

4. Click Face Sharpener.

Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Sharpener.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.

The facial area in and around the selected area is sharpened and the (Correction/ Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for corrected images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function

You can enhance skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

You can perform the Digital Face Smoothing function either automatically or manually.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

   The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.

Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to enhance from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

   The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

Auto Enhancement

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Digital Face Smoothing.

Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Digital Face Smoothing.

5. Click OK.

Skin is enhanced beautifully and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

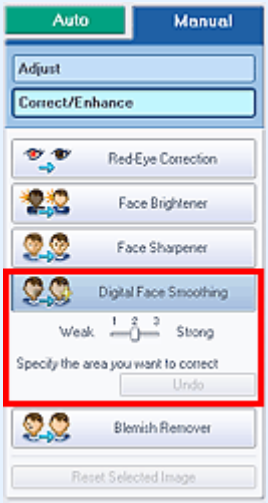
Note

- Click (Compare) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the enhancement operation.
- If you want to apply the enhancement to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Enhancement

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

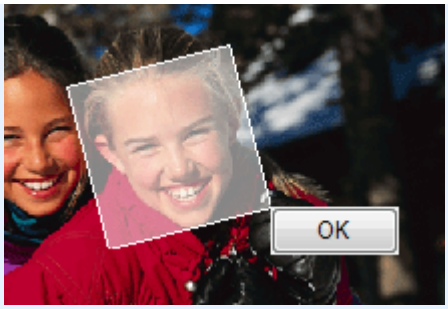
4. Click Digital Face Smoothing.



Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Digital Face Smoothing.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.



Skin in and around the selected area is enhanced beautifully and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding enhancement operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for enhanced images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving enhanced images.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Blemish Remover Function

You can remove moles.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

   The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.

Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to enhance from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

   The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

4. Click Blemish Remover.

Note

- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to + (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.

Moles in and around the selected area are removed and the (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click Undo to undo the preceding enhancement operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for enhanced images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving enhanced images.

Page top

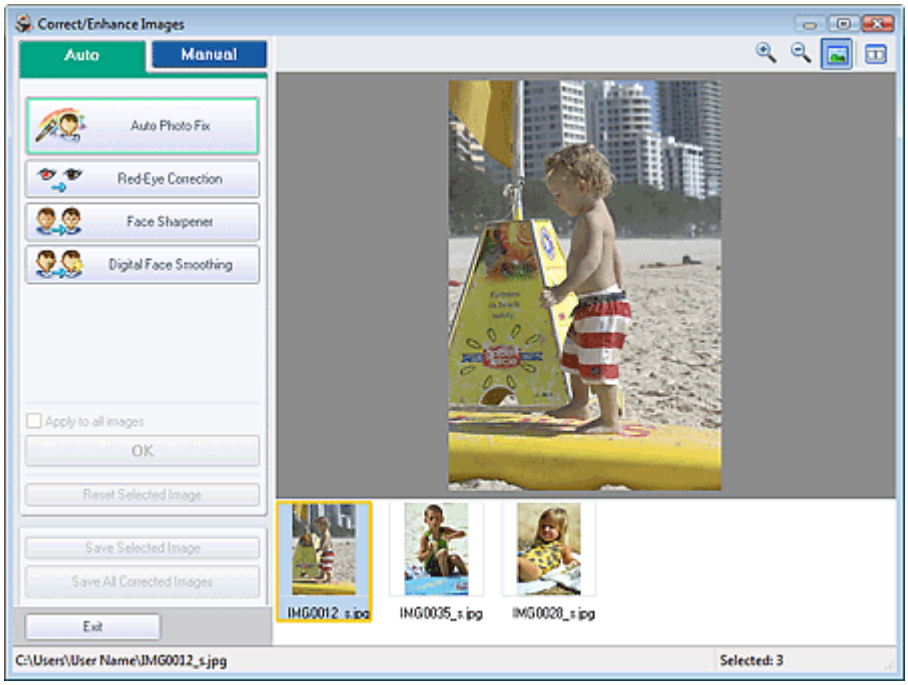
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Adjusting Images

You can make fine adjustments to the overall brightness, contrast, etc. of images.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to adjust from the list displayed in the lower part of the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail does not appear below Preview.

3. Click Manual, then click Adjust.

4. Move the slider of the item you want to adjust and set the effect level.

The following adjustments are available:

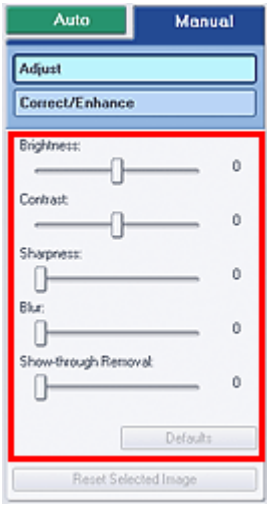
Brightness

Contrast

Sharpness

Blur

Show-through Removal



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments.

5. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save adjusted images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif file format is available for adjusted images.

6. Click Exit.

Important

- The adjustments will be lost if you exit before saving adjusted images.

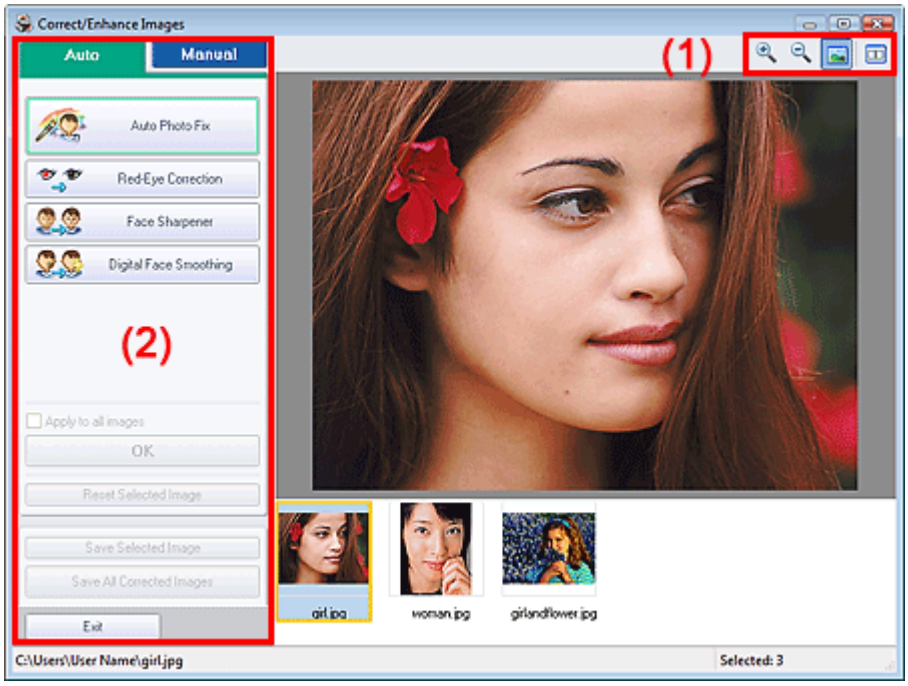
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Correct/Enhance Images Window

You can correct/enhance images in this window.

To display the Correct/Enhance Images window, click (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Select Images or Edit screen, or in the Layout/Print screen of Photo Print.



(1)Toolbar

Toolbar

(Zoom In/Zoom Out)

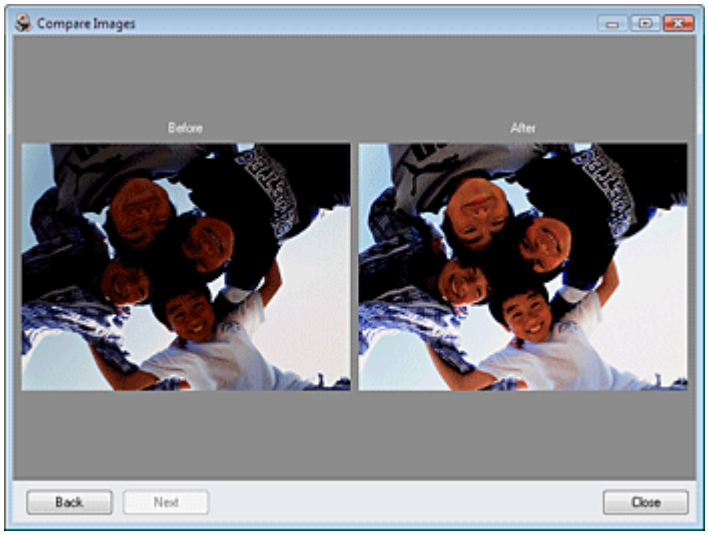
Displays the enlarged or reduced preview of the page.

(Full Screen)

Displays the entire image in Preview.

(Compare)

Displays the Compare Images window. You can compare the images before and after the correction/enhancement side by side.
The image before the correction/enhancement is displayed on the left, and the image after the correction/enhancement is displayed on the right.



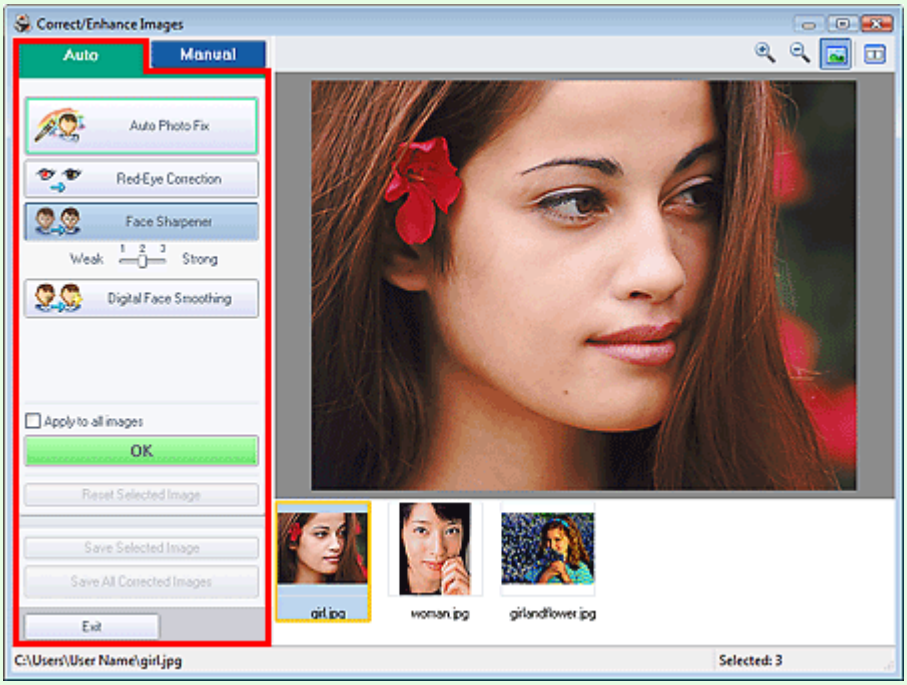
(2)Task Area

Available tasks and settings may vary between the Auto and Manual tabs.

Click Auto or Manual to display the corresponding tab.

Auto Tab

Select to correct automatically.



Auto Photo Fix

Applies automatic corrections suitable for photos.

Important

- The Auto Photo Fix function is not available for Photo Print. Photo Print allows you to automatically apply suitable corrections to all photos when printing. Select this option in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box. To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Prioritize Exif Info

Select this checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of

shooting.
Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

Note

- Exif is a standard format for embedding various shooting data in digital camera images (JPEG).
- For Photo Print, you can apply suitable corrections based on Exif information automatically by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and selecting the Prioritize Exif Info checkbox.

Red-Eye Correction

Corrects red eyes.

Note

- For Photo Print, you can also correct red eyes by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and selecting the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox.

Face Sharpener

Sharpens out-of-focus faces.
You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Digital Face Smoothing

Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.
You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Apply to all images

Automatically corrects all the images displayed in the list.

OK

Applies the selected effect to the selected image or all images.

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the selected image in the list that applied corrections and enhancements.

Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the images that applied corrections and enhancements displayed in the list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

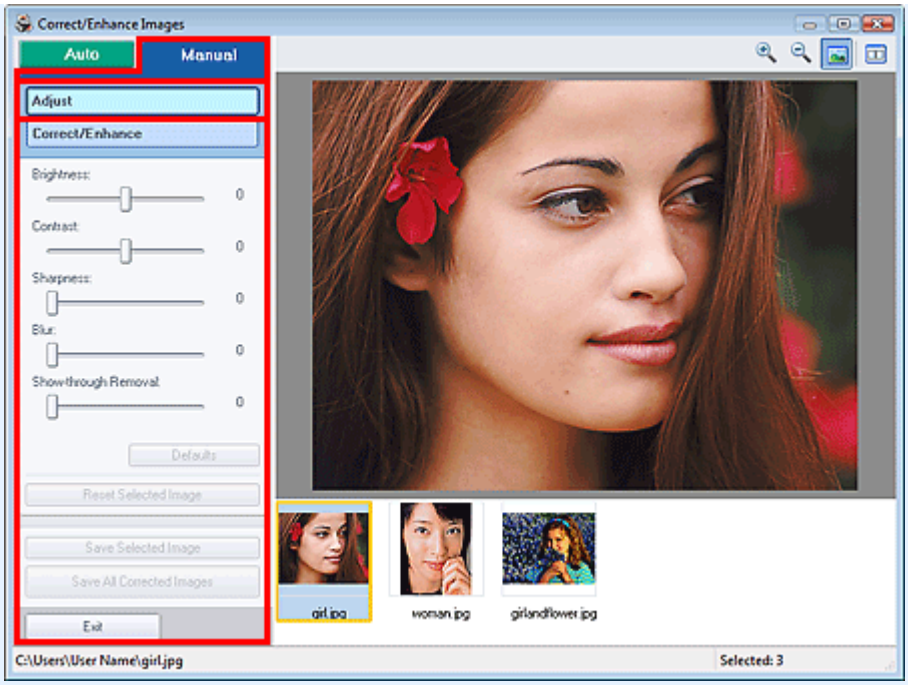
Manual Tab

Select to correct manually.

Use Adjust to adjust brightness and contrast, or to sharpen the entire image.

Use Correct/Enhance to correct/enhance specific areas.

Adjust



Brightness

Adjusts the overall image brightness.
Move the slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

Contrast

Adjusts the contrast of the image. Adjust the contrast when the image is flat due to lack of contrast.
Move the slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

Sharpness

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image. Adjust the sharpness when the photo is out of focus or text is blurred.
Move the slider to the right to sharpen the image.

Blur

Blurs the outline of the subjects to soften the image.
Move the slider to the right to soften the image.

Show-through Removal

Removes show-through of text from the reverse side or removes the base color. Adjust the show-through level to prevent text on the reverse side of thin document or the base color of the document from appearing on the image.
Move the slider to the right to increase the show-through removal effect.

Defaults

Resets each adjustment (brightness, contrast, sharpness, blur, and show-through removal).

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all adjustments applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the selected image in the list that applied adjustments.

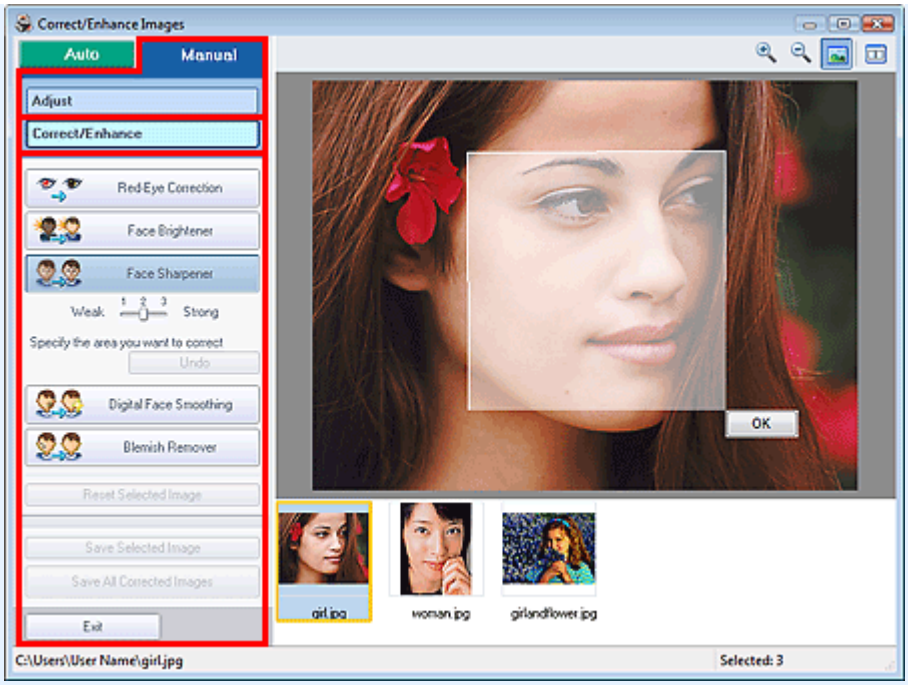
Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the images that applied adjustments displayed in the list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Correct/Enhance



Red-Eye Correction

Corrects red eyes.
You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to. You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Note

- For Photo Print, red eyes are automatically corrected when Enable Auto Photo Fix is selected in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox is selected. To disable the automatic correction, deselect the checkbox.

Face Brightener

Corrects the entire image so that the selected facial area is brightened.
You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Face Sharpener

Sharpens out-of-focus faces.
You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to. You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Digital Face Smoothing

Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.
You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to. You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Blemish Remover

Removes moles.
You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to.

OK

Applies the selected effect to the specified area.

Undo

Cancels the latest correction/enhancement.

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the selected image in the list that applied corrections and enhancements.

Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the images that applied corrections and enhancements displayed in the list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Page top

Questions and Answers

- How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?
- How Do I Print with Even Margins?
- What Is "C1" or "C4"?

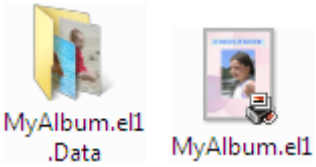
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

If you want to move (or copy) a file created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX from one folder to another, you need to move (or copy) the folder that was automatically created when originally saving that file as well.

For example, when you save a file named "MyAlbum.el1," a folder named "MyAlbum.el1.Data" is automatically created in the same folder that contains the "MyAlbum.el1" file. If you want to move (or copy) the "MyAlbum.el1" file to another folder, move (or copy) the "MyAlbum.el1.Data" folder as well. The "MyAlbum.el1.Data" folder contains the photos used in the album.



Note

- The icons may vary depending on the items.

Important

- Do not change the Data folder name; otherwise you will not be able to display the photos you edited with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?

As shown below, printing starts from the left side of the image displayed in the Layout/Print screen.

Outputs the paper in the direction as the arrow indicates.

See your printer manual for details on how to load paper (to print on the front/back, etc.).

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

How Do I Print with Even Margins?

When you print on a bordered layout, the margins on the left and right or the top and bottom may become wider than the other, depending on the image and printer.

To always print with even margins, select the Always crop images when selecting a layout with margins checkbox on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Crop the photo to apply even margins individually.

Cropping Photos (Photo Print)

Note

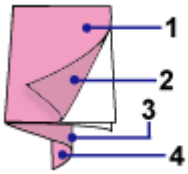
- This setting is available for Photo Print only.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

What Is "C1" or "C4"?

When an album is printed, labels such as "C1" and "C4" are printed as page numbers.
The "C1" and "C4" represent the front cover and back cover, respectively.



C1: Front cover

C2: Inside the front cover

C3: Inside the back cover

C4: Back cover

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Photo Print Settings

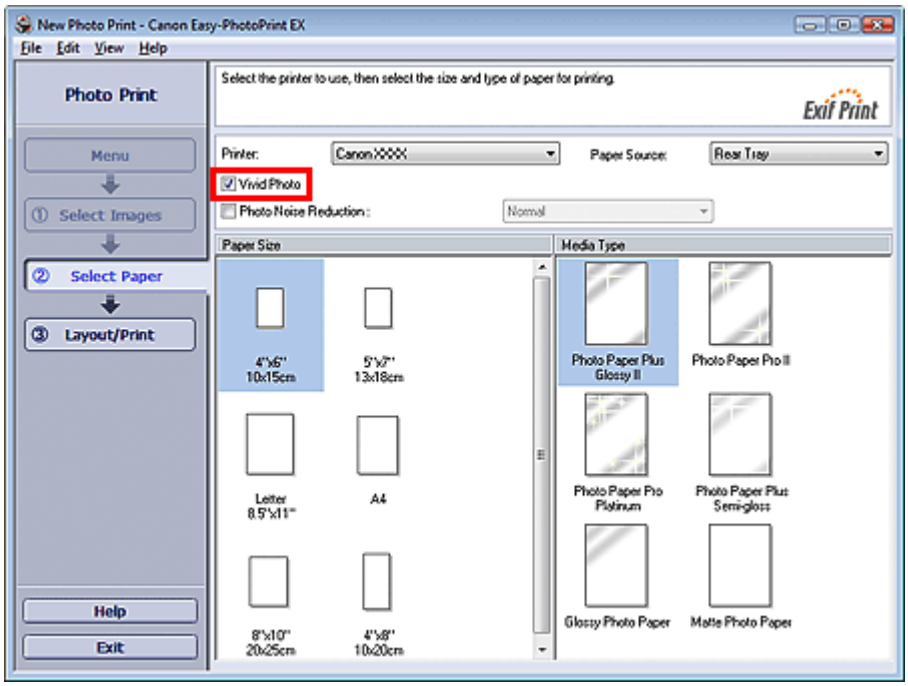
- Printing Vivid Photos
- Reducing Photo Noise
- Cropping Photos (Photo Print)
- Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)
- Printing Multiple Photos on One Page
- Printing an Index
- Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)
- Printing Photo Information
- Saving Photos
- Opening Saved Files

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Vivid Photos

Select the Vivid Photo checkbox in the Select Paper screen to boost the colors in a photo before printing.



Important

- This function is available only with a printer that supports Vivid Photo.
- This function is not available when Enable ICC Profile is selected on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- Even if you select the Vivid Photo checkbox, this effect applies only to the print result. The original image or preview image will not be affected.

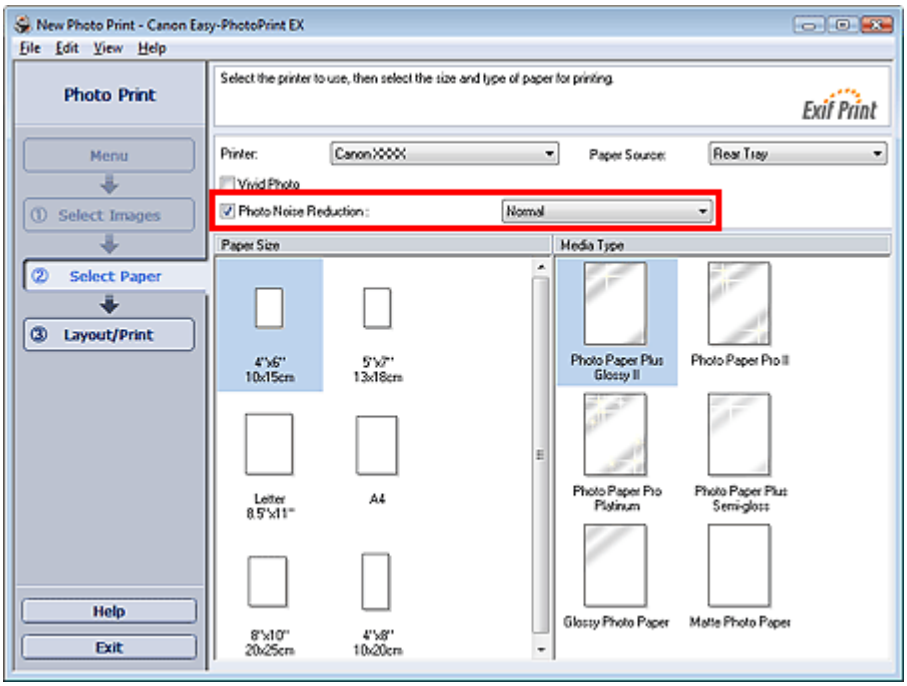
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Reducing Photo Noise

When a photo is taken in a dark location such as night scene using digital camera, noise may appear in the image.

Select the Photo Noise Reduction checkbox in the Select Paper screen to reduce noise in the image and make the printed photos more vivid.



Important

- This function is not available when Enable ICC Profile is selected on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- When the noise is severe, change Normal to Strong.
- The noise reduction effect applies only to the print result. The original image or preview image will not be affected.

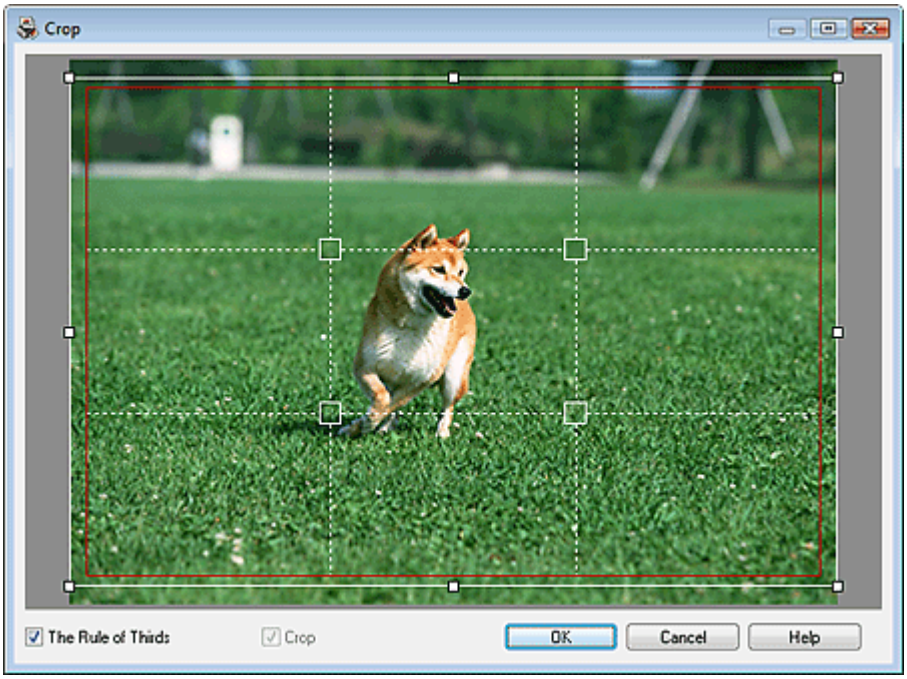
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Cropping Photos (Photo Print)

Cropping a photo is the act of removing the unnecessary portions of the photo by selecting the necessary portions.

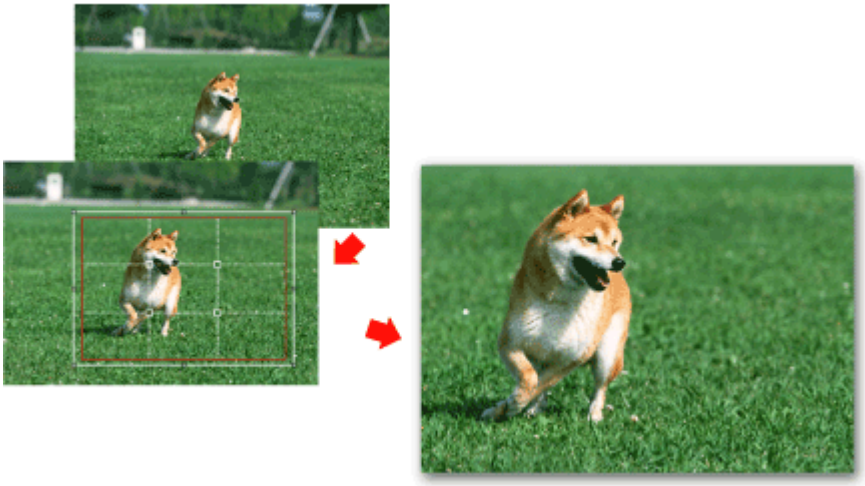
Click (Crop Image) in the Layout/Print screen or double-click the preview image.



Move the white frame to the portion to print and click OK.

Note

- To move the cropping area, place the cursor within the white frame and drag it. Drag the white lines to enlarge/reduce the cropping area.
- Select the The Rule of Thirds checkbox to display white broken lines. To create a balanced composition, drag any of the intersecting points (white squares) or white broken lines over the main subject of the photo.



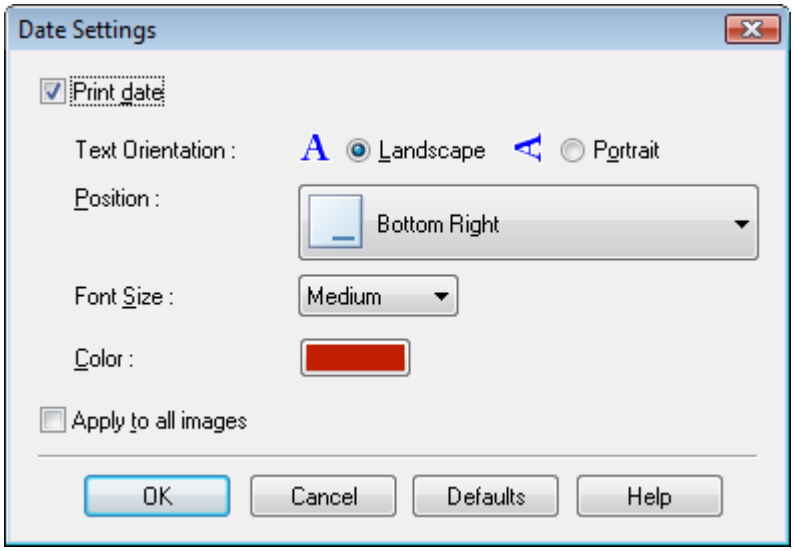
- The cropping effect applies only to the print result. The original image will not be cropped.
- See Help for details on the Crop window.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)

To print the date the photo was taken on the photo, click (Date Settings) in the Layout/Print screen, then select the Print date checkbox in the Date Settings dialog box.



Note

- The date is displayed in the short date format (mm/dd/yyyy, etc.) specified in your operating system.
- See Help for details on setting dates.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Multiple Photos on One Page

You can print multiple photos on one page by selecting a multiple-photo layout in the Layout/Print screen.

Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
  Selecting a Photo
- The available number of photos and layout may vary depending on the media type.
- Photos are arranged in the following order.
  Example: Borderless (x4)

1	3
2	4

- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name and By Selection.
  To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

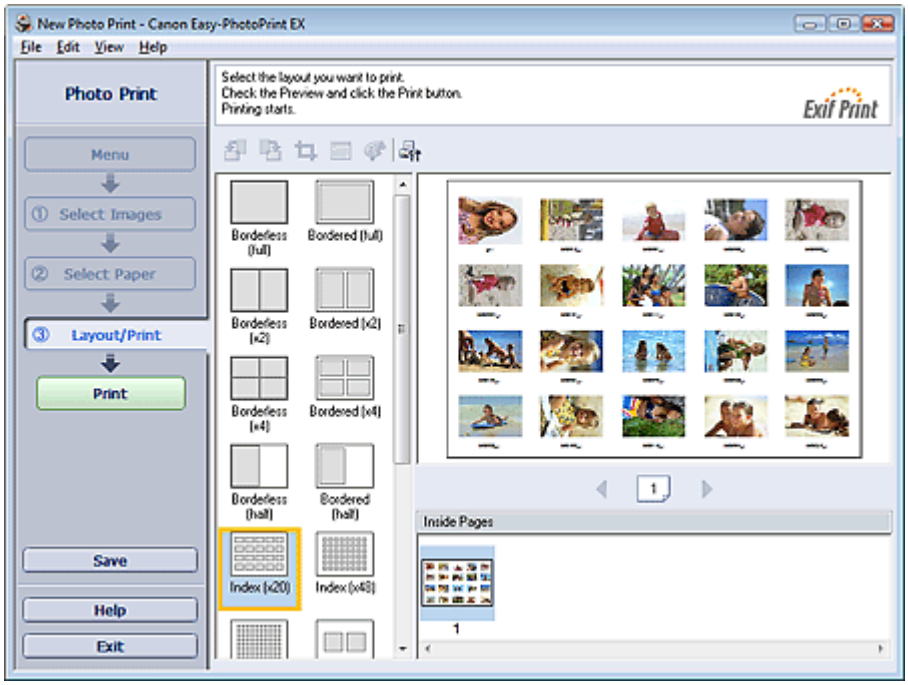
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing an Index

You can print an index of selected photos. An index print shows the thumbnails of the photos in one page. It is convenient for managing your photos.

To print an index, select Index from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



Important

- Index print will be disabled if you select any of the following paper sizes.
  - Credit Card
- You can print up to 80 images on one page.

Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
  Selecting a Photo
- Photos are arranged in the following order.
  Example: Index (x20)

1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20

- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box. You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name, and By Selection.

  To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

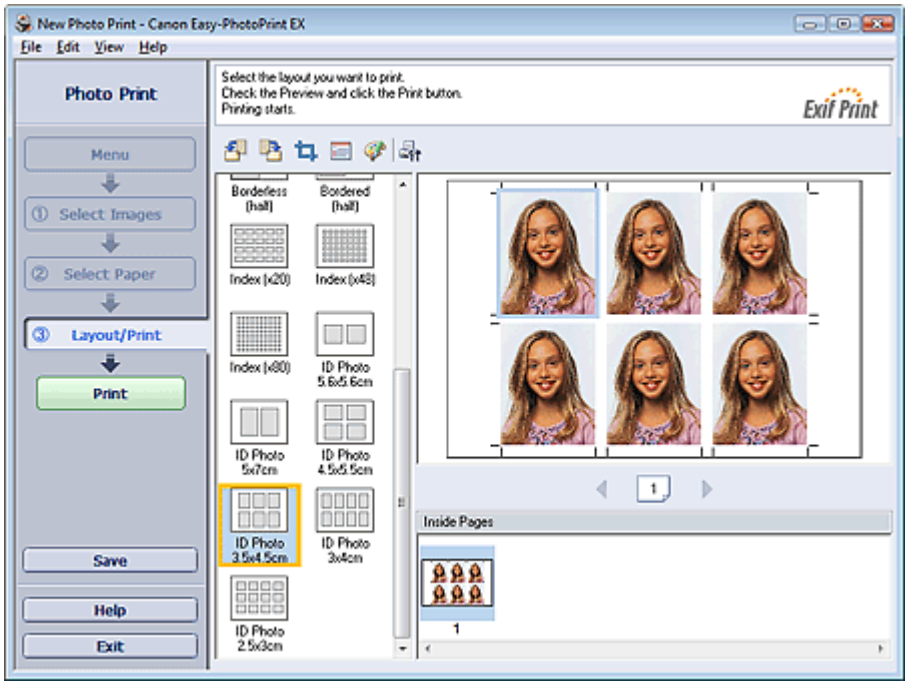
Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)

You can print a variety of ID photos.

Important

- The photo may not qualify as an official ID photo depending on its use.
  For details, contact the party to whom you will be submitting the photo.

To print ID photos, select 4"x6" 10x15cm for Paper Size in the Select Paper screen, and select a layout of the ID photo from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
  Selecting a Photo
- Photos are arranged in the following order.
  Example: ID Photo 3.5x4.5cm

- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name, and By Selection.

  To display the Preferences dialog box, click (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.
- ID photos can only be printed on 4"x6" 10x15cm paper.

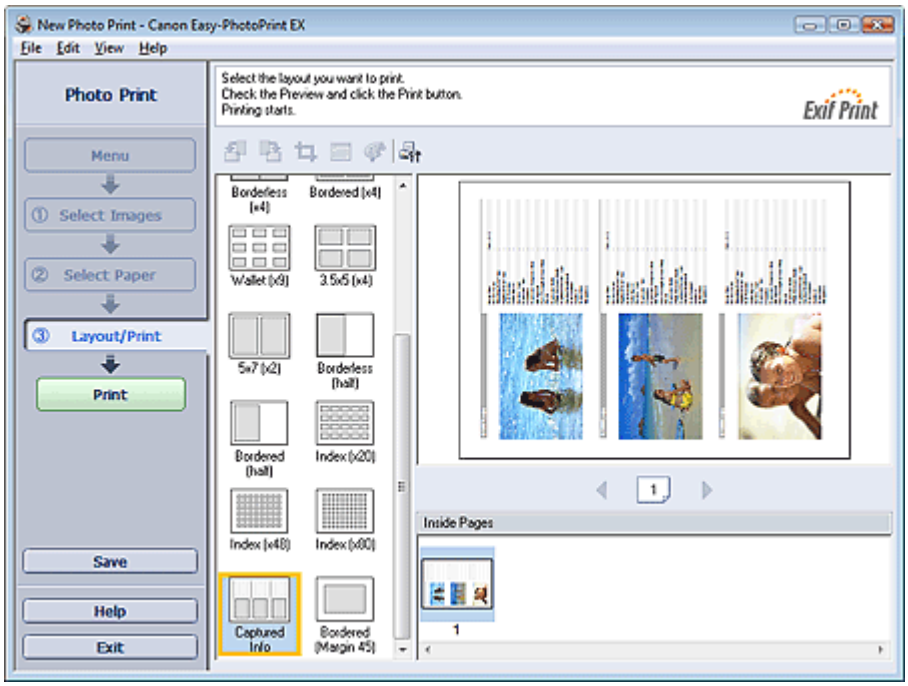
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Photo Information

You can print the photo and the Exif information side by side.

To print them, select Letter 8.5"x11" or A4 for Paper Size in the Select Paper screen, and select Captured Info from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
  Selecting a Photo
- This function is available only on paper sizes Letter 8.5"x11" and A4.

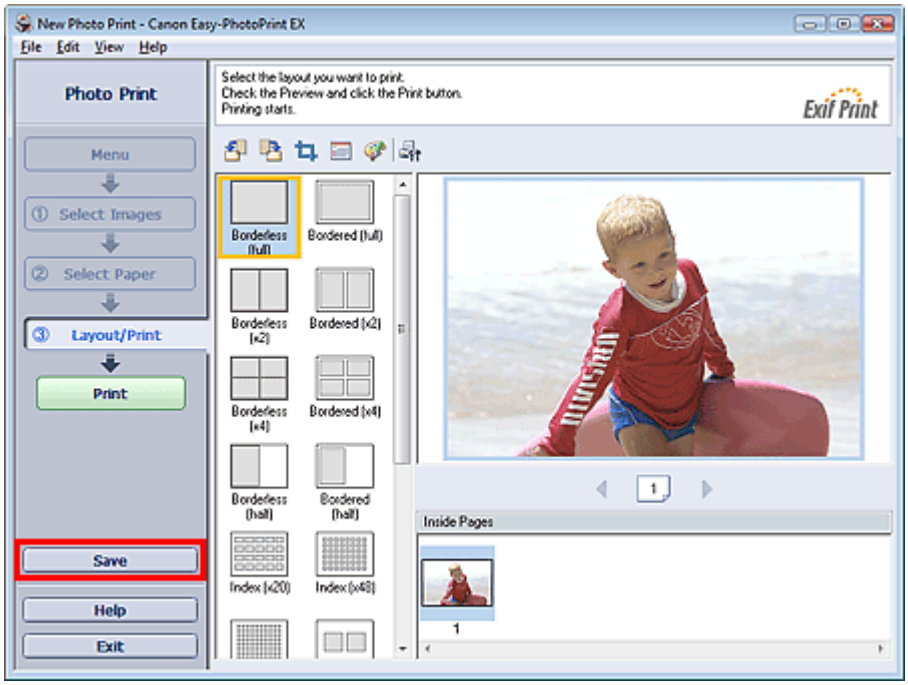
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Saving Photos

You can save edited photos. The information of cropping and layout can be saved.

Click Save in the Layout/Print screen.



When the Save As dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.

Important

- If you edit a saved file and save it again, the file will be overwritten.
  To save a file again with a new name or to a different location, select Save As... from the File menu and save.

Note

- Save will not be displayed in the Select Images or Select Paper screen.

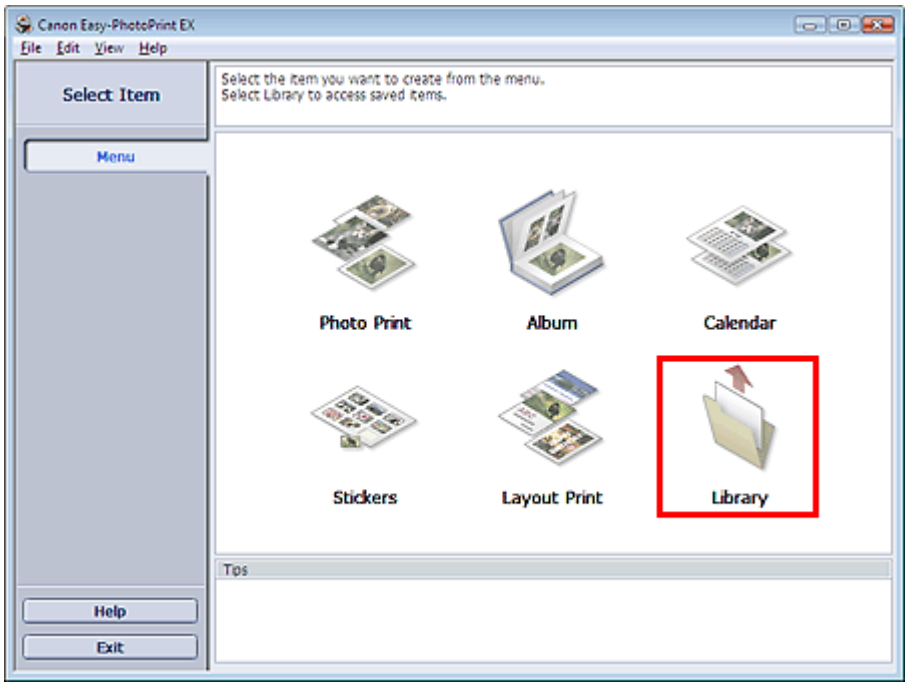
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Opening Saved Files

You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

1. Click Library from Menu.



The Open dialog box appears.
You can check files created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX by icon view (only for Windows Vista) or thumbnail view.

Important

- When using 64bit Edition of Windows Vista or Windows XP, the contents of files cannot be displayed on Explorer.

2. Select the file you want to open and click Open.

The Layout/Print screen appears.

Note

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports the following file format (extension).
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Photo Print file (.el6)

3. Edit the file if necessary.

Note

- You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX with the following methods, besides from Library in Menu.
  - Double-click or click the file.
  - From the File menu, click Open..., then select the file you want to edit.

- You can also open a recently used file by clicking the file name shown in the File menu.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Other Settings

- Changing Layout
- Changing Background
- Adding Photos
- Swapping Positions of Photos
- Replacing Photos
- Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- Cropping Photos
- Framing Photos
- Printing Dates on Photos
- Attaching Comments to Photos
- Adding Text to Photos
- Saving
- Setting Holidays
- Setting Calendar Display
- Opening Saved Files

Page top

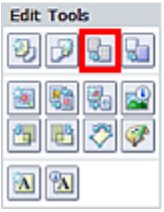
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

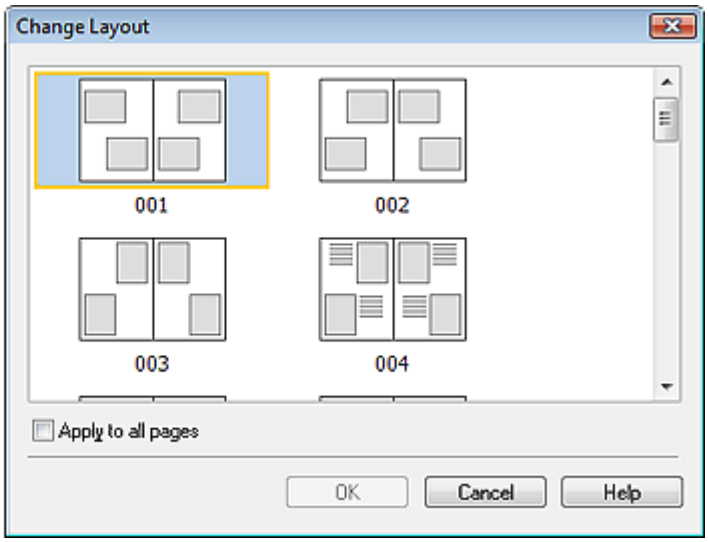
Changing Layout

You can change the layout of each page separately.

Select the page you want to change the layout of in the Edit screen, then click (Change Layout).
Select the layout you want to use in the Change Layout dialog box and click OK.

Album





Important

- If the new layout has a different number of frames per page from the current layout, the following will happen:

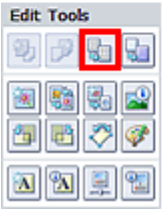
If the number of layout frames is increased	: Images will move from the subsequent pages to fill all the frames in the new layout.
If the number of layout frames is decreased	: Pages with the new layout will be added until all the images on the pages with the current layout can be fitted.

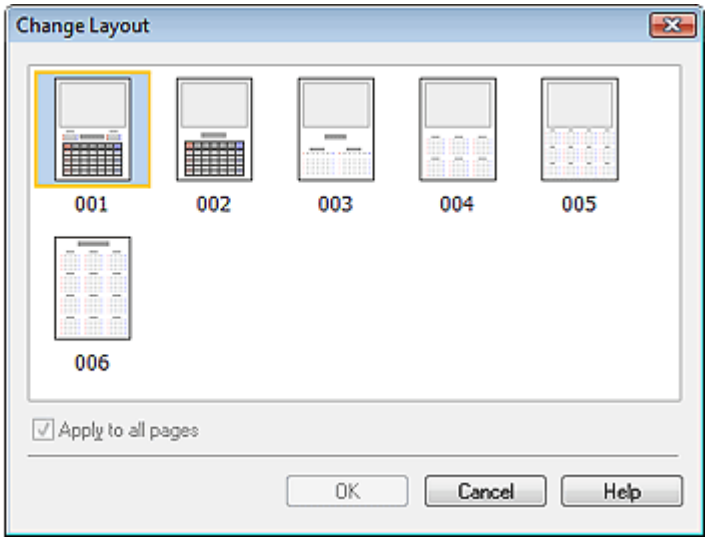
- If you change the current layout for the front or back cover to one that has fewer layout frames, any image that does not fit in the new layout will be deleted, starting with the last image that was added to the former layout page.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size, Orientation, or the type of page selected (front cover, inside pages or back cover).
- Select the Apply to all pages checkbox to change the layouts of all pages to the one you newly selected.

Calendar





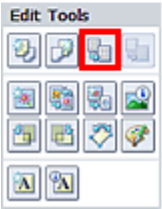
Important

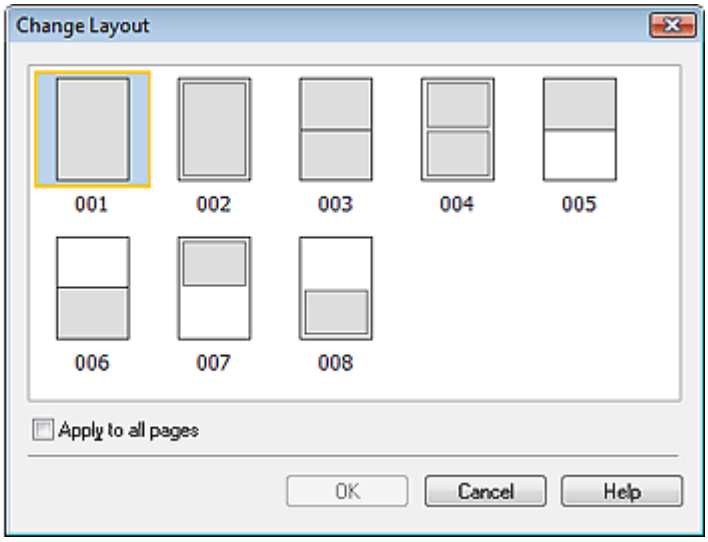
- The layouts of all pages are changed to the selected layout.
- All images that do not fit in the new layout will be collected on the last page.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size and Orientation.

Layout Print





Important

- If the new layout has a different number of frames per page from the current layout, the following will happen:

If the number of layout frames is increased	: Images will move from the subsequent pages to fill all the frames in the new layout.
If the number of layout frames is decreased	: Pages with the new layout will be added until all the images on the pages with the current layout can be fitted.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size and Orientation.
- Select the Apply to all pages checkbox to change the layouts of all pages to the one you newly selected.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Changing Background

You can change the background of each page.

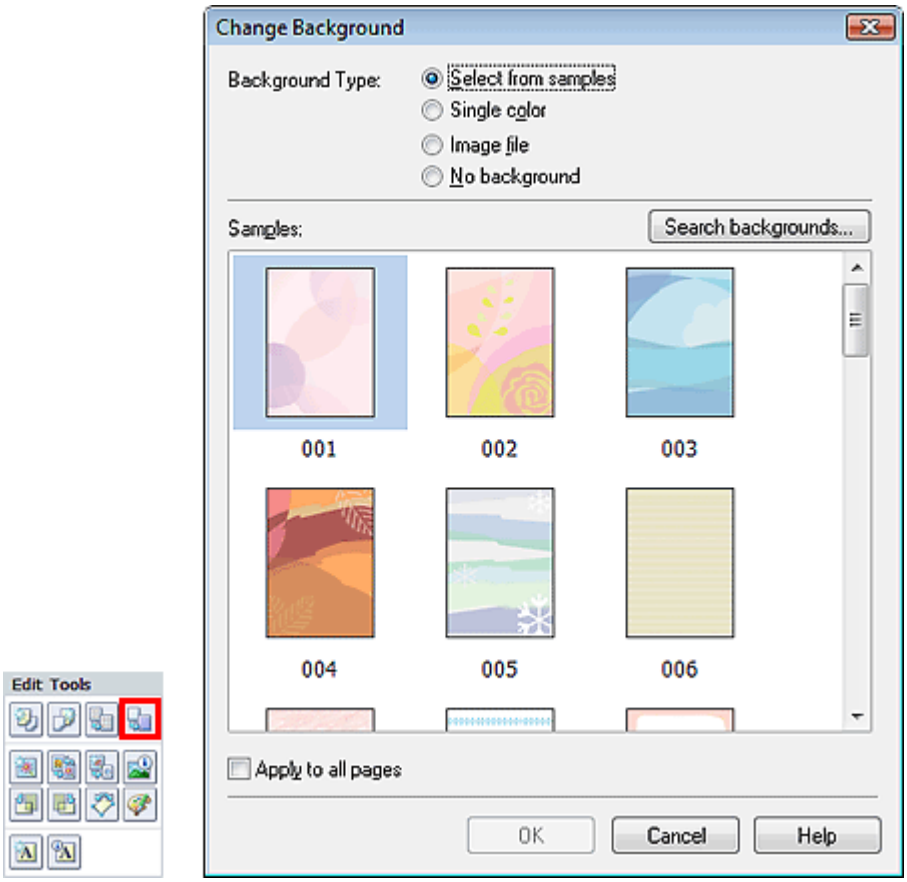
Important

- You cannot change the background of the Photo Print, Stickers, and Layout Print.

Click Background... in the Page Setup screen or select the page you want to change the background of in the Edit screen, then click (Change Background).

Note

- The screens for Album printing are used as examples in the following descriptions. The screens may vary depending on what you create.



Select the type of background you want to use in the Change Background dialog box.

When Select from samples is Selected

Select the image you want to use from Samples and click OK.

Note

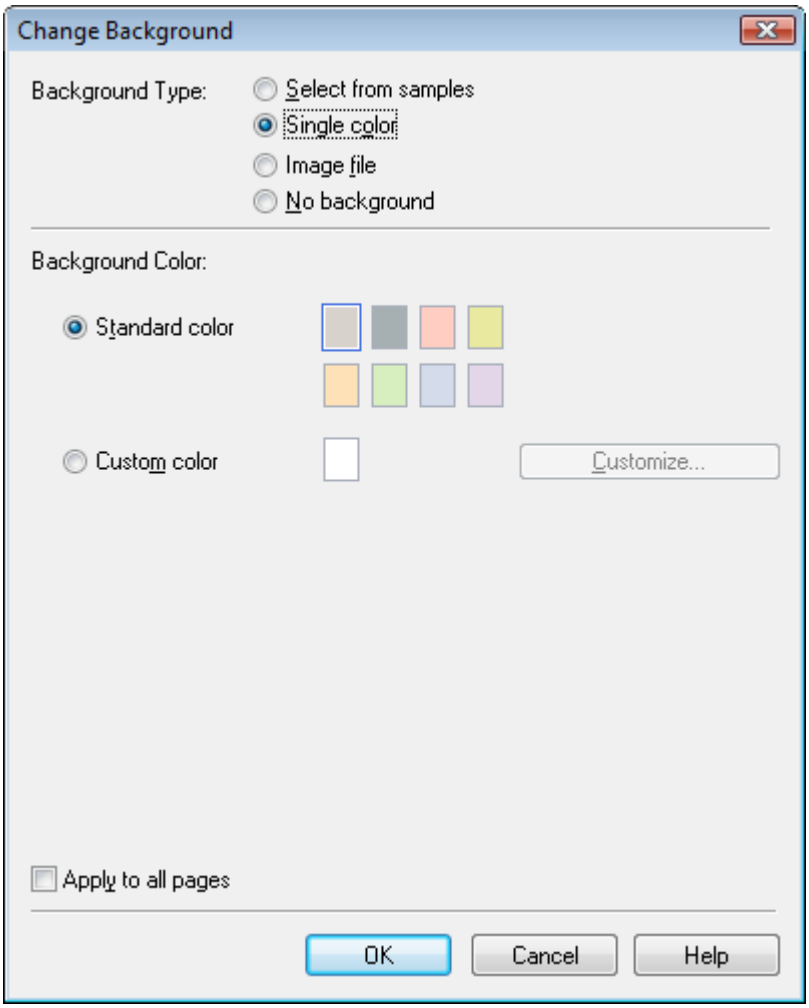
- Select from samples will be displayed only if Album has been selected.
- Various backgrounds are available on our website besides those saved in the application.

Click Search backgrounds... to access the Canon website from which you can download additional materials for free.

- Internet connection is required to access the website. Internet connection fees apply.
- This function may not be available in some regions.
- Exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX before installing backgrounds.

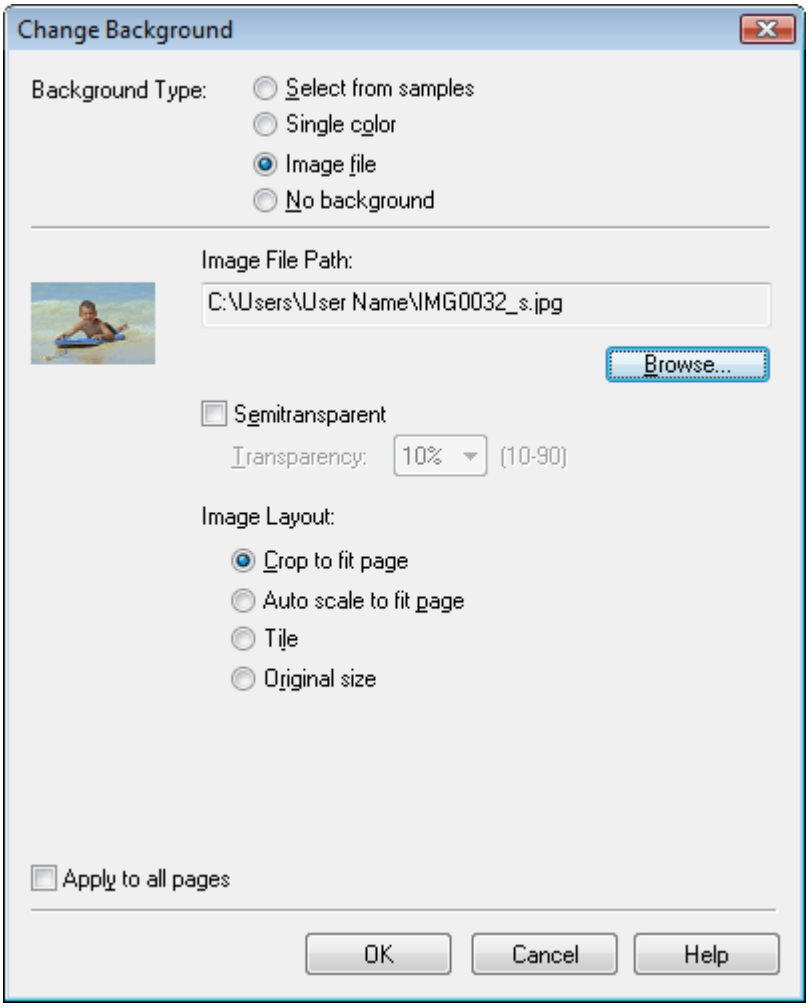
When Single color is Selected

Select the color you want to use from Standard color or Custom color and click OK.



When Image file is Selected

Set Image File Path and Image Layout, then click OK.



Note

- See Help for details on how to set the background in the Change Background dialog box.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

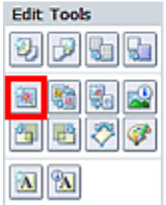
Adding Photos

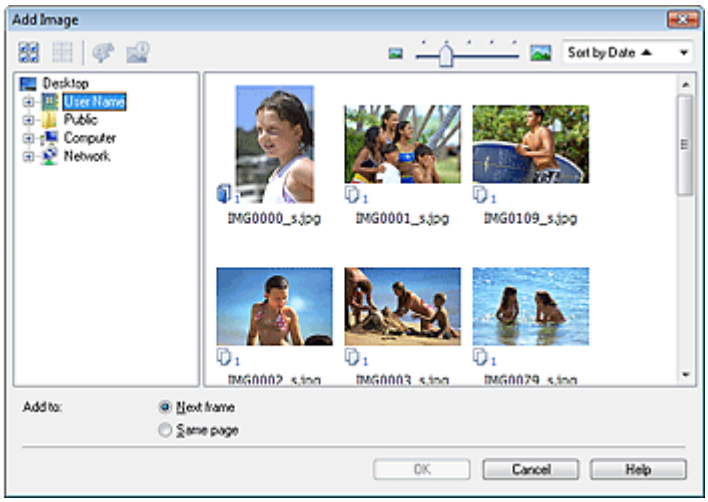
You can add images to pages.

Select the page you want to add photos in the Edit screen, then click (Add Image).

Note

- The screens for Album printing are used as examples in the following descriptions. The screens may vary depending on what you create.





Select the folder containing the image you want to add from the folder tree area on the left of the Add Image dialog box, and select the image you want to add from the thumbnail window on the right.

Note

- Click an image to select it (background turns blue) or deselect it (background turns white). You can also select multiple images.

Select an option for Add to and click OK.

Important

- You can add up to 20 images at one time to a single page.
- Up to 99 of the same images can be added to all pages combined.
- You cannot add two or more of the same image at one time. Add it one at a time.
- When the number of pages increases due to added images, you cannot add images beyond page 400.

Note

- In the Add Image dialog box, you can select all images at one time or change the display size and order of the thumbnails. See Help for details.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

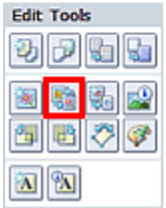
Swapping Positions of Photos

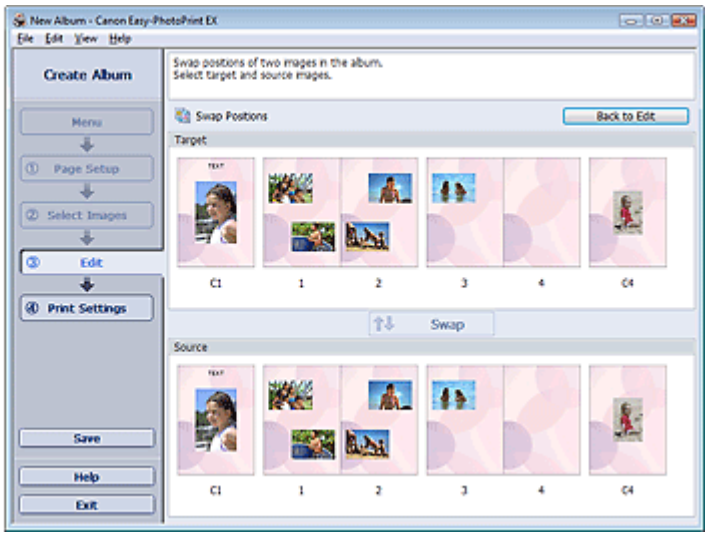
You can swap the positions of images.

Click (Swap Image Positions) in the Edit screen.

Note

- The screens for Album printing are used as examples in the following descriptions. The screens may vary depending on what you create.





Select the target and source images you want to swap, then click Swap.

When you finish swapping all images you want to swap, click Back to Edit.

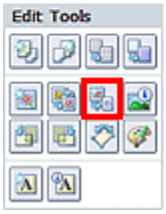
Page top

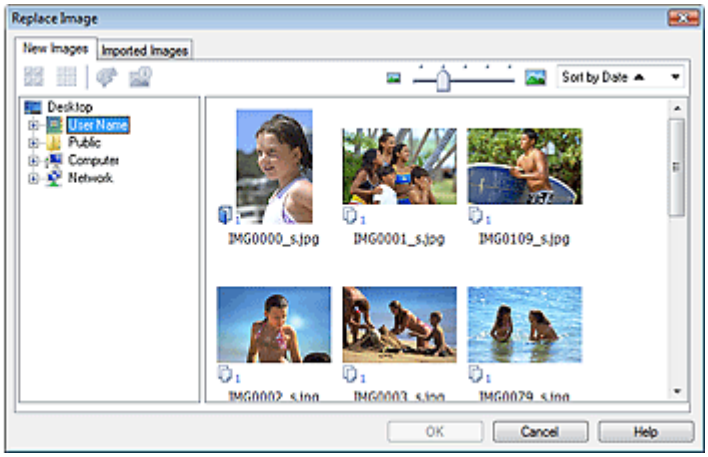
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Replacing Photos

You can replace an image with another image.

Select the image you want to replace in the Edit screen, then click (Replace Selected Image).





Select the folder containing the image you want to replace with from the folder tree area on the left of the Replace Image dialog box.

Select the image you want to replace with from the thumbnail window on the right of the screen and click OK.

If you want to select from the images already imported, click the Imported Images tab and select the image you want to replace with from the thumbnail window and click OK.

Important

- You cannot select multiple images in the Replace Image dialog box.

Note

- If you select multiple images in the Edit screen and use the replacement function, all the images selected in the Edit screen will be replaced with the image selected in the Replace Image dialog box.
- When images are replaced, the following settings of the old image are inherited to the new image.
  - Position
  - Size
  - Frame
  - Position and size of the date

  The cropping information and image orientation are not inherited.
- In the Replace Image dialog box, you can change the display size and order of the thumbnails. See Help for details.

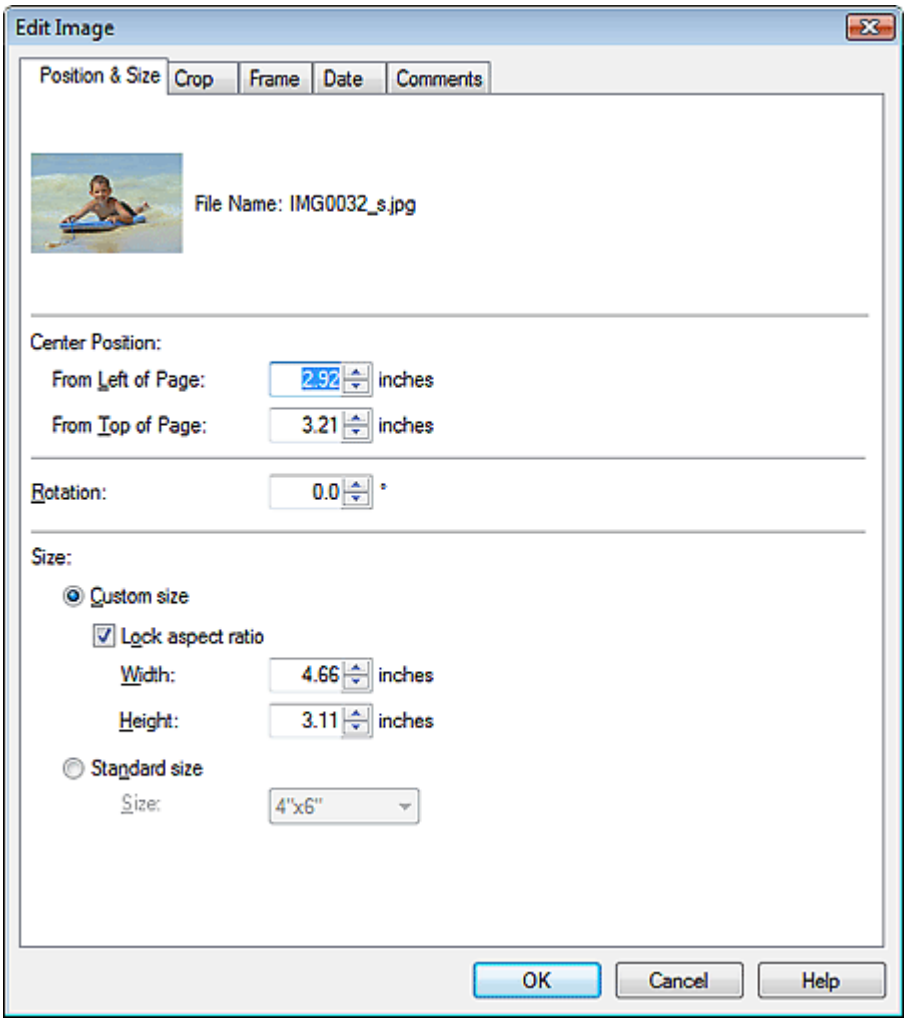
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos

You can adjust the position, angle and size of images.

Select the image of which you want to change the position or size in the Edit screen and click (Edit Image) or double-click the image.



Set the Center Position, Rotation and Size, then click OK.

Note

- You can also change the position and size of an image by dragging it in the Edit screen.
- Select an image in the Edit screen, then click (Free Rotate) and drag a corner of the image to rotate it.
- See Help for details on the position and size of images.

Page top

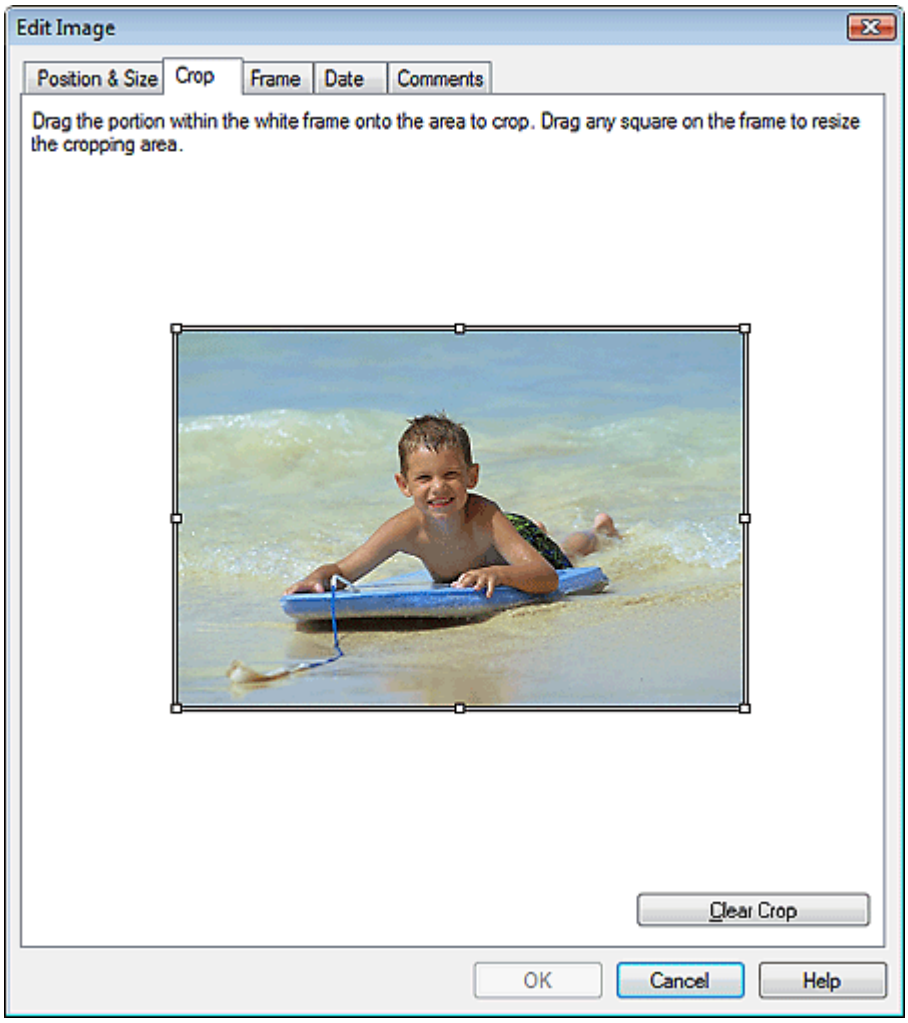
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Cropping Photos

Cropping an image is the act of removing the unnecessary portions of the image by selecting the necessary portions.

Select the image you want to crop in the Edit screen and click (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Crop tab in the Edit Image dialog box.



Drag the white squares on the image to change the area to be cropped and click OK.

Note

- See Help for details on cropping.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Framing Photos

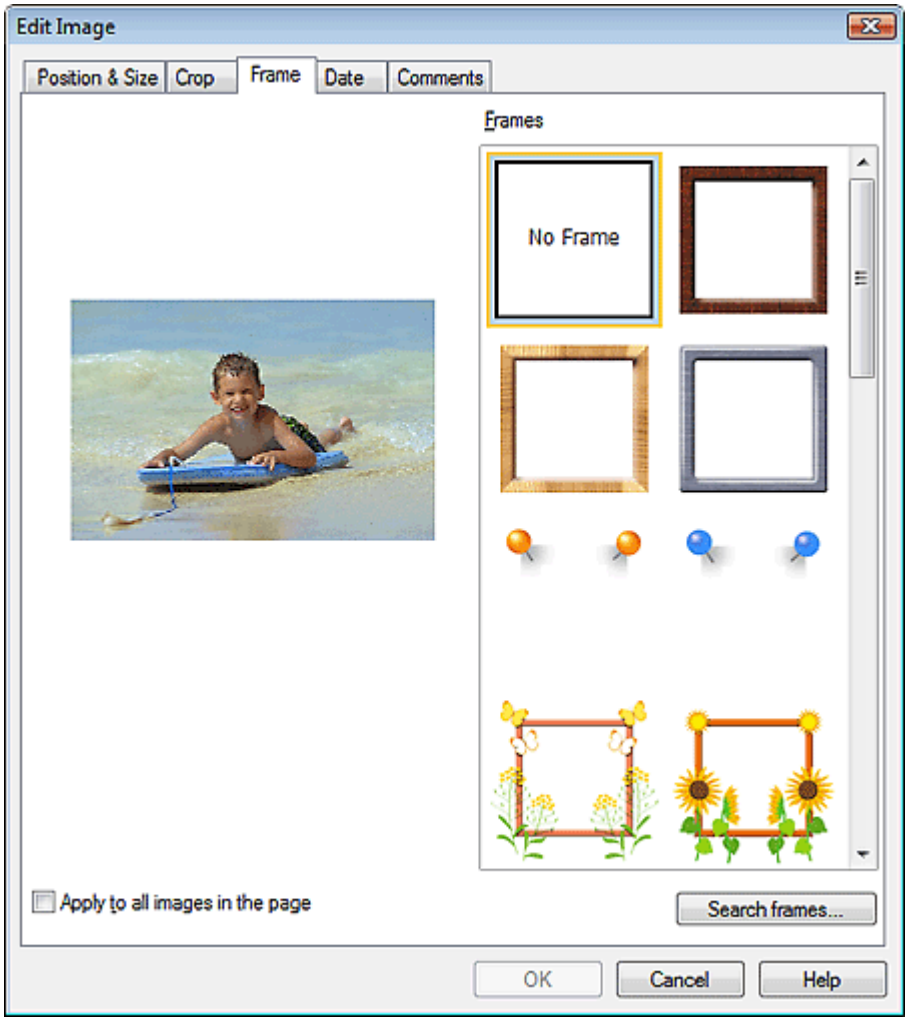
You can add frames to images.

Important

- You cannot add frames to images in Photo Print, Stickers, and Layout Print.

Select the image you want to frame in the Edit screen and click (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Frame tab in the Edit Image dialog box.



Select the frame you want to use from Frames and click OK.

Important

- You cannot print dates on framed photos.

Note

- Select the Apply to all images in the page checkbox to add the same frame to all the images on a

selected page at one time.

- Various frames are available on our website besides those saved in the application.
  Click Search frames... to access the Canon website from which you can download additional materials for free.
  - Internet connection is required to access the website. Internet connection fees apply.
  - This function may not be available in some regions.
  - Exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX before installing frames.
- Search frames... will be displayed only if Album has been selected.
- See Help for details on frames.

Page top

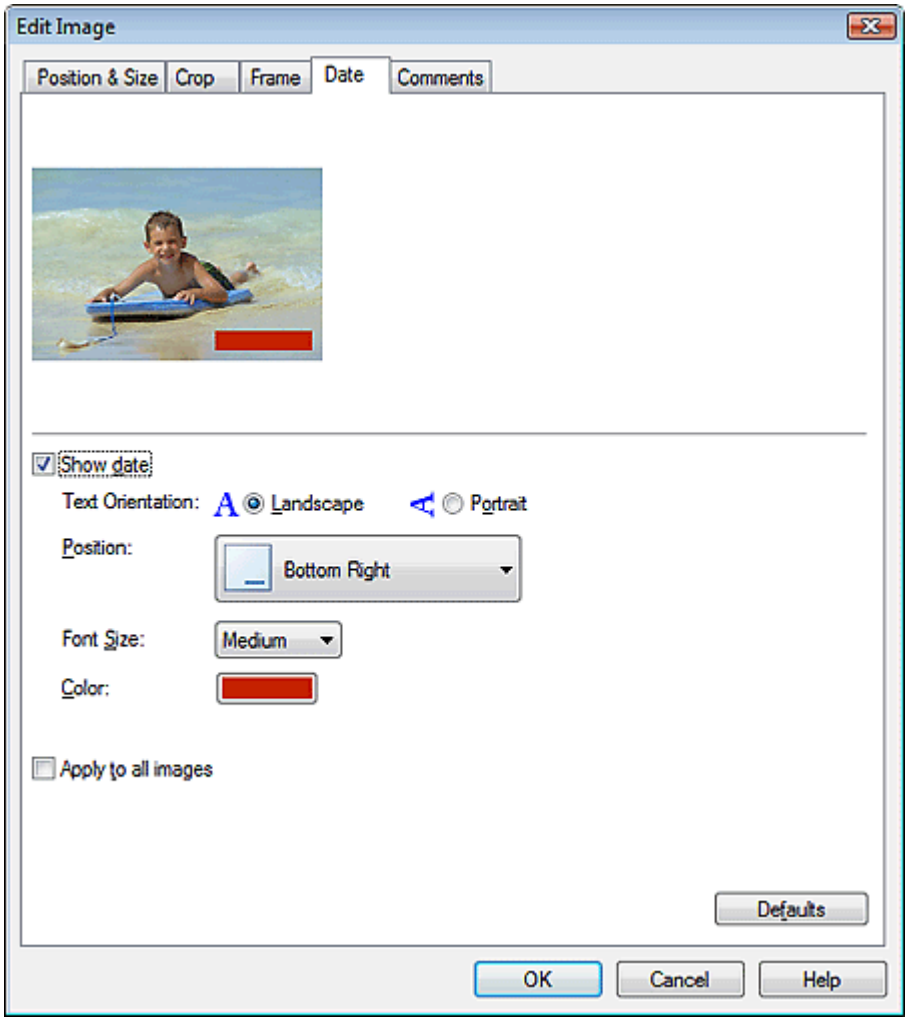
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Dates on Photos

You can print dates on images.

Select the image you want to print the date in the Edit screen and click (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Date tab in the Edit Image dialog box.



Select the Show date checkbox.

Set the Text Orientation, Position, Font Size and Color, then click OK.

Important

- You cannot print dates on framed images.

Note

- The date is displayed in the short date format (mm/dd/yyyy, etc.) specified in your operating system.
- See Help for details on setting dates.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Attaching Comments to Photos

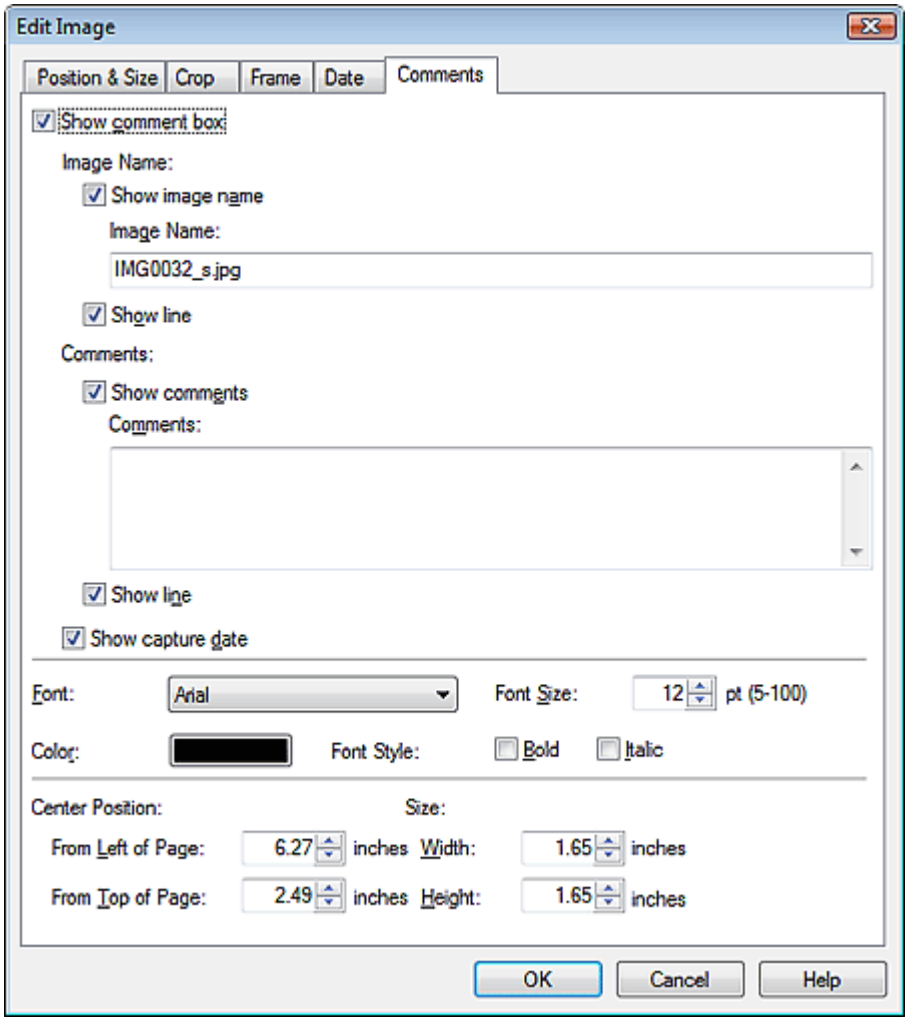
You can attach comments to images and display them in your album. The photo name, shooting date and comments are displayed (from top to bottom) in a comment box.

Important

- You cannot attach comments to Photo Print, Calendar, Stickers, and Layout Print.

Select the image you want to attach comments to in the Edit screen and click (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Comments tab in the Edit Image dialog box.



Select the Show comment box checkbox.

Select the checkboxes of the items you want to display, and enter comments.

Set the size and color of font, and position of the comments, etc., then click OK.

Note

- See Help for details on comments.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

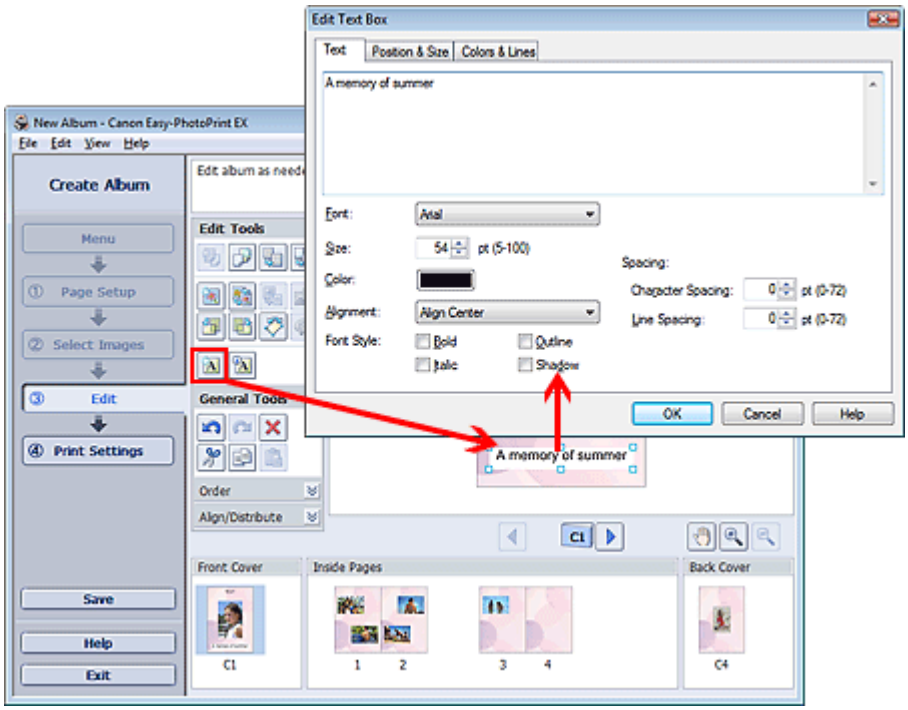
Adding Text to Photos

You can add text to photos.

Click (Add Text) in the Edit screen and drag the mouse over the area in which you want to add text.

Note

- The screens for Album printing are used as examples in the following descriptions. The screens may vary depending on what you create.



Select the Text tab in the Edit Text Box dialog box and enter text.

Note

- In the Edit Text Box dialog box, you can change the position, angle and size of the text. You can also set the color and line of the text box. See Help for details.
- To change the entered text, select it and click (Edit Text Box). The Edit Text Box dialog box appears. You can change the text.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

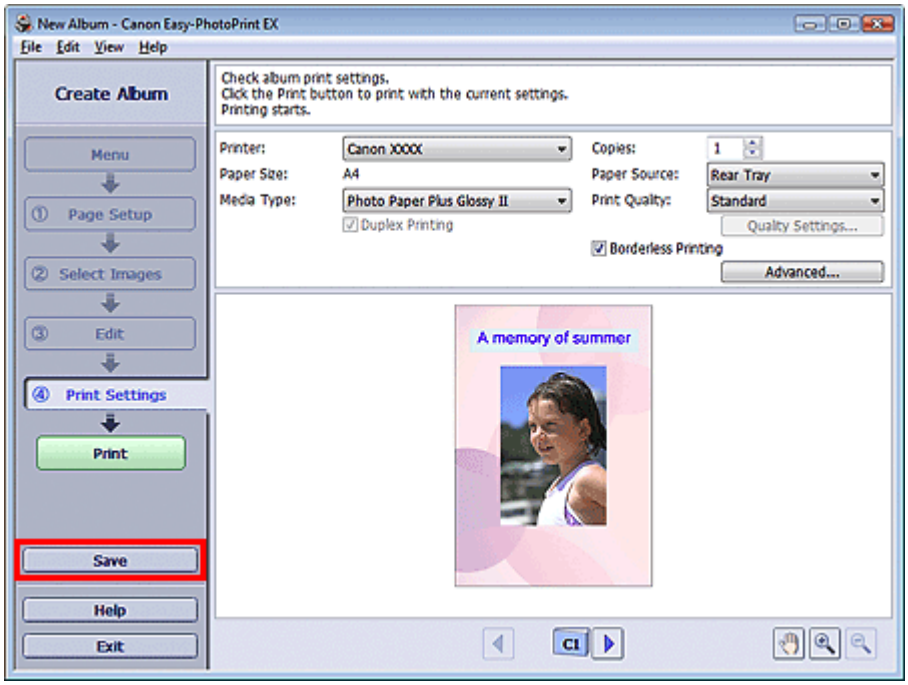
Saving

You can save edited items.

Click Save in the Edit or Print Settings screen.

Note

- The screens for Album printing are used as examples in the following descriptions. The screens may vary depending on what you create.



When the Save As dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.

Important

- If you edit a saved file and save it again, the file will be overwritten.
  To save a file again with a new name or to a different location, select Save As... from the File menu and save.

Note

- Save will not be displayed in the Page Setup or Select Images screen.

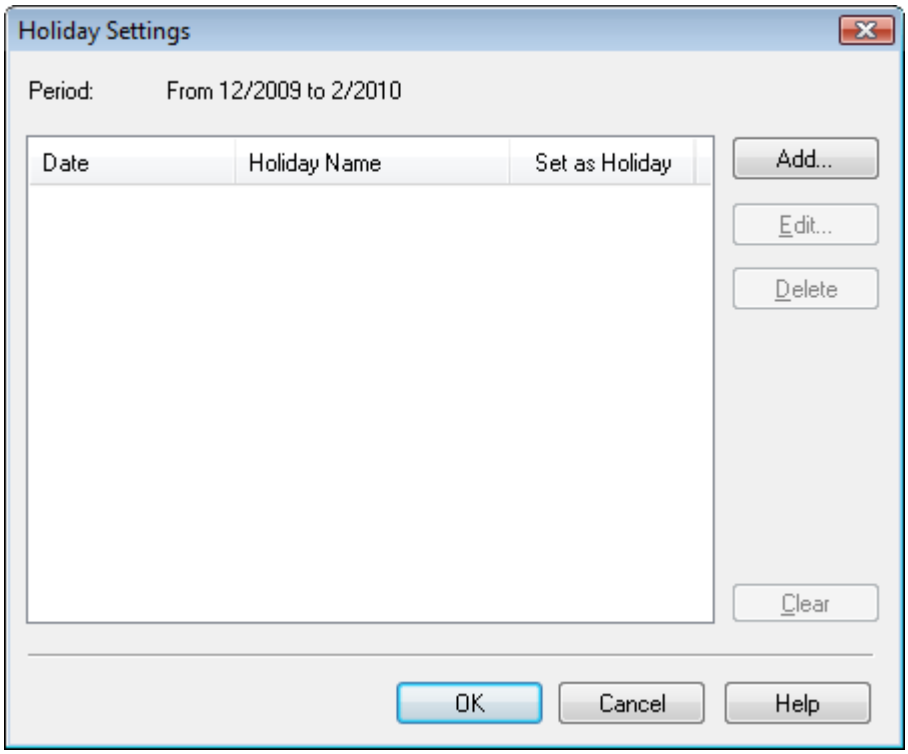
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Setting Holidays

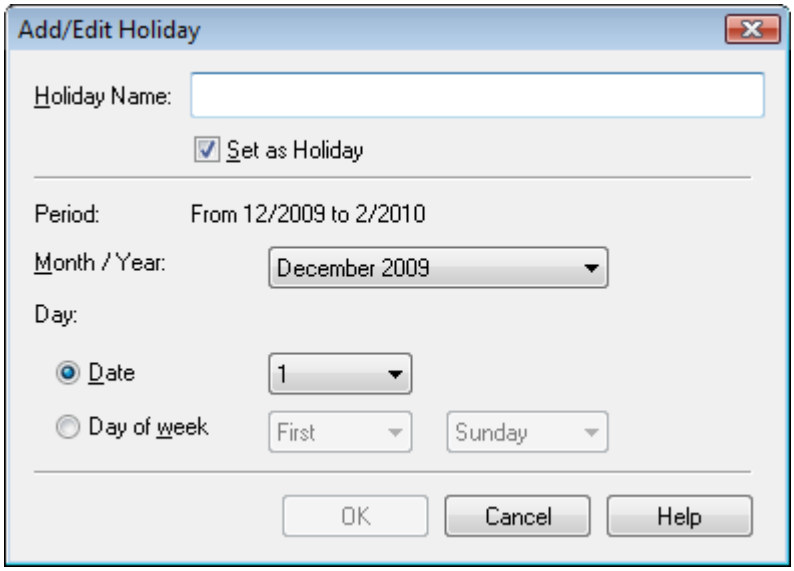
You can add holidays to your calendar.

Click Set Holidays... in the Page Setup screen of Calendar, or click (Setup Period/Holiday) in the Edit screen and click Set Holidays... in the Calendar General Settings dialog box to display the Holiday Settings dialog box.



To add a holiday, click Add.... The Add/Edit Holiday dialog box appears. To edit a saved holiday, select it and click Edit....

To delete a holiday, select it and click Delete. To delete all the saved holidays within your calendar period, click Clear.



Enter the name in Holiday Name and specify the date.

Select the Set as Holiday checkbox to display that day as a holiday in your calendar.

Note

- See Help for details on each dialog box.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

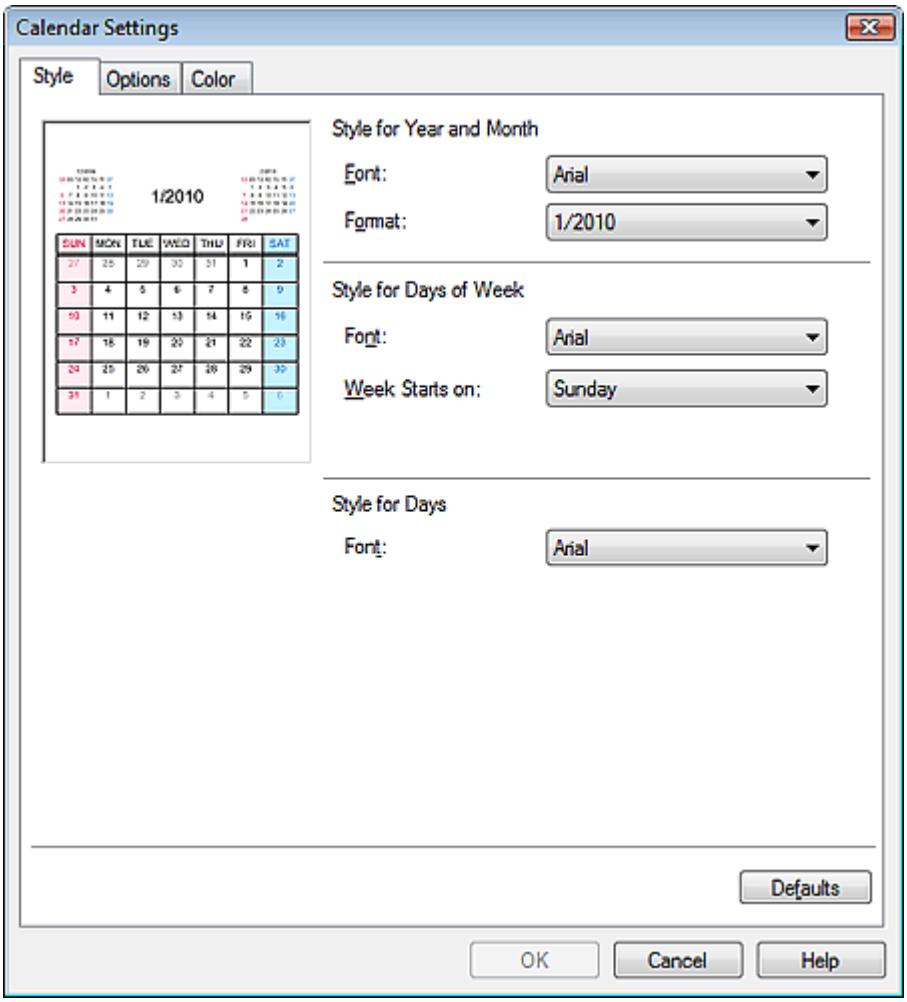
Setting Calendar Display

You can customize the calendar display (fonts, lines, colors, position, size, etc.).

Click Settings... in the Page Setup screen of Calendar, or select a calendar in the Edit screen and click (Setup Calendar) to display the Calendar Settings dialog box.

Important

- The Position & Size tab is displayed only when the Calendar Settings dialog box is displayed from the Edit screen.



Note

- See Help for details on the Calendar Settings dialog box.

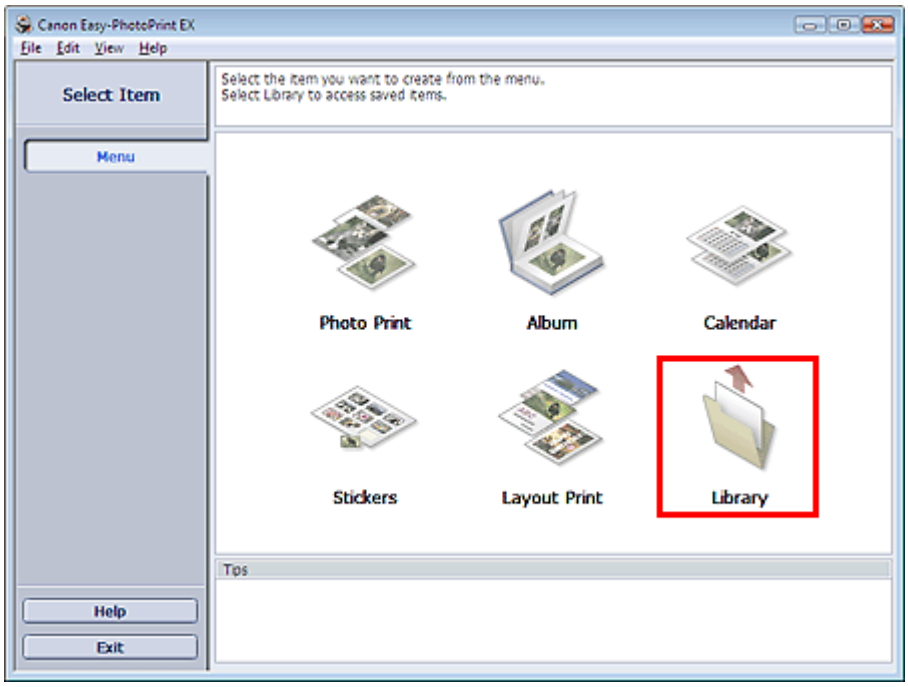
Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Opening Saved Files

You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

1. Click Library from Menu.



The Open dialog box appears.
You can check files created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX by icon view (only for Windows Vista) or thumbnail view.

Important

- When using 64bit Edition of Windows Vista or Windows XP, the contents of files cannot be displayed on Explorer.

2. Select the file you want to open and click Open.

The Edit screen appears.

Note

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports the following file formats (extensions).
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Album file (.el1)
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Stickers file (.el2)
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Calendar file (.el4)
  - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Layout file (.el5)

3. Edit the file if necessary.

Note

- See the following sections for details on the editing procedures.

- Editing Album
- Editing Calendar
- Editing Stickers
- Editing Layout Print

Note

- You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX with the following methods, besides from Library in Menu.
  - Double-click or click the file.
  - From the File menu, click Open..., then select the file you want to edit.
- You can also open a recently used file by clicking the file name shown in the File menu.

Page top

Imprimare cu alt software de aplicaţie

- Diferite metode de imprimare
- Modificarea calităţii imprimării şi corectarea datelor de imagine
- Privire de ansamblu asupra driverului de imprimantă

În partea superioară a paginii

Various Printing Methods

- Printing with Easy Setup
- Setting a Page Size and Orientation
- Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order
- Setting the Stapling Margin
- Borderless Printing
- Fit-to-Page Printing
- Scaled Printing
- Page Layout Printing
- Poster Printing
- Booklet Printing
- Duplex Printing
- Stamp/Background Printing
- Registering a Stamp
- Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background
- Printing an Envelope
- Displaying the Print Results before Printing
- Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

Page top

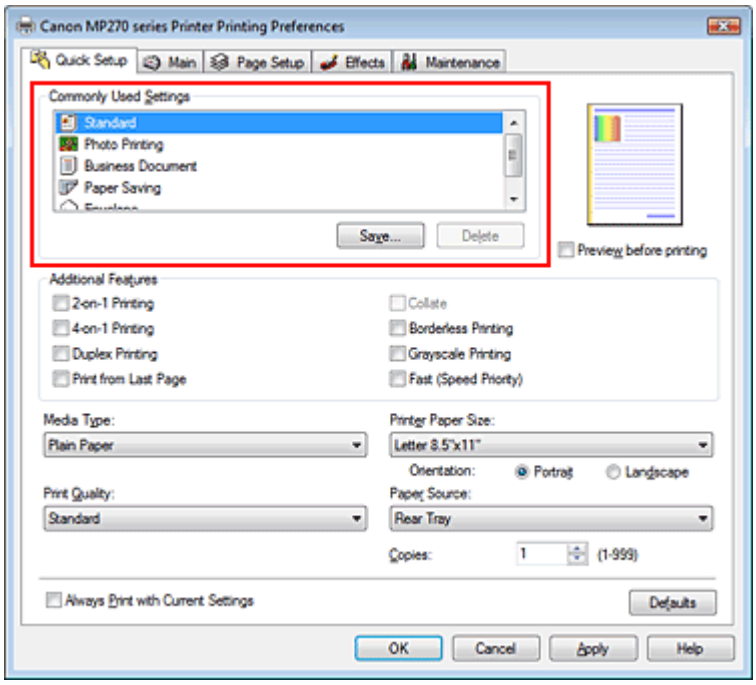
Printing with Easy Setup

The simple setup procedure for carrying out appropriate printing on this machine, is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select a frequently used profile

In Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab, select a printing profile suited for the purpose. When you select a printing profile, the Additional Features, Media Type, and Printer Paper Size settings are automatically switched to the values that were preset.



3. Select the print quality

Select High, Standard, or Fast that matches your purpose for Print Quality.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the document is printed with settings that matches your purpose.

Important

- When you check the Always Print with Current Settings check box, all settings on the Quick Setup, Main, Page Setup, and Effects tabs are saved, and you can print with the same settings from the next time as well.
- Click Save... to register the specified settings. For instructions on registering settings, see "Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile."

Page top

Setting a Page Size and Orientation

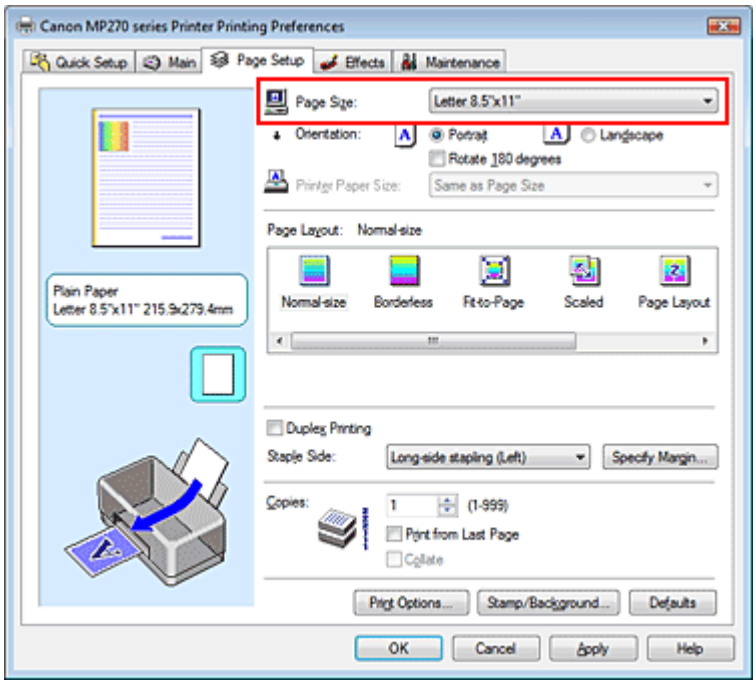
The paper size and orientation are essentially determined by the application. When the page size and orientation set for Page Size and Orientation on the Page Setup tab are same as those set with the application, you do not need to select them on the Page Setup tab.

When you are not able to specify them with the application, the procedure for selecting a page size and orientation is as follows:
You can also set page size and Orientation on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the paper size

   Select a page size from the Page Size list on the Page Setup tab.



3. Set Orientation

   Select Portrait or Landscape for Orientation. Check Rotate 180 degrees check box when you want to perform printing with the original being rotated 180 degrees.

4. Complete the setup

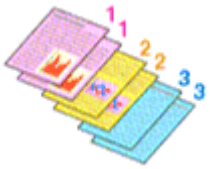
   Click OK.
   When you execute print, the document will be printed with the selected page size and the orientation.

Page top

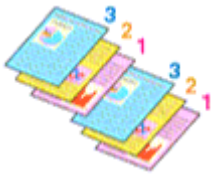
Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

Default Setting

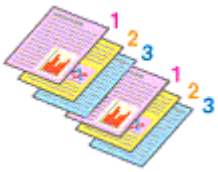
Print from Last Page



Collate



Print from Last Page + Collate

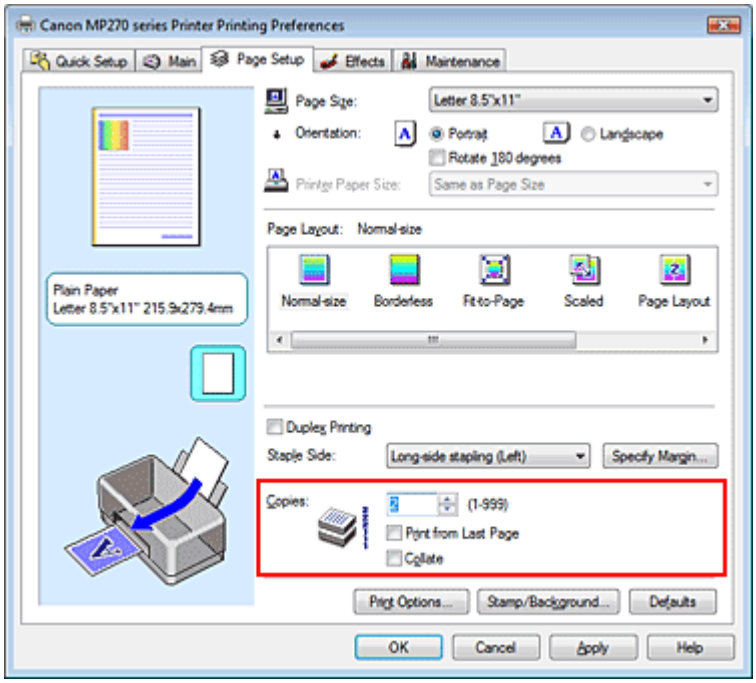


The procedure for specifying the number of copies and printing order is as follows:
You can also set the number of copies on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Specify the number of copies to be printed

   For Copies on the Page Setup tab, specify the number of copies to be printed.



3. Specify the print order

   Check the Print from Last Page check box when you want to print from the last page in order. When you do this, you do not need to sort pages into their correct order after printing.

4. Set up collated printing when you specify multiple copies in the Copies box

   Check the Collate check box when you are specifying multiple copy together.

Uncheck this check box to print all pages with the same page number together.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.
The specified number of copies will be printed with the specified printing order.

Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, give priority to the printer driver settings. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.
- Print from Last Page and Collate appear grayed out and are unavailable when Booklet is selected for Page Layout.
- Print from Last Page appears grayed out and is unavailable when Poster is selected for Page Layout.

Note

- By setting both Print from Last Page and Collate, you can perform printing so that papers are collated one by one starting from the last page.
  These settings can be used in combination with Borderless, Normal-size, Fit-to-Page, Scaled, Page Layout, and Duplex Printing.

Page top

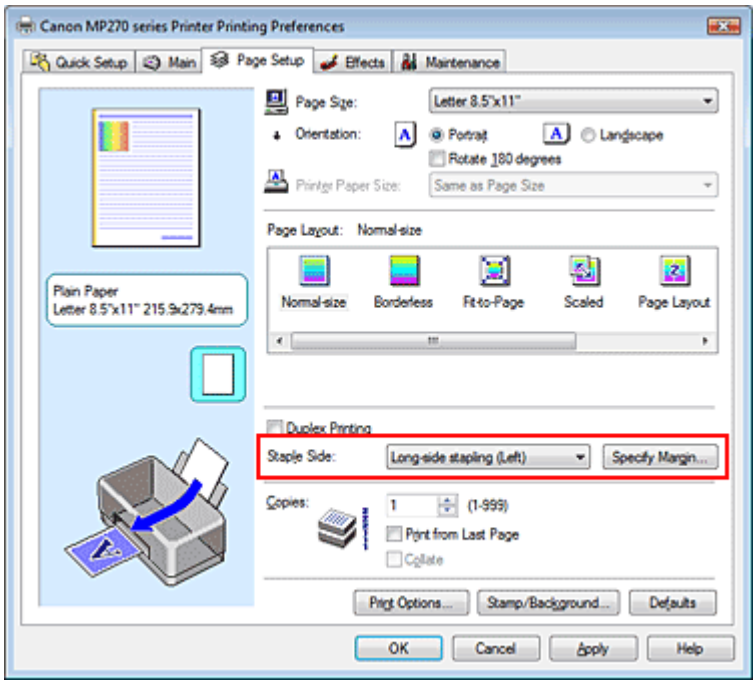
Setting the Stapling Margin

The procedure for setting the staple side and the margin width is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

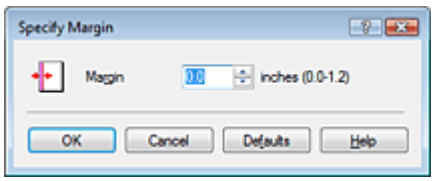
2. Specify the side to be stapled

   Check the position of the stapling margin from Staple Side on the Page Setup tab.
   The printer analyzes the Orientation and Page Layout settings, and automatically selects the best staple position. When you want to change the setting, select from the list.



3. Set the margin width

   If necessary, click Specify Margin... and set the margin width, and then click OK.



4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified staple side and margin width.

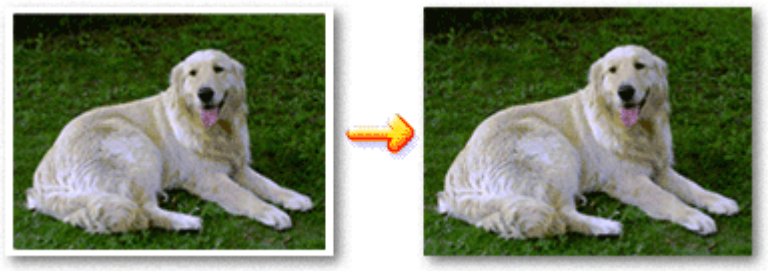
Important

- Staple Side and Specify Margin... appear grayed out and are unavailable when:
  - Borderless, Poster, or Booklet is selected for Page Layout.
  - Scaled is selected for Page Layout (When Duplex Printing is also selected, only Staple Side is selectable).

Page top

Borderless Printing

The borderless printing function allows you to print data without any margin by enlarging the data so that it extends slightly off the paper. Without the borderless printing function, a margin is provided around the printed data. When you want to print data such as a photo without providing any margin around it, select borderless printing.



The procedure for performing borderless printing is as follows:

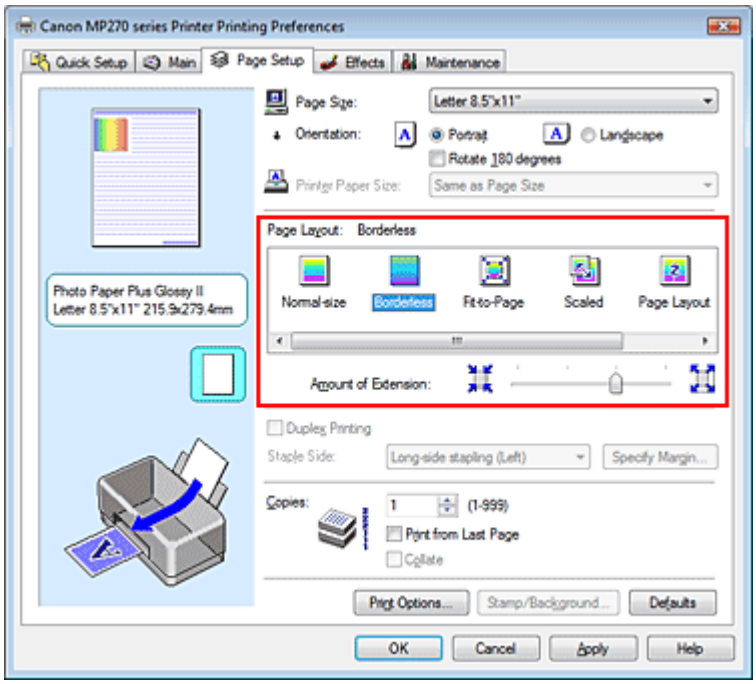
You can also set borderless printing in Additional Features on the Quick Setup tab.

Setting Borderless Printing

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set borderless printing

   Select Borderless from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



   Click OK when the confirmation message appears.
   When a message prompting you to change the media type appears, select a media type from the list and click OK.

3. Check the paper size

Check the Page Size list. When you want to change, select another page size from the list. The list displays only sizes that can be used for borderless printing.

4. Adjust the amount of extension from the paper

If necessary, adjust the amount of extension using the Amount of Extension slider.
Moving the slider to the right makes the amount larger and moving the slider to the left makes the amount smaller.
It is recommended to set the slider at the second position from the right for most cases.

Important

- When you set the slider at the rightmost position, the back side of the paper may become smudged.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.
The data will be printed without any margins on the paper.

Important

- When a page size that cannot be used for borderless printing is selected, the size is automatically changed to the valid page sizes for borderless printing.
- When High Resolution Paper, T-Shirt Transfers, or Envelope is selected from the Media Type list on the Main tab, you cannot perform borderless printing.
- When Borderless is selected, the Printer Paper Size, Staple Side (when Duplex Printing is not selected) settings, and the Stamp/Background... button on the Page Setup tab appear grayed out and are unavailable.
- Print quality may deteriorate or the sheet may be stained at the top and bottom depending on the type of the media used.
- When the ratio of the height to the width differs from the image data, a portion of the image may not be printed depending on the size of the media used.
  In this case, crop the image data with an application software according to the paper size.

Note

- When Plain Paper is selected for Media Type on the Main tab, borderless printing is not recommended, and therefore the dialog box for media selection appears.
  When you are using plain paper for test printing, select Plain Paper, and click OK.

Expanding the Range of the Document to Print

Specifying a large amount of extension allows you to perform borderless printing with no problems. However, the portion of the document that extends off the paper range will not be printed. Subjects around the perimeter of a photo may not be printed.

Try borderless printing once. If you are not satisfied with the result of borderless printing, reduce the amount of extension. The extension amount becomes shorter as the Amount of Extension slider is moved to the left.

Important

- When the amount of extension is shortened, an unexpected margin may be produced on the print, depending on the size of the paper.

Note

- When the Amount of Extension slider is set to the leftmost position, image data will be printed in the full size.
- When Preview before printing is checked on the Main tab, you can confirm before printing whether there will be no border.

Page top

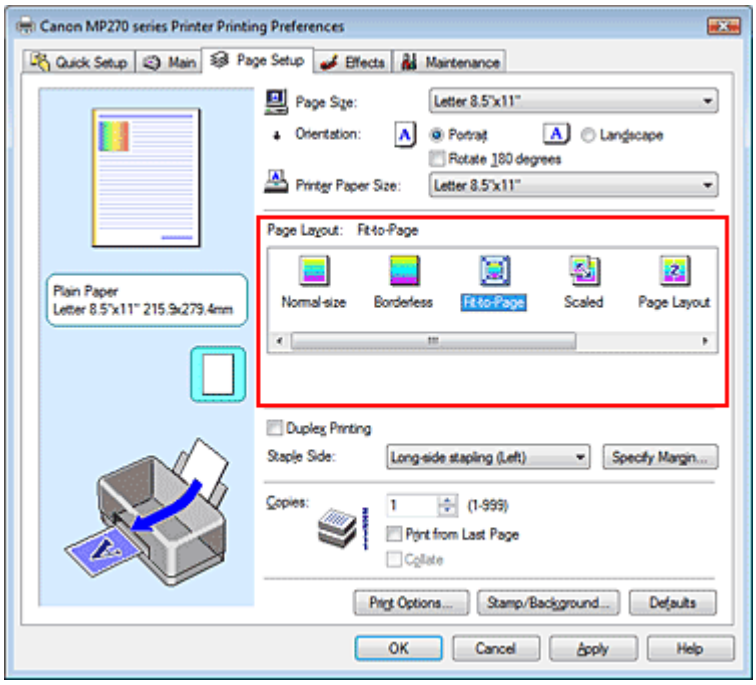
Fit-to-Page Printing

The procedure for printing a document that is automatically enlarged or reduced to fit the page size to be used is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set fit-to-page printing

   Select Fit-to-Page from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



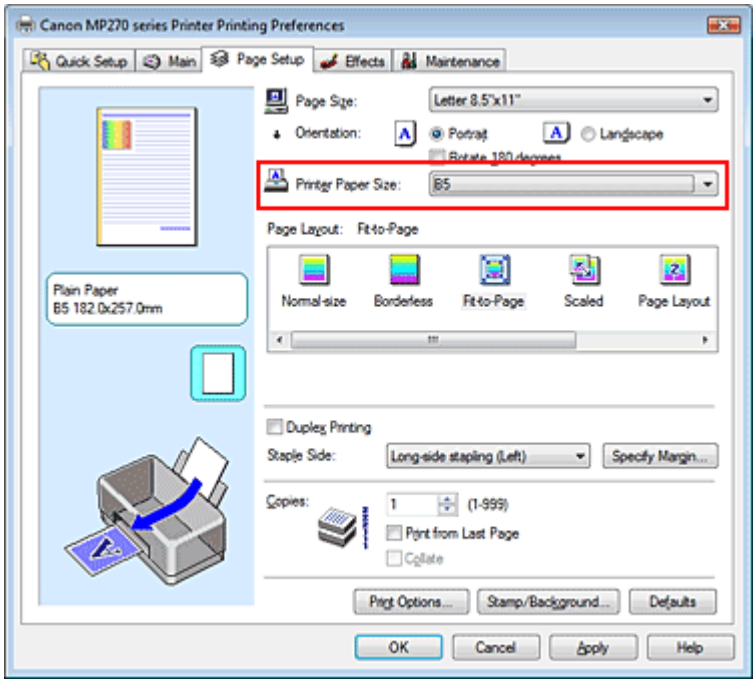
3. Select the paper size for the data

   Using Page Size, select the page size that is set with your application.

4. Select the print paper size

   Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list.
   When the Printer Paper Size is smaller than the Page Size, the page image will be reduced. When the Printer Paper Size is larger than the Page Size, the page image will be enlarged.

   The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



5. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the document will be enlarged or reduced to fit to the page size.

Page top

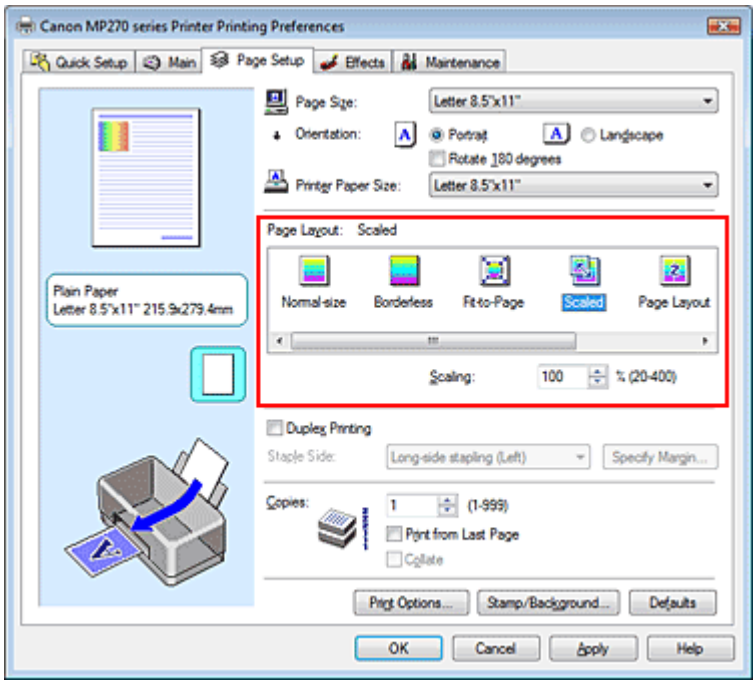
Scaled Printing

The procedure for printing a document with pages enlarged or reduced is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set scaled printing

   Select Scaled from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



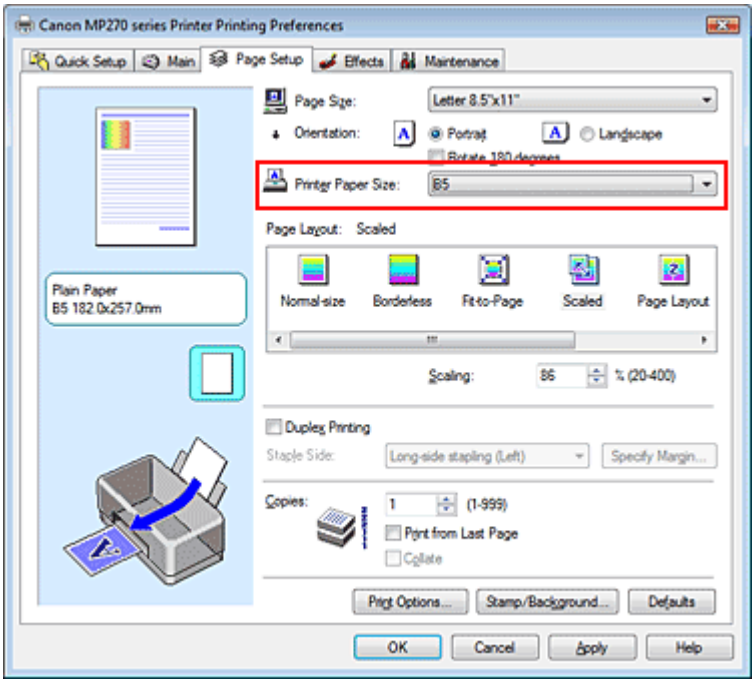
3. Select the paper size for the data

   Using Page Size, select the page size that is set with your application.

4. Set the scaling rate by using one of the following methods:

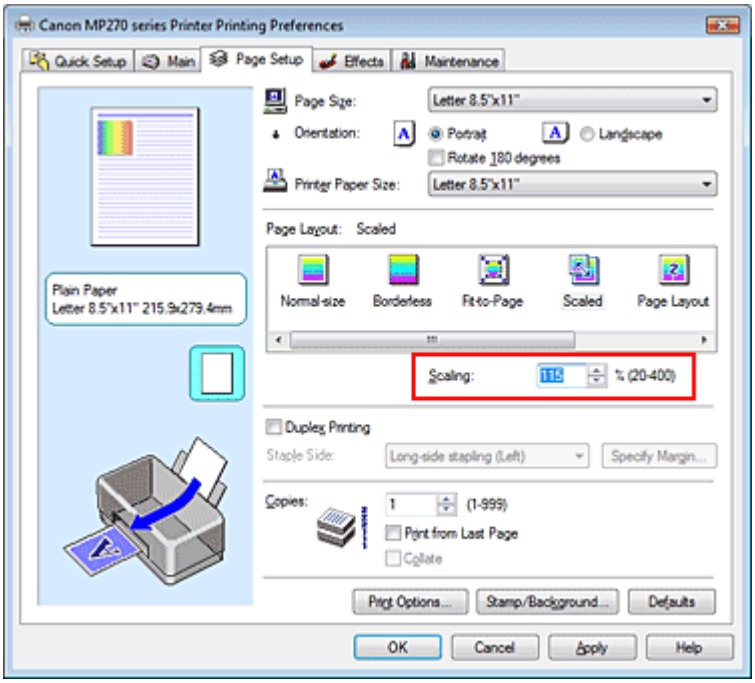
   - **Select a Printer Paper Size**

     When the printer paper size is smaller than the Page Size, the page image will be reduced.
     When the printer paper size is larger than the page size, the page image will be enlarged.



- **Specify a scaling factor**

  Directly type in a value into the Scaling box.



The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document will be printed with the specified scale.

Important

- When the application software with which you created the original has the scaled printing function, configure the settings on your application software. You do not need to configure the same setting in the printer driver.
- When Scaled is selected, the Staple Side list box appears grayed out and is unavailable (when Duplex Printing is not selected).

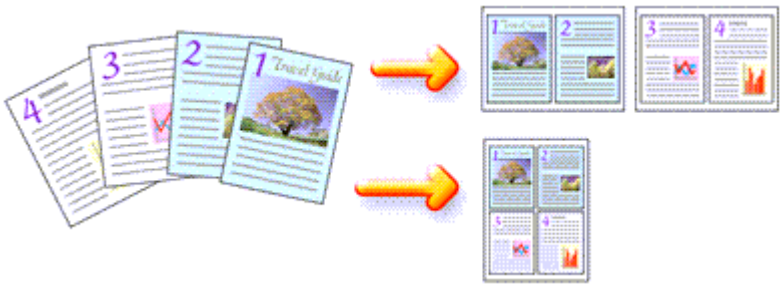
Note

- Selecting Scaled changes the printable area of the document.

Page top

Page Layout Printing

The page layout printing function allows you to print more than one page image on a single sheet of paper.

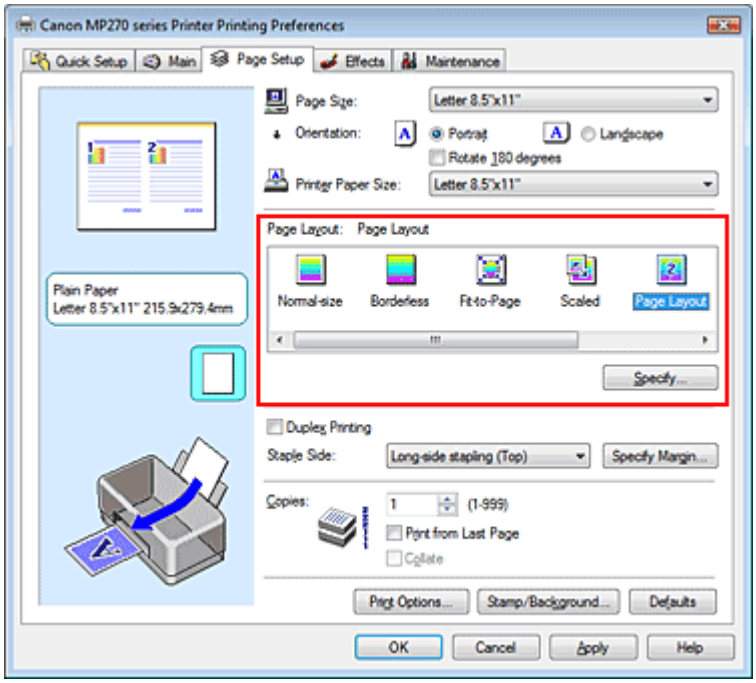


The procedure for performing page layout printing is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set page layout printing

   Select Page Layout from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.
   The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

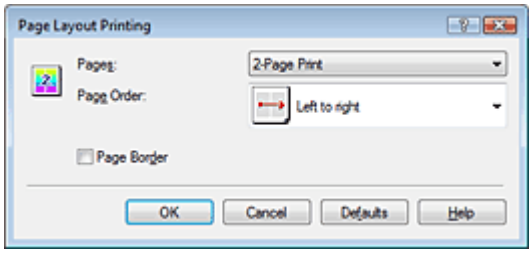


3. Select the print paper size

   Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list.
   Setting the layout of two pages of the document from left to right is complete.

4. Set the number of pages to be printed on one sheet and the page order

   If necessary, click Specify..., specify the following settings in the Page Layout Printing dialog box, and click OK.



Pages
To increase the number of pages to be included on a single sheet of paper, select a desired number of pages from the list.

You can also set 2-Page Print or 4-Page Print on the Quick Setup tab.

Page Order
To change the page arrangement order, select an icon from the list to change the page placement order.

Page Border
To print a page border around each document page, check this check box.

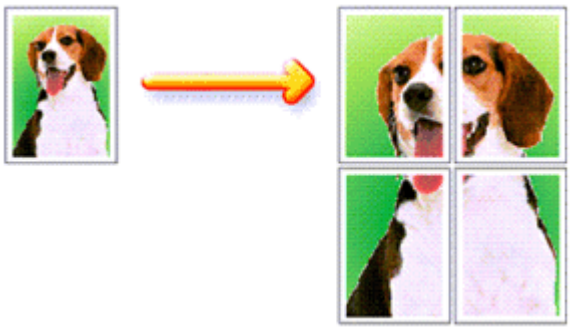
5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the specified number of pages will be arranged on each sheet of paper in the specified order.

Page top

Poster Printing

The poster printing function allows you to enlarge image data, divide it into several pages, and print these pages on separate sheets of paper. When the pages are pasted together, they form a large print like a poster.



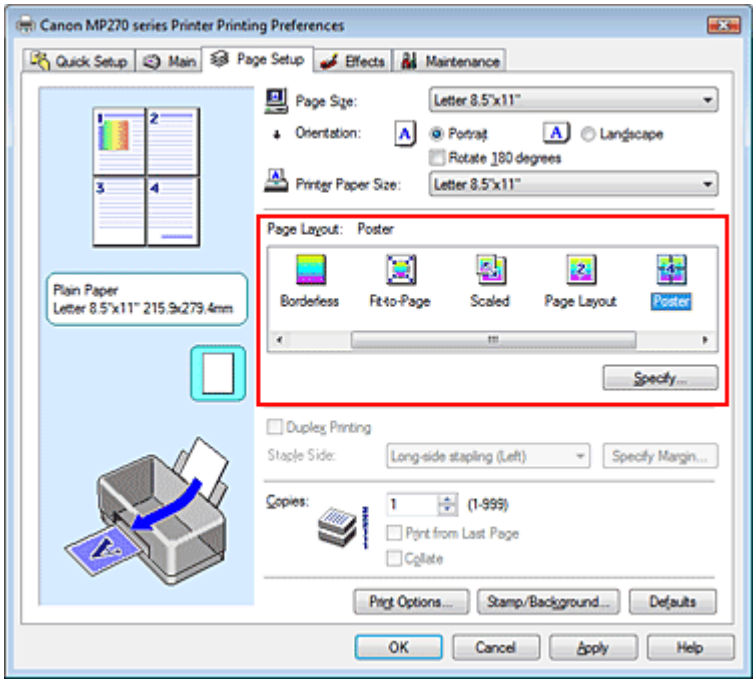
The procedure for performing poster printing is as follows:

Setting Poster Printing

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set poster printing

   Select Poster from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.
   The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Select the print paper size

   Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list.
   Setting 2 by 2-page poster printing is complete.

4. Set the number of image divisions and the pages to be printed

If necessary, click Specify..., specify the following settings in the Poster Printing dialog box, and then click OK.

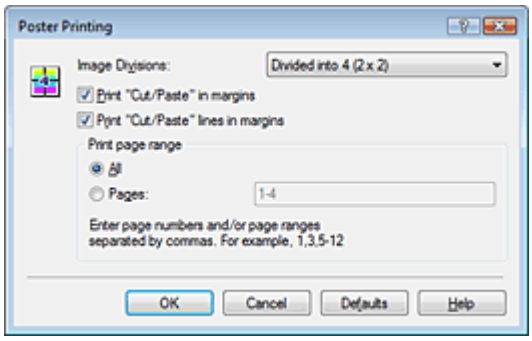


Image Divisions
Select the number of divisions (vertical x horizontal). As the number of divisions increases, the number of sheets used for printing increases, allowing you to create a larger poster.

Print "Cut/Paste" in margins
To leave out words "Cut" and "Paste", uncheck this check box.

Important

- This feature is unavailable when the 64-bit printer driver is used.

Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins
To leave out cut lines, uncheck this check box.

Pages
To reprint only specific pages, enter the page number you want to print. To print multiple pages, specify by separating the pages with commas or entering a hyphen between the page numbers.

Note

- You can also specify the print range by clicking the pages in the settings preview.

5. Complete the setup

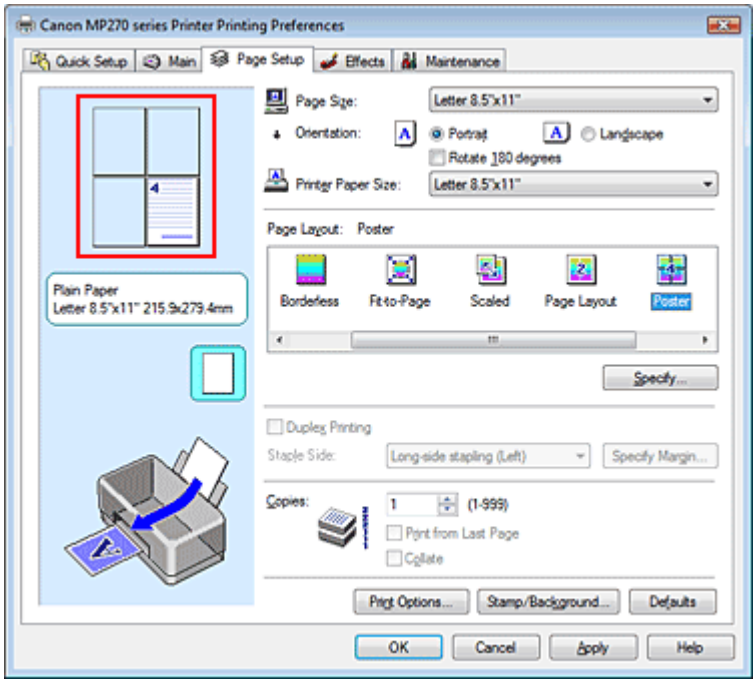
Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the document will be divided into several pages during printing.
After all poster pages have been printed, paste the pages together to create a poster.

Printing Only Specific Pages

If ink becomes faint or runs out during printing, you can reprint specific pages by following the procedure below:

1. Set the print range

In the settings preview on the left of the Page Setup tab, click the pages that do not need to be printed.
The pages that were clicked are deleted, and only the pages to be printed are displayed.



Note

- Click the deleted pages to display them again.
- Right-click the settings preview to select Print all pages or Delete all pages.

2. Complete the setup

After completing the page selection, click OK.
When you execute print, only specified pages will be printed.

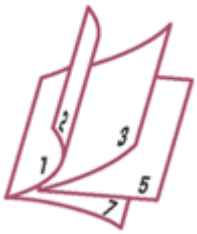
Important

- When Poster is selected, the Duplex Printing, Staple Side and Print from Last Page appear grayed out and are unavailable.
- Since poster printing enlarges the document when printing it, the print results may become coarse.

Page top

Booklet Printing

The booklet printing function allows you to print data for a booklet. Data is printed on both sides of the paper. This type of printing ensures that pages can be collated properly, in page number order, when the printed sheets are folded and stapled at the center.

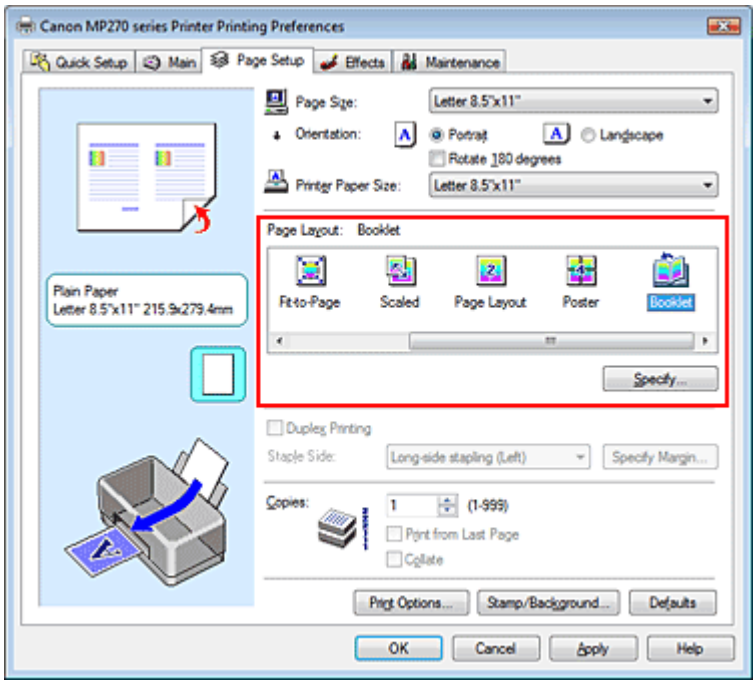


The procedure for performing booklet printing is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set booklet printing

   Select Booklet from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.
   The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the window.

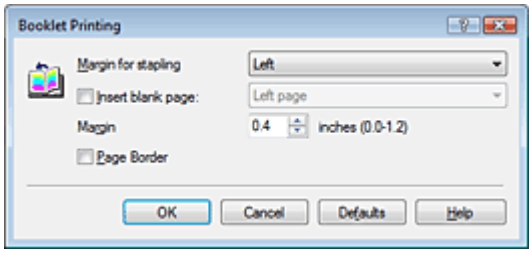


3. Select the print paper size

   Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list.

4. Set the margin for stapling and the margin width

   Click Specify... and specify the following settings in the Booklet Printing dialog box, and then click OK.



Margin for stapling
Select which side should the stapling margin be on when the booklet is completed.

Insert blank page
To leave one side of a sheet blank, check the check box, and select the page to be left blank.

Margin
Enter the margin width. The specified width from the center of the sheet becomes the margin width for one page.

Page Border
To print a page border around each document page, check the check box.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the document will be printed on one side of a sheet of paper. When the printing of one side is complete, set the paper correctly by following the message and click OK. When the printing of the other side is complete, fold the paper at the center of the margin and make a booklet.

Important

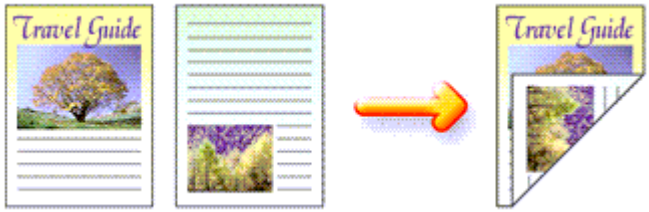
- Booklet cannot be selected when a media type other than Plain Paper is selected for Media Type.
- When Booklet is selected, Duplex Printing, Staple Side, Print from Last Page, and Collate appear grayed out and are unavailable.

Note

- The stamp and background are not printed on blank sheets inserted with the Insert blank page function of Booklet Printing.

Page top

Duplex Printing

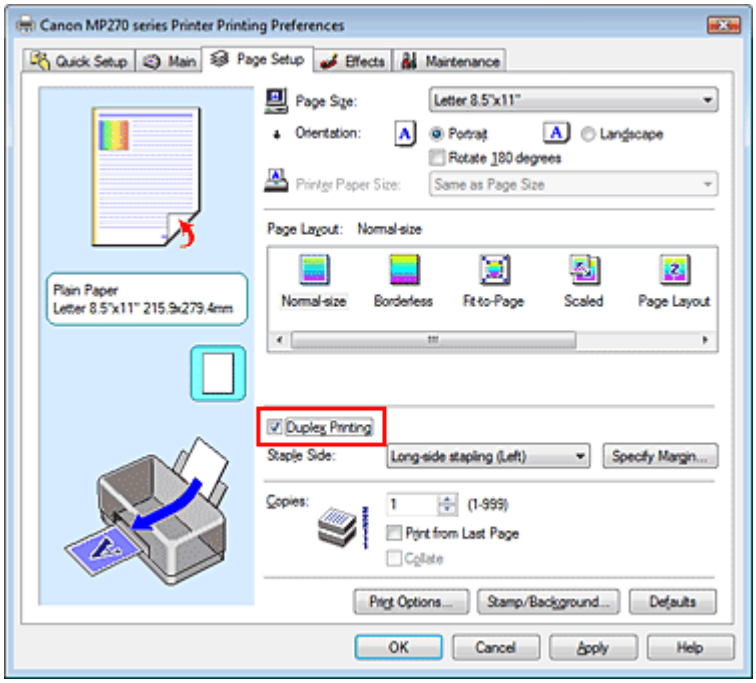


The procedure for printing data on both sides of a sheet of paper is as follows:
You can also set duplex printing in Additional Features on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set duplex printing

   Check the Duplex Printing check box on the Page Setup tab.



3. Select the layout

   Select Normal-size (or Fit-to-Page, Scaled, or Page Layout) from the Page Layout list.

4. Specify the side to be stapled

   The printer analyzes the Orientation and Page Layout settings, and automatically selects the best Staple Side. When you want to change the setting, select another value from the list.

5. Set the margin width

   If necessary, click Specify Margin... and set the margin width, and then click OK.

6. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the document will be printed on one side of a sheet of paper. When the printing of one side is complete, load the paper correctly by following the message and click OK. The document will be printed on the opposite side.

Important

- Duplex Printing appears grayed out and is unavailable when:
  - A media type other than Plain Paper is selected from the Media Type list.
  - Poster is selected from the Page Layout list.
- When Booklet is selected from the Page Layout list, Duplex Printing and Staple Side appear grayed out and are unavailable.

Note

- When you select borderless printing during duplex printing, a dialog box for media type selection may appear. If that happens, select Plain Paper.
- If the back side of the paper becomes smudged during duplex printing, perform Bottom Plate Cleaning in the Maintenance tab.

Page top

Stamp/Background Printing

This feature is unavailable when the 64-bit printer driver is used.

The Stamp function allows you to print a stamp text or a bitmap over or behind document data. It also allows you to print date, time and user name. The Background function allows you to print a light illustration behind the document data.

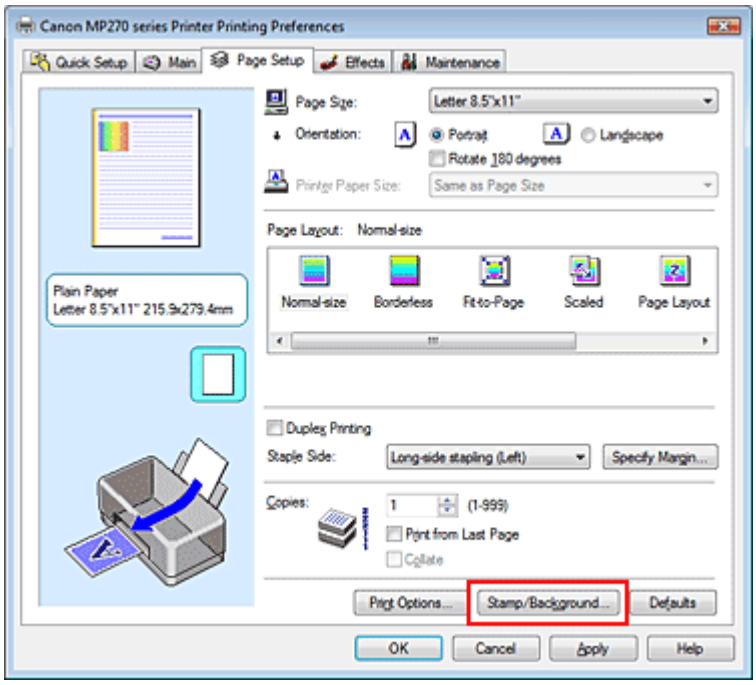
The procedure for performing stamp/background printing is as follows:

Printing a Stamp

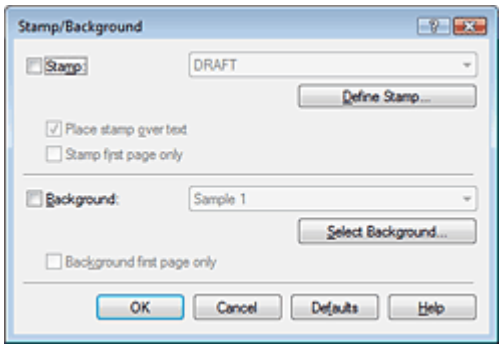
"CONFIDENTIAL," "IMPORTANT," and other stamps that are used often in companies are pre-registered.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab



The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.



3. Select a stamp

Check the Stamp check box, and select a desired stamp from the list.

The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the Page Setup tab.

4. Set the stamp details

If necessary, specify the following settings, and then click OK.

Place stamp over text
To print the stamp on the front of the document, check this check box.

Note

- The stamp is given priority because the stamp is printed over the document data in the sections where the stamp and the document data overlap. When this check box is unchecked, the stamp is printed behind the document data and may be hidden in the overlapping sections depending on the application used.

Stamp first page only
To print the stamp only on the first page, check this check box.

Define Stamp... button
To change the stamp text, bitmap, or position, click this (refer to Registering a Stamp).

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified stamp.

Printing a Background

Two bitmap files are pre-registered as samples.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab

The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.

3. Select the background

Check the Background check box, and select a desired background from the list.
The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the Page Setup tab.

4. Set the background details

If necessary, complete the following settings, and then click OK.

Background first page only
To print the background only on the first page, check this check box.

Select Background... button
To use another background or change the layout or density of a background, click this (refer to Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background).

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified background.

Important

- When Borderless is selected, the Stamp/Background... button appears grayed out and is unavailable.

Note

- The stamp and background are not printed on blank sheets inserted with the Insert blank page

function of Booklet Printing.

Related Topics

- Registering a Stamp
- Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background

Page top

Registering a Stamp

This feature is unavailable when the 64-bit printer driver is used.

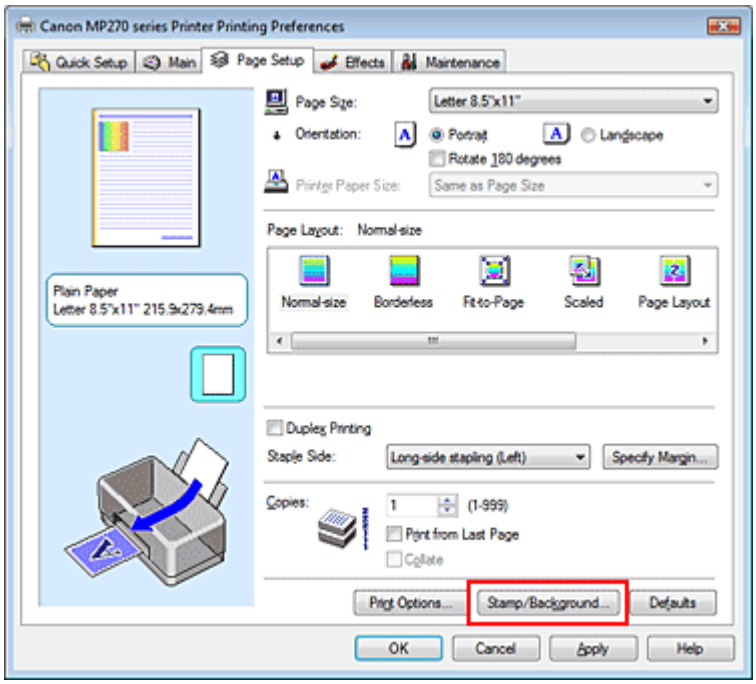
You can create and register a new stamp. You can also change and register some of the settings of an existing stamp. Unnecessary stamps can be deleted at any time.

The procedure for registering a new stamp is as follows:

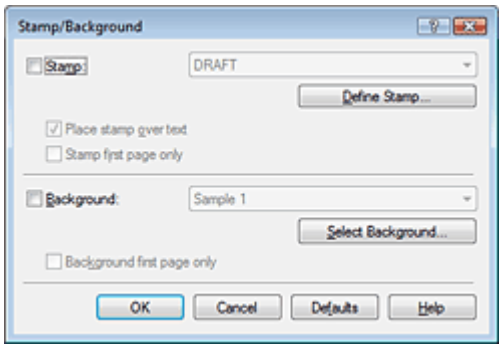
Registering a New Stamp

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab

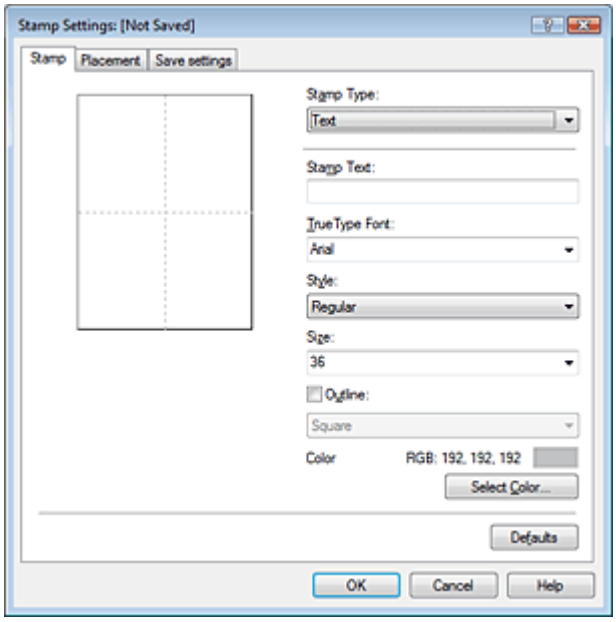


The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.



3. Click Define Stamp...

The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.



4. Configure the stamp while viewing the preview window

- **Stamp tab**

  Select Text, Bitmap, or Date/Time/User Name that matches your purpose for Stamp Type.

  - For Text registration, the characters must already be entered in Stamp Text. If necessary, change the TrueType Font, Style, Size, and Outline settings. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking Select Color....
  - For Bitmap, click Select File... and select the bitmap file (.bmp) to be used. If necessary, change the settings of the Size and Transparent white area.
  - For Date/Time/User Name, the creation date/time and user name of the printed object are displayed in Stamp Text. If necessary, change the settings of TrueType Font, Style, Size, and Outline. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking Select Color....

  Important

  - Stamp Text appears grayed out and is unavailable when Date/Time/User Name is selected.

- **Placement tab**

  Select the stamp position from the Position list. You can also select Custom from the Position list and specify coordinates for X-Position and Y-Position.
  You can also change the stamp position by dragging the stamp in the preview window.
  To change the stamp position angle, type a value in the Orientation box directly.

5. Save the stamp

Click the Save settings tab and enter a title in the Title box, and then click Save.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

6. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.
The registered title appears in the Stamp list.

Changing and Registering Some of Stamp Settings

1. Select the stamp for which the settings are to be changed

Check the Stamp check box in the Stamp/Background dialog box, and then select the title of the stamp to be changed from the Stamp list.

2. Click Define Stamp...

   The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.

3. Configure the stamp while viewing the preview window

4. Overwrite save the stamp

   Click Save overwrite on the Save settings tab.
   When you want to save the stamp with a different title, type a new title in the Title box and click Save.
   Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

5. Complete the setup

   Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.
   The registered title appears in the Stamp list.

Deleting an Unnecessary Stamp

1. Click Define Stamp... in the Stamp/Background dialog box

   The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.

2. Select the stamp to be deleted

   Select the title of the stamp you want to delete from the Stamps list on the Save settings tab. Then click Delete.
   Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

3. Complete the setup

   Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.

Page top

Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background

This feature is unavailable when the 64-bit printer driver is used.

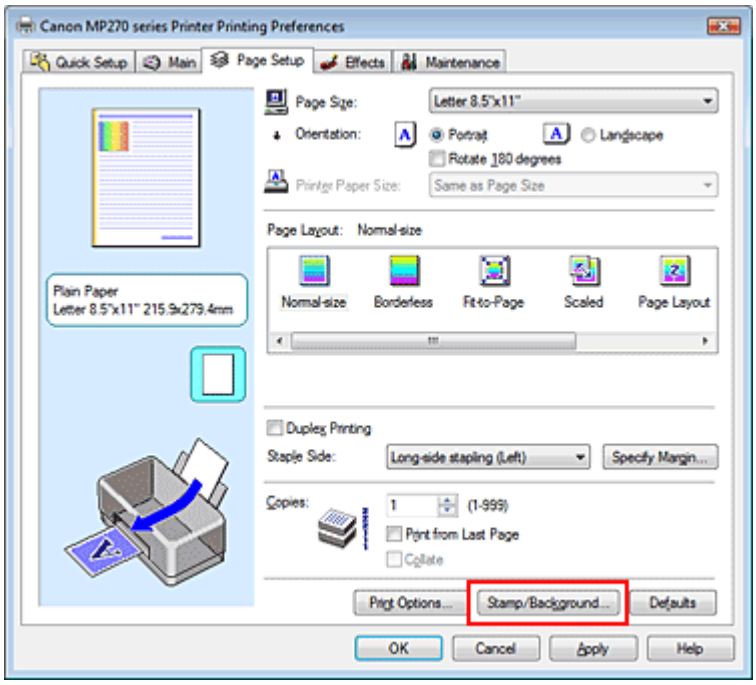
You can select a bitmap file (.bmp) and register it as a new background. You can also change and register some of the settings of an existing background. An unnecessary background can be deleted at any time.

The procedure for registering image data to be used as a background is as follows:

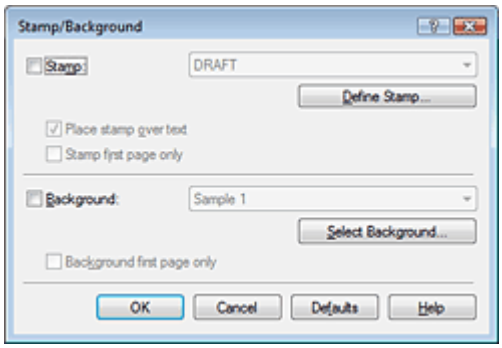
Registering New Background

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab

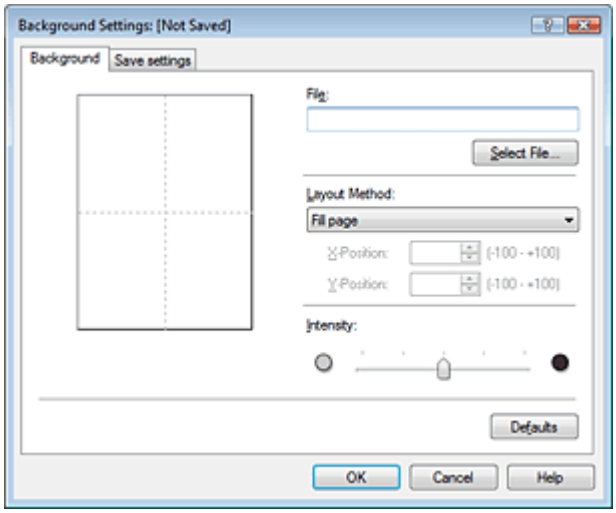


The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.



3. Click Select Background...

The Background Settings dialog box opens.



4. Select the image data to be registered to the background

Click Select File.... Select the target bitmap file (.bmp), and then click Open.

5. Specify the following settings while viewing the preview window

Layout Method
Select how the background image data is to be placed.
When Custom is selected, you can set coordinates for X-Position and Y-Position.
You can also change the background position by dragging the image in the preview window.

Intensity
Set the intensity of the background image data with the Intensity slider. To lighten the background, move the slider to the left. To darken the background, move the slider to the right. To print the background at the original bitmap intensity, move the slider to the rightmost position.

6. Save the background

Click the Save settings tab and enter a title in the Title box, and then click Save.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.
The registered title appears in the Background list.

Changing and Registering Some Background Settings

1. Select the background for which the settings are to be changed

Check the Background check box in the Stamp/Background dialog box, and then select the title of the background you want to change from the Background list.

2. Click Select Background...

The Background Settings dialog box opens.

3. Specify the items on the Background tab while viewing the preview window.

4. Save the background

Click Save overwrite on the Save settings tab. When you want to save the background with a different title, enter a new title in the Title box and click Save.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.
The registered title appears in the Background list.

Deleting an Unnecessary Background

1. Click Select Background... in the Stamp/Background dialog box

The Background Settings dialog box opens.

2. Select the background to be deleted

Select the title of the background you want to delete from the Backgrounds list on the Save settings tab, and then click Delete.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.

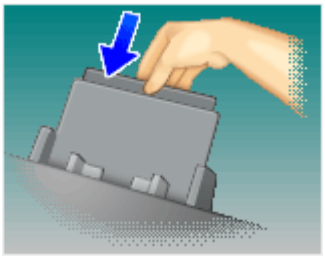
Page top

Printing an Envelope

For details on how to load an envelope into the machine, refer to "Loading Paper in the Rear Tray" in the manual: Basic Guide.

The procedure for performing envelope printing is as follows:

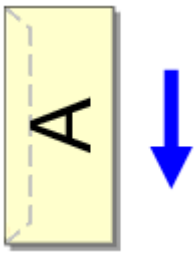
1. Fold down the paper support



2. Load an envelope into the machine

Fold down the envelope flap.

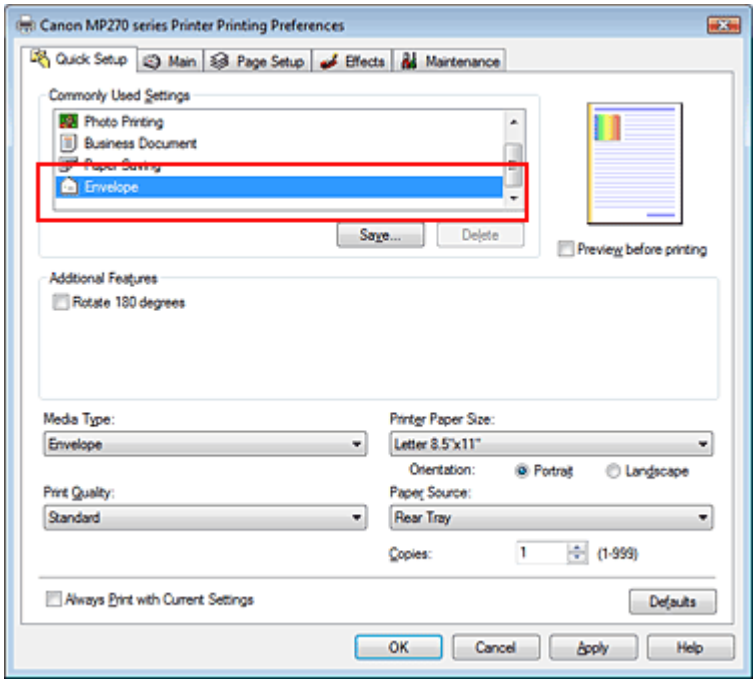
Orient the envelope so that the flap is on the left and the folded surface is facing down, and load in the rear tray.



3. Open the printer driver setup window

4. Select the media type

Select Envelope from Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab.



5. Select the paper size

Select Youkei 4, Youkei 6, Comm.Env. #10, or DL Env. in the Envelope Size Setting dialog box, and then click OK.

6. Set the orientation

To print the addressee horizontally, select Landscape for Orientation.

7. Select the print quality

Select High or Standard that matches your purpose for Print Quality.

8. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the information is printed on the envelope.

Page top

Displaying the Print Results before Printing

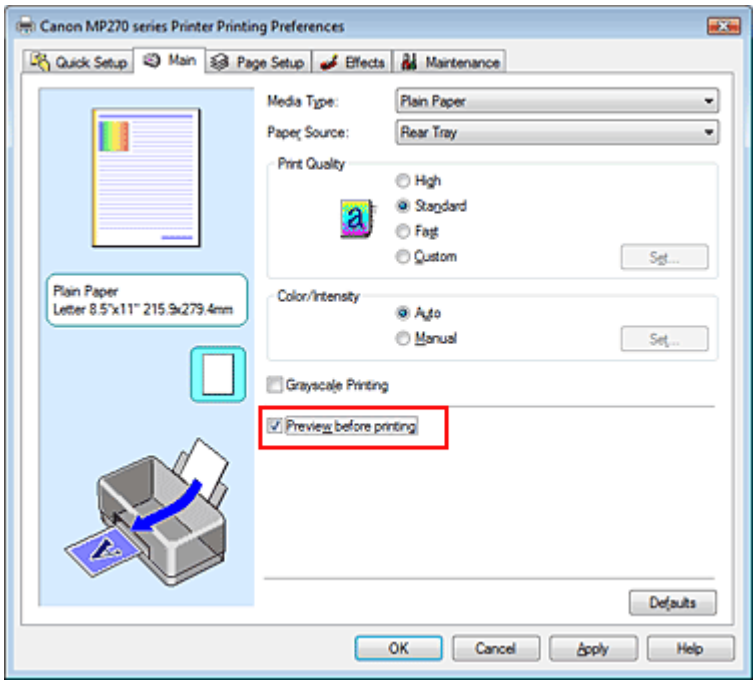
You can display and check the print result before printing.

The procedure for displaying the print result before printing is as follows:
You can also set the print results display on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set the preview

   Check the Preview before printing check box on the Main tab.



3. Complete the setup

   Click OK.
   The Canon IJ Preview will start and the print result will be displayed before printing.

Related Topic

➡ Canon IJ Preview

Page top

Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

You can specify the height and width of paper when its size cannot be selected from the Page Size. Such a paper size is called a custom size.

The procedure for specifying a custom size is as follows:

You can also set a custom size in Printer Paper Size on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Set the custom size in the application software

On your application's paper size feature, specify the custom size.

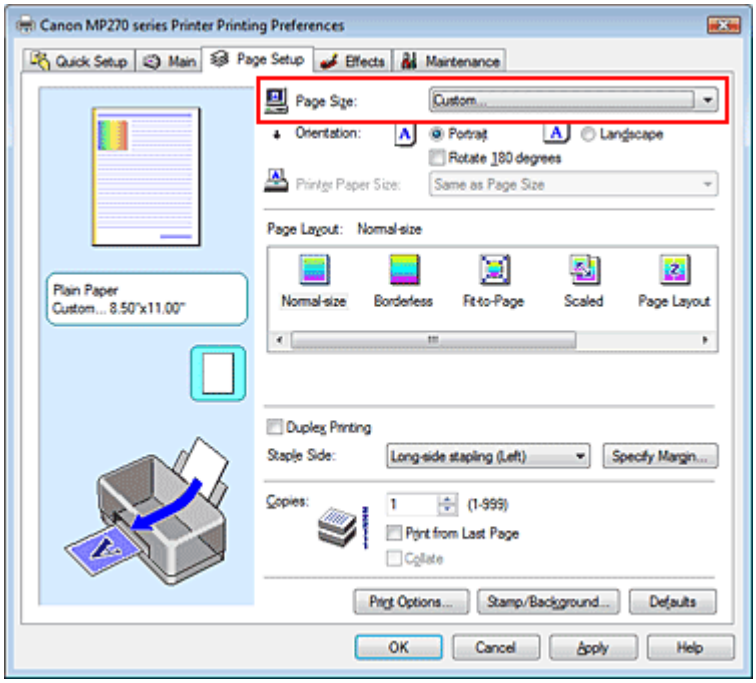
Important

- When the application software that created the document has a function for specifying the height and width values, use the application software to set the values. When the application software does not have such a function or if the document does not print correctly, use the printer driver to set the values.

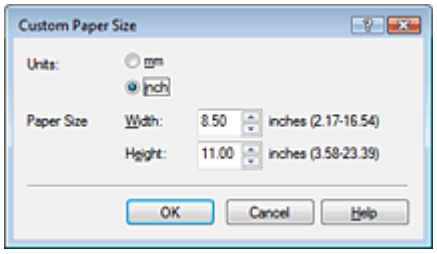
2. Open the printer driver setup window

3. Select the paper size

Select Custom... for Page Size on the Page Setup tab.



The Custom Paper Size dialog box opens.



4. Set the custom paper size

Specify Units, and enter the Width and Height of the paper to be used. Then click OK.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified paper size.

Page top

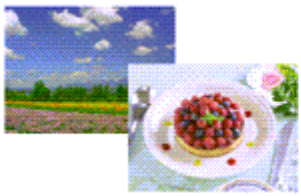
Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
- Specifying Color Correction
- Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
- Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
- Printing with ICC Profiles
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast
- Simulating an Illustration
- Representing Image Data with a Single Color
- Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors
- Smoothing Jagged Outlines
- Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration
- Reducing Photo Noise

Page top

Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method

You can individually set the combined representation method for the print quality level and the halftoning method.

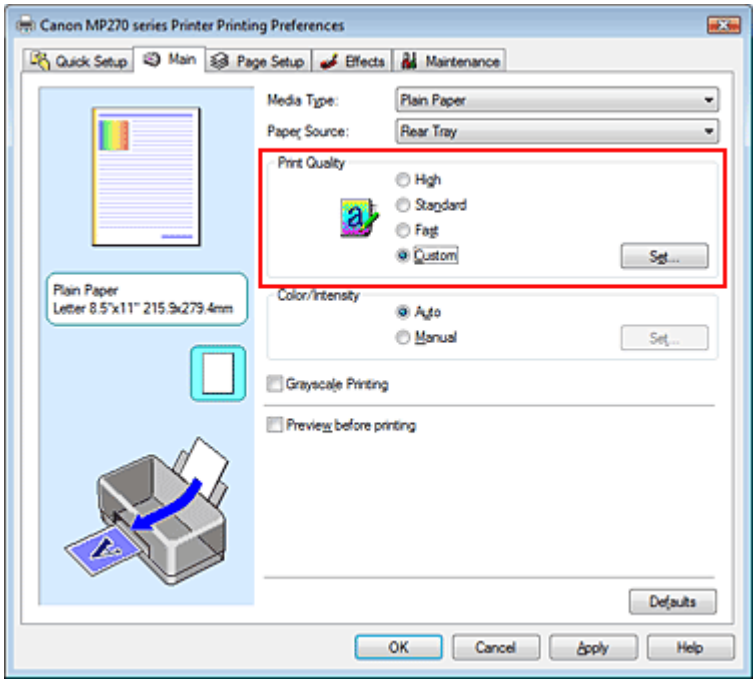


The procedure for setting the print quality level and the halftoning method is as follows:

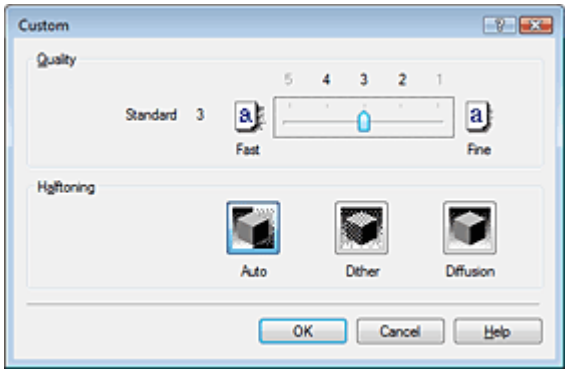
1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the print quality

   Select Custom for Print Quality on the Main tab, and click Set....



   The Custom dialog box opens.



3. Setting the print quality and halftone expression method

Move the Quality slider to select the quality level.
Select the expression method in Halftoning and click OK.

Note

- Halftones refer to color shades between the darkest color and the brightest color.
  The printer replaces the color shades with a collection of small dots to express the halftones. Dither arranges the dots according to fixed rules to express the halftones. Diffusion places the dots randomly to express the halftones. When you select Auto, the data is printed with the optimal halftoning method for the selected print quality.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified quality level and halftoning method.

Important

- Certain print quality levels and halftoning methods cannot be selected depending on the settings of Media Type.

Note

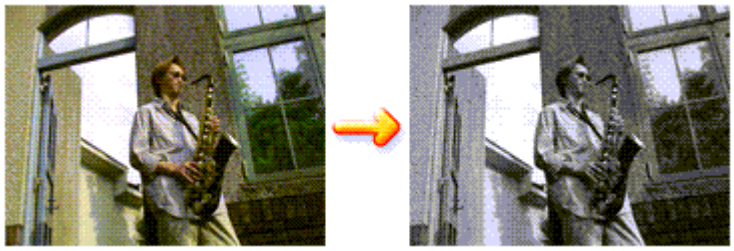
- When the part of the object is not printed, selecting Diffusion for Halftoning may solve the problem.

Related Topics

- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

Printing a Color Document in Monochrome



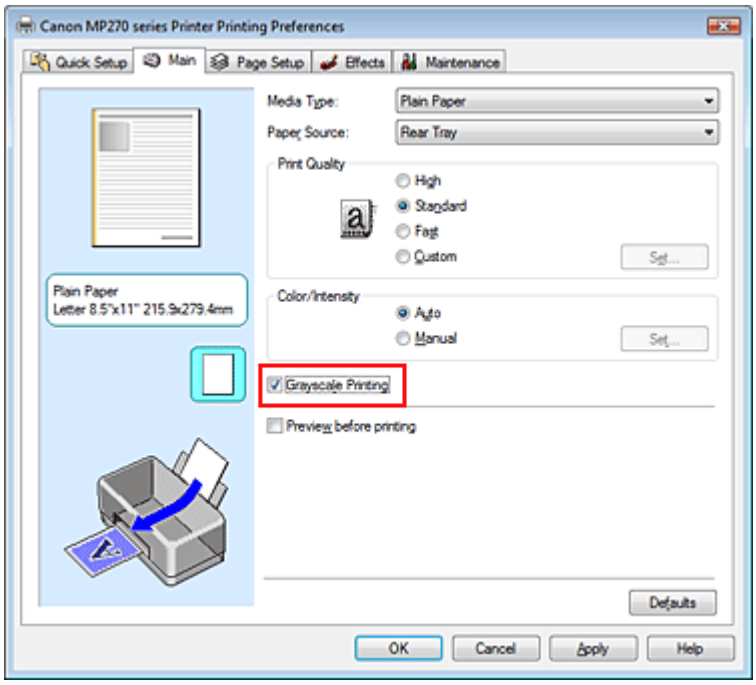
The procedure for printing a color document in monochrome is as follows:

You can also set a grayscale printing in Additional Features on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set grayscale printing

   Check the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab.



3. Complete the setup

   Click OK.

   When you execute print, the document is converted to grayscale data. It allows you to print the color document in monochrome.

Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box is checked, the printer driver processes image data as sRGB data. In this case, actual colors printed may differ from those in the original image data. When using the grayscale printing function to print Adobe RGB data, convert the data to sRGB data using an application software.

Note

- During Grayscale Printing, color inks may be used as well as black ink.

Page top

Specifying Color Correction

You can specify the color correction method suited to the type of document to be printed.
Normally, the printer driver adjusts the colors by using Canon Digital Photo Color so that data is printed with color tints that most people prefer. This method is suitable for printing sRGB data.

When you want to print by using the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data effectively, select ICM. When you want to use an application software to specify a printing ICC profile, select None.

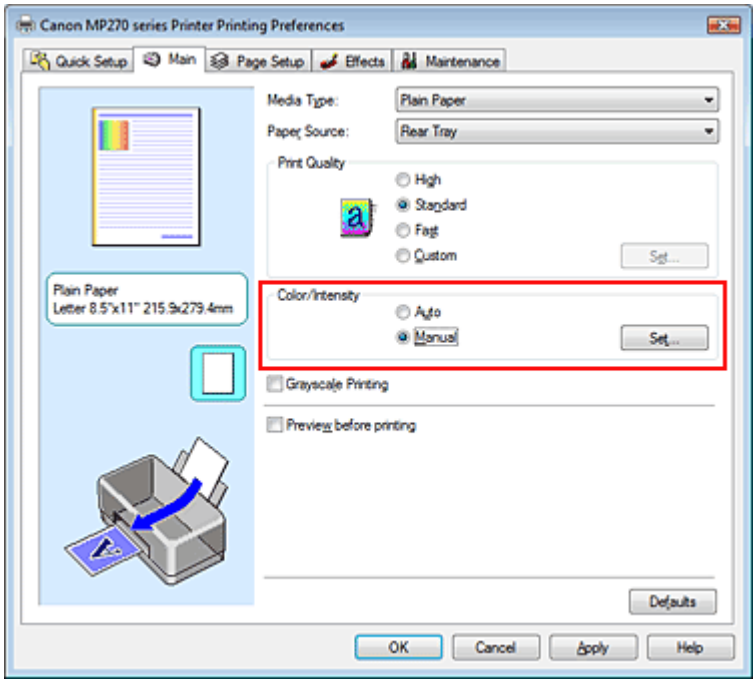
The procedure for specifying color correction is as follows:

You can also set color correction on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

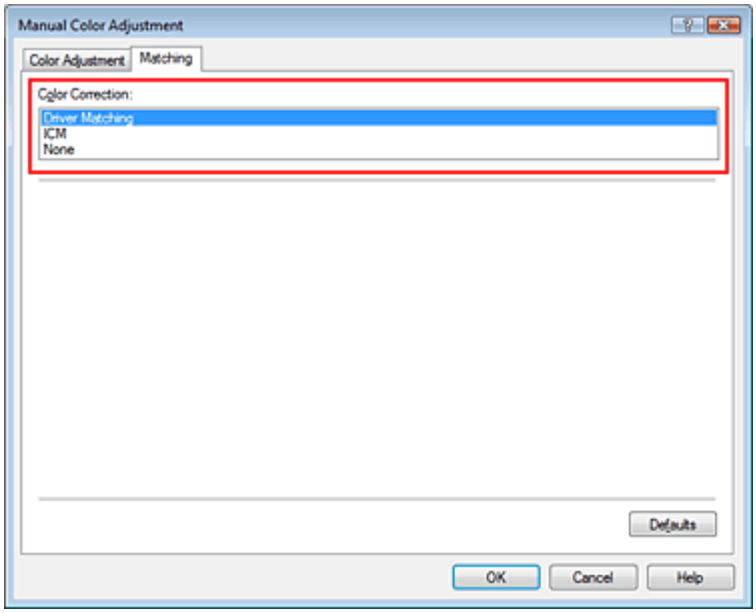
On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, select Color Correction setting that matches your purpose from the following, and click OK.



Driver Matching
By using Canon Digital Photo Color, you can print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer. Driver Matching is the default setting for Color Correction.

ICM
You can print by using the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data effectively.

None
The printer driver does not perform color correction. Select this value when you are specifying an individually created printing ICC profile or a printing ICC profile for special Canon paper in an application software to print data.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified color correction method.

Important

- When ICM is disabled in the application software, ICM is unavailable for Color Correction and the printer may not be able to print the image data properly.
- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Color Correction appears grayed out and is unavailable.

Related Topics

Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
Printing with ICC Profiles

Page top

Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data

When people print images taken with digital cameras, they sometimes feel that the printed color tones differ from those of actual image or those displayed on the monitor.
To get the print results as close as possible to the desired color tones, you must select a printing method that is best suited to the application software used or to your purpose.

Color Management

Devices such as digital cameras, scanners, monitors, and printers handle color differently. Color management (color matching) is a method that manages device-dependent "colors" as a common color space. For Windows, a color management system called "ICM" is built into the operating system.
Adobe RGB and sRGB are popularly used as common color spaces. Adobe RGB has a wider color space than sRGB.

ICC profiles convert device-dependent "colors" into a common color space. By using an ICC profile and carrying out color management, you can draw out the color space of the image data within the color reproduction area that the printer can express.

Selecting a Printing Method Suited to the Image Data

The recommended printing method depends on the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data or the application software to be used. There are two typical printing methods. Check the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data and the application software to be used, and then select the printing method suited to your purpose.

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

Describes the procedure for printing sRGB data by using the color correction function of the printer driver.

- **To print using Canon Digital Photo Color**

  The printer prints data with color tints that most people prefer, reproducing colors of the original image data and producing three-dimensional effects and high, sharp contrasts.

- **To print by directly applying editing and touch-up results of an application software**

  When printing the data, the printer brings out subtle color difference between dark and light areas, while leaving the darkest and lightest areas intact.
  When printing the data, the printer applies fine adjustment results, such as brightness adjustments made with an application software.

Printing with ICC Profiles

Describes the procedure for printing by using the color space of Adobe RGB or sRGB effectively.
You can print with a common color space by setting up the application software and the printer driver so that the color management matches the input ICC profile of the image data.
The method for setting up the printer driver differs depending on the application software to be used.

Page top

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

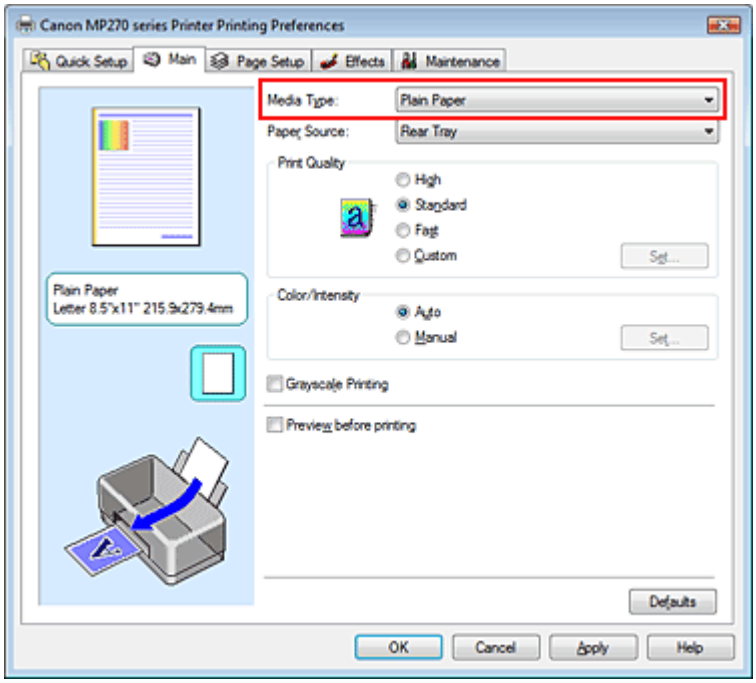
You can specify the color correction function of the printer driver to print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer through the use of Canon Digital Photo Color.
When printing from an application software that can identify ICC profiles and allows you to specify them, use a printing ICC profile in the application software, and select settings for color management.

The procedure for adjusting colors with the printer driver is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

   Select the type of paper loaded in the machine from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

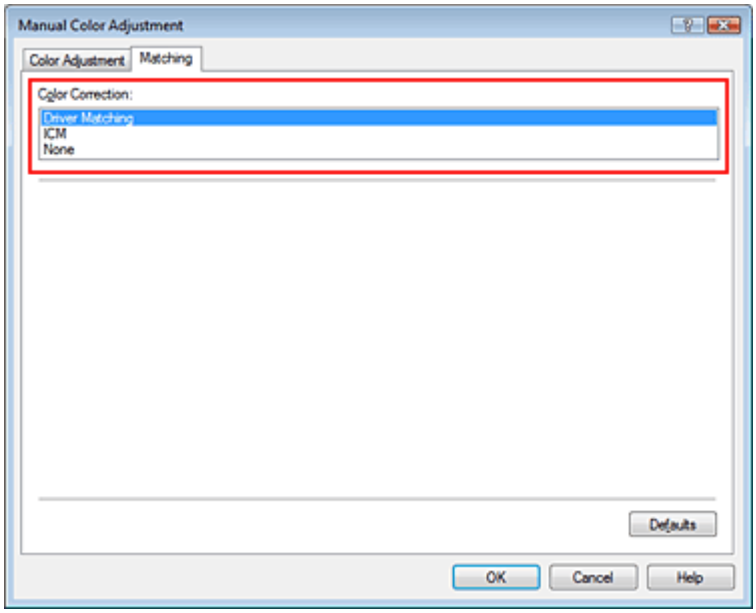
   Select High, Standard, or Fast that matches your purpose for Print Quality.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

   Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....
   The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

   Click Matching tab, and select Driver Matching for Color Correction.



6. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the printer driver adjusts the colors when printing the data.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

Printing with ICC Profiles

When the image data has a specified input ICC profile, you can print by using the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the data effectively.

The printer driver setting procedure varies depending on the application software used to print.

Specify an ICC Profile from the Application Software and Print the Data

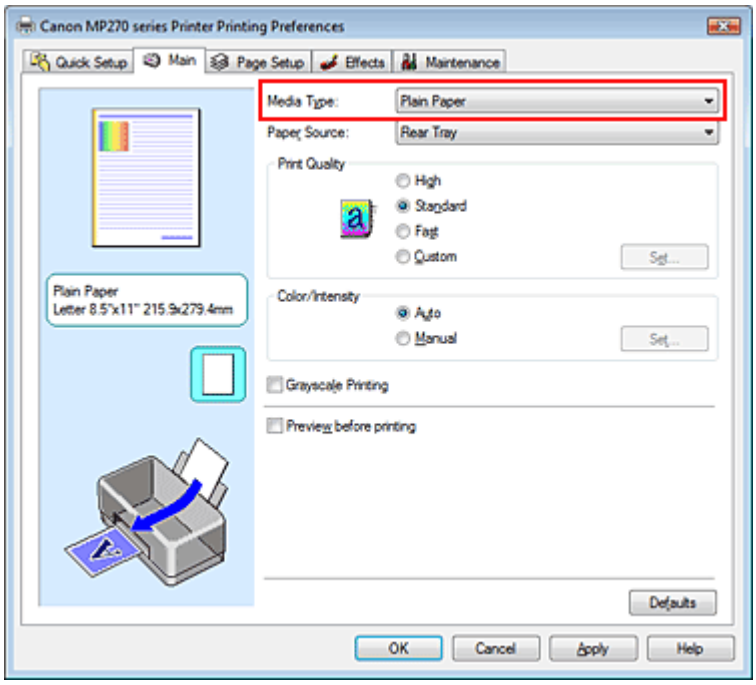
When you print the editing and touch-up results of Adobe Photoshop, Canon Digital Photo Professional, or any application software that allows you to specify input and printing ICC profiles, you print by effectively using the color space of the input ICC profile specified in the image data.

To use this printing method, use your application software to select color management items and specify an input ICC profile and a printing ICC profile in the image data.
Even if you print using a printing ICC profile that you created yourself or one for special Canon paper from your application software, be sure to select color management items from your application software.
For instructions, refer to the manual of the application software you are using.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

   Select the type of paper loaded in the machine from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

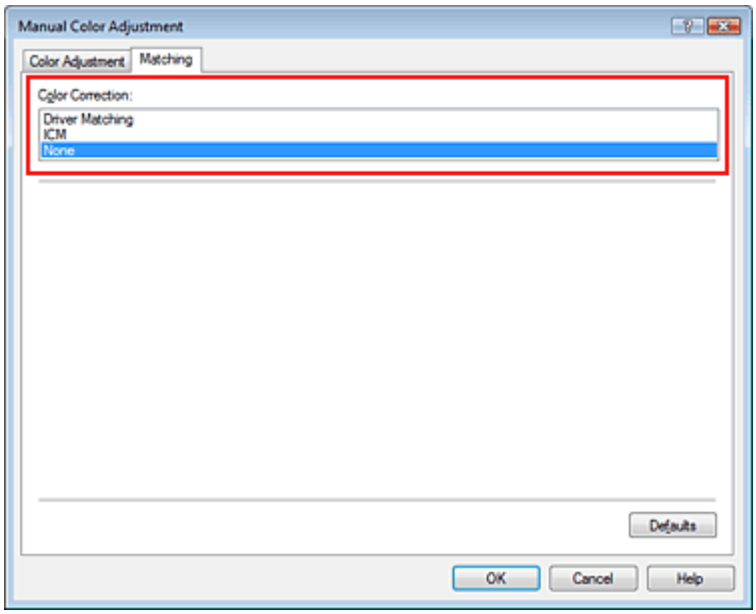
   Select High, Standard, or Fast that matches your purpose for Print Quality.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

   Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....
   The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, and select None for Color Correction.



6. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the printer uses the color space of the image data.

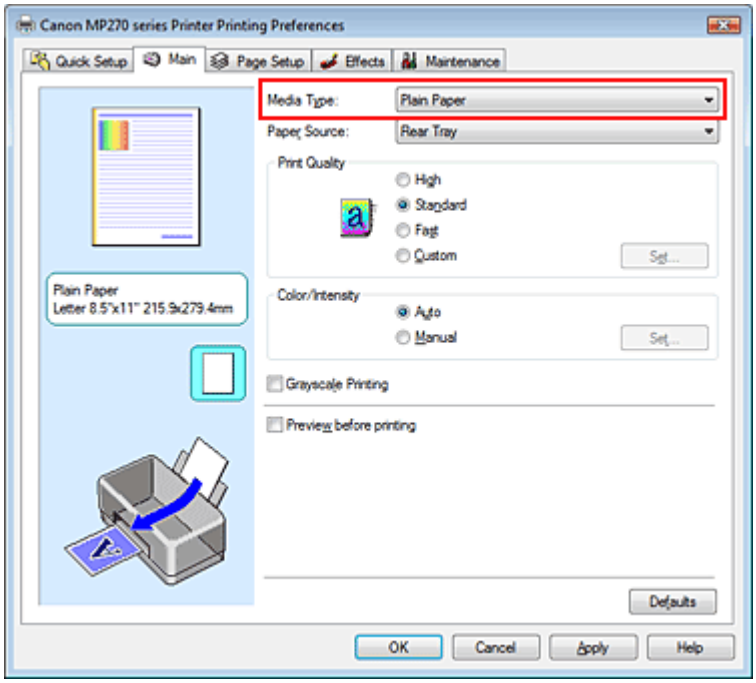
Specify an ICC Profile with the Printer Driver, and then Print

Print from a program that cannot identity input ICC profiles or does allow you to specify one by specifying input ICC profiles from printer profiles of the printer driver. When printing Adobe RGB data, you can print the data with the Adobe RGB color space even if the application software does not support Adobe RGB.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the machine from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

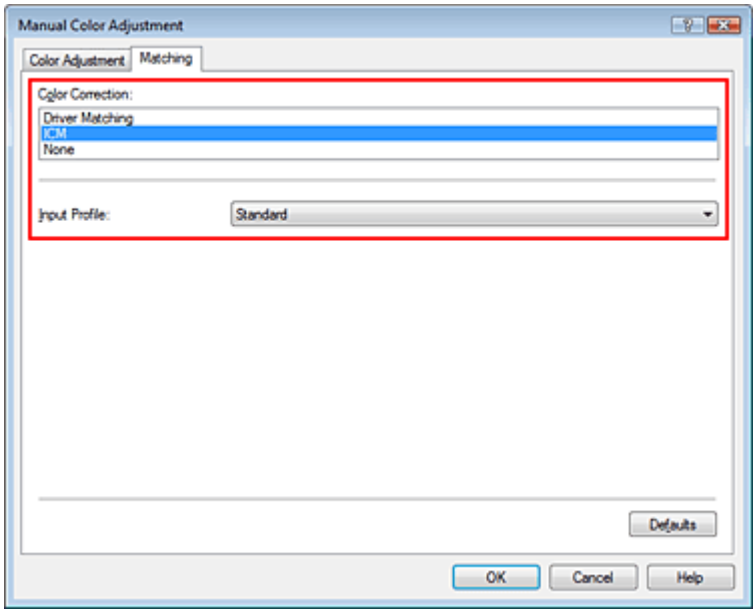
Select High, Standard, or Fast that matches your purpose for Print Quality.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....
Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, and select ICM for Color Correction.



6. Select the input profile

Select an Input Profile that matches the color space of the image data.

- **For sRGB data or data without an input ICC profile:**

  Select Standard.

- **For Adobe RGB data:**

Select Adobe RGB (1998).

Important

- When the application software specifies an input profile, the input profile setting of the printer driver becomes invalid.
- When no input ICC profiles are installed on your computer, Adobe RGB (1998) is not displayed. You can install ICC profiles from the Setup CD-ROM that accompanies the machine.

7. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance of Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

8. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the color space of the selected image data.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

Adjusting Color Balance

You can adjust the color tints when printing.
Since this function adjusts color balance of the output by changing the ink ratios of each color, it changes the total color balance of the document. Use the application software if you want to change the color balance significantly. Use the printer driver only when you want to adjust the color balance slightly.
The following sample shows the case when color balance is used to intensify cyan and to diminish yellow so that the overall colors are more uniform.

No adjustment

Adjust Color Balance

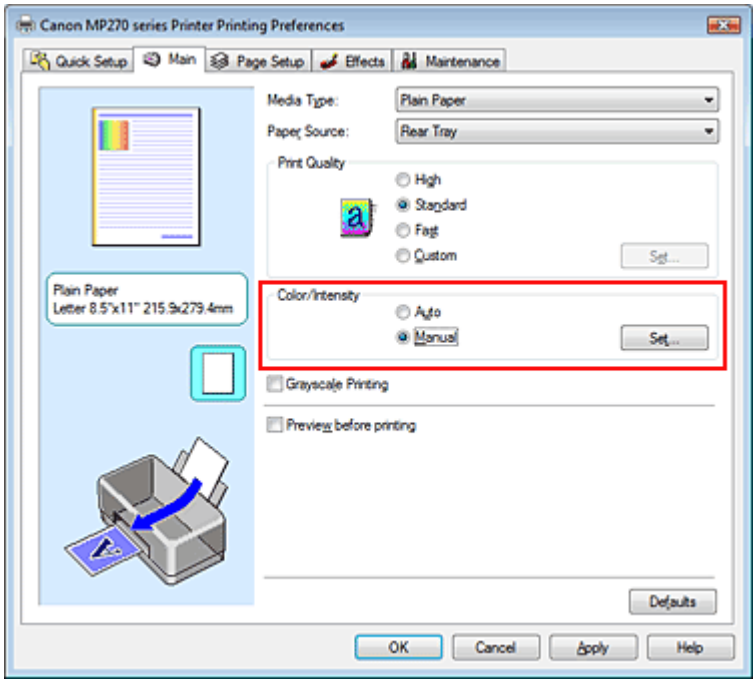
The procedure for adjusting color balance is as follows:

You can also set color balance on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



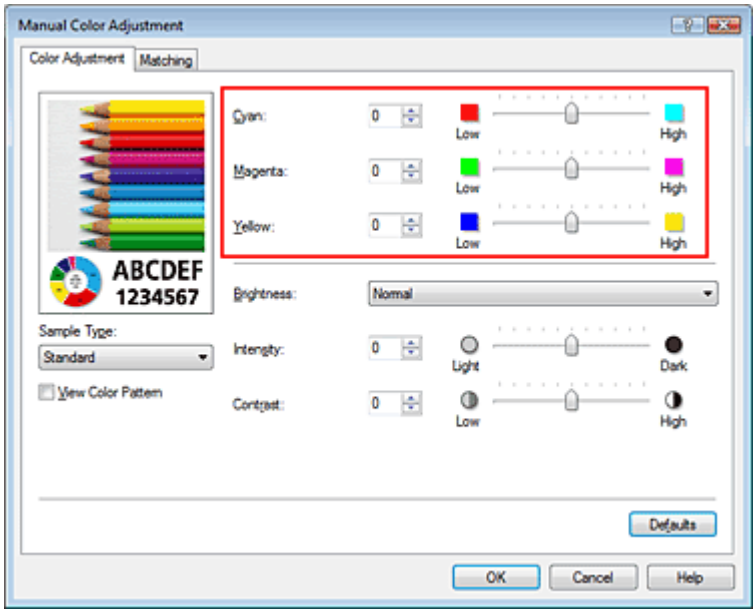
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust color balance

There are individual sliders for Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow. Each color becomes stronger when the corresponding slider is moved to the right, and becomes weaker when the corresponding slider is

moved to the left. For example, when cyan becomes weaker, the color red becomes stronger.
You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



Important

- Adjust the slider gradually.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the document is printed with the adjusted color balance.

Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow appear grayed out and are unavailable.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

Adjusting Brightness

You can change the brightness of the overall image data during printing.
This function does not change pure white or pure black but it changes the brightness of the intermediate colors.
The following sample shows the print result when the brightness specification is changed.

Light is selected | Normal is selected | Dark is selected

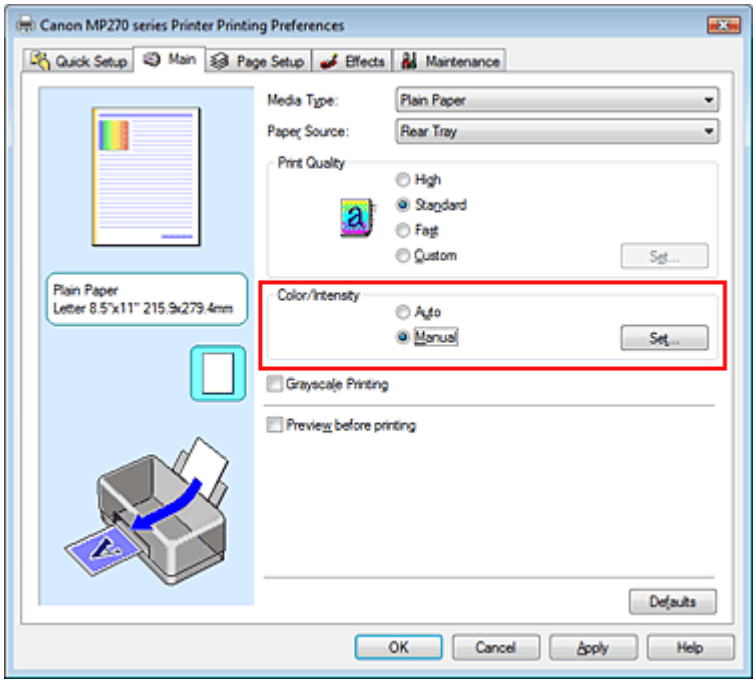
The procedure for adjusting brightness is as follows:

You can also set brightness on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

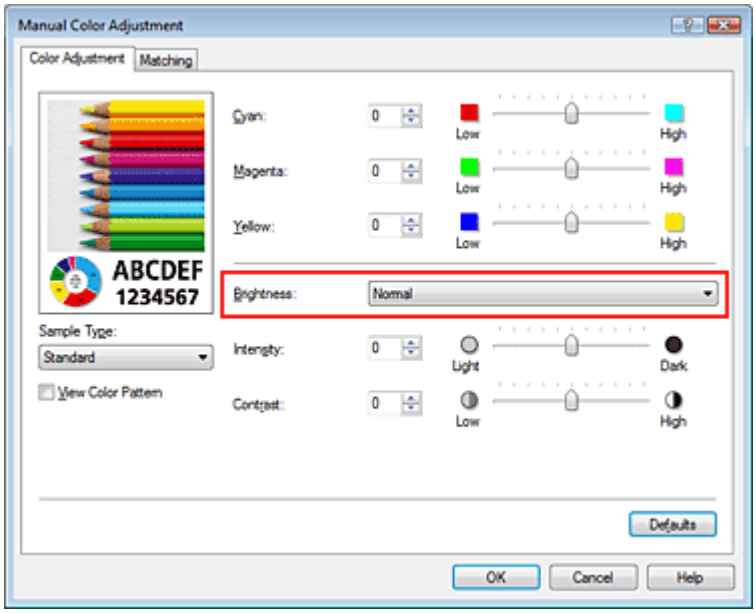
On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Specify the brightness

Select Light, Normal, or Dark for Brightness, and click OK.



4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed at the specified brightness.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

Adjusting Intensity

You can dilute (brighten) or intensify (darken) the colors of the overall image data during printing.
When you want to sharpen the print results, you should intensify the colors.
The following sample shows the case when the intensity is increased so that all colors become more intense when the image data is printed.

No adjustment

Higher Intensity

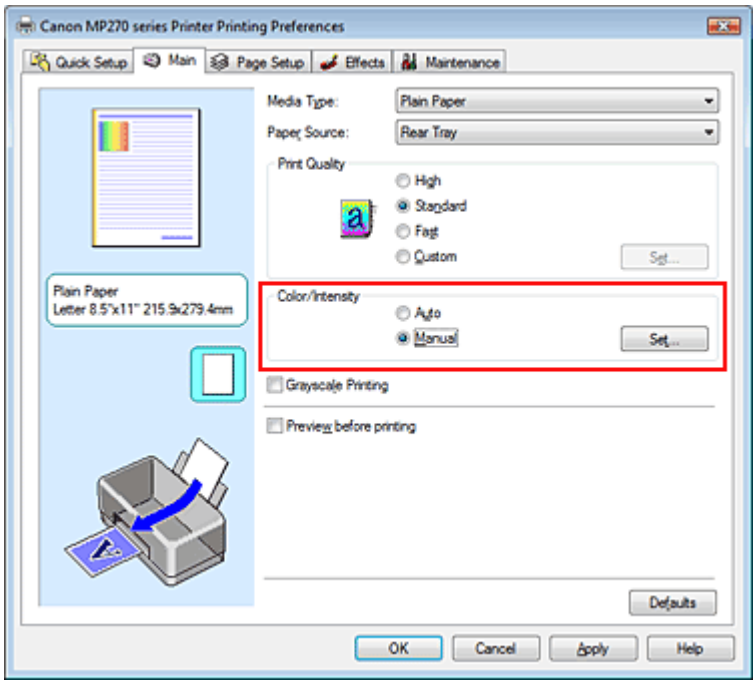
The procedure for adjusting intensity is as follows:

You can also set intensity on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity on the Main tab, and click Set....

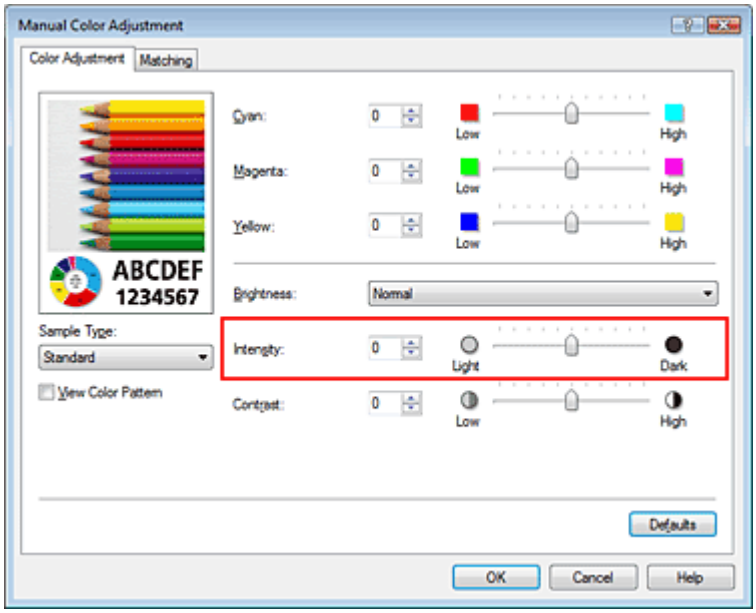


The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust intensity

Moving the Intensity slider to the right intensifies (darkens) the colors. Moving the slider to the left dilutes (brightens) the colors.
You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



Important

- Adjust the slider gradually.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the image data is printed with the adjusted intensity.

Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Contrast

Page top

Adjusting Contrast

You can adjust the image contrast during printing.
To make the differences between the light and dark portions of images greater and more distinct, increase the contrast. On the other hand, to make the differences between the light and dark portions of images smaller and less distinct, reduce the contrast.

No adjustment

Adjust the contrast

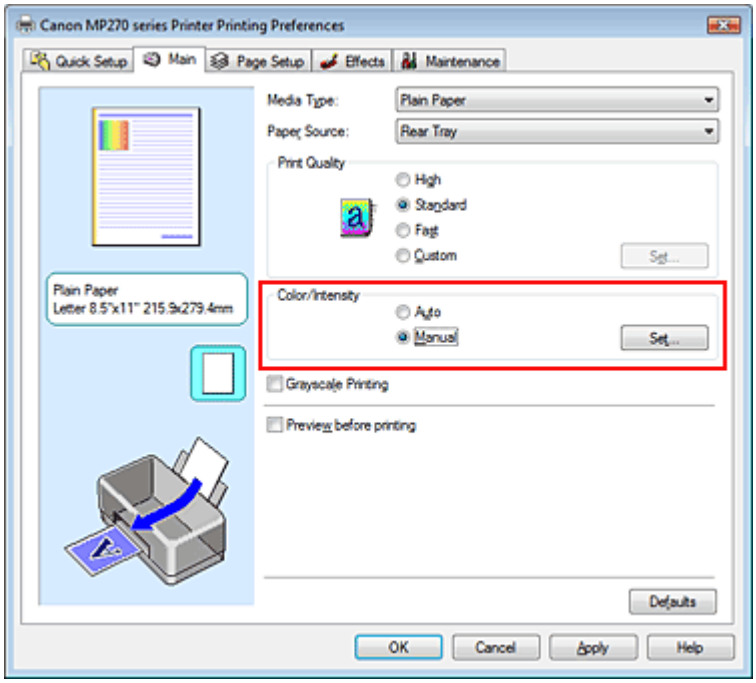
The procedure for adjusting contrast is as follows:

You can also set contrast on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....

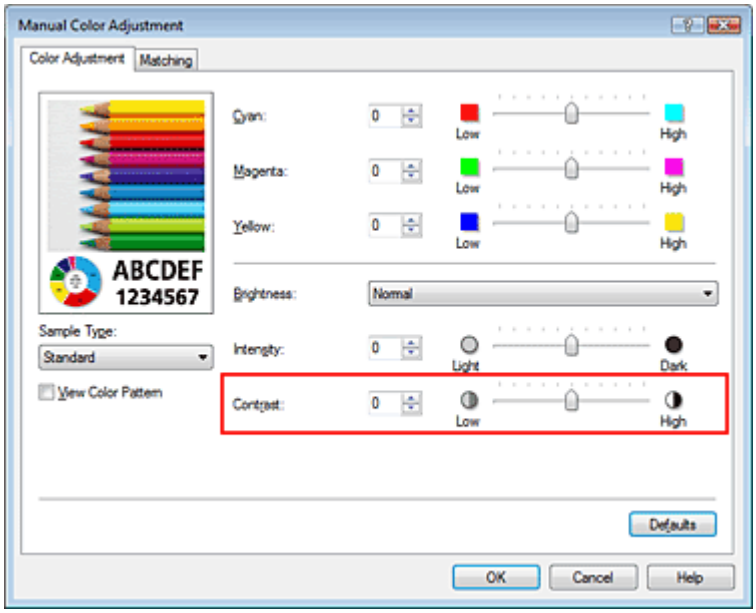


The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust the contrast

Moving the Contrast slider to the right increases the contrast, and moving it to the left decreases the contrast.
You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



Important

- Adjust the slider gradually.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.
When you execute print, the image is printed with the adjusted contrast.

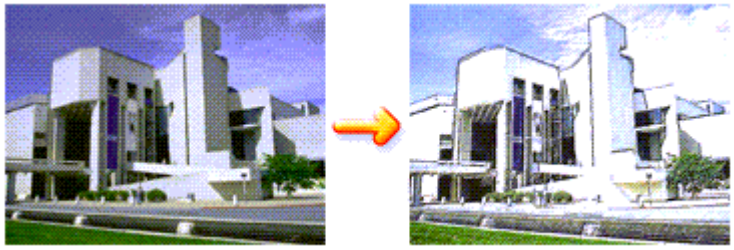
Related Topics

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity

Page top

Simulating an Illustration

With the Simulate Illustration function, you can print full-color or 256-color image data so that it looks like a hand-drawn illustration. This function adds different effects to the original profile and colors.

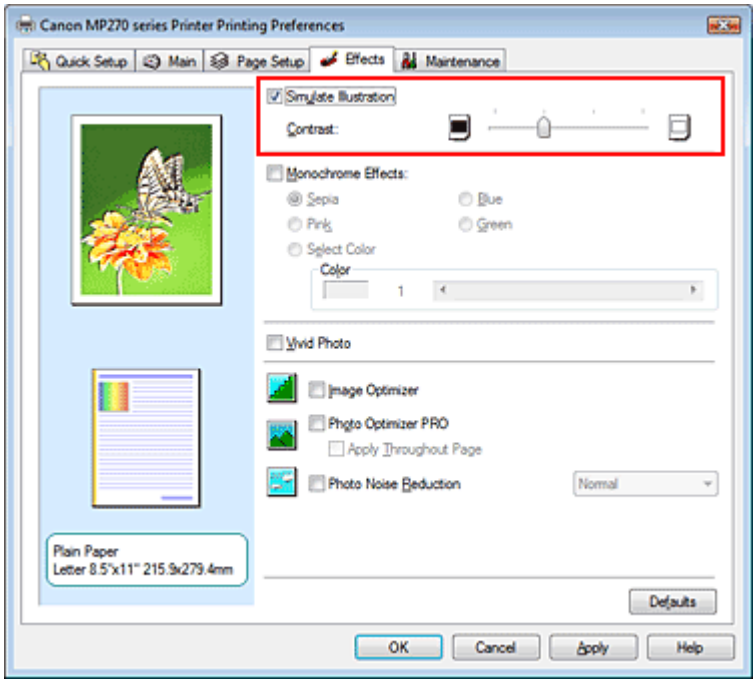


The procedure for performing Simulate Illustration is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set the Simulate Illustration

   If necessary, check the Simulate Illustration check box on the Effects tab, and adjust the Contrast. Moving the slider to the right lightens the image data and moving the slider to the left darkens the image data.
   The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



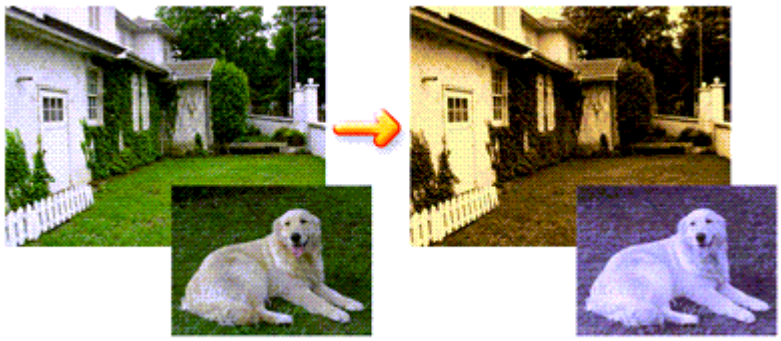
3. Complete the setup

   Click OK.
   When you execute print, the image will be printed so that it looks hand-drawn.

Page top

Representing Image Data with a Single Color

With the Monochrome Effects function, you can benefit from coloring effects such as changing a photograph to a sepia tone image.

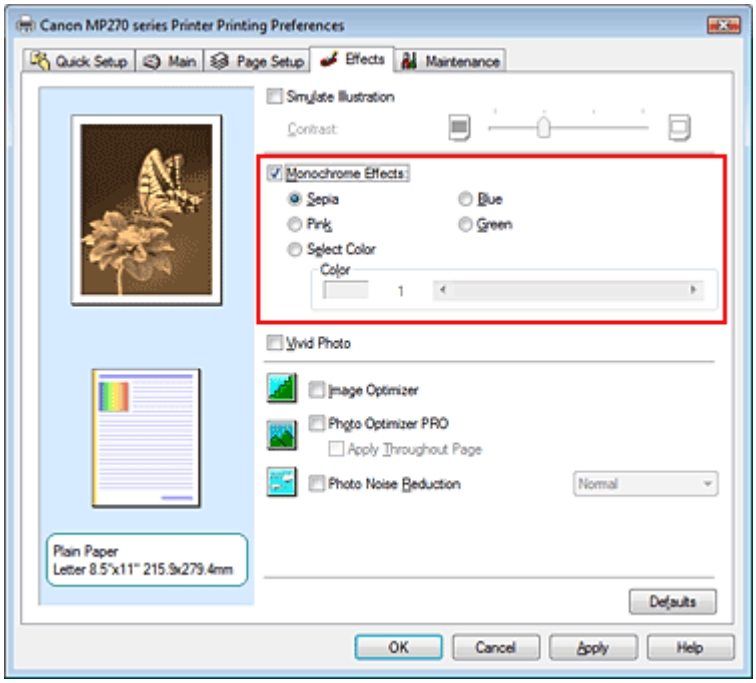


The procedure for performing Monochrome Effects is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set Monochrome Effects

   Check the Monochrome Effects check box on the Effects tab and select your desired color.
   When you use Select Color, move the Color slider to specify the color you want.
   The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Complete the setup

   Click OK.
   When you execute print, the image will be printed with a single color.

Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Monochrome Effects appears

grayed out and is unavailable.

Page top

Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors

The Vivid Photo function allows you to print image data with vivid colors.
The vivid photo function emphasizes the colors in background sceneries while maintaining the human skin color natural. By using this function, you can make vivid hues appear even more vivid.

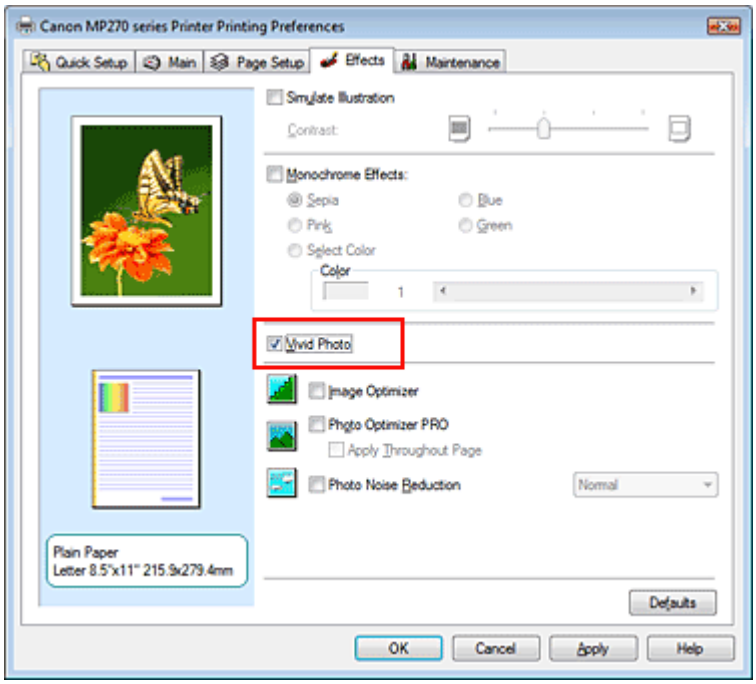
The procedure for performing Vivid Photo is as follows:

You can also set vivid photos on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set Vivid Photo

Check the Vivid Photo check box on the Effects tab.



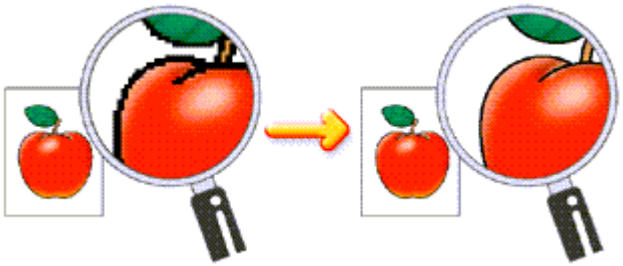
3. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the image will be printed with vivid colors.

Page top

Smoothing Jagged Outlines

The Image Optimizer function allows you to smooth jagged outlines in photos and graphics that have been enlarged with your application. This feature is especially useful when printing low-resolution images from Web pages.

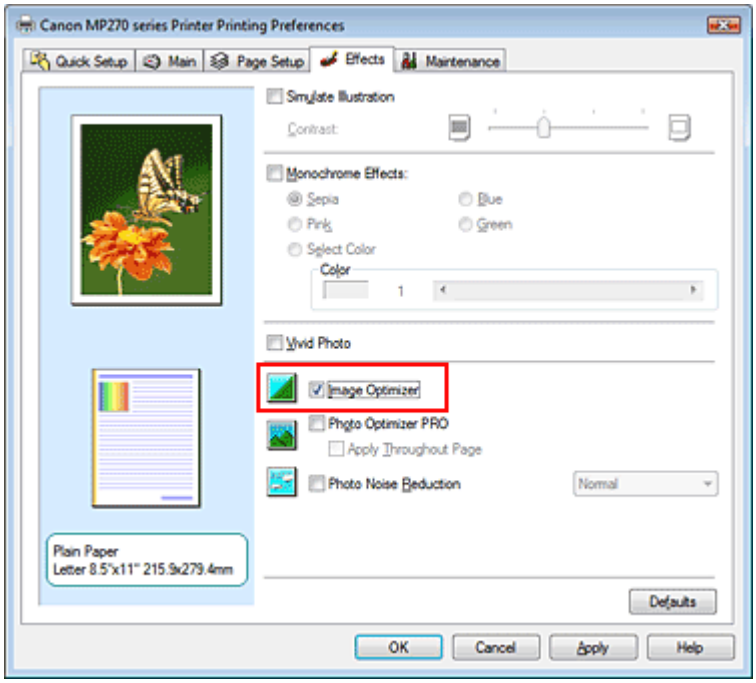


The procedure for performing Image Optimizer is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set Image Optimizer

   Check the Image Optimizer check box on the Effects tab.



3. Complete the setup

   Click OK.
   The photos and graphics will be printed with jagged outlines smoothed.

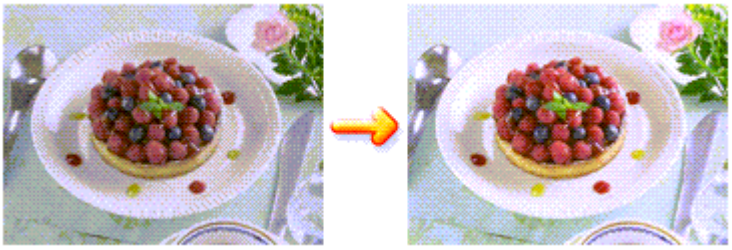
Note

- Depending on application software or resolution of image data, the Image Optimizer may have no discernible effects.
- It may take longer to complete printing when the Image Optimizer is used.

Page top

Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration

The Photo Optimizer PRO function corrects colors of digital camera images or scanned images. It is specially designed to compensate for color shift, overexposure, and underexposure.

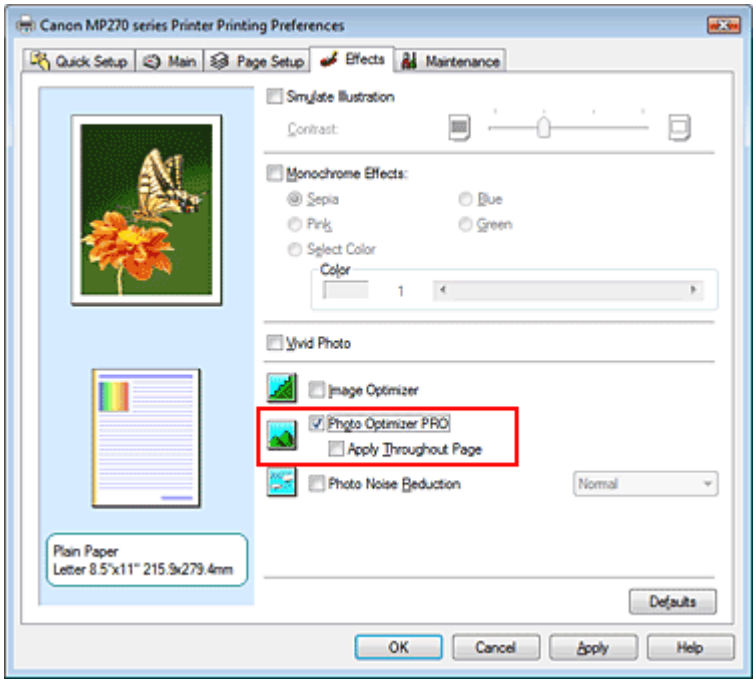


The procedure for performing Photo Optimizer PRO is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set Photo Optimizer PRO

Check the Photo Optimizer PRO check box on the Effects tab.



Normally there is no need to check the Apply Throughout Page check box.
Images within each page are optimized on an image-by-image basis.

Note

- Check the Apply Throughout Page check box when printing image data that has been processed, such as being cropped or rotated. In this case the entire page will be treated as a single image to be optimized.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK.
When you execute print, the images will be printed with color compensation.

Important

- Photo Optimizer PRO does not function when:
  - Background is set in the Stamp/Background dialog box on the Page Setup tab.
  - Define Stamp... is selected in the Stamp/Background dialog box on the Page Setup tab, and the bitmapped stamp is configured.

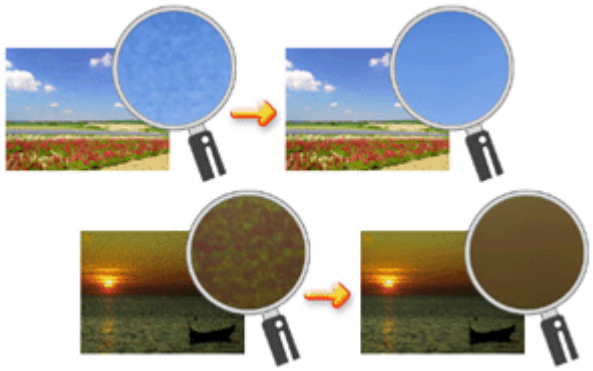
Note

- Depending on images, the Photo Optimizer PRO may have no discernible effect.

Page top

Reducing Photo Noise

With the Photo Noise Reduction function, you can reduce the digital camera noise and improve the image quality of the digital print.

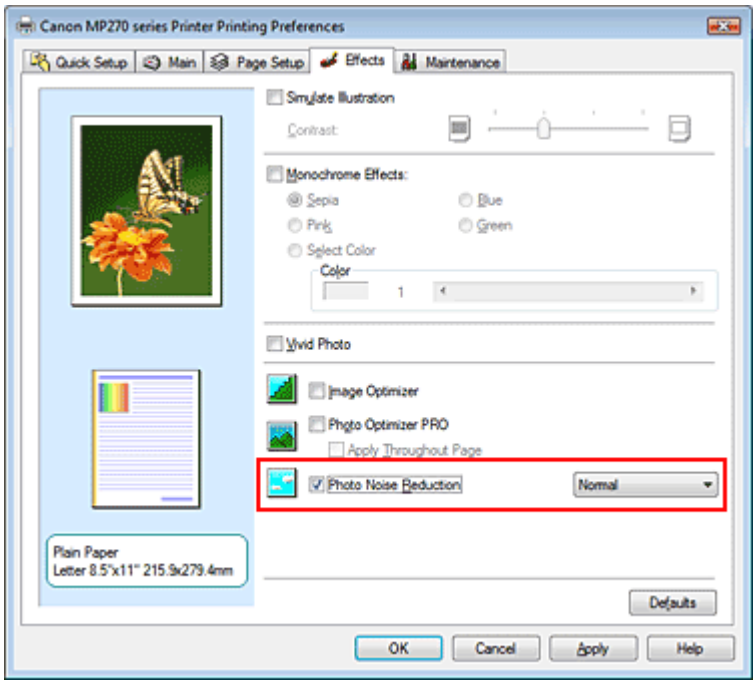


The procedure for performing Photo Noise Reduction is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set Photo Noise Reduction

   Check the Photo Noise Reduction check box on the Effects tab and select Normal or Strong for the level.



3. Complete the setup

   Click OK.
   When you execute print, the image will be printed with the digital camera noise being reduced.

Note

- It is recommended to select Normal for most cases. Select Strong if you have selected Normal and the noise still bothers you.

- Depending on application software or resolution of image data, effects of digital camera noise reduction may not be obvious.
- When this function is used for other than photos taken by digital cameras, image may be distorted.

Page top

Overview of the Printer Driver

- Printer Driver Operations
- Canon IJ Printer Driver
- How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window
- Maintenance Tab
- Canon IJ Status Monitor
- Canon IJ Preview

Page top

Canon

Printer Driver Operations

MA-5385-V1.00

Various Printing Methods

Printing with Easy Setup
Setting a Page Size and Orientation
Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order
Setting the Stapling Margin
Borderless Printing
Fit-to-Page Printing
Scaled Printing
Page Layout Printing
Poster Printing
Booklet Printing
Duplex Printing
Stamp/Background Printing
Printing an Envelope
Displaying the Print Results before Printing
Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data

Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
Specifying Color Correction
Adjusting Color Balance
Adjusting Brightness
Adjusting Intensity
Adjusting Contrast
Simulating an Illustration
Representing Image Data with a Single Color
Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors
Smoothing Jagged Outlines
Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration
Reducing Photo Noise

Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer

Changing the Print Options
Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile
Setting the Ink Cartridge
Managing the Machine Power
Reducing the Machine Noise
Changing the Machine Operation Mode

Performing Maintenance from a Computer

Cleaning the Print Heads
Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers
Aligning the Print Head Position
Checking the Print Head Nozzles
Cleaning Inside the Machine

Overview of the Printer Driver

Canon IJ Printer Driver
How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window
Maintenance Tab
Canon IJ Status Monitor
Canon IJ Preview

Updating the MP Drivers

Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers
Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers
Before Installing the MP Drivers
Installing the MP Drivers

Appendix

Deleting the Undesired Print Job
Sharing the Printer on a Network

Canon IJ Printer Driver

The Canon IJ printer driver is software that is installed on your computer for printing data on this machine.

The Canon IJ printer driver converts the print data created by your Windows application into data that your printer can understand and sends the converted data to the printer.

Because different models support different print data formats, you need a Canon IJ printer driver for the specific model you are using.

How to Use Printer Driver Help

You can display the Help describing the driver setting items through the printing preferences screen of the Canon IJ printer driver.

- **To view all descriptions of a tab...**

  Click the Help button on each tab. A dialog box opens, displaying a description of each item on the tab.
  You can also click the link found in the description of an item to display a description of the linked dialog box.

- **To see a description for each item...**

  Right-click the item you want to learn about and then click Help.
  Alternatively, when the Help button is found at the right end of the title bar, click that button, and then click the item you want to learn about.
  A description of the item is displayed.

Related Topic

How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window

Page top

How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window

The printer driver setup window can be displayed through the application software in use or the Start menu of the Windows.

Note

- This guide mainly describes operations on the Windows Vista. Operations may differ depending on versions of the Windows.

Open the Printer Driver Setup Window through the Application Software

Follow the procedure below to configure printing profile when printing.

1. Select the command you perform printing on the application software in use

   In general, select Print on the File menu to open the Print dialog box.

2. Select your model name and click Preferences (or Properties)

   The printer driver setup window appears.

   Note

   - Depending on application software you use, command names or menu names may vary and there may be more steps. For details, refer to the user's manual of your application software.

Open the Printer Driver Setup Window through the Start Menu

Follow the procedure below to perform maintenance operations such as print head cleaning, or to configure printing profile that are common for all application software.

1. Select items from the Start menu as shown below:
   - In Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
   - In Windows XP, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Printers and Other Hardware -> Printers and Faxes.
   - In Windows 2000, select the Start menu -> Settings -> Printers.

2. Right-click your model name icon, and then select Printing Preferences... from the displayed menu

   The printer driver setup window appears.

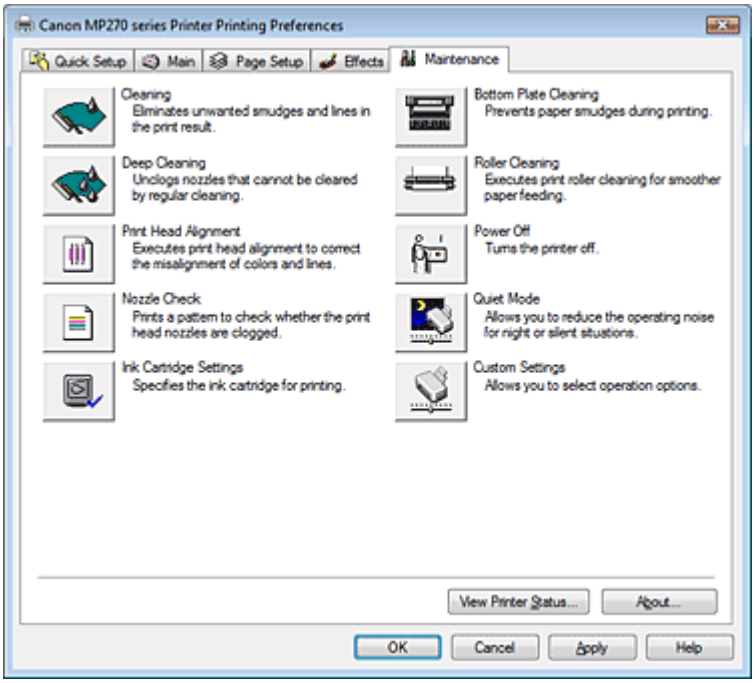
   Important

   - Opening the printer driver setup window through Properties displays such tabs regarding the Windows functions as the Ports (or Advanced) tab. Those tabs do not appear when opening through Printing Preferences... or application software. For tabs regarding Windows functions, refer to the user's manual for the Windows.

Page top

Maintenance Tab

The Maintenance tab allows you to perform machine maintenance or change the settings of the machine.



Features

- Cleaning the Print Heads
- Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers
- Aligning the Print Head Position
- Checking the Print Head Nozzles
- Cleaning Inside the Machine
- Setting the Ink Cartridge
- Managing the Machine Power

Related Features

- Reducing the Machine Noise
- Changing the Machine Operation Mode

Page top

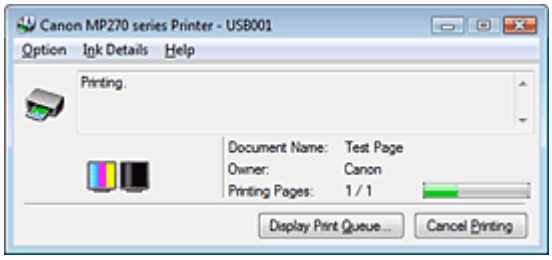
Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor is an application software that shows the status of the printer and the progress of printing on the Windows screen. You will know the status of the printer with graphics, icons, and messages.

Launching the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor launches automatically when data is sent to the printer. When launched, the Canon IJ Status Monitor appears as a button on the task bar.

Click the status monitor button displayed on the task bar. The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.

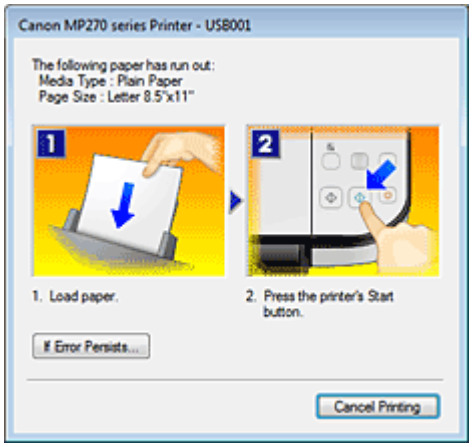


Note

- To open the Canon IJ Status Monitor when the printer is not printing, open the printer driver setup window and click View Printer Status... on the Maintenance tab.

When Errors Occur

The Canon IJ Status Monitor is automatically displayed if an error occurs (e.g., if the printer runs out of paper or if the ink is low).



In such cases, take the appropriate action as described.

Page top

Canon IJ Preview

The Canon IJ Preview is an application software that displays what the print result will look like before a document is actually printed.

The preview reflects the information that is set within the printer driver and allows you to check the document layout, print order, and number of pages. You can also change the media type settings.

When you want to display a preview before printing, open the printer driver setup window , click the Quick Setup tab or the Main tab, and check the Preview before printing check box.

When you do not want to display a preview before printing, uncheck the check box.

Related Topic

Displaying the Print Results before Printing

Page top

Imprimarea cu ajutorul panoului de operare al aparatului

Copierea

În partea superioară a paginii

Copierea

Realizarea de copii
Utilizarea funcţiilor utile de copiere

În partea superioară a paginii

Efectuarea copiilor

Pentru procedura de bază de efectuare a copiilor, consultaţi Copierea.

- Micşorarea sau mărirea unei copii
- Utilizarea funcţiilor utile de copiere

În partea superioară a paginii

Micşorarea sau mărirea unei copii

1. Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este pus în funcţiune.

2. Încărcaţi hârtie simplă în tava din spate.

3. Încărcaţi documentele originale pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

4. Apăsaţi butonul **Hârtie (Paper)** pentru a selecta hârtie simplă A4 sau 8.5"x11".

Notă

- Puteţi comuta între A4 şi Letter pentru dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate în tava din spate.
  ➡ Schimbarea dimensiunii paginii între A4 şi Letter

5. Apăsaţi butonul **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)** .

   Se aprinde lampa **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)**. Pentru a revoca operaţia de copiere cu încadrare în pagină, apăsaţi din nou butonul **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)**.

Notă

- Puteţi utiliza butonul **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)** doar atunci când utilizaţi funcţia de copiere.
- Imaginile copiate sunt micşorate sau mărite automat pe lungime/lăţime pentru a se încadra în dimensiunea de pagină selectată.

6. Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul **+** pentru a specifica numărul de copii.

Notă

- Apăsând în mod repetat butonul **+**, pe LED se va afişa F. Numărul de copii va fi setat la 20.
- Când doriţi să faceţi de la 10 până la 19 copii, specificaţi 20 pentru numărul de copii, apoi încărcaţi acelaşi număr de coli de hârtie. În acest caz, aparatul va opri copierea şi va apărea o eroare. Apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** pentru a anula eroarea.
- Prin apăsarea butonului **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** , numărul de copii revine la 1.

7. Apăsaţi butonul **Culoare (Color)** pentru copiere color, sau butonul **Negru (Black)** pentru copiere alb-negru.

   Aparatul începe copierea cu încadrare în pagină.
   După ce aţi terminat de copiat, luaţi documentul original de pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

- **Pentru copiere cu viteză mare**

1. **Menţineţi apăsat butonul Culoare (Color) sau Negru (Black) mai mult de 2 secunde.**

   LED-ul clipeşte o dată.

2. **Eliberaţi butonul.**

   Aparatul începe copierea la viteză mare.

Important

- Nu ridicaţi capacul pentru documente şi nu îndepărtaţi documentul original de pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare până la terminarea copierii.

Notă

- Copierea la viteză mare este indicată pentru imprimarea pe hârtie simplă a documentelor ce conţin exclusiv text. Când calitatea nu este conform aşteptărilor, încercaţi copierea normală.
- Când doriţi să faceţi de la 10 până la 19 copii, specificaţi 20 pentru numărul de copii, apoi încărcaţi acelaşi număr de coli de hârtie. În acest caz, aparatul va opri copierea şi va apărea o eroare. Apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** pentru a anula eroarea.
- Pentru a revoca operaţia de copiere, apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)**.

În partea superioară a paginii

Utilizarea funcţiilor utile de copiere

- **Borderless copy**

  Puteţi copia imagini astfel încât să acopere întreaga pagină, fără chenar.

  Copierea fără chenar (Borderless Copy)

În partea superioară a paginii

Schimbarea dimensiunii paginii între A4 şi Letter

Puteţi comuta între A4 şi Letter pentru dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate în tava din spate.

1. Apăsaţi repetat butonul **Întreţinere (Maintenance)** până când apare d.

2. Apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** pentru a selecta A4 sau butonul **Culoare (Color)** pentru a selecta Letter.

Notă

- Puteţi schimba dimensiunea hârtiei selectate între A4 şi Letter atunci când dispozitivul este pornit.

În partea superioară a paginii

Copierea fără chenar (Borderless Copy)

Puteţi copia imagini astfel încât să acopere întreaga pagină, fără chenar.

1. Încărcaţi hârtie foto în tava din spate.

2. Apăsaţi butonul **Hârtie (Paper)** pentru a selecta dimensiunea paginii încărcate în tava din spate.

Notă

- Puteţi comuta între A4 şi Letter pentru dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate în tava din spate.
  ➡ Schimbarea dimensiunii paginii între A4 şi Letter
- Atunci când este selectat Plain Paper de format A4 sau 8,5"x11", nu este disponibilă opţiunea de copiere fără chenar.

3. Apăsaţi butonul **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)** .

Se aprinde lampa **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)**. Pentru a revoca operaţia de copiere fără margini, apăsaţi din nou butonul **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)**.

Notă

- Puteţi utiliza butonul **Încadrare în pagină (Fit to Page)** doar atunci când utilizaţi funcţia de copiere.
- Imaginile copiate sunt micşorate sau mărite automat pentru a se încadra în dimensiunea de pagină selectată pentru copiere fără chenar.

4. Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul **+** pentru a specifica numărul de copii.

Notă

- Apăsând în mod repetat butonul **+**, pe LED se va afişa F. Numărul de copii va fi setat la 20.
- Când doriţi să faceţi de la 10 până la 19 copii, specificaţi 20 pentru numărul de copii, apoi încărcaţi acelaşi număr de coli de hârtie. În acest caz, aparatul va opri copierea şi va apărea o eroare. Apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** pentru a anula eroarea.
- Prin apăsarea butonului **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** , numărul de copii revine la 1.

5. Apăsaţi butonul **Culoare (Color)** pentru copiere color, sau butonul **Negru (Black)** pentru copiere alb-negru.

Dispozitivul începe copierea fără chenar.

Important

- Nu ridicaţi capacul pentru documente şi nu îndepărtaţi documentul original de pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare până la terminarea copierii.

Notă

- Este posibil să apară o uşoară trunchiere la margini deoarece imaginea copiată este mărită pentru

a acoperi întreaga pagină.

- Pentru a revoca operaţia de copiere, apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)**.

În partea superioară a paginii

Scanarea

- Scanarea imaginilor
- Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer cu ajutorul panoului de operare al aparatului
- Scanarea cu pachetul software al aplicaţiei
- Scanarea cu alt software de aplicaţie
- Alte metode de scanare

În partea superioară a paginii

Scanarea imaginilor

- Scanarea imaginilor
- Înaintea scanării
- Aşezarea documentelor

În partea superioară a paginii

Scanarea imaginilor

Puteţi scana imagini de pe aparat pe un computer fără a le imprima şi le puteţi salva în formate de imagine cunoscute, precum JPEG, TIFF, bitmap sau PDF.

Selectaţi metoda de scanare în funcţie de scopul dumneavoastră.

- Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer cu ajutorul panoului de operare al aparatului
- Scanarea cu pachetul software al aplicaţiei
- Scanare cu alt software de aplicaţie

În partea superioară a paginii

Înaintea scanării

Înainte de a scana imagini, verificaţi următoarele:

- **Documentul originalul de scanat întruneşte cerinţele pentru un original care urmează să fie aşezat pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare?**
  Consultaţi Aşezarea documentelor pentru cerinţe şi pentru modul de încărcare a documentului original pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

În partea superioară a paginii

Placing Documents

Learn how to place documents on the machine's Platen. Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.

Important

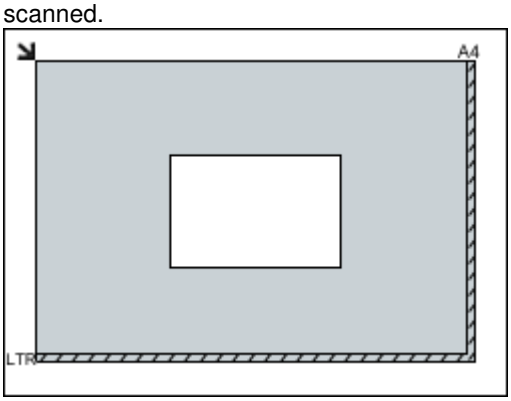
- Do not place objects on the Document Cover. The objects may fall into the machine when the Document Cover is opened. This may damage the machine.

Placing Documents

Place documents as described below to allow the machine to detect the document type or size automatically.

Important

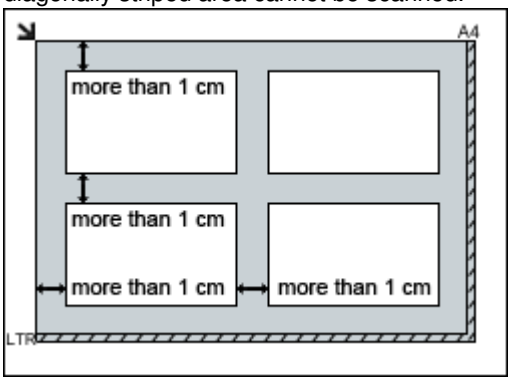
- When scanning by specifying the document type or size in MP Navigator EX or ScanGear (scanner driver), align an upper corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.
- Photos that have been cut to various shapes and documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square cannot be cropped accurately when scanning.
- Reflective CD/DVD labels may not be scanned properly.
- Close the Document Cover when scanning.

When Scanning Photos, Postcards, Business Cards or CD/DVD	When Scanning Magazines, Newspapers or Text Documents
Placing a Single Document Place the document face-down on the Platen, with 3/8 inches (1 cm) or more space between the edges of the Platen and the document. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.  **Important** - Large documents (such as A4 size photos)	Place the document face-down on the Platen and align an upper corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.

that cannot be placed away from the edges/ arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen may be saved as PDF files. To save in a format other than PDF, scan by specifying the file format.

Placing Multiple Documents

Allow 3/8 inches (1 cm) or more space between the edges of the Platen and documents, and between documents. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.



Note

- You can place up to 12 documents.
- Positions of slanted documents (10 degrees or less) are corrected automatically.

Page top

Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer cu ajutorul panoului de operare al aparatului

- Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer cu ajutorul panoului de operare al aparatului
- Anexă: Diferite setări de scanare

În partea superioară a paginii

Salvarea datelor scanate pe computer cu ajutorul panoului de operare al aparatului

Puteţi salva datele scanate pe computer utilizând panoul de operare al aparatului.

Înainte de a salva datele scanate pe computer, verificaţi următoarele:

- **Aplicaţiile software necesare (MP Drivers şi MP Navigator EX) sunt instalate.**

  Dacă aplicaţiile software (MP Drivers şi MP Navigator EX) nu sunt încă instalate, introduceţi *CD-ROM -ul de instalare (Setup CD-ROM)* în unitatea de disc a computerului, apoi executaţi Custom Install şi selectaţi MP Drivers şi MP Navigator EX.

- **Aparatul este conectat la computer în mod corespunzător.**

  Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este conectat corect la computer.

  Nu conectaţi şi nu deconectaţi cablul USB în timp ce aparatul scanează imagini sau atunci când computerul se află în modul inactivitate sau în modul standby.

- **Operaţia care se va realiza după scanarea documentului original este specificată în MP Navigator EX.**

  MP Navigator EX vă permite să specificaţi răspunsul rezultat în urma apăsării butonului **SCANARE (SCAN)** de la aparat. Puteţi specifica răspunsul individual, pentru fiecare eveniment. Pentru detalii, consultaţi Selectarea unui răspuns pentru comenzile primite de la panoul de operare, utilizând MP Navigator EX.

1. Macintosh Setaţi aplicaţia de pornire.

Dacă utilizaţi Mac OS X v.10.5.x sau Mac OS X v.10.4.x:
Această operaţie nu este necesară.
Dacă utilizaţi Mac OS X v.10.3.9:
Trebuie să setaţi MP Navigator EX ca aplicaţia software de start în Captură imagine din Applications în Mac OS X.
Selectaţi Applications din meniul Go, apoi faceţi dublu clic pe pictograma Image Capture. Faceţi clic pe Options în partea din stânga jos a ferestrei scanerului, selectaţi MP Navigator EX 3 în Application to launch when the scanner button is pressed:, după care faceţi clic pe OK. Pentru a părăsi Image Capture, selectaţi Quit Image Capture din meniul Image Capture.

Important

- Dacă Options nu este afişat, selectaţi Preferences din meniul Image Capture, faceţi clic pe Scanner şi faceţi clic pe Use TWAIN software whenever possible pentru a şterge opţiunea. Apoi părăsiţi Image Capture şi reporniţi-l.

2. Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este pus în funcţiune.

3. Încărcaţi documentele originale pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

Notă

- Consultaţi Aşezarea documentelor pentru detalii cu privire la modul de încărcare a documentelor originale pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

4. Apăsaţi butonul **SCANARE (SCAN)**.

La scanare sunt aplicate setările configurate prin MP Navigator EX.

5. Windows Pentru a specifica MP Navigator EX 3.0

Dacă utilizaţi Windows Vista:
Este posibil să fie afişat ecranul de selectare a programului după apăsarea butonului **SCANARE (SCAN)**. În acest caz, selectaţi MP Navigator EX Ver3.0 şi faceţi clic pe OK.
Puteţi seta MP Navigator EX să se lanseze oricând este apăsat butonul **SCANARE (SCAN)**. Pentru detalii, consultaţi Pentru utilizatorii Windows.
Dacă utilizaţi Windows XP:
Este posibil să fie afişat ecranul de selectare a programului după apăsarea butonului **SCANARE (SCAN)** pentru prima dată. În acest caz, specificaţi MP Navigator EX Ver3.0 ca aplicaţie software de utilizat, selectaţi Always use this program for this action, apoi faceţi clic pe OK. Data următoare, MP Navigator EX este pornit automat.

Important

- Dacă poziţia sau dimensiunea unei imagini nu este scanată corect în funcţie de tipul documentului original, consultaţi Scanarea fotografiilor şi documentelor şi modificaţi setările MP Navigator EX Document Type şi Document Size pentru a se potrivi cu cele ale originalului care este scanat.

- **Dacă doriţi să editaţi sau să imprimaţi imaginile scanate**

MP Navigator EX vă permite să editaţi imaginile scanate, precum optimizarea sau tăierea lor.

Puteţi, de asemenea, să porniţi aplicaţia software din MP Navigator EX pentru a edita sau imprima imaginile scanate.

➡ Să încercăm să scanăm

- **Dacă doriţi să scanaţi documente originale cu setări avansate**

ScanGear vă permite să scanaţi documente originale cu setări avansate, precum rezoluţia.

➡ Scanarea cu Setări avansate, utilizând ScanGear (driver de scaner)

Notă

- Puteţi utiliza o aplicaţie software compatibilă TWAIN sau WIA (doar Windows Vista şi Windows XP) şi Panoul de control (doar Windows Vista şi Windows XP) pentru a scana documente originale cu acest aparat.
  Pentru detalii, consultaţi Alte metode de scanare.

În partea superioară a paginii

Appendix: Various Scan Settings

- **Specifying how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine**

  Selecting a Response to Commands from the Operation Panel Using MP Navigator EX

Page top

MP Navigator EX

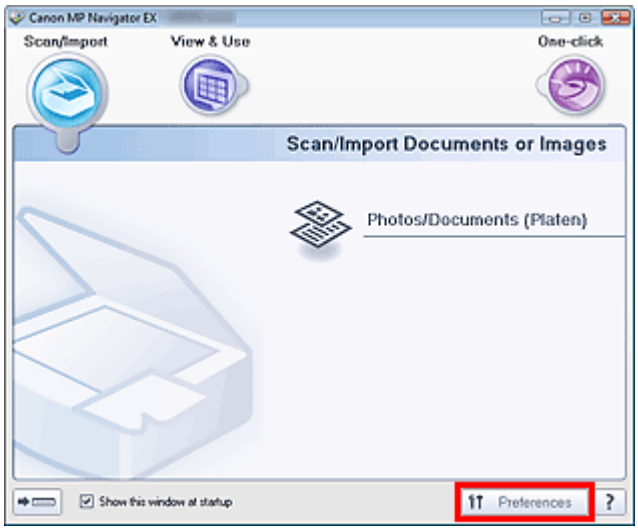
Selecting a Response to Commands from the Operation Panel Using MP Navigator EX

MP Navigator EX enables you to specify the response resulting from pressing a button for scanning on the Operation Panel of the machine. You can specify the response individually for each event.

1. Start MP Navigator EX.

Starting MP Navigator EX

2. Click Preferences.

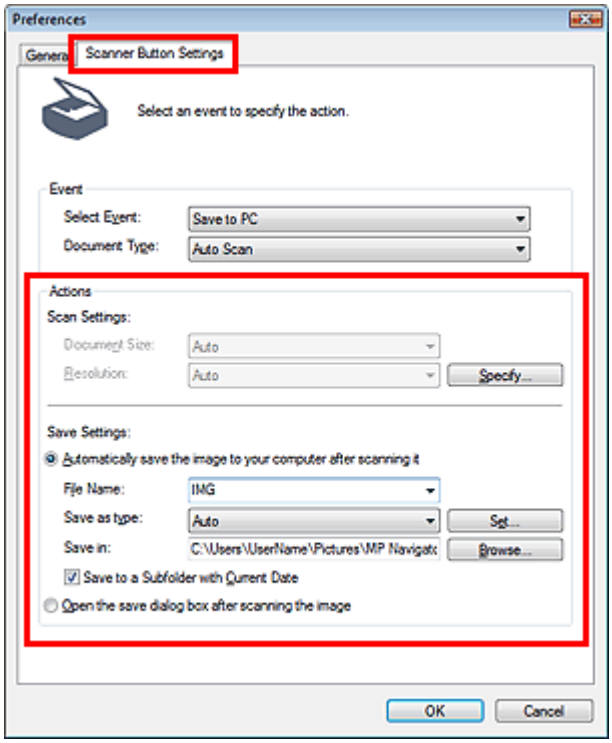


The Preferences dialog box opens.

Note

- The Preferences dialog box can also be opened by clicking Preferences in the One-click Mode screen.

3. On the Scanner Button Settings tab, specify Actions.



Note

- See the section below for details.
  ➡ Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save)

4. Click OK.

The operation will be performed according to the settings when you press the SCAN button on the machine.

Page top

Scanarea cu pachetul software al aplicaţiei

- Ce este MP Navigator EX (Software de scanare furnizat)?
- Să încercăm să scanăm
- Funcţii utile din MP Navigator EX
- Utilizarea imaginilor în MP Navigator EX
- Ecranele aplicaţiei MP Navigator EX
- Anexă: Deschiderea fişierelor diferite de imaginile scanate

În partea superioară a paginii

What Is MP Navigator EX (Supplied Scanner Software)?

MP Navigator EX is an application that enables you to easily scan photos and documents. It is suitable even for beginners.

Important

- MP Navigator EX may not start from the Operation Panel of the machine. In that case, restart the computer.
- Use the default display font size of the OS. Otherwise, software screens may not appear correctly.

What You Can Do with This Software

This software allows you to scan multiple documents at one time, or scan images larger than the Platen. You can also save scanned images, attach them to e-mail or print them using the supplied applications.

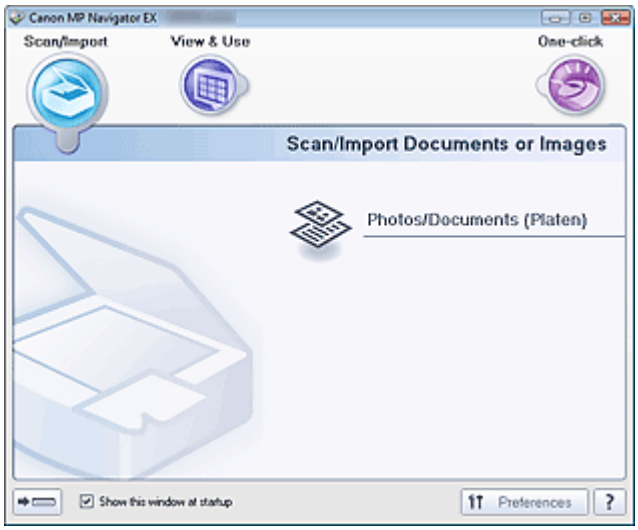
Screens

Main Menus

There are two types of MP Navigator EX Main Menu: Navigation Mode screen and One-click Mode screen.

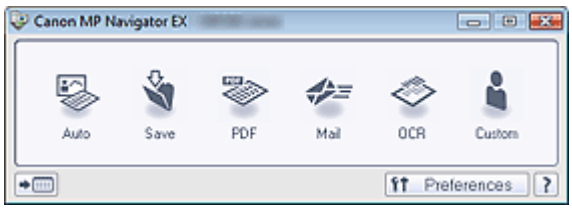
Navigation Mode Screen

You can start various tasks from the Navigation Mode screen, including simple scanning, scanning using ScanGear (scanner driver), and enhancing/correcting images.



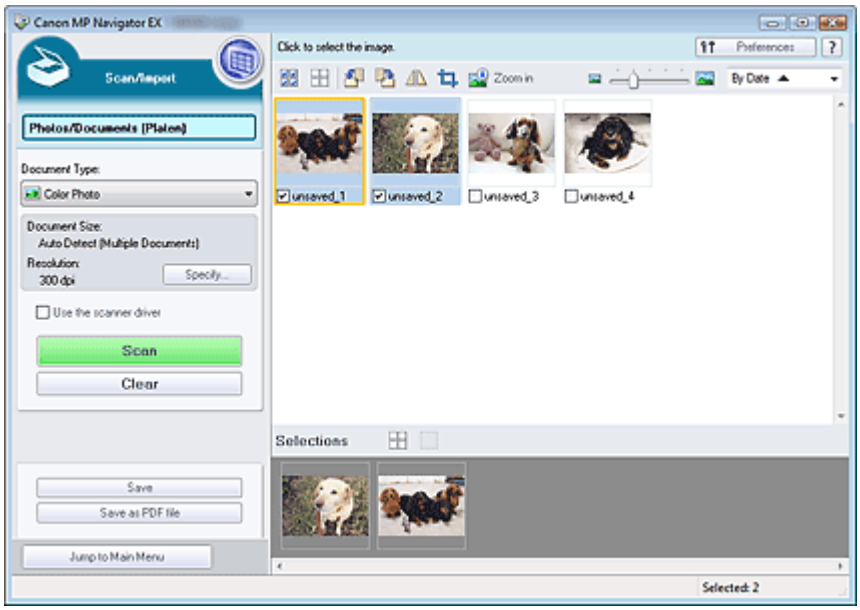
One-click Mode Screen

You can complete from scanning to saving, etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon in the One-click Mode screen.



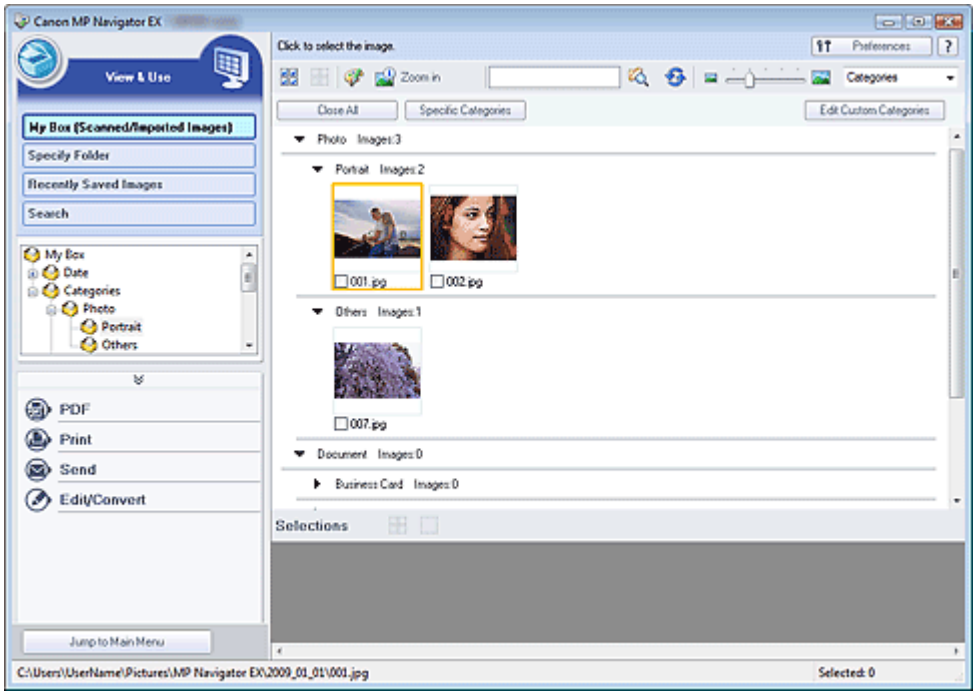
Scan/Import Window

Use the Scan/Import window to scan photos and documents.



View & Use Window

Use the View & Use window to select what you want to do with the scanned images.



Page top

MP Navigator EX

Let's Try Scanning

Try scanning using MP Navigator EX.

- **Starting MP Navigator EX**
  - Starting MP Navigator EX
- **Scanning documents, photos, magazines, etc. from the Platen**
  - Scanning Photos and Documents
- **Scanning two or more photos (small documents) at one time**
  - Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time
- **Scanning images larger than the Platen**
  - Scanning Images Larger than the Platen (Stitch Assist)
- **Scanning easily according to purpose (scan and save, attach to e-mail, etc.)**
  - Easy Scanning with One-click

Page top

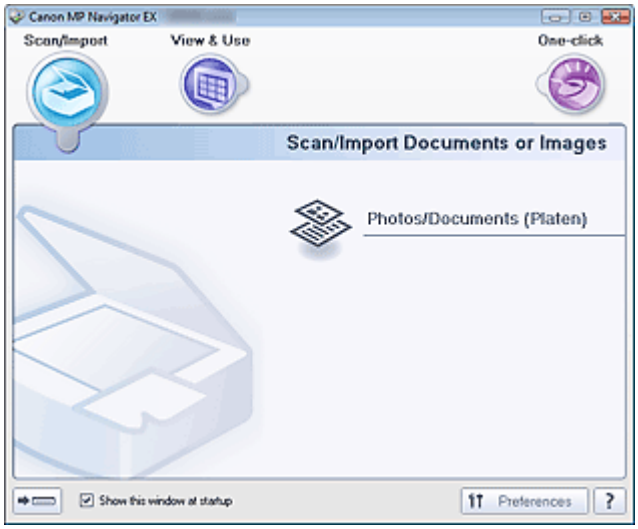
MP Navigator EX

Starting MP Navigator EX

Starting MP Navigator EX

1. Double-click Canon MP Navigator EX 3.0 icon on the desktop.

   MP Navigator EX starts.

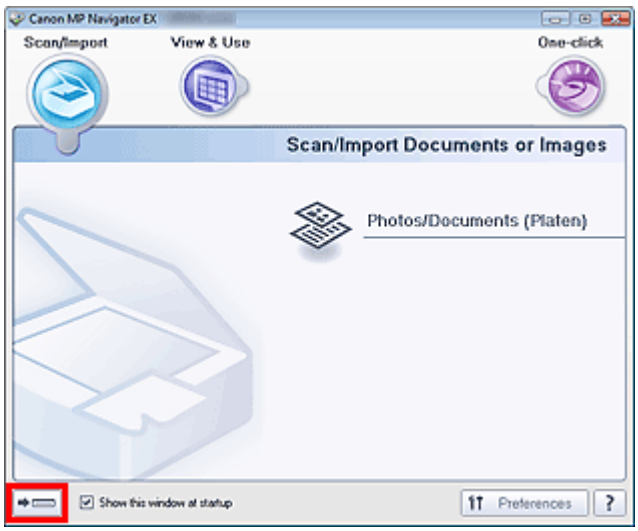


Note

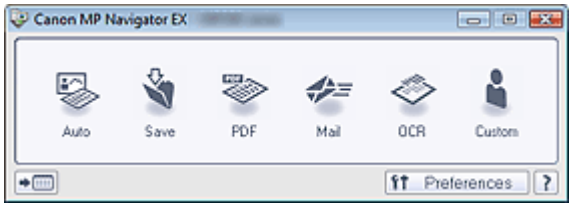
- Alternatively, from the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > MP Navigator EX 3.0 > MP Navigator EX 3.0.

Starting One-click Mode

1. Click (Switch Mode) at the bottom left of the screen.



The One-click Mode screen appears.



Note

- Select the Show this window at startup checkbox in the Navigation Mode screen to always open the Navigation Mode screen at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears at startup.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

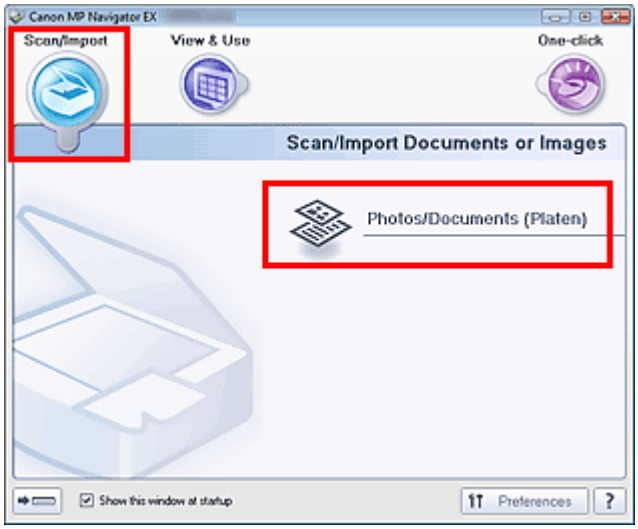
Scanning Photos and Documents

Scan photos and documents placed on the Platen.

1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

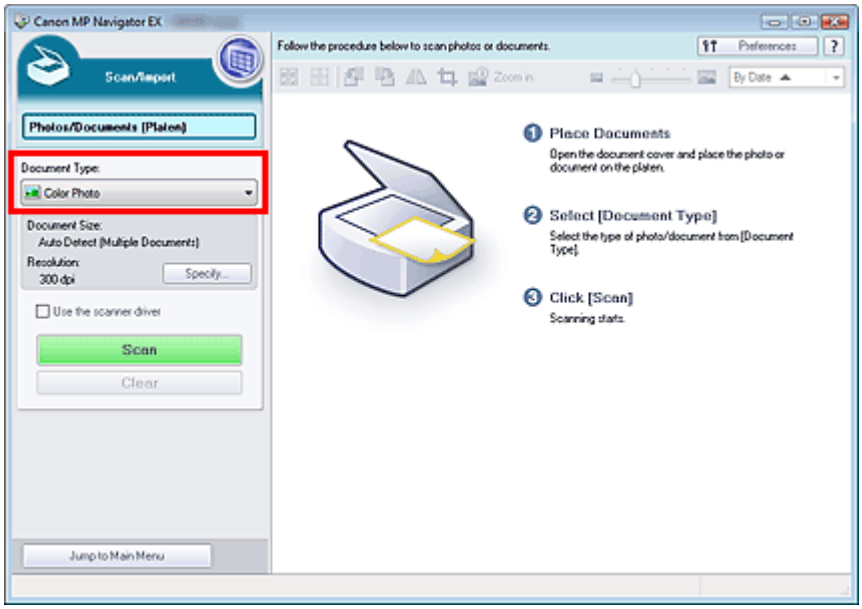
➡ Starting MP Navigator EX

2. Point to Scan/Import and click Photos/Documents (Platen).



3. Place the document on the Platen, then select Document Type.

➡ Placing Documents



Note

- When you select Magazine(Color), the Descreen function will be enabled and scanning takes longer than usual. To disable the Descreen function, deselect the Descreen checkbox in the

Scan Settings dialog box.

- Select Text(OCR) to extract the text in the image and convert to editable text data using MP Navigator EX.
- Color scanning is not available for Text(OCR). To scan in color, use OCR in One-click and scan with Color Mode set to Color.

4. Click Specify... to set the document size and scanning resolution as required.

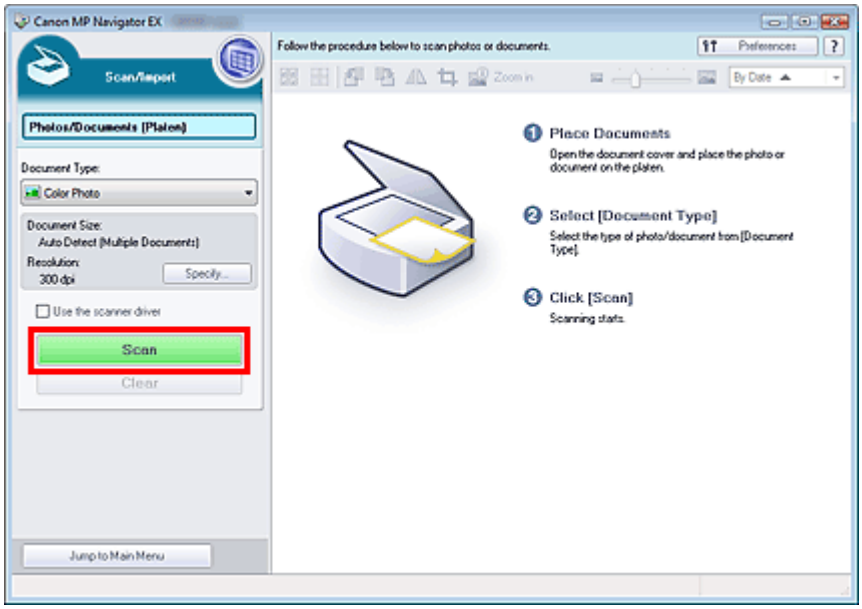
When setting is completed, click OK.

➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

Important

- When scanning a large document (such as an A4 size photo), align its corner with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the platen and specify the document size in the Scan Settings dialog box.

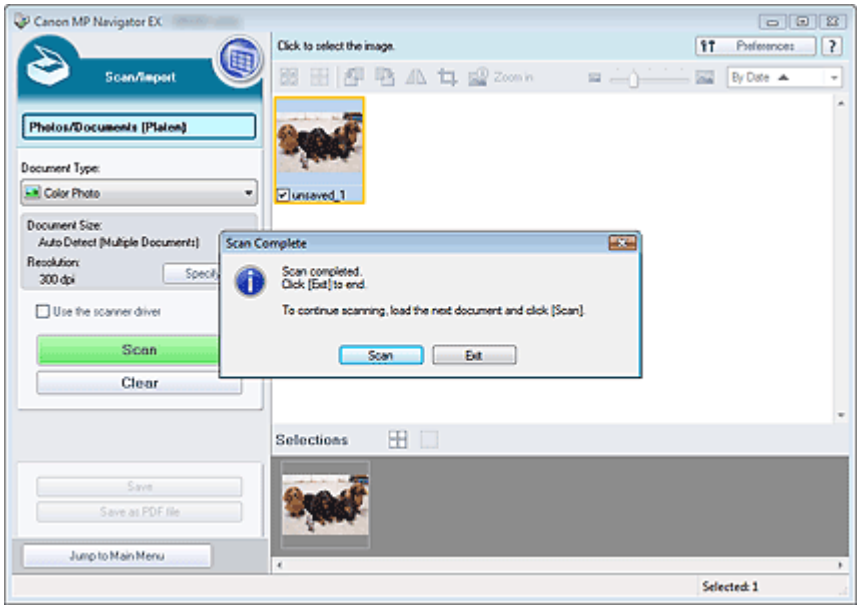
5. Click Scan.



Scanning starts.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



6. Edit the scanned images as required.

Use Edit Tools to rotate images, select a part of an image, etc.

See the Edit Tools in "Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window) " for details.

Note

- First select images to edit. (Selected images are outlined in orange.) Drag the mouse or use Shift + arrow keys to select multiple images.

7. Save the scanned images.

➡ Saving

➡ Saving as PDF Files

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time

You can scan two or more photos (small documents) at one time by setting Document Size to Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) in the Scan Settings dialog box of MP Navigator EX.

Important

- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, start ScanGear (scanner driver), then adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) in whole image view and scan again.
  - Photos that have a whitish border
  - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
  - Thin documents
  - Thick documents
  ➡ Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View

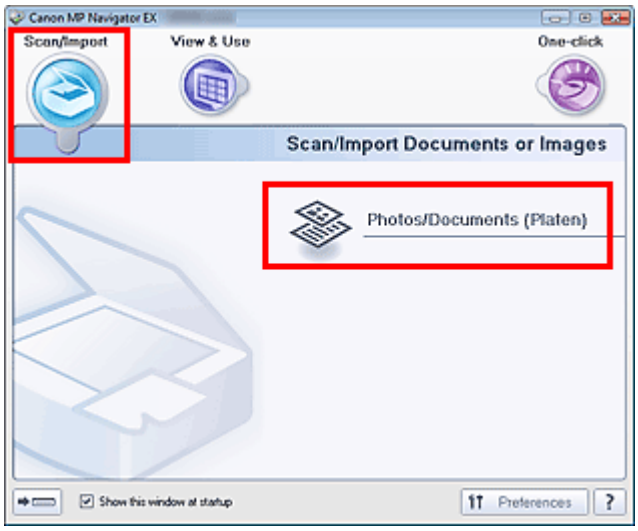
1. Place the document on the Platen.

   ➡ Placing Documents

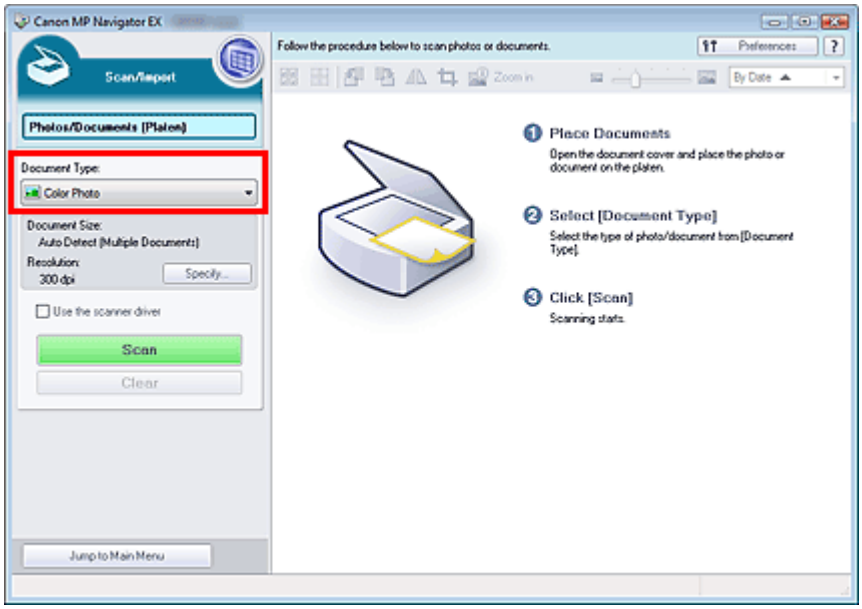
2. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

   ➡ Starting MP Navigator EX

3. Point to Scan/Import and click Photos/Documents (Platen).



4. Select Document Type according to the document to be scanned.

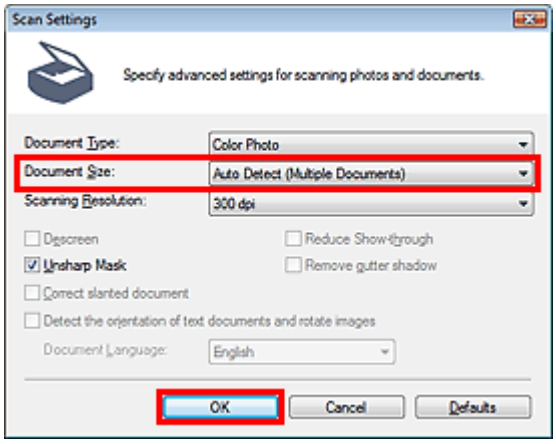


5. Click Specify....

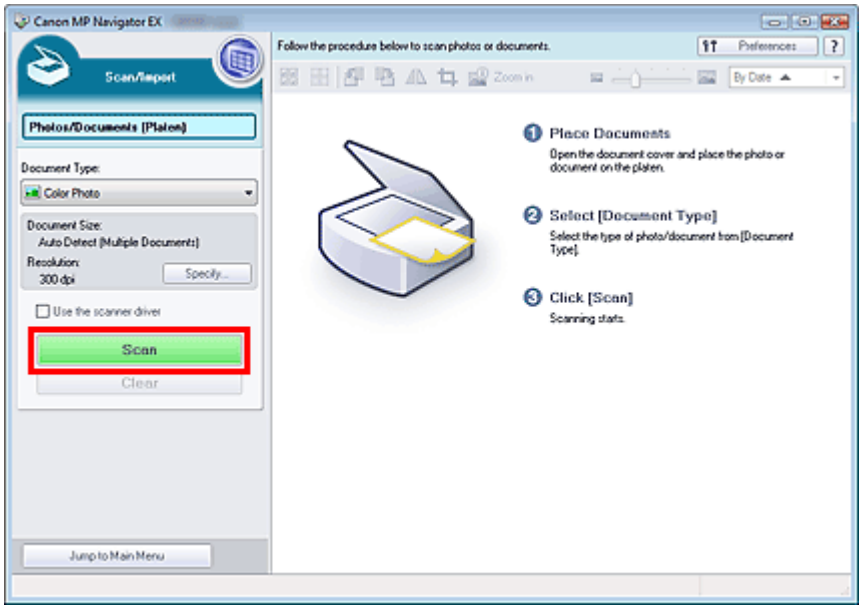
Select Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) for Document Size.

When setting is completed, click OK.

➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)



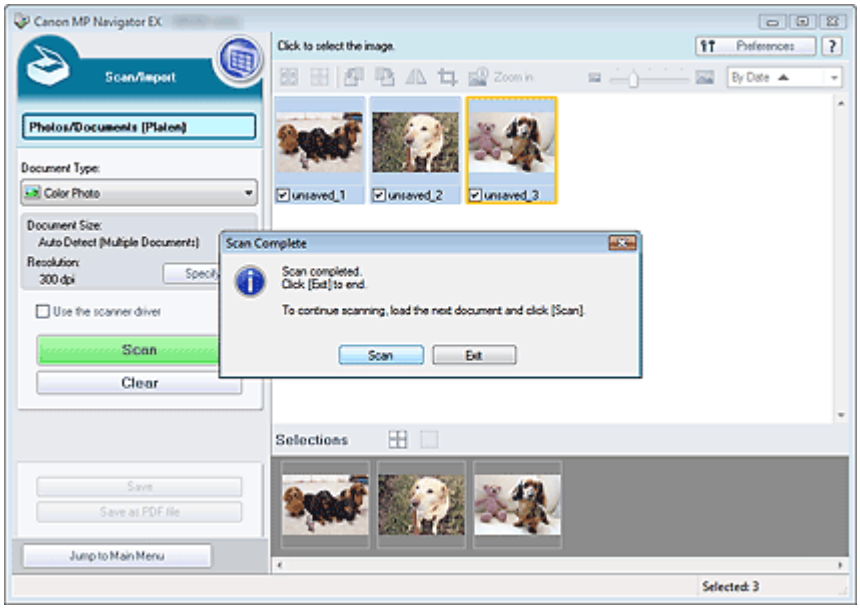
6. Click Scan.



Multiple documents are scanned at one time.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



7. Edit the scanned images as required.

Use Edit Tools to rotate images, select a part of an image, etc.

See the Edit Tools in "Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window) " for details.

Note

- First select images to edit. (Selected images are outlined in orange.) Drag the mouse or use Shift + arrow keys to select multiple images.

8. Save the scanned images.

➡ Saving

➡ Saving as PDF Files

Note

- If you want to preview the images before scanning, use ScanGear (scanner driver).
  ➡ Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Scanning Images Larger than the Platen (Stitch Assist)

Stitch Assist allows you to scan the left and right halves of a large document separately and combine the scanned images back into one image. You can scan documents that are up to twice as large as the Platen.

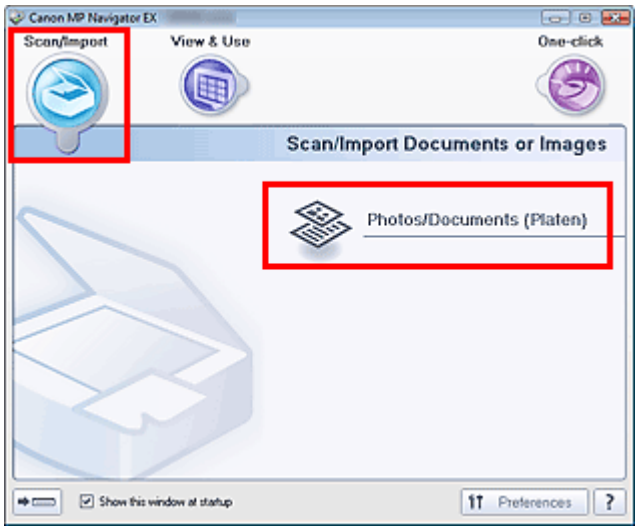
1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

Starting MP Navigator EX

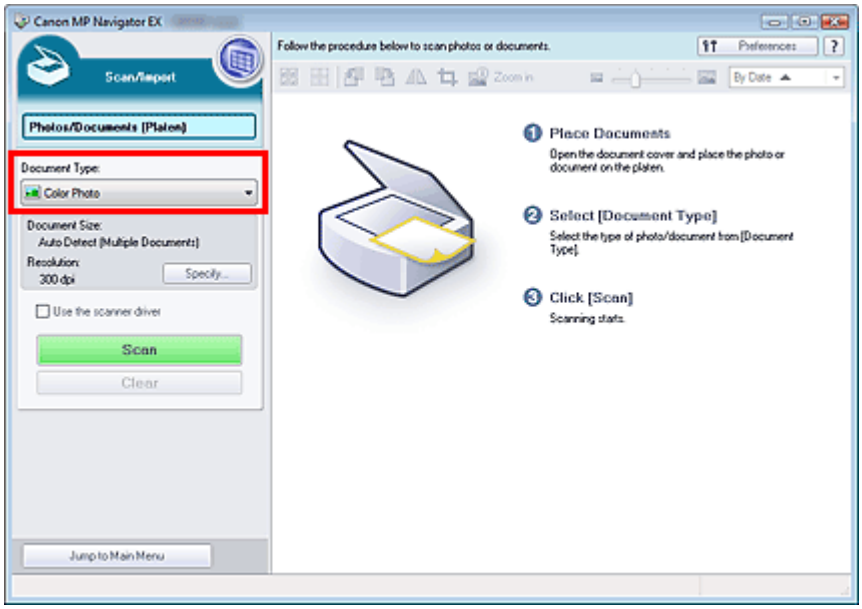
Note

- You can complete from scanning to saving, etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon in the One-click Mode screen. Stitch Assist is available from the One-click Mode screen as well, by changing the document size. Click the corresponding icon and select Stitch Assist for Document Size. Then skip ahead to Step 5.

2. Point to Scan/Import and click Photos/Documents (Platen).



3. Select Document Type according to the document to be scanned.

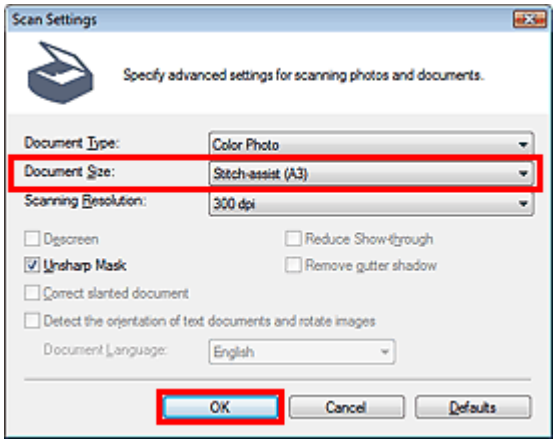


4. Click Specify....

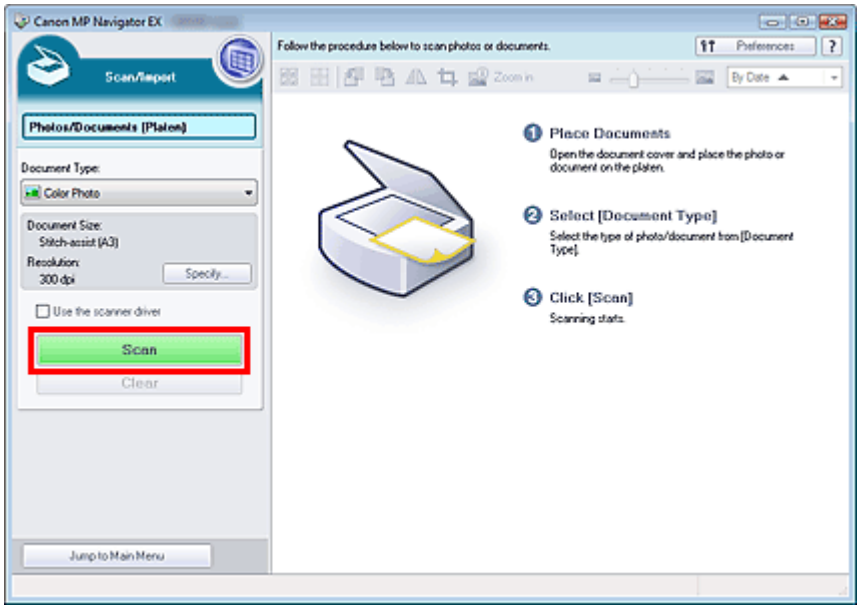
Select Stitch Assist for Document Size, then specify the scanning resolution as required.

When setting is completed, click OK.

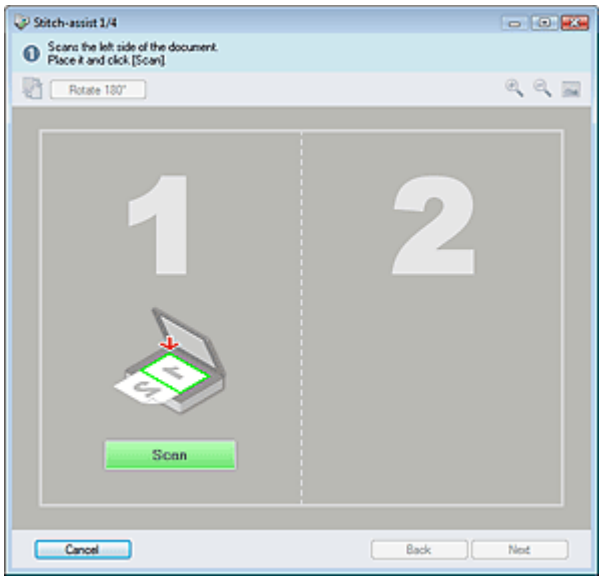
➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)



5. Click Scan.



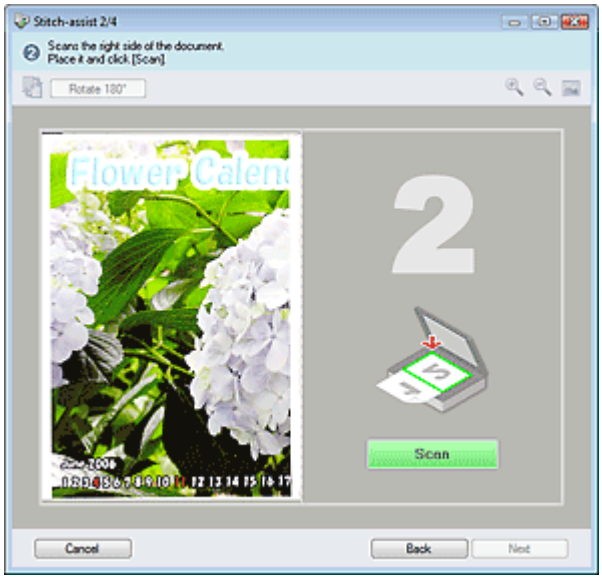
The Stitch-assist window opens.



6. Place the left half of the document face-down on the Platen.

7. Click Scan.

   The left half of the document is scanned and appears in the Stitch-assist window.



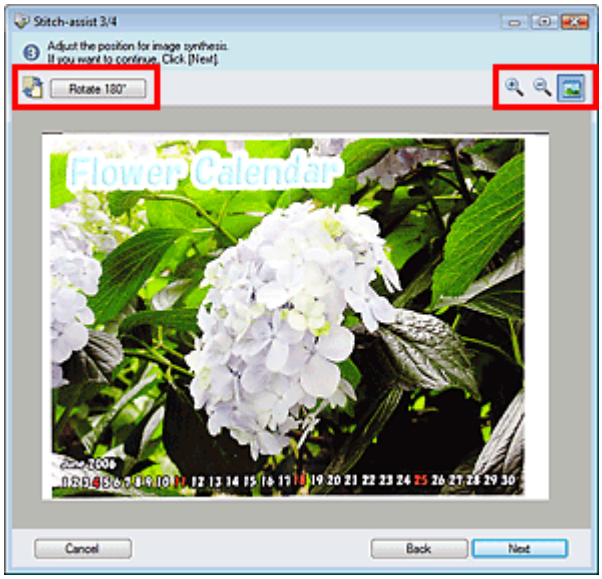
8. Place the right half of the document face-down on the Platen.

9. Click Scan.

   The right half of the document is scanned.

10. Adjust the scanned image as required.

    Use the icons to swap the left and right halves, rotate the image 180 degrees or enlarge/reduce the image.



- **(Swap Left & Right)**

  Swaps the left and right halves.

  Important

  - This function is not available while the image is enlarged/reduced.

- Rotate 180° **Rotate 180°**

  Rotates right half of the image 180 degrees.

  Important

  - This function is not available while the image is enlarged/reduced.

- **(Enlarge)**

  Enlarges the displayed image.

- **(Reduce)**

  Reduces the displayed image.

- **(Full-screen)**

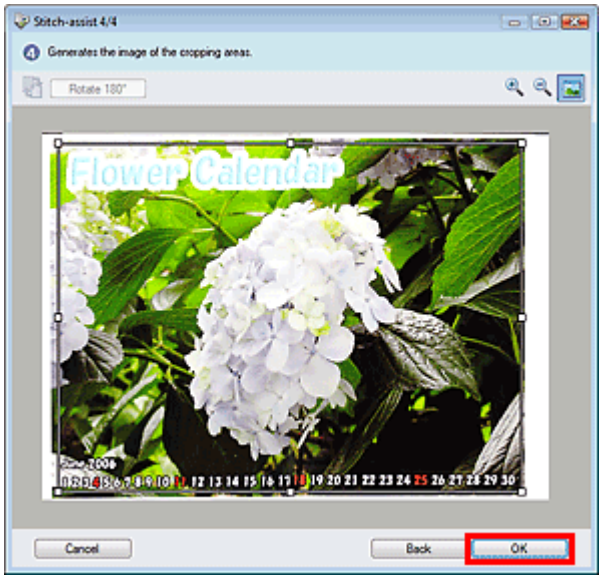
  Enlarges/reduces the image to display it full-screen.

Note

- Enlarge/Reduce does not affect the actual size of the scanned image.
- When the document is scanned upside down, the image displayed in the Stitch-assist window will also be upside down. Click Rotate 180° to rotate the image to the correct orientation.
- You can drag the right half of the image from right to left or up and down to adjust the position.
- If the left and right halves do not match due to a slanted document, place the document correctly and click Back, then scan again.

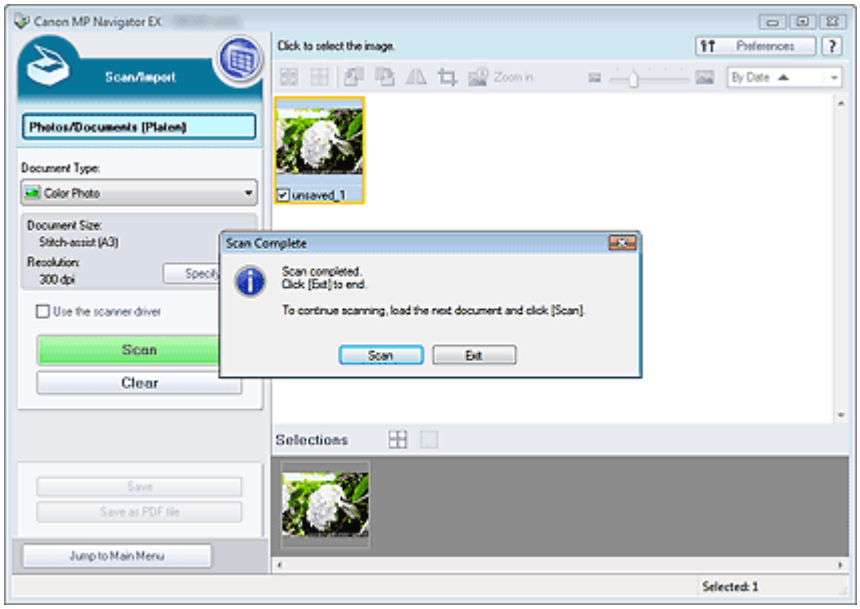
11. Click Next.

12. Drag the mouse to specify the area to be saved, then click OK.



The combined image appears in the Thumbnail window.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.



13. Save the scanned images.

- Saving
- Saving as PDF Files

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Easy Scanning with One-click

You can complete from scanning to saving, etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.

1. Place the document on the Platen.

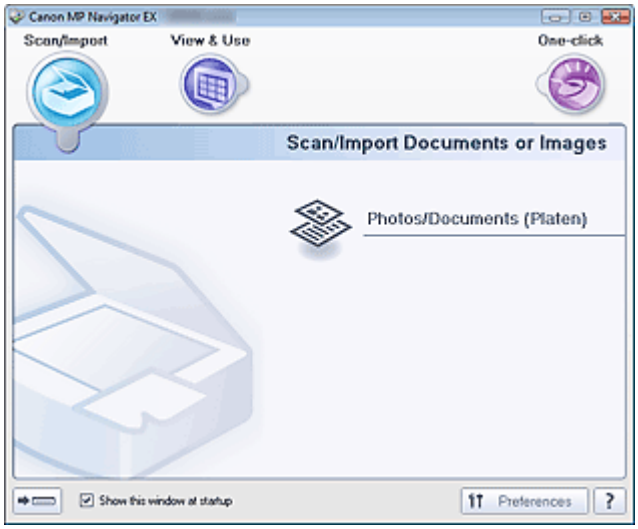
Placing Documents

2. Start MP Navigator EX.

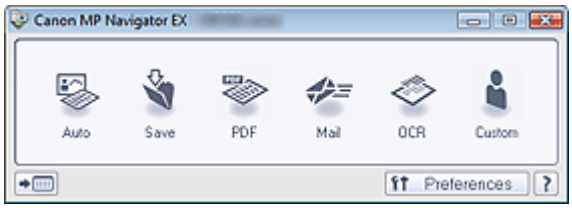
Starting MP Navigator EX

The MP Navigator EX Navigation Mode screen or One-click Mode screen appears.

Navigation Mode Screen



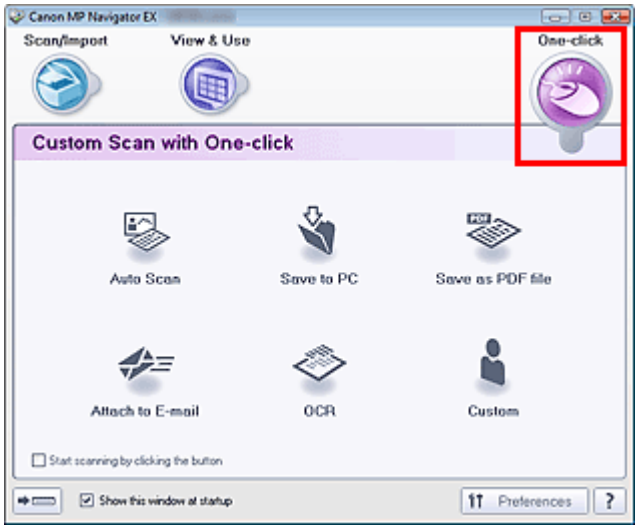
One-click Mode Screen



Note

- Skip ahead to Step 4 if One-click Mode screen is open.

3. Point to One-click.



4. Click the corresponding icon.

- Custom Scan with One-click Tab
- One-click Mode Screen

5. Select Document Type according to the document to be scanned.

6. Set the document size and scanning resolution as required.

7. Start scanning.

Scanning starts.

Page top

Useful MP Navigator EX Functions

With MP Navigator EX, you can correct/enhance scanned images beautifully, and search saved images quickly.

- **Correcting/enhancing images automatically**
  - Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically
- **Correcting/enhancing images manually**
  - Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually
- **Adjusting color characteristics such as brightness and contrast**
  - Adjusting Images
- **Searching for lost images**
  - Searching Images
- **Classifying and sorting images**
  - Classifying Images into Categories

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically

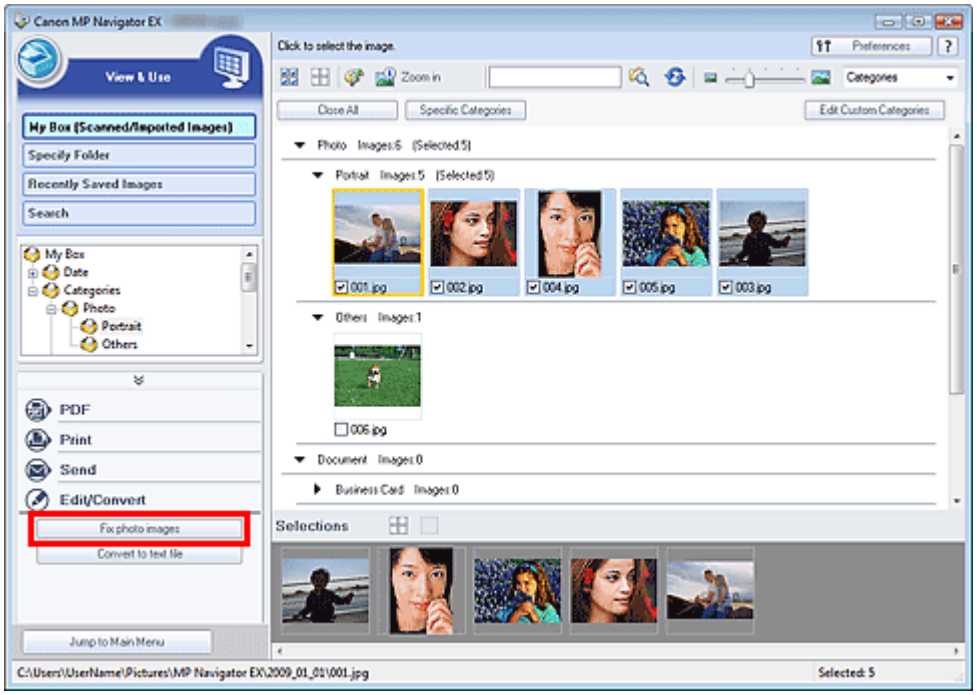
MP Navigator EX will analyze and correct/enhance scanned images automatically.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select the photos you want to correct/enhance.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
  ➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Edit/Convert, then click Fix photo images on the list.



The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking (Image Correction/Enhancement) on the Toolbar or in the Zoom in dialog box. In that case, only the target image (outlined in orange) can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

3. Select the image you want to correct/enhance from the thumbnail list.

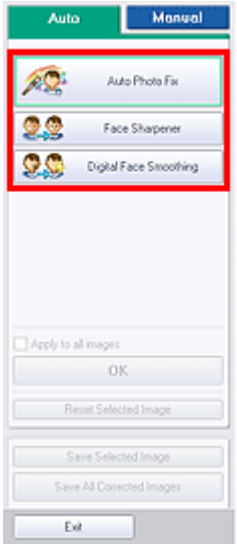
The selected image appears in Preview.

Note

- If you selected only one image in the View & Use window, the thumbnail list does not appear and only the preview image appears.

4. Make sure that Auto is selected.

5. Click Auto Photo Fix, Face Sharpener or Digital Face Smoothing.



Important

- Once image is corrected with Auto Photo Fix and saved, it cannot be corrected again with Auto Photo Fix. Auto Photo Fix may not be available for images edited using an application, digital camera, etc. manufactured by other companies.

Note

- The Face Sharpener and Digital Face Smoothing effect levels can be changed using the slider that appears by clicking the corresponding buttons.
- When you apply Auto Photo Fix, dark backlit photos will be corrected automatically. If the image is not corrected enough using Auto Photo Fix, it is recommended that you apply Face Brightener on the Manual tab.
  ➡ Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually

6. Click OK.

The entire image is corrected/enhanced automatically and (Correct/Enhance) appears on the upper left of the thumbnail and preview image.

Note

- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction/enhancement.
- Select the Apply to all images checkbox to correct/enhance all selected images.

7. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected/enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the images you like, select them and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- The file format of corrected/enhanced images is JPEG/Exif.
- Adobe RGB images are saved as sRGB images.

8. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections/enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving corrected/enhanced images.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually

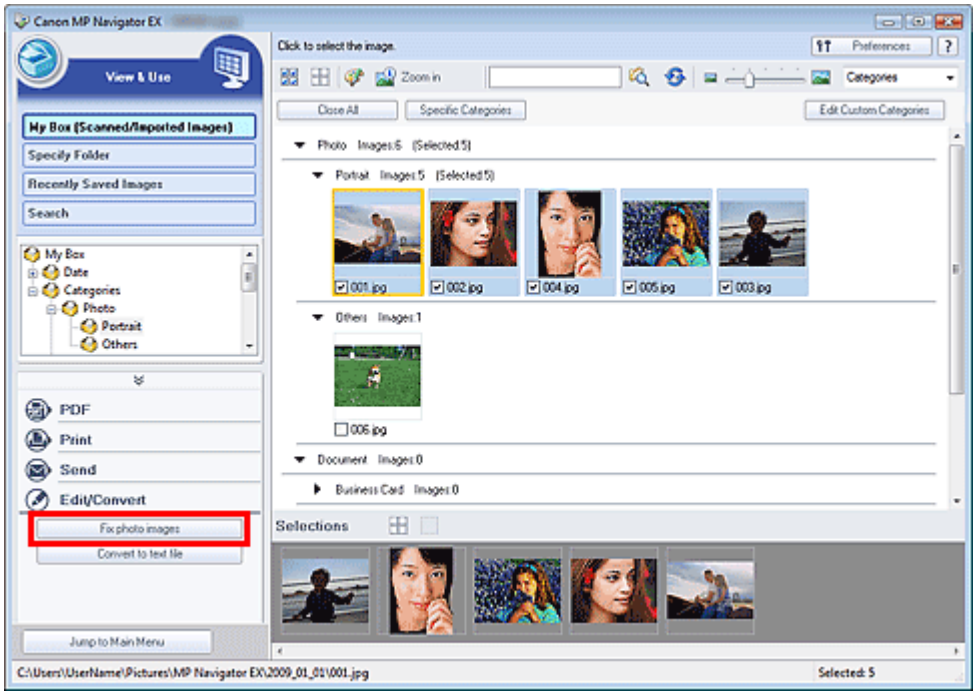
You can correct/enhance scanned images manually.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select the photos you want to correct/enhance.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
  ➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Edit/Convert, then click Fix photo images on the list.



The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking (Image Correction/Enhancement) on the Toolbar or in the Zoom in dialog box. In that case, only the target image (outlined in orange) can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

3. Select the image you want to correct/enhance from the thumbnail list.

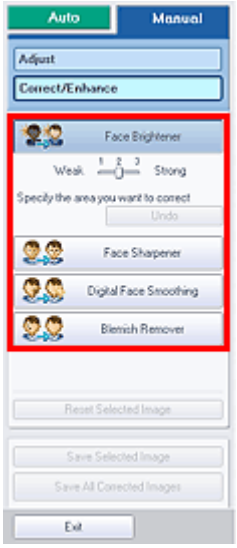
The selected image appears in Preview.

Note

- If you selected only one image in the View & Use window, the thumbnail list does not appear and only the preview image appears.

4. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

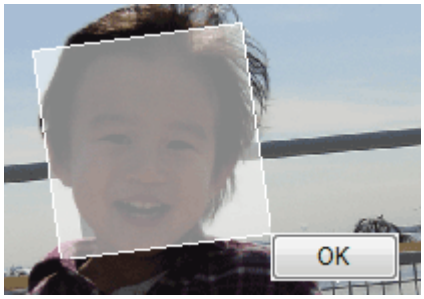
5. Click Face Brightener, Face Sharpener, Digital Face Smoothing or Blemish Remover.



Note

- The Face Brightener, Face Sharpener and Digital Face Smoothing effect levels can be changed using the slider that appears by clicking the corresponding buttons.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to + (Cross).

6. Drag to select the area you want to correct/enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.



The portion in and around the selected area is corrected/enhanced and (Correct/Enhance) appears on the upper left of the thumbnail and preview image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the rectangle.
- Click Undo to undo the latest correction/enhancement.
- Click Reset Selected Image to cancel all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

7. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected/enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the images you like, select them and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- The file format of corrected/enhanced images is JPEG/Exif.

8. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections/enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving corrected/enhanced images.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Adjusting Images

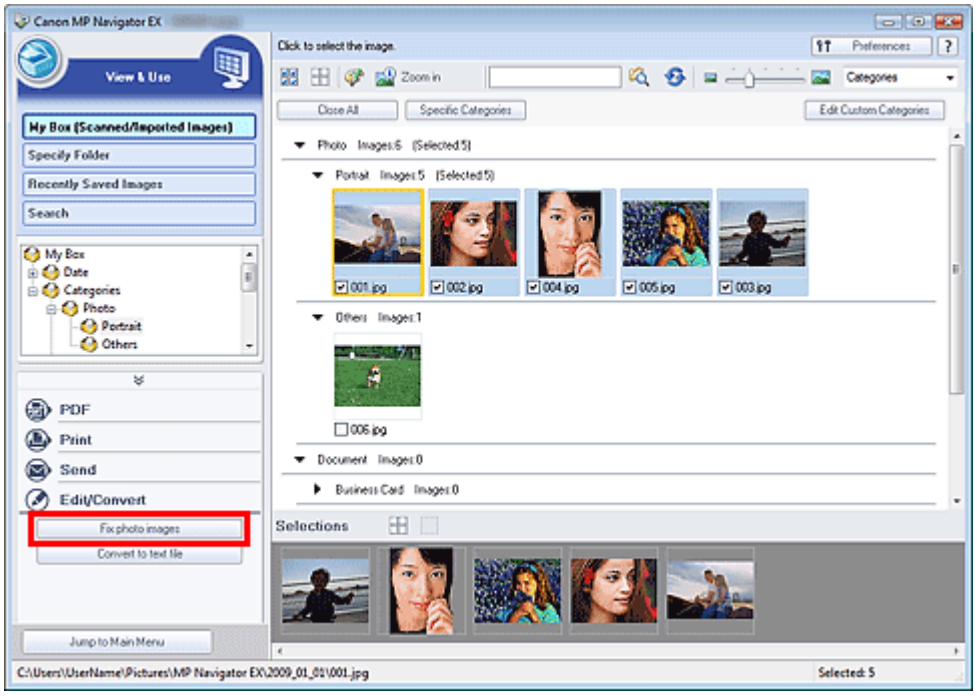
You can make fine adjustments to the overall brightness, contrast, etc. of images.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select the photos you want to adjust.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
  ➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Edit/Convert, then click Fix photo images on the list.



The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking (Image Correction/ Enhancement) on the Toolbar or in the Zoom in dialog box. In that case, only the target image (outlined in orange) can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

3. Select the image you want to adjust from the thumbnail list.

The selected image appears in Preview.

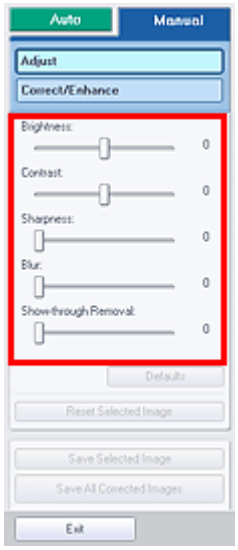
Note

- If you selected only one image in the View & Use window, the thumbnail list does not appear and only the preview image appears.

4. Click Manual, then click Adjust.

5. Move the slider of the item you want to adjust and set the effect level.

When you move a slider, (Correct/Enhance) appears on the upper left of the thumbnail and preview image.



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments.
- Click Reset Selected Image to cancel all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save adjusted images as new files.

Note

- To save only the images you like, select them and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.

- The file format of adjusted images is JPEG/Exif.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The adjustments will be lost if you exit before saving adjusted images.

Page top

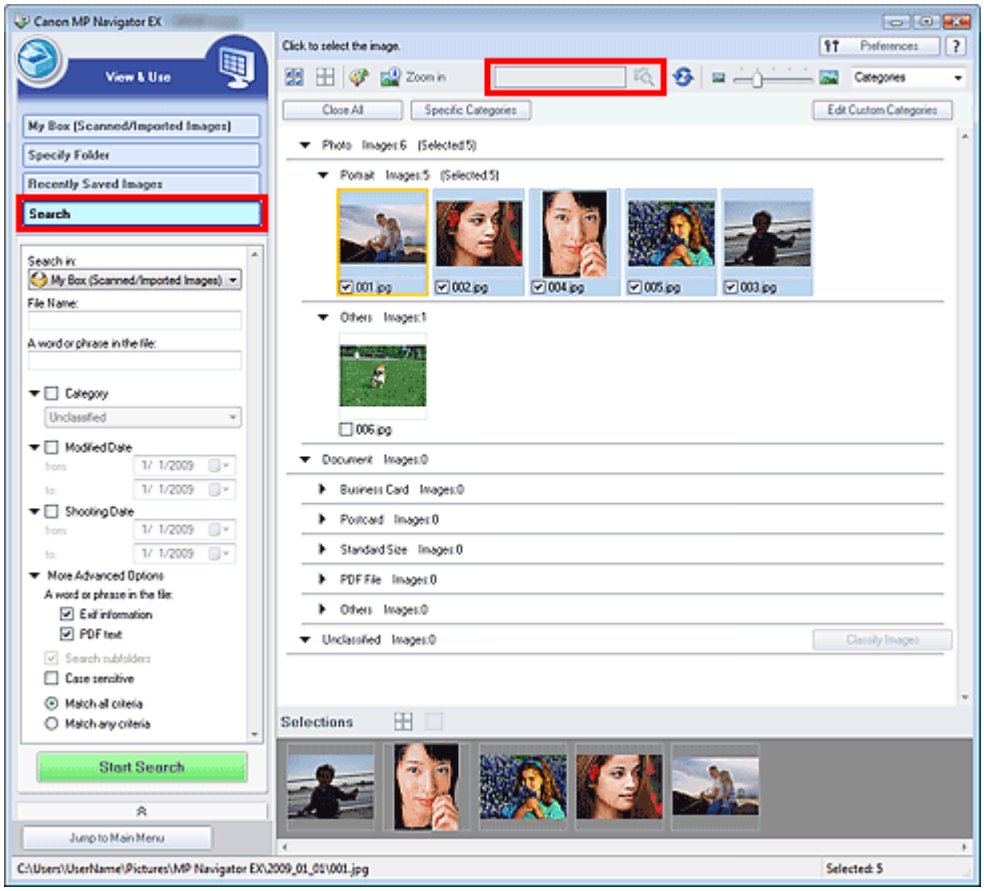
MP Navigator EX

Searching Images

In the View & Use window of the Navigation Mode screen, you can search images saved on your computer and open them in MP Navigator EX. Opened images can be printed, edited, etc.

Note

- Search images in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Recently Saved Images or a selected folder and its subfolders. You can also specify folder and search in Specify Folder.
- See "Starting MP Navigator EX" to start MP Navigator EX.

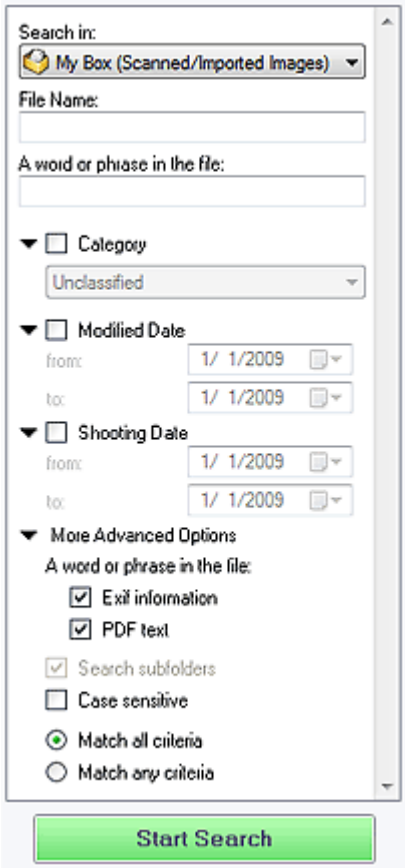


Quick Search

In (Text box) on the Toolbar, enter a word or phrase included in the file name, Exif information or PDF text of the image you want to search for, then click (Search button).
For Exif information, text in Maker, Model, Description and User Comment is searched.

Advanced Search

Click Search on the left of the screen to open search options. Enter information of the image you want to search for, then click Start Search.



- **Search in**

  If you know where to look for, select the drive, folder or network from Specify Folder.

- **File Name**

  If you know the file name, enter it.

- **A word or phrase in the file**

  Enter a word or phrase included in the items selected in More Advanced Options.

Important

- For PDF files, you can only search for those created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot search PDF files created or edited in other applications. Also, searching PDF files is available only when keyword search is set.
  For details of creating PDF files that enables keyword search, see " PDF Settings Dialog Box."
- Password-protected PDF files cannot be searched.

- **Category**

  You can search for images by category.

- **Modified Date**

  To search for images that have been updated in a specific time period, enter the first and last dates of the period.

- **Shooting Date**

  To search for images captured in a specific time period, enter the first and last dates of the period.

Note

- Captured date is the date and time of data creation, which are included in the document's Exif information.

- **More Advanced Options**
  - **A word or phrase in the file**

    In A word or phrase in the file, select the items to search. If you select the Exif information

checkbox, text in Maker, Model, Description and User Comment is searched. If you select the PDF text checkbox, text in PDF files is searched.

Important

- Text in password-protected PDF files cannot be searched.

- **Search subfolders**

  Select this checkbox to search subfolders.

- **Case sensitive**

  Select this checkbox to match case.

- **Match all criteria**

  Searches for files that meet all the specified criteria.

- **Match any criteria**

  Searches for files that meet any of the specified criteria.

- **Start Search**

  Starts search.

Related Topic

▶ View & Use Window

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Classifying Images into Categories

Display images scanned with MP Navigator EX by category. You can classify unclassified images automatically, and also create custom categories. You can drag and drop an image to move it from one category to another.

Note

- If you have classified the images in MP Navigator EX 2.0 or later and then upgrade MP Navigator EX to the latest version, the classification information on the second latest version is transferred upon initial startup. After the initial startup, the classification information cannot be transferred.

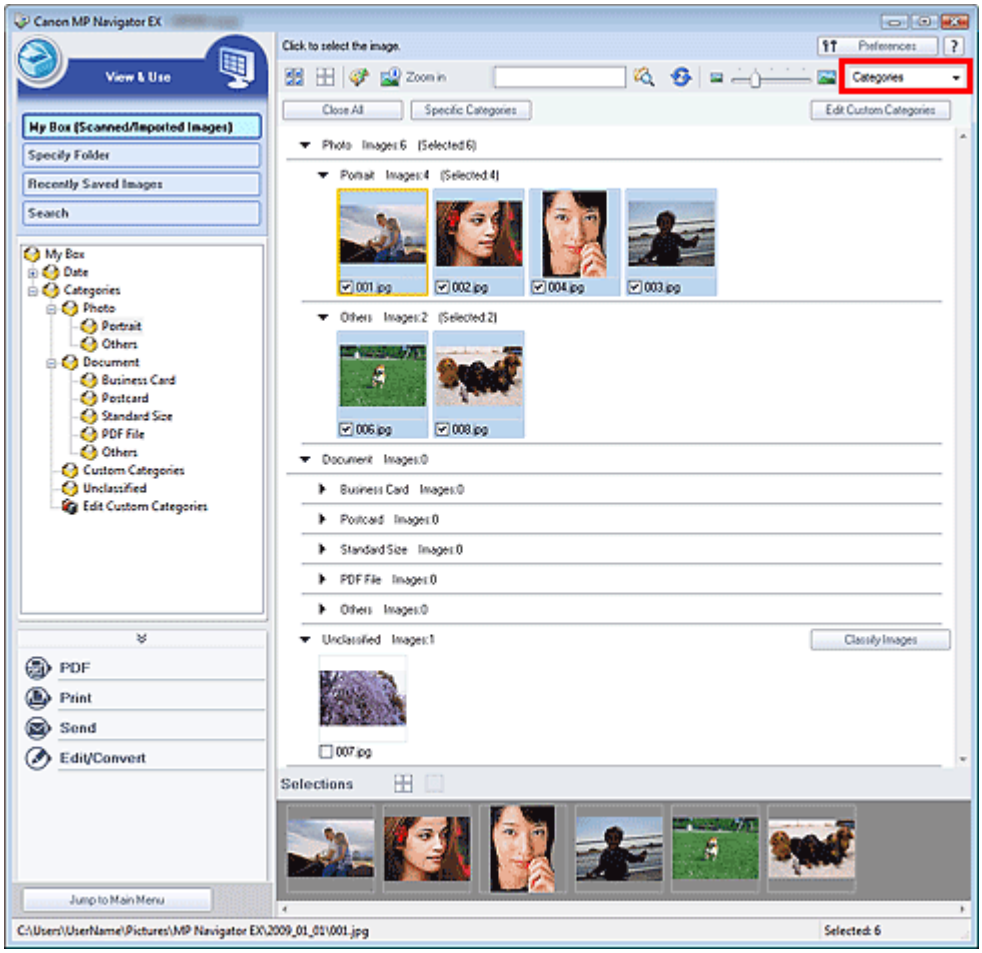
1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
  ➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. In Categories (Sort by), select Categories.

Images are automatically sorted by category and appear in the Thumbnail window.



Images are sorted into the following categories.

Photos: Portrait, Others

Documents: Business Card, Postcard, Standard Size, PDF File, Others

Custom categories: Displays your custom categories.

To create custom categories, see " Creating Custom Categories ."

Unclassified: Displays images that have not yet been classified.

Note

- Click Classify Images to classify images displayed in Unclassified automatically. Click Cancel to stop.
- Classification may take time if there are many images to classify.

Important

- Even if you classify images saved in removable media such as USB flash drive and external hard disk, the classification information will be deleted once you remove the media. From the next time, the images are classified to Unclassified.
- Images cannot be classified when Recently Saved Images is selected in the View & Use window.

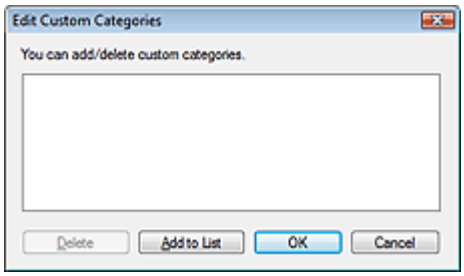
Note

- Some images may not be detected correctly and thus may be classified into wrong categories. In that case, drag and drop the image to the correct category.
- Images saved in network folders may not be classified.
- You can search for images by category. See "Searching Images" for details.

Creating Custom Categories

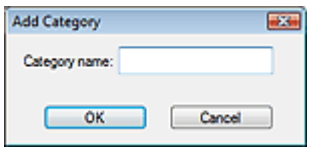
1. In the View & Use window, sort images by category and click Edit Custom Categories.

   The Edit Custom Categories dialog box opens.



2. Click Add to List.

   The Add Category dialog box opens.



3. Enter Category name and click OK.

Note

- You can create up to 20 custom categories.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be used for a category name.
- Double-click a created category to open the Change Category Name dialog box in which you can change the category name.
- Select a custom category and click Delete to delete it.

Related Topic

- View & Use Window

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX

You can scan images using MP Navigator EX and edit or print the saved images.

See the corresponding sections below for details on saving scanned images.

- **Saving scanned images to computer**
  - Saving
- **Saving scanned image as PDF Files**
  - Saving as PDF Files

See the corresponding sections below for details on using images/files.

- **Creating/editing PDF files from scanned images**
  - Creating/Editing PDF Files
- **Printing multiple scanned images at one time or printing at specific size, quality, etc.**
  - Printing Documents
- **Printing scanned photos**
  - Printing Photos
- **Sending scanned images via e-mail**
  - Sending via E-mail
- **Correcting/enhancing scanned images or converting them to text**
  - Editing Files
- **Setting passwords for created PDF files**
  - Setting Passwords for PDF Files
  - Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

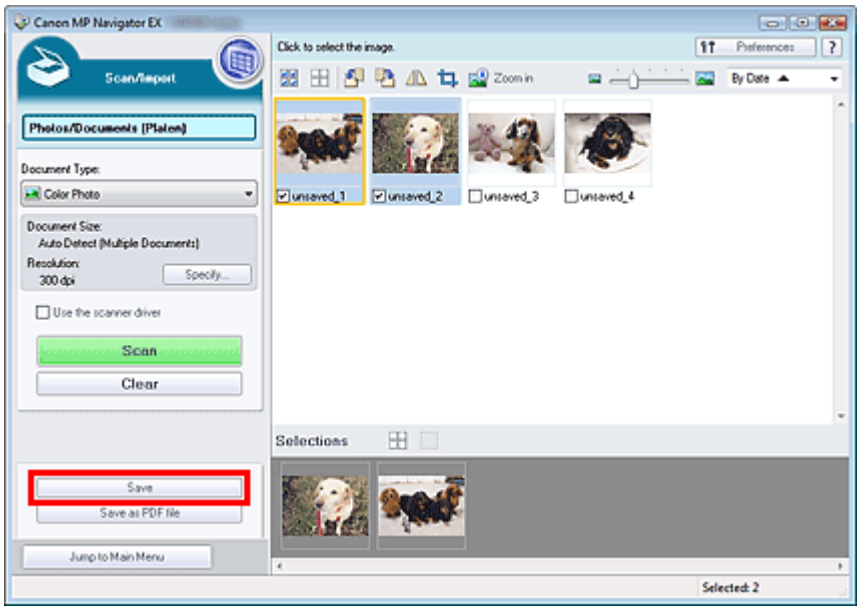
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Saving

Save images scanned with MP Navigator EX to a computer.

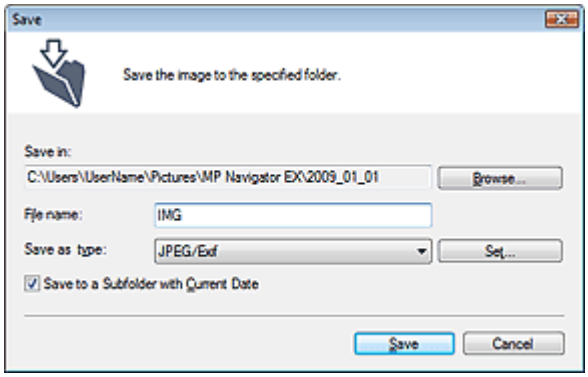
1. Select the checkboxes of the images you want to save, then click Save.



2. In the Save dialog box, specify the save settings.

Specify the destination folder, file name and file type.

Save Dialog Box



Important

- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is Text(OCR).

Note

- By default, the following folders are specified as the destination folders.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

3. Click Save.

Scanned images are saved according to the settings.

To further use/edit the scanned images on MP Navigator EX, click Open saved location in the Save Complete dialog box.

➡ Creating/Editing PDF Files
➡ Printing Documents
➡ Printing Photos
➡ Sending via E-mail
➡ Editing Files

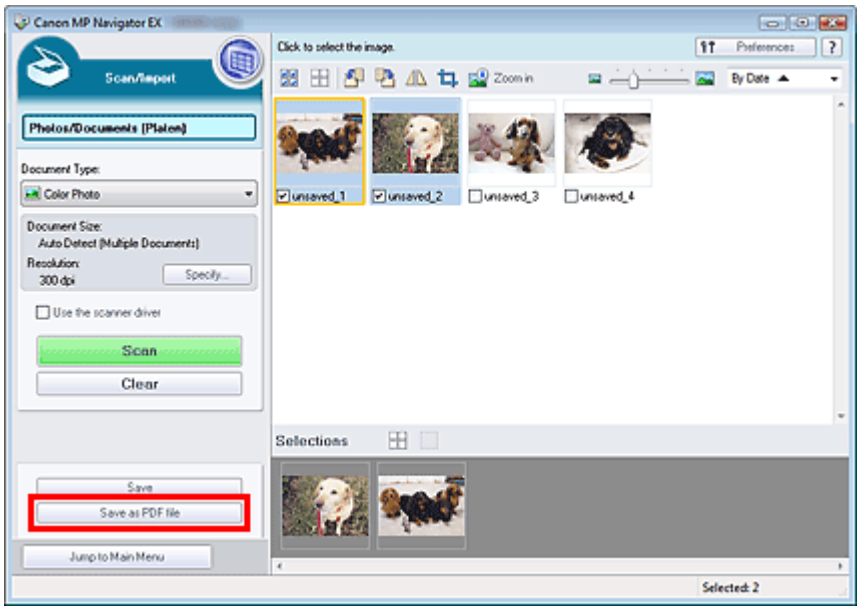
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Saving as PDF Files

Save images scanned with MP Navigator EX as PDF files.

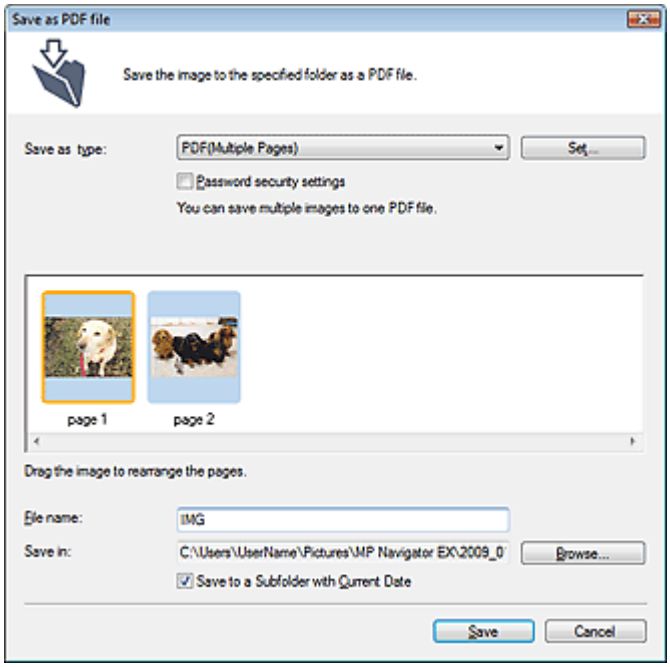
1. Select the checkboxes of the images you want to save, then click Save as PDF file.



2. In the Save as PDF file dialog box, specify the save settings.

Specify the file type, file name and destination folder.

Save as PDF file Dialog Box



Select from the following PDF file types:

- **PDF**

Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

- **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

  Save multiple images in one PDF file.

  Note

  - PDF(Multiple Pages) is displayed when multiple images are selected.

- **PDF(Add Page)**

  Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.

  Important

  - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.
  - If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.

Note

- By default, the following folders are specified as the destination folders.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
- You can set passwords for PDF files.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

3. Click Save.

Scanned images are saved according to the settings.

To further use/edit the scanned images on MP Navigator EX, click Open saved location in the Save Complete dialog box.

Creating/Editing PDF Files

Printing Documents

Printing Photos

Sending via E-mail

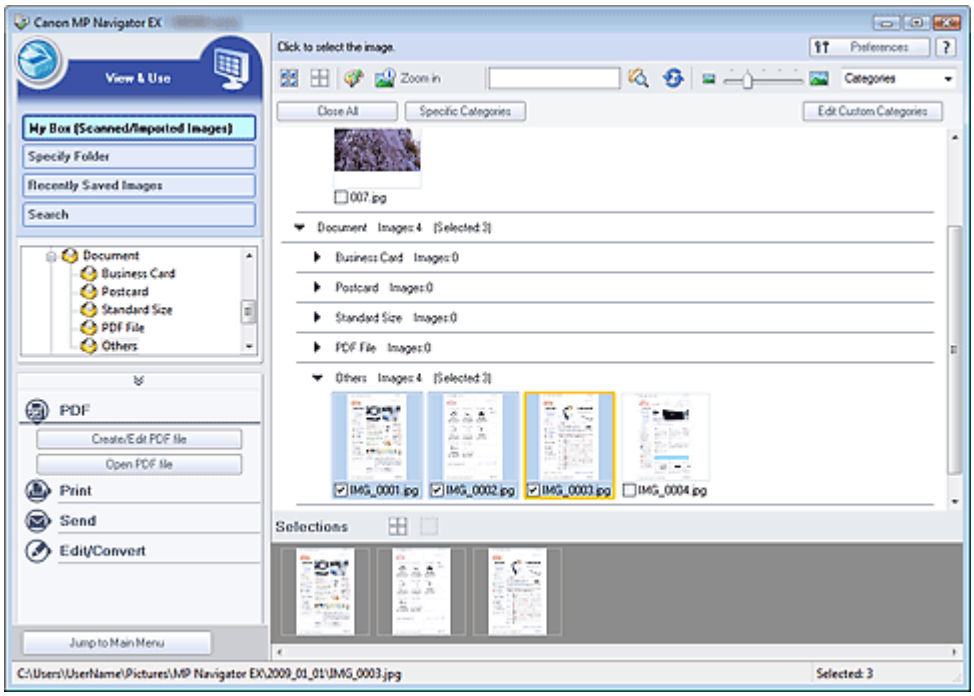
Editing Files

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Creating/Editing PDF Files

Create/edit PDF files using MP Navigator EX. After scanning documents and saving them, open the View & Use window to create PDF files and add/delete pages, rearrange the page order, etc.



Important

- You can create or edit up to 99 pages using MP Navigator EX.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
  ➡Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Creating/Editing PDF Files with MP Navigator EX

1. Select images and click PDF.

Note

- You can select PDF, JPEG, TIFF and BMP files.

2. Click Create/Edit PDF file on the list.

Important

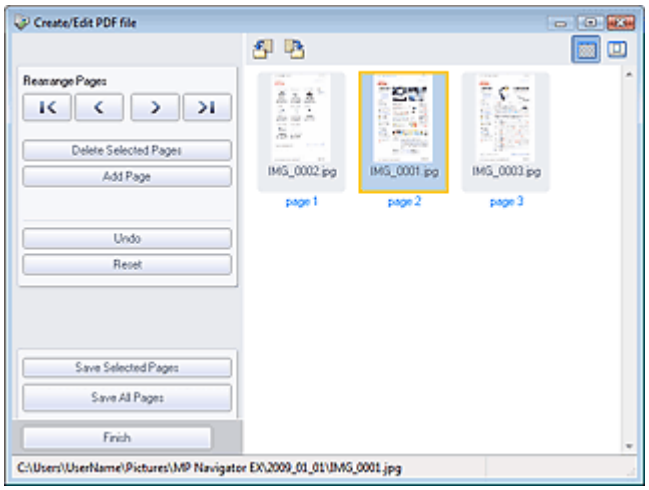
- For PDF files, you can only edit those created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot edit PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be edited as well.

Note

- If a password-protected PDF file is selected, you will be prompted to enter the password.
  ➡Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

3. Add/delete pages as required.

To add an existing file, click Add Page and select the file. To delete a page, select it and click Delete Selected Pages.



Note

- You can add PDF, JPEG, TIFF and BMP files.
- When adding a password-protected PDF file, you will be prompted to enter the password.

4. Rearrange the page order as required.

Use the icons to rearrange the order. Alternatively, drag and drop the thumbnail to the target location.

Note

- See "Create/Edit PDF file Window " for details on the Create/Edit PDF file window.

5. Click Save Selected Pages or Save All Pages.

The Save as PDF file dialog box opens.

➡Save as PDF file Dialog Box

Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords in the Save as PDF file dialog box.
  ➡Setting Passwords for PDF Files

6. Specify the save settings in the Save as PDF file dialog box, then click Save.

Images are saved according to the settings.

Opening PDF Files in an Application

You can open PDF files created with MP Navigator EX in an associated application and edit or print them.

1. Select PDF files and click PDF.

Important

- For PDF files, you can only select those created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot select PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be selected

as well.

2. Click Open PDF file on the list.

The application associated with the .pdf file extension by the operating system starts.

Important

- Password-protected PDF files cannot be opened in applications not supporting PDF security.
- Files may not open if an application that can be associated with PDF files is not installed.

3. Use the application to edit/print the file.

For details, refer to the application's manual.

Important

- In some applications, the commands (print, edit, etc.) restricted by Permissions Password may differ from those in MP Navigator EX.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Printing Documents

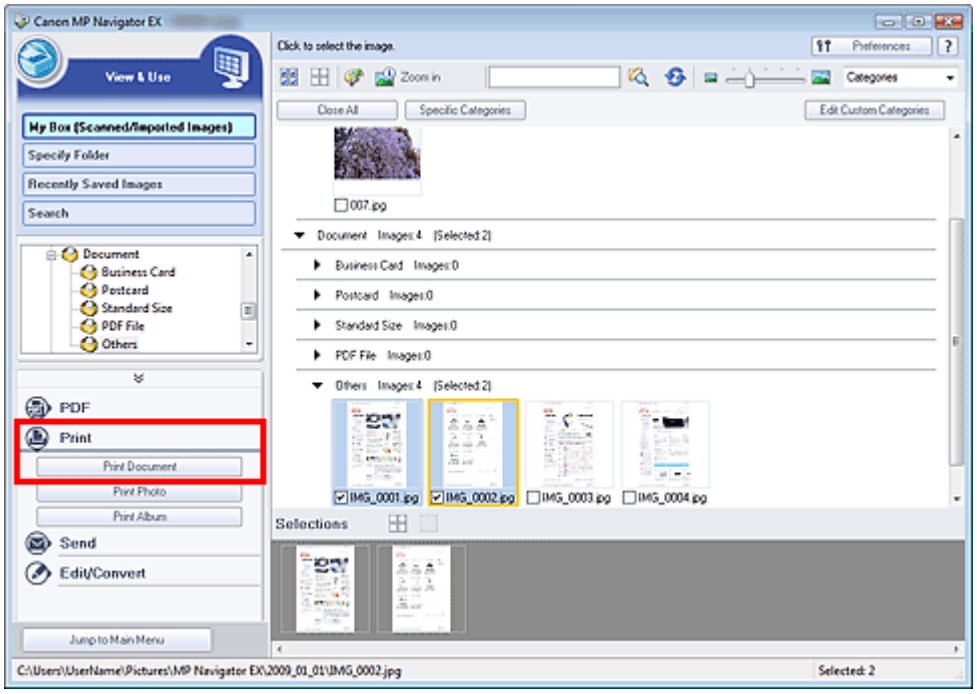
You can print multiple scanned images at one time, print at specific quality, etc. using MP Navigator EX.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select images.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
  ➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Print, then click Print Document on the list.



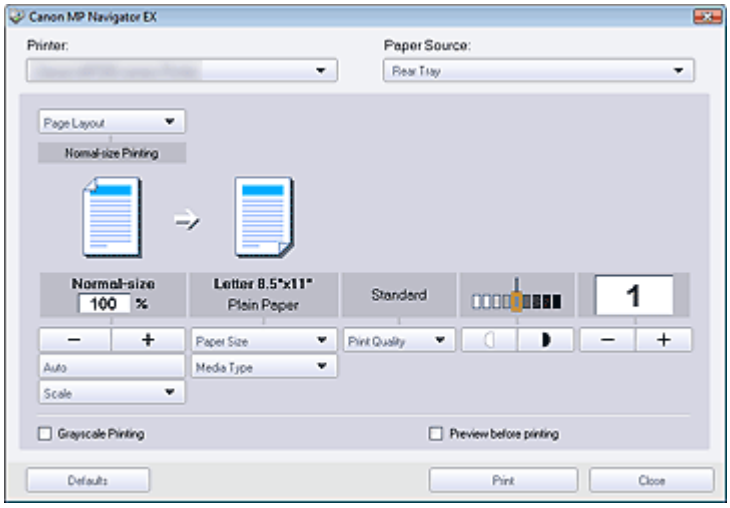
Important

- If a password-protected PDF file is selected, you will be prompted to enter the password.
  ➡ Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

3. Specify print settings as required.

In the displayed dialog box, specify print count, quality, scale, etc.

➡ Print Document Dialog Box



Important

- At normal-size (100%), some images may be printed small or with some portions cropped. In that case, select Auto to resize the print in proportion to the paper size.

4. Click Print.

Printing starts.

Note

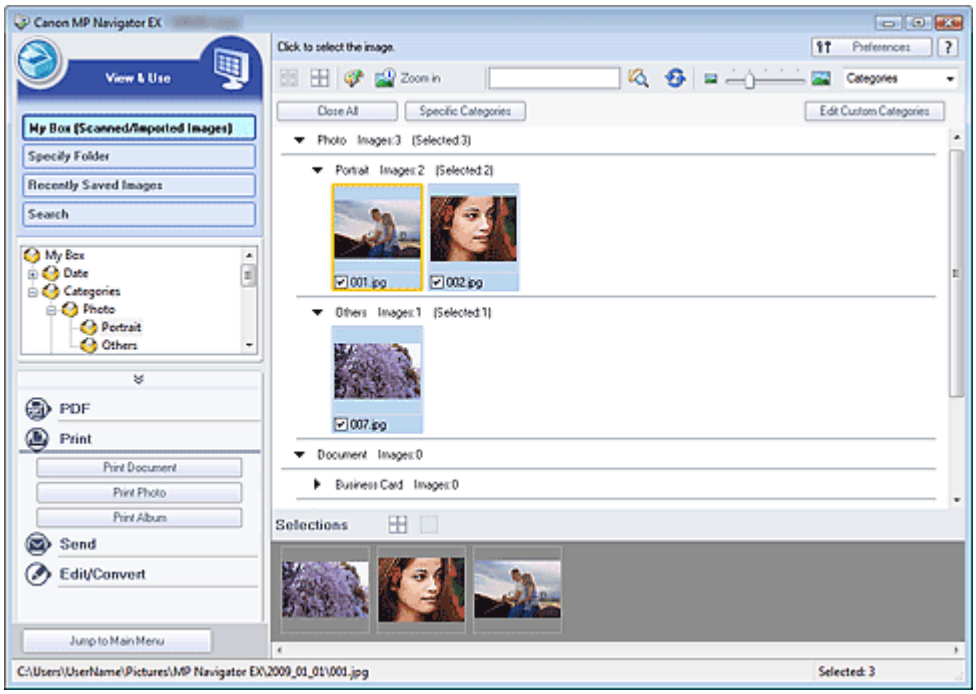
- When printing a multiple-page PDF file via Print Document, printing may take time depending on your computer. In that case, follow these steps and change settings.
  1. From the Start menu, select Control Panel.
  2. Click Printers.
  3. Right-click the icon of your printer and click Properties.
  The printer properties dialog box opens.
  4. Click the Advanced tab.
  5. Select Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster.
  6. Select Start printing after last page is spooled.
  7. After printing, return the setting on the Advanced tab to Start printing immediately.
- To cancel while spooling, click Cancel. To cancel while printing, click Cancel Printing in the confirmation window for the printer status. To open a confirmation window for the printer status, click printer icon on the taskbar.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Printing Photos

You can print photos using MP Navigator EX or an application that accompanies the machine. After scanning documents and saving them, open the View & Use window to select how you want to print the photos.



Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
  ➡Opening Images Saved on a Computer

When Printing Photos Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

You can use Easy-PhotoPrint EX to print scanned photos at high quality or to layout and print images.

1. Select images and click Print.

2. Click Print Photo or Print Album on the list.

   Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts. See " Printing Photos " for details.

Note

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is not installed, print with MP Navigator EX.

When Printing Photos Using MP Navigator EX

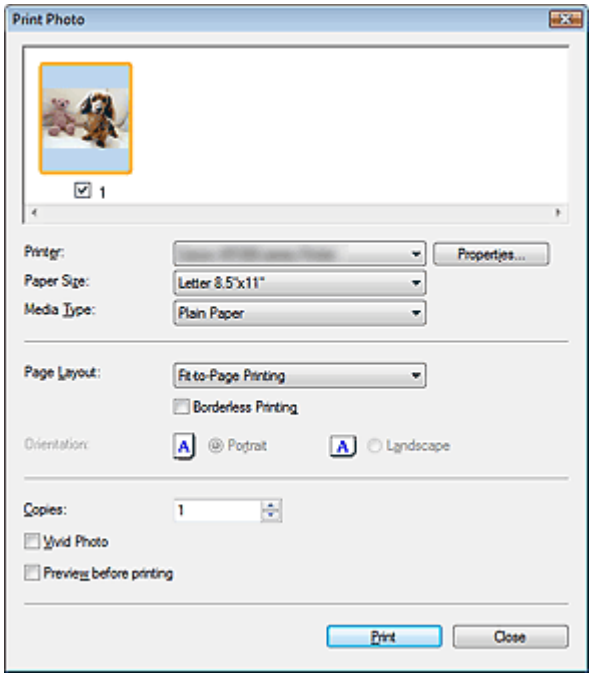
1. Select images and click Print.

2. Click Print Photo on the list.

3. Specify print settings as required.

In the displayed dialog box, specify paper size, print count, etc.

Print Photo Dialog Box



4. Click Print.

Printing starts.

Note

- To cancel while spooling, click Cancel. To cancel while printing, click Cancel Printing in the confirmation window for the printer status. To open a confirmation window for the printer status, click printer icon on the taskbar.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Sending via E-mail

Send scanned images via e-mail.

Important

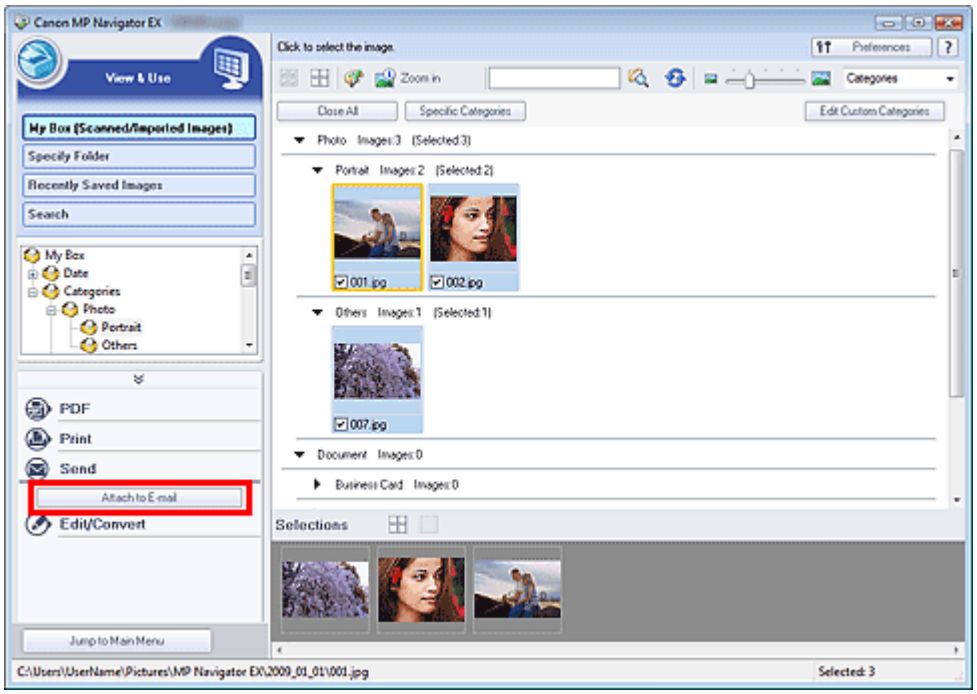
- MP Navigator EX is compatible with the following e-mail software programs:
  - Windows Mail (Windows Vista)
  - Outlook Express (Windows XP/Windows 2000)
  - Microsoft Outlook
  (If an e-mail software program does not operate properly, check that the program's MAPI is enabled. To enable MAPI, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.)

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select images.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
  ➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

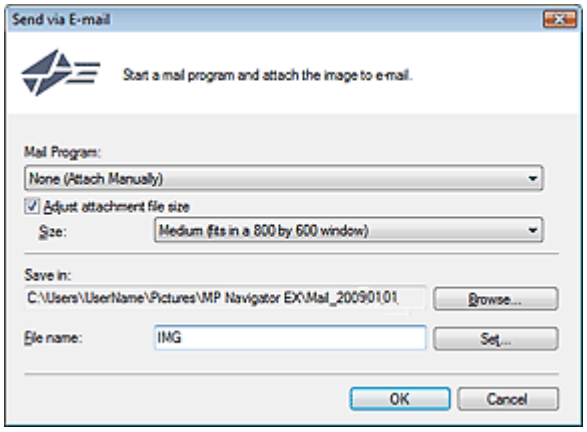
2. Click Send, then click Attach to E-mail on the list.



3. Set save options as required.

Specify the destination folder and file name.

➡ Send via E-mail Dialog Box



Note

- You can select a compression type when sending JPEG images via e-mail. Click Set... to open a dialog box and select a compression type from High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

4. Click OK.

Files are saved according to the settings, and the e-mail software program starts.

5. Specify the recipient, enter the subject and message, then send e-mail.

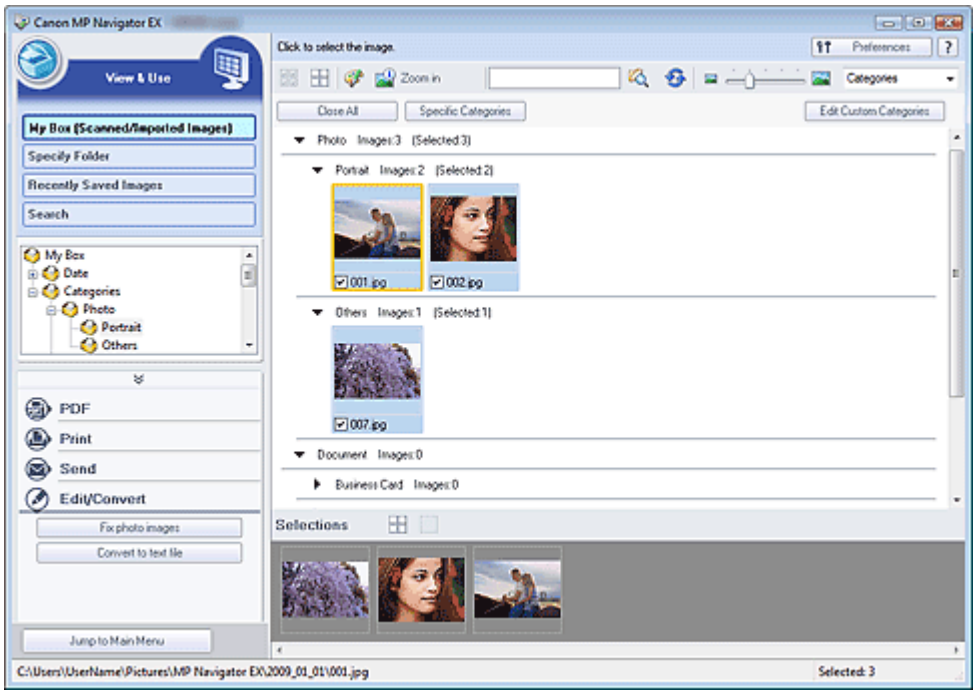
For details, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Editing Files

You can edit images or convert them to text using MP Navigator EX or an application that accompanies the machine. After scanning documents and saving them, open the View & Use window to select what you want to do with the images.



Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
  - Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Correcting Photo Images

You can correct/enhance images in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

1. Select images and click Edit/Convert.

2. Click Fix photo images on the list.

   The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.

3. Correct/enhance images in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

   ## Note

   - See "Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.
   - See the corresponding sections below for correcting/enhancing images.
     - Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically
     - Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually

Converting Documents to Text

Scan text in scanned magazines and newspapers and display it in Notepad (included with Windows).

Important

- PDF files cannot be converted to text.

1. Select images and click Edit/Convert.

2. Click Convert to text file on the list.

   Notepad (included with Windows) starts and editable text appears.

Note

- Only text written in languages that can be selected on the General tab can be extracted to Notepad (included with Windows). Click Set... on the General tab and specify the language according to the language of the document to be scanned.
  When scanning multiple documents, you can collect the extracted text into one file.
  General Tab
- Text displayed in Notepad (included with Windows) is for guidance only. Text in the image of the following types of documents may not be detected correctly.
  - Documents containing text with font size outside the range of 8 points to 40 points (at 300 dpi)
  - Slanted documents
  - Documents placed upside down or documents with text in the wrong orientation (rotated characters)
  - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
  - Documents with narrow line spacing
  - Documents with colors in the background of text
  - Documents containing multiple languages

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Set passwords for opening, editing and printing PDF files.

You can set two passwords: one for opening the file and one for editing/printing it.

Important

- In Windows 2000, Internet Explorer 5.5 Service Pack 2 or later is required to use this function.
- You will not be able to open/edit the file if you forget the password. Record your passwords in a safe place for future reference.
- Password-protected PDF files cannot be opened in applications not supporting PDF security.
- In some applications, the commands (print, edit, etc.) restricted by Permissions Password may differ from those in MP Navigator EX.
- Password-protected PDF files cannot be searched by text from the View & Use Window.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX, then click Save as PDF file.
Alternatively, edit existing files in the Create/Edit PDF file window, then click Save Selected Pages or Save All Pages.

The Save as PDF file dialog box opens.

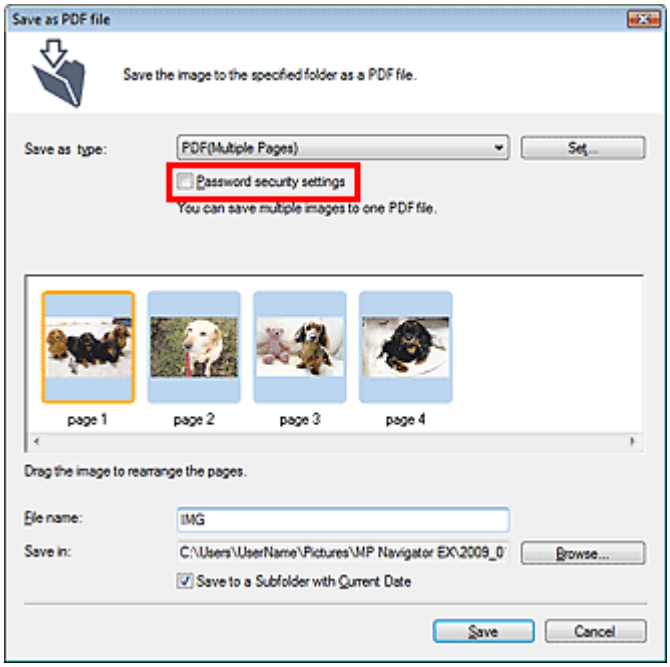
Important

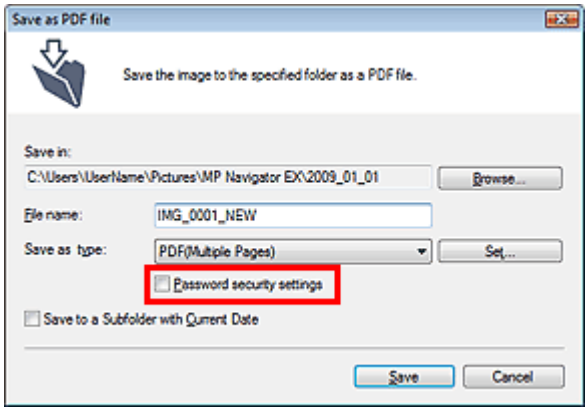
- Passwords cannot be set when images are automatically saved after scanning, such as when scanning from the One-click Mode screen or scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images.
- See "Creating/Editing PDF Files " to create PDF files from existing images or to edit files.

2. Select the Password security settings checkbox.

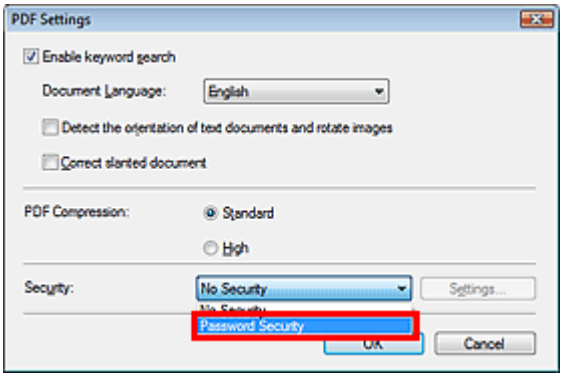




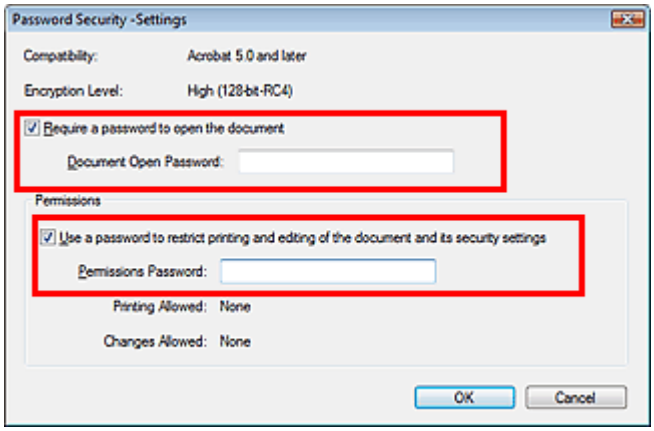
The Password Security -Settings dialog box opens.

Note

- You can also open the Password Security -Settings dialog box by clicking Set..., then selecting Password Security for Security in the PDF Settings dialog box.



3. Select the Require a password to open the document or Use a password to restrict printing and editing of the document and its security settings checkbox, then enter a password.



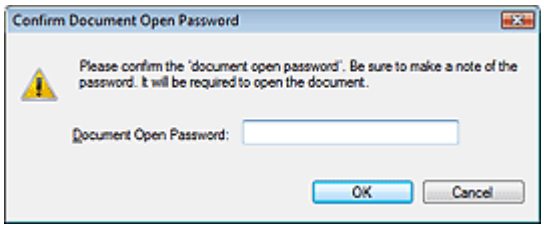
Important

- Up to 32 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used for the password. Passwords are case sensitive.
- Select both checkboxes to set both Document Open Password and Permissions Password. You cannot use the same password for both.

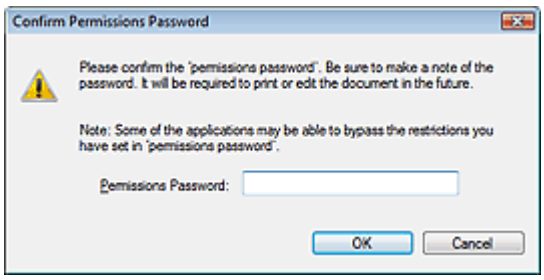
4. Click OK.

The Confirm Document Open Password or Confirm Permissions Password dialog box opens.

Document Open Password



Permissions Password



5. Re-enter the password and click OK.

The Save as PDF file dialog box returns.

Important

- If you close the Save as PDF file dialog box without clicking Save, the settings in the Password Security -Settings dialog box will be deleted.
- Passwords are deleted once the file is edited. Reset the passwords when saving edited files.

Note

- If you set the passwords via the PDF Settings dialog box, the PDF Settings dialog box returns. Click OK. The Save as PDF file dialog box returns.

6. Click Save.

Files are saved according to the settings.

Related Topic

▶ Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

Enter a password to open or edit/print password-protected PDF files.

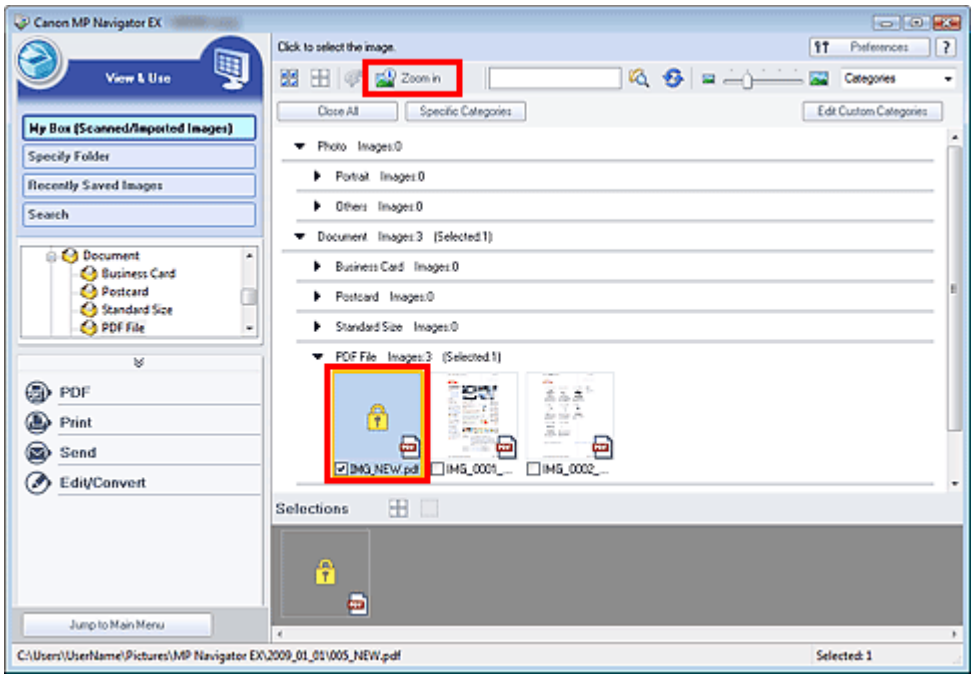
Password entry method varies by operation. The following procedures are examples only.

Important

- You can open, edit or print only PDF files whose passwords were set with MP Navigator EX. You cannot edit PDF files edited in other applications or whose passwords were set with other applications. Only MP Navigator EX version 1.1 and 2.0 or later supports opening, editing and printing password-protected PDF files.
- In Windows 2000, Internet Explorer 5.5 Service Pack 2 or later is required to open, edit or print password-protected PDF files.
- Passwords are case sensitive.
- You can create or edit up to 99 pages using MP Navigator EX.

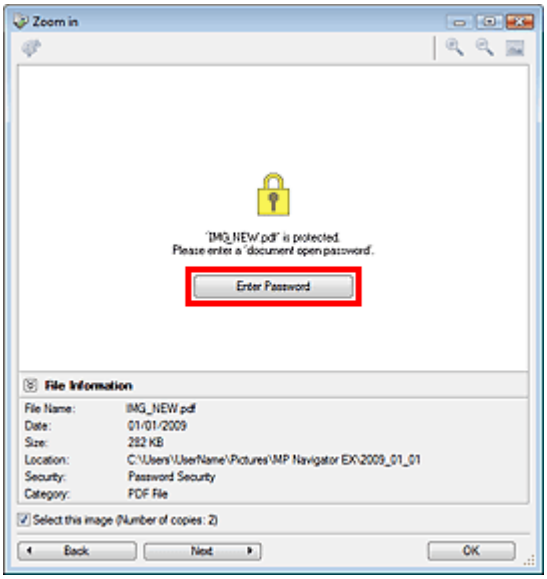
Entering a Password to Open a File

1. In the View & Use window, select the PDF file you want to open and click Zoom in.
   Alternatively, double-click the PDF file.

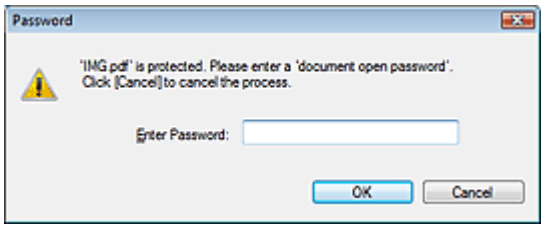


Note

- Only the Document Open Password will be required. The Permissions Password will not be required.
- If the Zoom in dialog box with a lock icon opens, click Enter Password.



2. The Password dialog box opens. Enter the password and click OK.



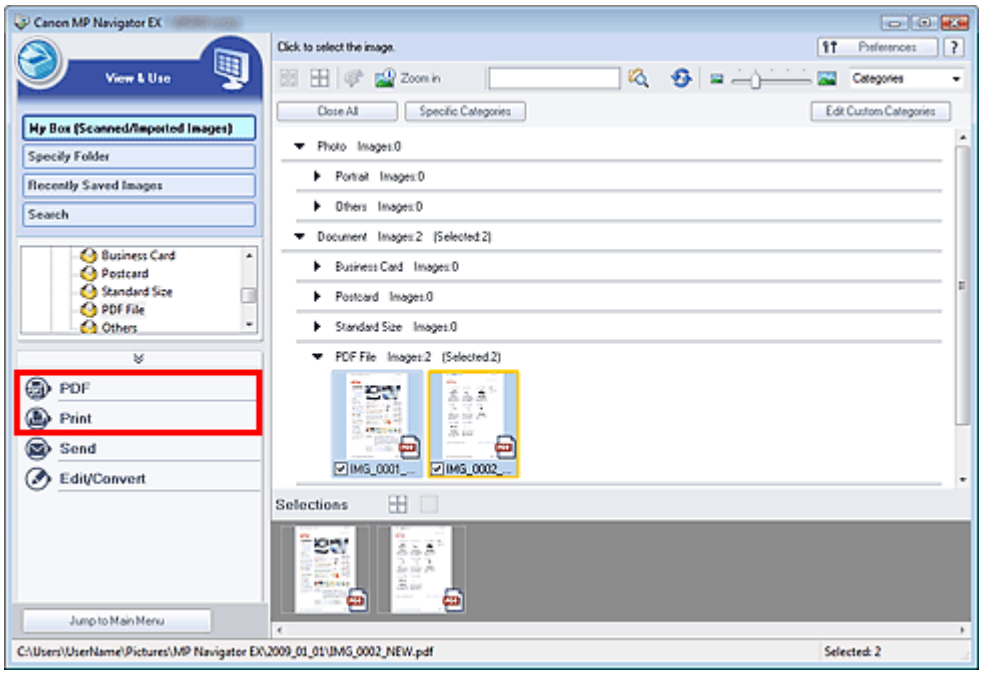
The PDF file opens in the Zoom in dialog box.

Note

- To reopen the file after closing the Zoom in dialog box, re-enter the password.

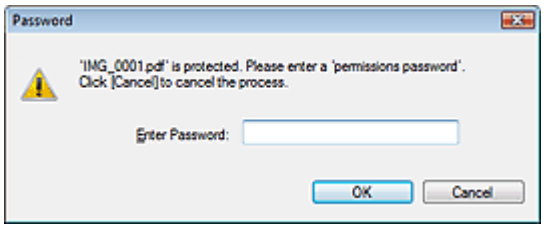
Entering a Password (Permissions Password) to Edit or Print a File

1. In the View & Use window, select PDF files and click PDF or Print.



2. To create a PDF file or edit the file, select Create/Edit PDF file on the list. To print the file, click Print Document.

In the Password dialog box, you will be prompted to enter a password.



Note

- If the Document Open Password is set as well, the Document Open Password will be required, then the Permissions Password will be required.

3. Enter the password and click OK.

The corresponding dialog box opens.

Important

- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
  ➡ Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Related Topic

▶ Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Page top

MP Navigator EX Screens

Learn about the screens and functions of MP Navigator EX.

Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab

- Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)
  - Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)
  - Save Dialog Box
  - Save as PDF file Dialog Box

View & Use Images on your Computer Tab

- View & Use Window
  - Create/Edit PDF file Window
  - Print Document Dialog Box
  - Print Photo Dialog Box
  - Send via E-mail Dialog Box
  - Correct/Enhance Images Window

Custom Scan with One-click Tab / One-click Mode Screen

- Auto Scan Dialog Box
- Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)
- PDF Dialog Box
- Mail Dialog Box
- OCR Dialog Box
- Custom Dialog Box

Preferences Dialog Box

- General Tab
- Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save)

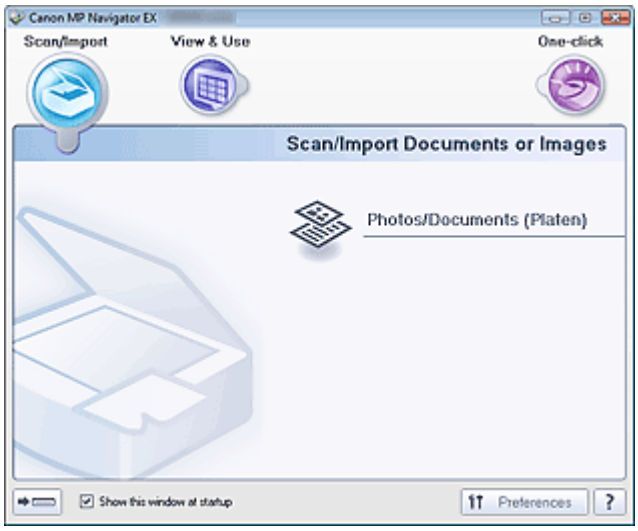
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Navigation Mode Screen

This is one of the startup screens of MP Navigator EX.

Point to the icon at the top of the screen to display each tab. Use each tab depending on what you want to do.



- **Scan/Import**

  Scan Photos and Documents.
  ➡ Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab

- **View & Use**

  You can open images saved on a computer and print them or attach them to e-mail. You can also edit them using an application that accompanies the machine.
  ➡ View & Use Images on your Computer Tab

- **One-click**

  You can complete from scanning to saving, etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.
  ➡ Custom Scan with One-click Tab

- **(Switch Mode)**

  Switches to One-click Mode screen. In the One-click Mode screen, you can complete from scanning to saving, etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.
  ➡ One-click Mode Screen

- **Show this window at startup**

  Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- Preferences **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  ➡ Preferences Dialog Box

- **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

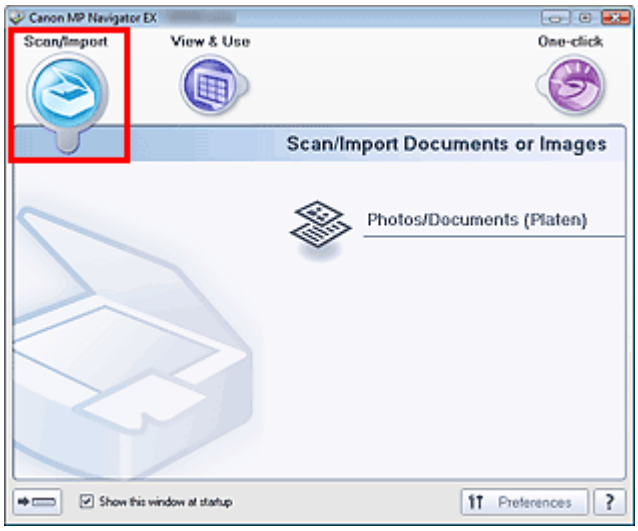
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab

Point to Scan/Import in the Navigation Mode screen to display the Scan/Import Documents or Images tab.

Scan Photos and Documents.



- **Photos/Documents (Platen)**

  Opens the Scan/Import window. Scan photos and documents placed on the Platen.
  ➡ Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **(Switch Mode)**

  Switches to One-click Mode screen. In the One-click Mode screen, you can complete from scanning to saving, etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.
  ➡ One-click Mode Screen

- **Show this window at startup**

  Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- Preferences **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  ➡ Preferences Dialog Box

- **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

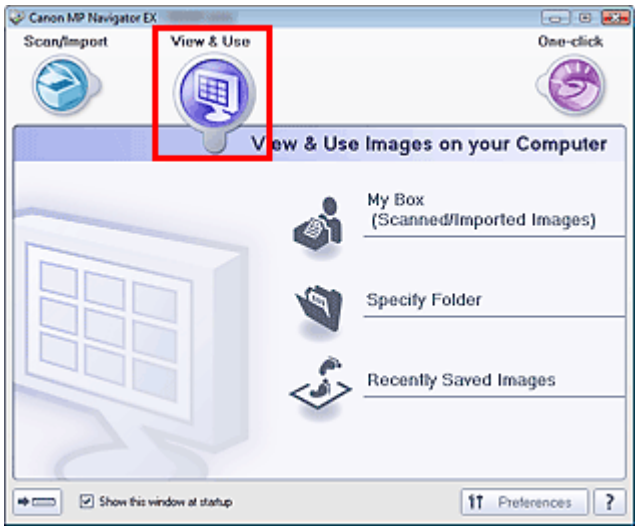
Page top

MP Navigator EX

View & Use Images on your Computer Tab

Point to View & Use in the Navigation Mode screen to display the View & Use Images on your Computer tab.

You can open images saved on a computer and print them or attach them to e-mail. You can also edit them using an application that accompanies the machine.



- **My Box (Scanned/Imported Images)**

  Opens the View & Use window with My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) selected.
  You can open and use images saved in My Box.
  My Box is a specific folder for saving images scanned with MP Navigator EX.

  Note

  - The following folders are specified by default.
    Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
    Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
    Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Specify Folder**

  Opens the View & Use window with Specify Folder selected.
  You can open and use images saved in specific folders.

- **Recently Saved Images**

  Opens the View & Use window with Recently Saved Images selected.
  You can open and use "Scanned/Imported Images" and images that have been "Attached to E-mail" or "Sent to Application" recently.
  ➡ View & Use Window

- **(Switch Mode)**

  Switches to One-click Mode screen. In the One-click Mode screen, you can complete from scanning to saving, etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.
  ➡ One-click Mode Screen

- **Show this window at startup**

  Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- Preferences **Preferences**

The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.

Preferences Dialog Box

- **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

Related Topic

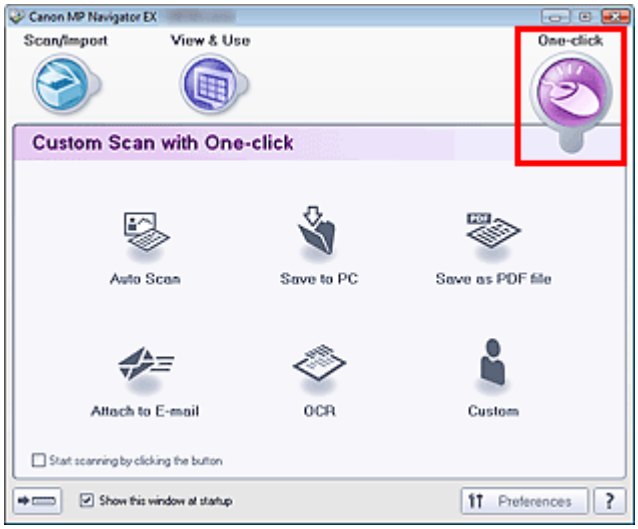
Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Page top

Custom Scan with One-click Tab

Point to One-click in the Navigation Mode screen to display the Custom Scan with One-click tab.

You can complete from scanning to saving, etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.



- **Auto Scan**

  Scan documents by automatically detecting the document type. File format is automatically set. Files are saved to a computer. You can apply Auto Photo Fix as required.
  When you click this icon, the Auto Scan dialog box opens and you can specify the save settings.
  ➡ Auto Scan Dialog Box

- **Save to PC**

  Scan documents or photos and save them to a computer. The document type can be detected automatically.
  When you click this icon, the Save dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.
  ➡ Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

- **Save as PDF file**

  Scan documents and save them as PDF files.
  When you click this icon, the PDF dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.
  ➡ PDF Dialog Box

- **Attach to E-mail**

  Scan documents or photos and attach them to e-mail.
  When you click this icon, the Mail dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and e-mail software program settings.
  ➡ Mail Dialog Box

- **OCR**

  Scan text documents then extract text in the image and display it in Notepad (included with Windows).
  When you click this icon, the OCR dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.
  ➡ OCR Dialog Box

  Note

  - For further procedures, refer to the application's manual.

- **Custom**

  Scan documents and open them in a specified application. Document type is automatically detected.

When you click this icon, the Custom dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.
Custom Dialog Box

Note

- For further procedures, refer to the application's manual.

- **Start scanning by clicking the button**

  Select this checkbox and click an icon to start scanning immediately.

- **(Switch Mode)**

  Switches to One-click Mode. The One-click Mode screen appears.
  One-click Mode Screen

- **Show this window at startup**

  Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- Preferences **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  Preferences Dialog Box

- **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

Important

- The following restrictions apply when you scan with Document Type set to Auto Mode in the Save or Custom dialog box.
  When you want to convert text in the scanned image to text data, specify Document Type (do not select Auto Mode).

Related Topic

Easy Scanning with One-click

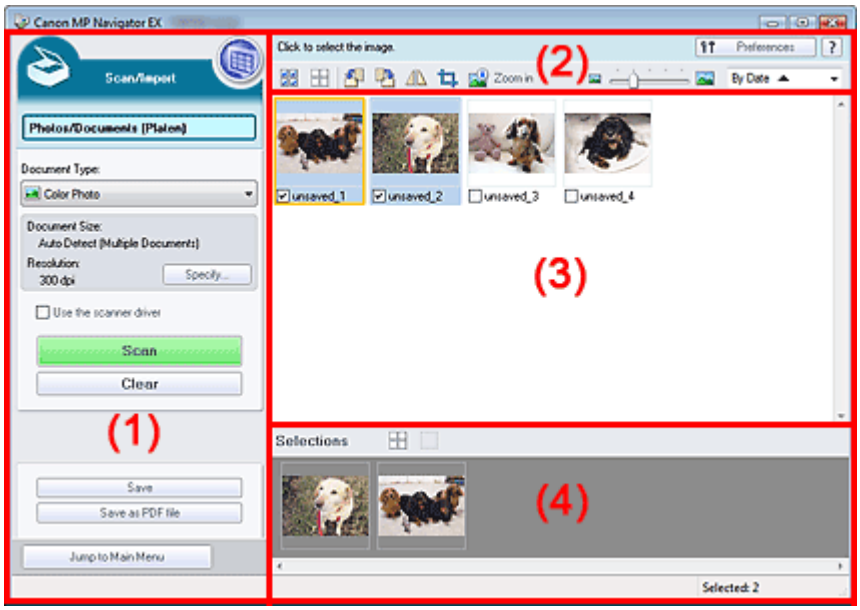
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

Point to Scan/Import in the Navigation Mode screen and click Photos/Documents (Platen) to open the Photos/Documents (Platen) screen (Scan/Import window).

Open this window to scan documents from the Platen.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Thumbnail Window

(4) Selected Images Area

Settings and Operation Buttons

- **(View & Use)**

  Click this when you want to open images and PDF files saved on your computer. The View & Use window opens.

  View & Use Window

- **Photos/Documents (Platen)**

  Displays the screen for scanning photos, documents, magazines and other printed materials.

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of document to be scanned.
  Scanning photos: Color Photo or Black and White Photo
  Scanning text documents: Color Document, Black and White Document or Text(OCR)
  Scanning magazines: Magazine(Color)

  Important

  - You cannot select Document Type if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.

- **Specify...**

  Specify the document size, resolution, and other advanced scan settings.

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

Important

- Specify... is not available if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox when you want to scan with ScanGear (scanner driver). Use ScanGear (scanner driver) to correct images and adjust colors when scanning.

- **Scan**

  Scanning starts.

  Note

  - This button changes to Open Scanner Driver when you select the Use the scanner driver checkbox.

- **Open Scanner Driver**

  ScanGear (scanner driver) starts.
  See "ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens " for details on ScanGear (scanner driver) screens.

  Note

  - This button changes to Scan when you deselect the Use the scanner driver checkbox.

- **Clear**

  Delete all images in the Thumbnail window.

  Note

  - Images not saved on a computer will be deleted. To keep important images, use Save or other methods to save them to a computer before clicking Clear.

- **Save**

  Save the selected images. Click to open the Save dialog box and specify the save settings.
  Save Dialog Box

- **Save as PDF file**

  Save the selected images as PDF files. Click to open the Save as PDF file dialog box and specify the save settings.
  Save as PDF file Dialog Box

- Jump to Main Menu **Jump to Main Menu**

  Jumps to the Main Menu.

Toolbar

- Preferences **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  Preferences Dialog Box

- **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

- **Edit Tools**

  - **(Select All)**

    Selects all images in the Thumbnail window.

  - **(Cancel All)**

Cancels all image selections in the Thumbnail window.

- **(Rotate Left)**

  Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

- **(Rotate Right)**

  Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees clockwise.

- **(Invert)**

  Inverts the target image (outlined in orange) horizontally.

- **(Trimming)**

  Trims the target image (outlined in orange) in the Thumbnail window. Trimming is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in a photo and discarding the rest. Click this button to open the Crop window and specify the trimming frame.

- **Zoom in**

  Enlarges the target image (outlined in orange). You can also enlarge the image by double-clicking it.

- **(Display Size)**

  Changes the size of images in the Thumbnail window.

- By Date **(Sort by)**

  Sorts the images in the Thumbnail window by category or by date (ascending or descending).

Thumbnail Window

- **Thumbnail Window**

  Scanned images are displayed.
  When you select the checkbox of an image, the image appears in the Selected Images area.

  Note

  - Thumbnails may appear as "?" when there is not enough memory to display the images.

  ### When Images are Sorted by Categories

  - **Close All / Open All**
    - Close All **Close All**

      Hides all images.
    - Open All **Open All**

      Displays all images.

    Note

    - Click Close All to change to Open All.

Selected Images Area

- **(Cancel All)**

  Cancels the selection of all images in the Selected Images area.

- **(Cancel Selection)**

  Cancels the selection of the target image (outlined in orange) in the Selected Images area.

- **Selected Images Area**

Images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed.

Related Topic

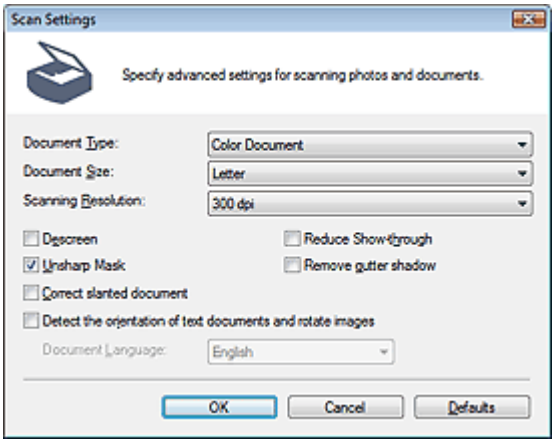
- Scanning Photos and Documents

Page top

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... in the Scan/Import window.

In the Scan Settings dialog box, you can make advanced scan settings.



- **Document Type**

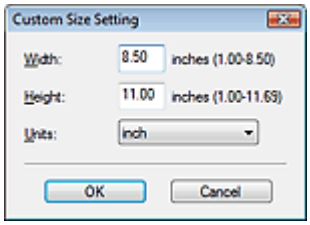
  Select the type of document to be scanned.
  Scanning photos: Color Photo or Black and White Photo
  Scanning text documents: Color Document, Black and White Document or Text(OCR)
  Scanning magazines: Magazine(Color)

Important

- To scan correctly, select a document type that matches the document to be scanned.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.
- You cannot select Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) or Auto Detect when Document Type is Text(OCR).

- **Scanning Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  Resolution

Note

- The following scanning resolutions can be specified when Document Type is Text(OCR).
  300 dpi / 400 dpi

- **Descreen**

  Select this checkbox to reduce moire patterns.
  Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

  Important

  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo, Black and White Photo or Text(OCR).

  Note

  - Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Descreen.

- **Reduce Show-through**

  Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

  Important

  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo, Black and White Photo or Text(OCR).

  Note

  - Select this checkbox when Document Type is text document and show-through is apparent in the scanned image.

- **Unsharp Mask**

  Select this checkbox to emphasize the outline of the subjects and sharpen the image.

  Important

  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Text(OCR).

- **Remove gutter shadow**

  Select this checkbox to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

  Important

  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Auto Detect, Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) or Stitch Assist.
  - Align the document correctly with the alignment mark on the Platen.

  Note

  - Use ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size documents or when custom cropping frames are set.
    For details, see Gutter Shadow Correction in " Image Settings " (ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab).

- **Correct slanted document**

  Select this checkbox to detect the scanned text and correct the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

  Important

  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo or Black and White Photo.
  - You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
  - The inclination of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
    - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
    - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
    - Documents with extremely large or small fonts

- Documents with small amount of text
- Documents containing figures/images or hand-written text
- Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Correct slanted document.

- **Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images**

  Select this checkbox to detect the orientation of the document from the scanned text and rotate the scanned image to the correct orientation. Select the language of the document to be scanned in Document Language.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo or Black and White Photo.
- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
- This function may not work properly depending on the document language. Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from Document Language are supported.
- The orientation of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly. In that case, select the scanned image in the Thumbnail window of the " Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window) " and rotate it with Edit Tools.
  - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
  - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
  - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
  - Documents with patterned backgrounds

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images.

- **Document Language**

  Select the language of the document to be scanned.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo or Black and White Photo.
- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.

- **Defaults**

  Restores the default settings.

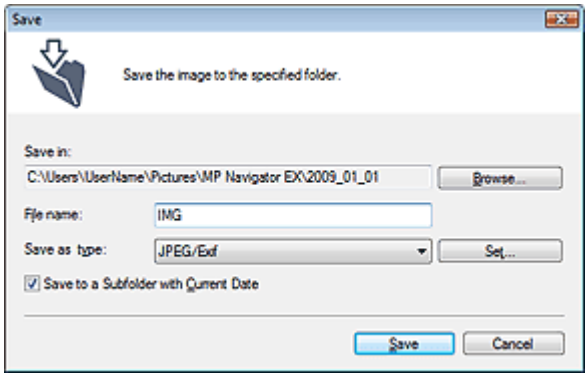
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Save Dialog Box

The Save dialog box opens when you click Save in the Scan/Import window.

In the Save dialog box, you can make settings for saving images to a computer.



- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP.

Important

- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is Text(OCR).

- **Set...**

  When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

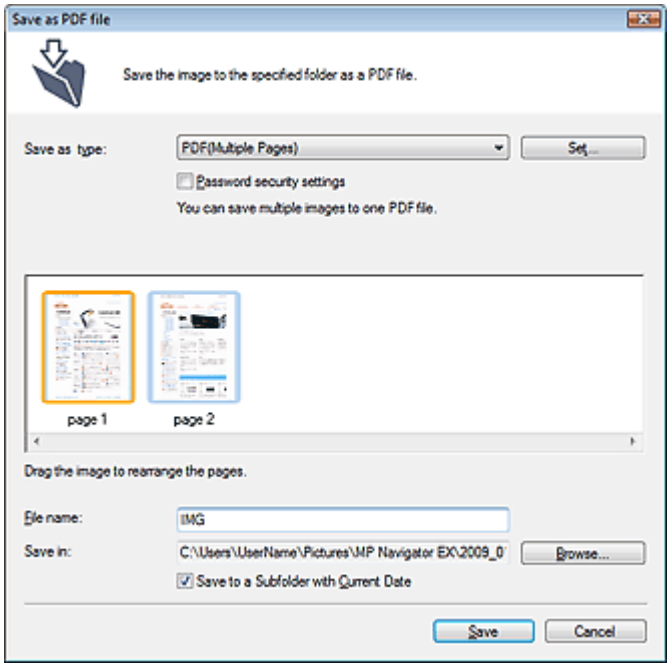
Save as PDF file Dialog Box

In the Save as PDF file dialog box, you can make advanced settings for saving scanned images as PDF files. You can save multiple documents as one PDF file or add pages to a PDF file created with MP Navigator EX.

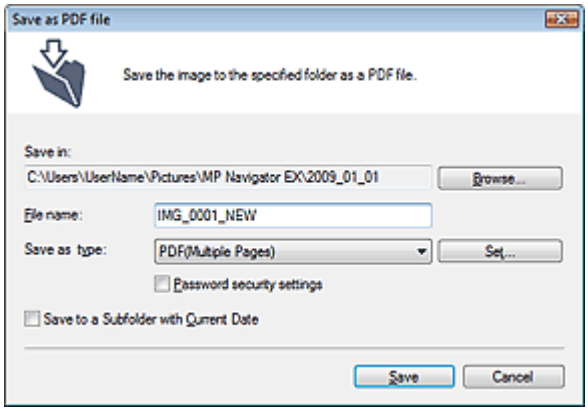
Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.

Dialog box that opens when Save as PDF file in the Scan/Import window is clicked



Dialog box that opens when Save Selected Pages or Save All Pages is clicked in the Create/Edit PDF file window



- **Save as type**

  Select a PDF file type to save the scanned images.

- **PDF**

  Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

- **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

  Save multiple images in one PDF file.

  Note

  - PDF(Multiple Pages) is displayed when multiple images are selected.

- **PDF(Add Page)**

  Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.

  Important

  - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.
  - If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
    Setting Passwords for PDF Files

- **Set...**

  Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "PDF Settings Dialog Box" for details.

- **Password security settings**

  Select this checkbox to open the Password Security -Settings dialog box in which you can set passwords for opening, editing and printing created PDF files.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

- **Add to**

  This is displayed when you select PDF(Add Page) for Save as type and specify the PDF file to which images are added. To change the file, click Browse... to specify another one.

  Important

  - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the PDF files. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

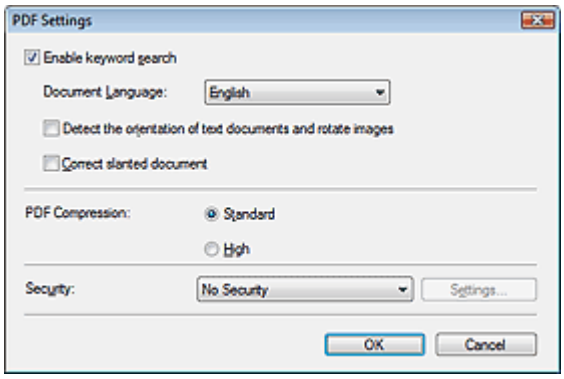
  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

PDF Settings Dialog Box

In the PDF Settings dialog box, you can specify the PDF compression type and other advanced settings for creating PDF files.



- **Enable keyword search**

  Select this checkbox to convert characters in a document to text data. This will enable an easy search by keyword.

- **Document Language**

  Select the language of the document to be scanned.

- **Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images**

  Select this checkbox to detect the orientation of the document from the scanned text and rotate the scanned image to the correct orientation.

Important

- This function may not work properly depending on the document language. Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from Document Language are supported.
- The orientation of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
  - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
  - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
  - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
  - Documents with patterned backgrounds

- **Correct slanted document**

  Select this checkbox to detect the scanned text and correct the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

Important

- The inclination of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
  - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
  - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
  - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
  - Documents with small amount of text
  - Documents containing figures/images or hand-written text
  - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

- **PDF Compression**

  Select a compression type for saving.

- **Standard**

  It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

  Compresses the file size when saving, allowing you to reduce the load on your network/server.

Important

- Highly compressed PDF images may degrade if you repeatedly save them with high compression.

Note

- The following images can be compressed with high efficiency.
  - Images with resolutions within the range of 75 dpi to 600 dpi.

- **Security**

  Set passwords for opening, editing and printing the created PDF files.

Important

- In Windows 2000, Internet Explorer 5.5 Service Pack 2 or later is required to use this function.
- This function is not available when images are automatically saved after scanning, such as when scanning from the One-click Mode screen or scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.

Note

- Select Password Security and set passwords in the Password Security -Settings dialog box.
  ➡ Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Page top

MP Navigator EX

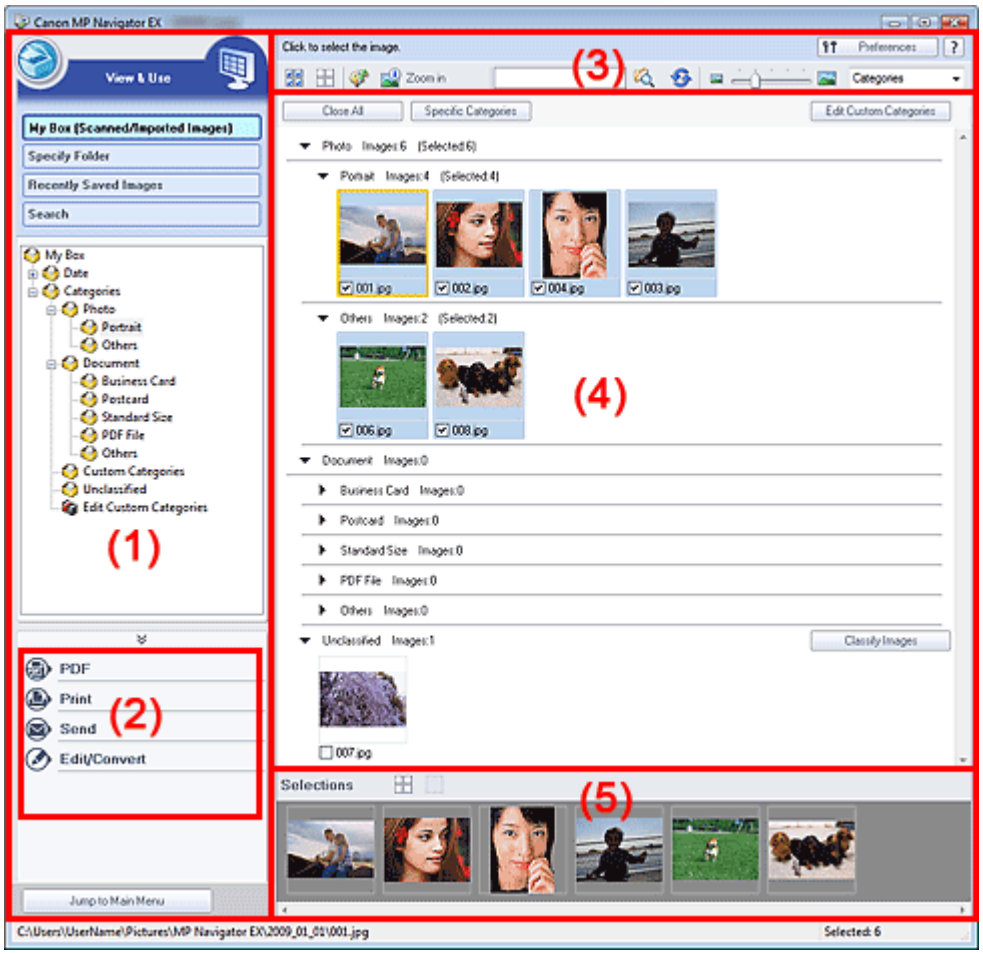
View & Use Window

Point to View & Use in the Navigation Mode screen and click My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Specify Folder or Recently Saved Images to open the View & Use window.

Open this window to display or use scanned images or images saved on a computer.

Important

- For PDF files, only those created with MP Navigator EX are displayed. You cannot display PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be displayed as well.



(1) Display Setting Items

(2) Image Handling Buttons

(3) Toolbar

(4) Thumbnail Window

(5) Selected Images Area

Display Setting Items

- **(Scan/Import)**

  Click this when you want to scan photos, documents, magazines and other printed materials. The

Scan/Import window opens.
➡ Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **My Box (Scanned/Imported Images)**

  Displays folders of images (grouped by year, year/month and year/month/date) in My Box in tree view. Select a folder to display its contents in the Thumbnail window to the right.
  Image date is the scanned, captured or updated date.

- **Specify Folder**

  Displays all hard disks and folders in tree view. Select a folder to display images in the Thumbnail window to the right.
  Selecting a folder and clicking it highlights the folder name, allowing you to rename it.

- **Recently Saved Images**

  "Scanned/Imported Images" and images that have been "Attached to E-mail" or "Sent to Application" recently are displayed in tree view by date. Select a Month/Date/Year folder to display images by date in the Thumbnail window to the right.
  Image date is the scanned or sent date.

- **Search**

  The advanced search options opens.
  ➡ Searching Images

- Jump to Main Menu **Jump to Main Menu**

  Jumps to the Main Menu.

Image Handling Buttons

- **Image Handling Buttons**

  Specify what to do with the selected images. See the corresponding sections below for details on each button.
  ➡ Creating/Editing PDF Files
  ➡ Printing Documents
  ➡ Printing Photos
  ➡ Sending via E-mail
  ➡ Editing Files

  Note

  - The buttons in Image Handling Buttons are displayed when the corresponding applications are installed.

Toolbar

- Preferences **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  ➡ Preferences Dialog Box

- ? **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

- **Edit Tools**

  - **(Select All)**

    Selects all images in the Thumbnail window.

  - **(Cancel All)**

    Cancels all image selections in the Thumbnail window.

- **(Image Correction/Enhancement)**

  Allows you to correct the target image (outlined in orange). Click this button to open the Correct/Enhance Images window in which you can correct/enhance images and also adjust the brightness, contrast, etc.
  ➡ Correct/Enhance Images Window

  Important

  - Image correction/enhancement cannot be applied to PDF files or black and white binary files.

- **Zoom in**

  Enlarges the target image (outlined in orange). You can also enlarge the image by double-clicking it. You can check all pages when you select a PDF file.
  You can also check file information such as file name, date, size and security setting. A lock icon appears for PDF files with Document Open Password set.
  ➡ Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

- **(Search)**

  Enter a word or phrase included in the file name, Exif information or PDF text of the image you want to search for, then click (Search button). For Exif information, text in Maker, Model, Description and User Comment is searched.

  Note

  - Search images in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Recently Saved Images or a selected folder and its subfolders.

- **(Refresh)**

  Refreshes the Thumbnail window contents.

- **(Display Size)**

  Changes the size of images in the Thumbnail window.

- Categories **(Sort by)**

  Sorts the images in the Thumbnail window by category, date (ascending or descending) or name (ascending or descending).
  Images can be sorted by category only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

Thumbnail Window

- **Thumbnail Window**

  Scanned images are displayed.
  When you select the checkbox of an image, the image appears in the Selected Images area.
  Selecting an image and clicking the file name highlights the file name, allowing you to rename it.
  Drag and drop an image to do the following things.
  - Move from one category to another within the Thumbnail window
  - Move to a category folder displayed in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images)
  - Copy to a folder displayed in Specify Folder

  Important

  - In Windows 2000, Internet Explorer 5.5 Service Pack 2 or later is required to open password-protected PDF files.
  - You cannot change the extension (.jpg, .pdf, etc.) when renaming a file.
  - You cannot move or copy images to the date folders displayed in tree view in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Recently Saved Images.

Note

- A lock icon appears for PDF files with Document Open Password set.
- Thumbnails may appear as "?" in the following cases.
  - Opening unsupported images
  - File size is too large and there is not enough memory to display the image
  - The file is corrupted

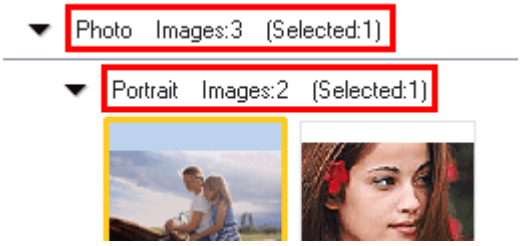
When Images are Sorted by Categories

Scanned images are displayed by category.

Note

- Some images may not be detected correctly and thus may be classified into wrong categories. In that case, drag and drop an image and move it from one category to another.

- **Category name Images: N (Selected: n)**



  - **Category name**

    The following categories are provided.
    Photos: Portrait, Others
    Documents: Business Card, Postcard, Standard Size, PDF File, Others
    Custom categories: Displays your custom categories.
    Unclassified: Displays images that have not yet been classified.

  - **Images: N**

    The number of images classified into the category is displayed.

  - **(Selected: n)**

    The number of images with the checkbox selected is displayed.

    #### Note

    - This portion is displayed only when one or more images are selected.

- **Close All / Open All**

  - Close All **Close All**

    Hides all images.

  - Open All **Open All**

    Displays all images.

  #### Note

  - Immediately after opening the View & Use window or sorting images, all images appear and Close All is displayed.
  - Click Close All to change to Open All.

- **Specific Categories / All Categories**

  You can narrow down the categories to display only those containing images. If you narrow down the categories, more images are displayed in the Thumbnail List area, allowing you to find or move images easily.
  This button is displayed only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

  - Specific Categories **Specific Categories**

    Displays categories containing images, along with the contained images.

- All Categories **All Categories**

  Displays all categories and images.

  Note

  - Click Specific Categories to change to All Categories.

- Edit Custom Categories **Edit Custom Categories**

  When My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed, the Edit Custom Categories dialog box opens.
  In the Edit Custom Categories dialog box, you can add/delete categories displayed in Custom Categories.
  See "Classifying Images into Categories " for details.

- Classify Images **Classify Images**

  Images imported from hard disks appear in Unclassified. Click Classify Images to classify them automatically.
  This button is displayed only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

  Note

  - Classification may take time if there are many images to classify.

Selected Images Area

- **(Cancel All)**

  Cancels the selection of all images in the Selected Images area.

- **(Cancel Selection)**

  Cancels the selection of the target image (outlined in orange) in the Selected Images area.

- **Selected Images Area**

  Images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed.

Related Topic

▶ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Page top

MP Navigator EX

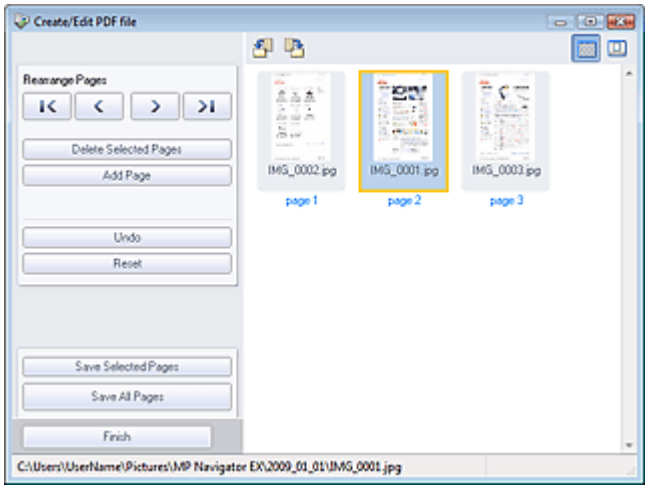
Create/Edit PDF file Window

Click PDF in the View & Use window, then click Create/Edit PDF file on the list to open the Create/Edit PDF file window.

In the Create/Edit PDF file window, you can add/delete pages and rearrange the page order of PDF files created with MP Navigator EX.

Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files
- You can create or edit up to 99 pages using MP Navigator EX.



- **Rearrange Pages**

  You can move the selected image (outlined in orange).

  - Moves the selected image to the top.

  - Moves the selected image up one page.

  - Moves the selected image down one page.

  - Moves the selected image to the end.

Note

- You can also drag and drop the image to rearrange the order.

- **Delete Selected Pages**

  Deletes the selected image.

- **Add Page**

  Allows you to select and add an existing PDF file.

  Note

  - A password will be required to add a password-protected PDF file.

- **Undo**

  Cancels the latest change made.

- **Reset**

  Cancels all the changes made.

- **Save Selected Pages**

  Opens the Save as PDF file dialog box. Specify the save settings. Only the selected page is saved.

  Note

  - When multiple pages are selected, a multiple-page PDF file is created.
  - See "Save as PDF file Dialog Box " for details on the Save as PDF file dialog box.

- **Save All Pages**

  Opens the Save as PDF file dialog box. Specify the save settings. All PDF files in the list will be saved as one PDF file.

- **Finish**

  Closes the Create/Edit PDF file window.

- **Toolbar**

  - **(Rotate Left)**

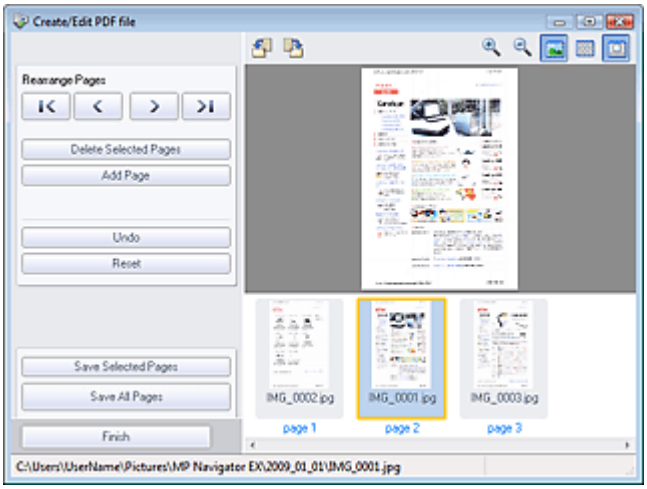
    Rotates the page 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

  - **(Rotate Right)**

    Rotates the page 90 degrees clockwise.

  - **(Preview Mode)**

    Switches to Preview Mode.
    The selected file appears in Preview.



  - **(Enlarge)**

    Enlarges the image displayed in Preview.

  - **(Reduce)**

    Reduces the image displayed in Preview.

- **(Full-screen)**

  Enlarges/reduces the image to display it fully in Preview.

- **(Thumbnail Mode)**

  Switches to Thumbnail Mode. Thumbnails of files are displayed.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

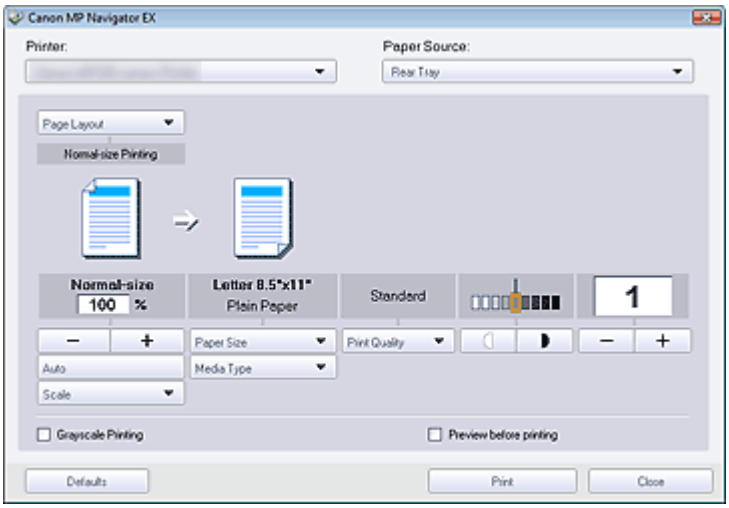
Print Document Dialog Box

Click Print in the View & Use window, then click Print Document on the list to open the Print Document dialog box.

In the Print Document dialog box, you can make advanced settings for printing multiple scanned images at one time.

Note

- The setting items in the Print Document dialog box vary by printer.



- **Printer**

  Select the printer to use.
- **Paper Source**

  Select paper source.
- **Page Layout**

  Select a print type.
  - **Normal-size Printing**

    Print one image per sheet.
  - **Scaled Printing**

    Print images at the selected scale (enlarged or reduced).
  - **Fit-to-Page Printing**

    Print an image at the paper size (enlarged or reduced).
  - **Borderless Printing**

    Print the image on an entire sheet of paper without margins.
  - **Page Layout Printing (2 on 1)**

    Layout and print two images on a sheet of paper.
  - **Page Layout Printing (4 on 1)**

    Layout and print four images on a sheet of paper.
- **Enlarge/Reduce**

  Enlarge or reduce images to print.

- **(Enlarge/Reduce)**

  Print a reduced or enlarged image by specifying a scale in increments of 1%.

- **Auto**

  Scale is adjusted automatically according to the detected paper width and the selected paper size. Image may be printed rotated 90 degrees depending on its size.

- **Scale**

  Select a scale from the list.

Important

- At normal-size (100%), some images may be printed small or with some portions cropped. In that case, select Auto to resize the print in proportion to the paper size.

- **Paper Size**

  Select the size of paper for printing. Match the size to the size of the paper set in the machine.

Note

- Selectable paper sizes depend on the selected printer.

- **Media Type**

  Select the type of paper for printing. Print quality may be fixed depending on the paper type.

Note

- Selectable paper types depend on the selected printer.

- **Print Quality**

  Select the print quality.

- **Density**

  Click (Density adjustment) to select the print density.

- **Copies**

  Click (Copy setting) to select the number of copies to be printed.

- **Grayscale Printing**

  Select this checkbox to print the document in black and white.

- **Preview before printing**

  Select this checkbox to display the print result before printing.

- **Defaults**

  Restores the default settings.

- **Print**

  Start printing with the specified settings.

Note

- To cancel while spooling, click Cancel. To cancel while printing, click Cancel Printing in the confirmation window for the printer status. To open a confirmation window for the printer status, click printer icon on the taskbar.

Page top

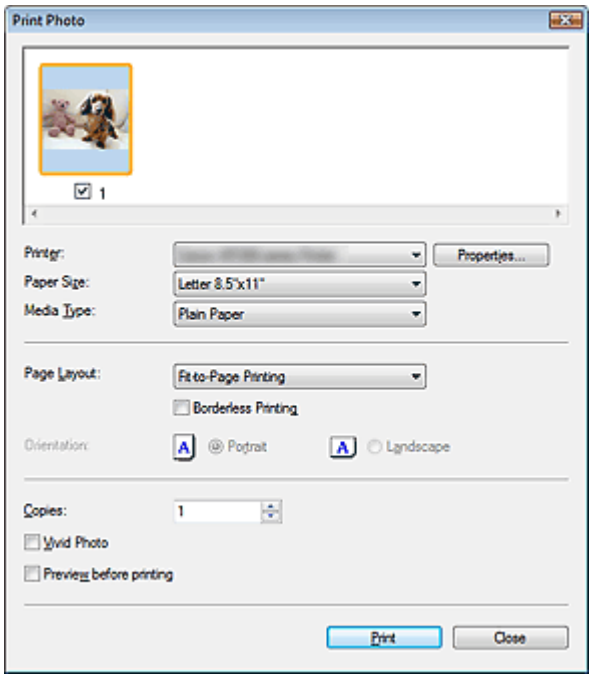
MP Navigator EX

Print Photo Dialog Box

Click Print in the View & Use window, then click Print Photo on the list to open the Print Photo dialog box.

Important

- The Print Photo dialog box will not open if Easy-PhotoPrint EX is installed. Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts instead.
- PDF files cannot be printed.



Note

- Double-click an image to display it in a different window.

- **Printer**

  Select the printer to use.
- **Properties...**

  Displays the selected printer's advanced setting screen.
- **Paper Size**

  Select the size of paper for printing. Match the size to the size of the paper set in the machine.
- **Media Type**

  Select the type of paper for printing. Print quality may be fixed depending on the paper type.
- **Page Layout**

  Select a print type.

  - **Normal-size Printing**

    Print one image per sheet.

  - **Fit-to-Page Printing**

    Print an image at the paper size (enlarged or reduced).
- **Borderless Printing**

Select this checkbox to print the image on an entire sheet of paper without margins.

Important

- Page Layout setting will be disabled when you select Borderless Printing.
- This setting is only available with printers that support borderless printing.

- **Orientation**

  Specify the print orientation.

  Important

  - This setting is available only when Page Layout is Normal-size Printing. For others, the image is automatically rotated according to the aspect ratio of the paper.

- **Copies**

  Specify the number of copies to print.

- **Vivid Photo**

  Select this checkbox to print the image in vivid colors.

- **Preview before printing**

  Select this checkbox to display the print result before printing.

- **Print**

  Starts printing.

  Note

  - Only the images in the Thumbnail window with the checkbox selected are printed.

- **Close**

  Closes the dialog box without printing the photo.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

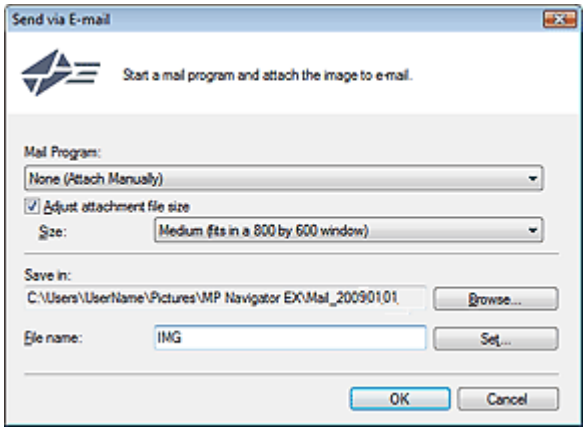
Send via E-mail Dialog Box

Click Send in the View & Use window, then click Attach to E-mail on the list to open the Send via E-mail dialog box.

In the Send via E-mail dialog box, you can make advanced settings for attaching images to e-mail.

Important

- MP Navigator EX is compatible with the following e-mail software programs:
  - Windows Mail (Windows Vista)
  - Outlook Express (Windows XP/Windows 2000)
  - Microsoft Outlook
  (If an e-mail software program does not operate properly, check that the program's MAPI is enabled. To enable MAPI, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.)



- **Mail Program**

  The e-mail software program set up via Preferences in the Navigation Mode screen is displayed. Select the e-mail software program you want to use.

- **Adjust attachment file size**

  When Save as type is JPEG, selecting this checkbox allows you to resize the images. Select a size from Size.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one. If resized, the resized images are saved.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be attached (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Set...**

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files.
  Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Correct/Enhance Images Window

Click (Image Correction/Enhancement) in the View & Use window or click Fix photo images in the Task Button area to open the Correct/Enhance Images window.

In the Correct/Enhance Images window, you can make advanced settings including image correction/enhancement and brightness/contrast adjustment.

You can also display the source image and corrected image side by side for comparison.

Important

- Image correction/enhancement cannot be applied to PDF files or black and white binary files.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking (Image Correction/Enhancement) in the Zoom in dialog box.
- It may take a while to correct large images.
- See "View & Use Window" for details on the View & Use window.

(1) Task Area

(2) Toolbar

Task Area

Available tasks and settings vary between the Auto and Manual tabs.

Click Auto or Manual to open the corresponding tab.

Auto Tab

Use the functions in the Auto tab to apply corrections and enhancements to the entire image.

See "Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically " for details.

- **Auto Photo Fix**

  Applies automatic corrections suitable for photos.

  - **Prioritize Exif Info**

    Select this checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.
    Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

    Note

    - Exif is a standard format for embedding various shooting data in digital camera images (JPEG).

- **Face Sharpener**

  Sharpens out-of-focus faces.
  You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

- **Digital Face Smoothing**

  Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.
  You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

- **Apply to all images**

  Applies the correction to all images displayed in the thumbnail list.

- **OK**

  Applies the selected effect to the selected image or all images.

- **Reset Selected Image**

  Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.

- **Save Selected Image**

  Saves the corrected images selected.

- **Save All Corrected Images**

  Saves all the corrected images displayed in the thumbnail list.

- **Exit**

  Closes the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Manual Tab

Use Adjust to adjust brightness and contrast, or to sharpen the entire image.

Use Correct/Enhance to correct/enhance specific areas.

See "Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually " for details.

Adjustment

- **Brightness**

  Adjusts the overall image brightness.
  Move the slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

- **Contrast**

  Adjusts the contrast of the image. Adjust the contrast when the image is flat due to lack of contrast.
  Move the slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

- **Sharpness**

  Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image. Adjust the sharpness when the photo is out of focus or text is blurred.
  Move the slider to the right to sharpen the image.

- **Blur**

  Blurs the outline of the subjects to soften the image.
  Move the slider to the right to soften the image.

- **Show-through Removal**

  Removes show-through of text from the reverse side or removes the base color. Adjust the show-through level to prevent text on the reverse side of thin document or the base color of the document from appearing on the image.
  Move the slider to the right to increase the show-through removal effect.

- **Defaults**

  Resets all adjustments (brightness, contrast, sharpness, blur, and show-through removal).

- **Reset Selected Image**

  Cancels all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

- **Save Selected Image**

  Saves the corrected images selected.

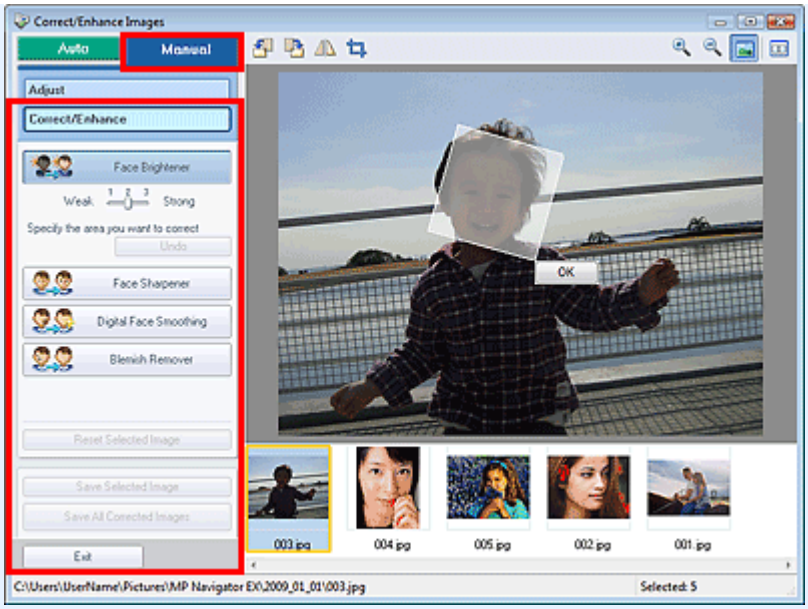
- **Save All Corrected Images**

  Saves all the corrected images displayed in the thumbnail list.

- **Exit**

  Closes the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Correction/Enhancement



- **Face Brightener**

  Corrects the entire image so that the selected facial area is brightened.
  You can adjust the effect level using the slider.
- **Face Sharpener**

  Corrects the entire image to sharpen the face. You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to.
  You can adjust the effect level using the slider.
- **Digital Face Smoothing**

  Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles. You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to.
  You can adjust the effect level using the slider.
- **Blemish Remover**

  Removes moles. You can specify the area you want to apply the effect to.
- **OK**

  Applies the selected effect to the specified area.
- **Undo**

  Cancels the latest correction.
- **Reset Selected Image**

  Cancels all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.
- **Save Selected Image**

  Saves the corrected images selected.
- **Save All Corrected Images**

  Saves all the corrected images displayed in the thumbnail list.
- **Exit**

  Closes the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Toolbar

- **Toolbar**
  - **(Rotate Left)**

    Rotates the image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
  - **(Rotate Right)**

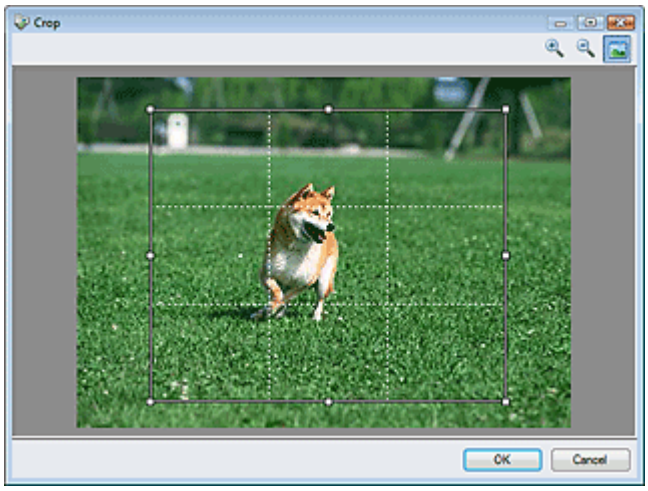
    Rotates the image 90 degrees clockwise.

- **(Invert)**

  Inverts the image horizontally.

- **(Trimming)**

  Trimming is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in a photo and discarding the rest. In the displayed window, drag the white frame to specify the trimming area. Move the cursor inside the white frame and drag to move the trimming area.



Note

- Place the main subjects along the broken white lines or at the intersections to create a balanced image.

- **(Enlarge)**

  Enlarges the displayed image.

- **(Reduce)**

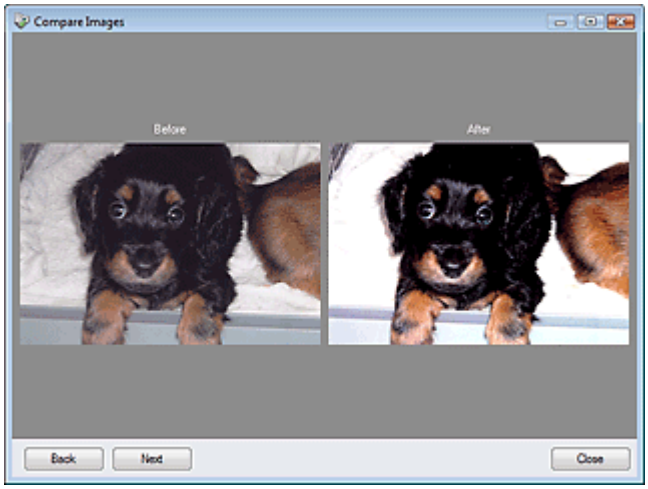
  Reduces the displayed image.

- **(Full-screen)**

  Enlarges/reduces the image to display it full-screen.

- **(Compare)**

  Opens the source image for comparison.
  The source image appears on the left and the corrected image appears on the right.



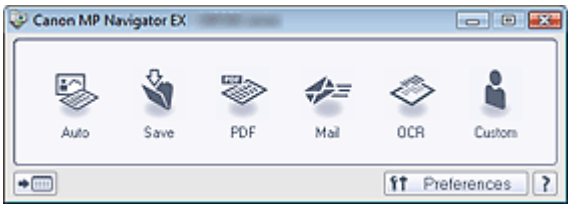
Page top

MP Navigator EX

One-click Mode Screen

Click (Switch Mode) at the bottom left of the Navigation Mode screen to display the One-click Mode screen.

You can complete from scanning to saving, etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.



- **Auto**

  Scan documents by automatically detecting the document type. File format is automatically set. Files are saved to a computer. You can apply Auto Photo Fix as required.
  When you click this icon, the Auto Scan dialog box opens and you can specify the save settings.
  Auto Scan Dialog Box

- **Save**

  Scan documents or photos and save them to a computer. The document type can be detected automatically.
  When you click this icon, the Save dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.
  Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

- **PDF**

  Scan documents and save them as PDF files.
  When you click this icon, the PDF dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.
  PDF Dialog Box

- **Mail**

  Scan documents or photos and attach them to e-mail.
  When you click this icon, the Mail dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and e-mail software program settings.
  Mail Dialog Box

- **OCR**

  Scan text documents then extract text in the image and display it in Notepad (included with Windows).
  When you click this icon, the OCR dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.
  OCR Dialog Box

  Note

  - For further procedures, refer to the application's manual.

- **Custom**

  Scan documents and open them in a specified application. Document type is automatically detected.
  When you click this icon, the Custom dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.
  Custom Dialog Box

  Note

  - For further procedures, refer to the application's manual.

- **(Switch Mode)**

Switches to Navigation Mode. The Navigation Mode screen appears.
Custom Scan with One-click Tab

- Preferences **Preferences**

  The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
  Preferences Dialog Box

- ? **(Guide)**

  Opens this guide.

Important

- The following restrictions apply when you scan with Document Type set to Auto Mode in the Save or Custom dialog box.
  When you want to convert text in the scanned image to text data, specify Document Type (do not select Auto Mode).

Related Topic

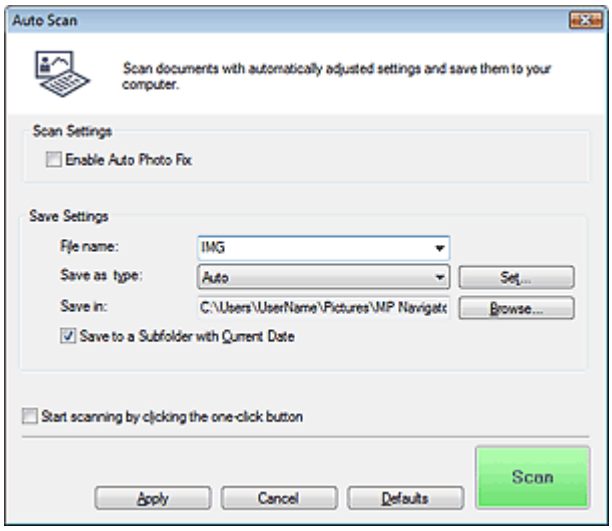
Easy Scanning with One-click

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Auto Scan Dialog Box

Click Auto Scan on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click Auto in the One-click Mode screen to open the Auto Scan dialog box.



Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly. In that case, click another icon in One-click Mode or on the Custom Scan with One-click tab and specify the document type or size.
  - Documents other than photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and CD/DVD
  - A4 size photos
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
  - Documents printed on thin white paper
  - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- Reflective CD/DVD labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
  See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.

Note

- To reduce moire, click another icon in One-click Mode or on the Custom Scan with One-click tab and set Document Type to Magazine.

Scan Settings

- **Enable Auto Photo Fix**

  Select this checkbox to analyze the photo image and apply suitable corrections automatically.
  This function is available when Auto or JPEG/Exif is selected for Save as type in Save Settings.

  ## Important

  - When Save as type is Auto, the base color tone of the following types of documents may change from the source since they are corrected as photos. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.
    - Postcards and business cards

- Text documents may not be scanned correctly since they may be corrected as photos depending on how you place the document. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- If you select a format other than JPEG/Exif for Save as type and then select this checkbox, a message appears and Save as type will be set to Auto.

Save Settings

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select Auto, JPEG/Exif, TIFF, BMP or PDF.

Important

- When Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ depending on how you place the document.
  See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.
- Large documents (such as A4 size photos) that cannot be placed away from the edges/arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen may not be saved in the correct file format when Save as type is Auto. In that case, select a file format suitable for the document to be scanned.
- Images cannot be added to password-protected PDF files.

Note

- When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
  Photos, postcards, CD/DVD and business cards: JPEG
  Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF
  You can change the file format from Set....

- **Set...**

  ### When Save as type is Auto

  You can specify the file format in which to save images. Select a file format for Document and Photo each.

  ### When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

  ### When Save as type is PDF

  Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "PDF Settings Dialog Box" for details.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

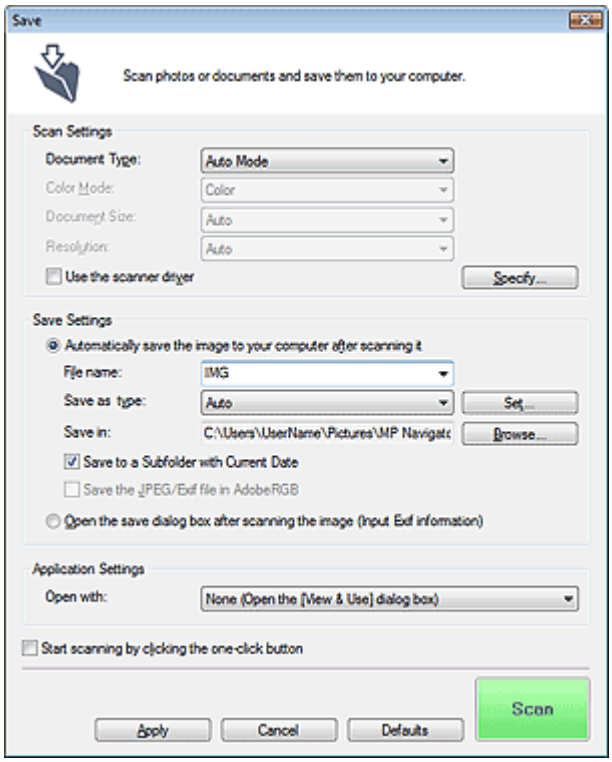
  Scans and saves documents with the specified settings.
  When Save as type is Auto, a confirmation appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Click Save to PC on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click Save in the One-click Mode screen to open the Save dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of document to be scanned. When Auto Mode is selected, the document type is automatically detected. In that case, Color Mode, Document Size and Resolution are automatically set as well.

Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly with Auto Mode. In that case, specify the document type or size.
  - Documents other than photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and CD/DVD
  - A4 size photos
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
  - Documents printed on thin white paper
  - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- Reflective CD/DVD labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
  See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.

Note

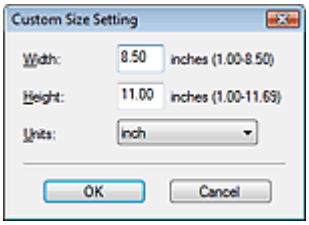
- To reduce moire, set Document Type to Magazine.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  ➡ Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.
  Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the Save dialog box will be disabled.
  Specify these settings in the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen.

- **Specify...**

  Click to open the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  ➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

  Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.
  The File name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

Important

- If you select this function, you will not be able to set passwords for PDF files.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select Auto, JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP. Auto is displayed when Document Type is Auto Mode. When saving as PDF files, select PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

Important

- When Document Type is Auto Mode and Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ depending on how you place the document.
  See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.
- Large documents (such as A4 size photos) that cannot be placed away from the edges/arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen may not be saved in the correct file format when Save as type is

Auto. In that case, select a file format suitable for the document to be scanned.
- Images cannot be added to password-protected PDF files.
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

Note

- When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
  Photos, postcards, CD/DVD and business cards: JPEG
  Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF
  You can change the file format from Set....
  Images saved as PDF files may not open depending on the application. In that case, select an option other than Auto in Save as type.
- If you select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is not Auto Mode , the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox will be selectable.

- **Set...**

When Save as type is Auto

You can specify the file format in which to save images. Select a file format for Document and Photo each.

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

When Save as type is PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page)

Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "PDF Settings Dialog Box" for details.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB**

  Select this checkbox to save the images in colors that correspond to Adobe RGB.

Important

- This function is available only when Save as type is JPEG/Exif and Document Type is not Auto Mode.
- This function is not available if the Adobe RGB profile is not installed.

Note

- You cannot select this setting if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.
- When you save an image with the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox selected, an underscore is added to the beginning of the file name. (Example: _Image0001.jpg)

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information)**

  Select this to open the Save dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder, file name and Exif information.
  ➡ Save Dialog Box

Note

- To set passwords for PDF files, select Open the save dialog box after scanning the image

(Input Exif information). After scanning, you can set the passwords in the Save dialog box.
Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Application Settings

- **Open with**

  You can select whether to open the View & Use window or Explorer after saving the images.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

  Scans and saves documents with the specified settings.
  When Save as type is Auto, a confirmation appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

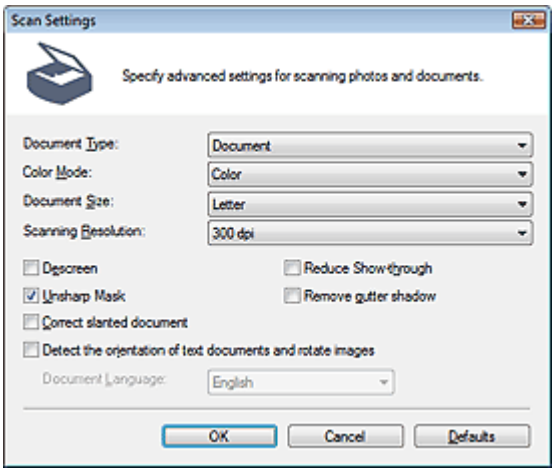
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Scan Settings Dialog Box

Make advanced settings for scanning with one-click or scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.

The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... in a dialog box for making scan settings.



Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and how the screen was opened.

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of document to be scanned. When Auto Mode or Auto Scan is selected, the document type is automatically detected.
  In that case, Color Mode, Document Size, etc. are automatically set as well.

  ## Important

  - To scan correctly, select a document type that matches the document to be scanned.
  - When opened from the Scanner Button Settings tab in the Preferences dialog box, the Document Type specified in the Scanner Button Settings tab is displayed and cannot be changed in this dialog box.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

  - **Color**

    This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of R(ed), G(reen), and B(lue).

  - **Grayscale**

    This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of black and white.

  - **Black and White**

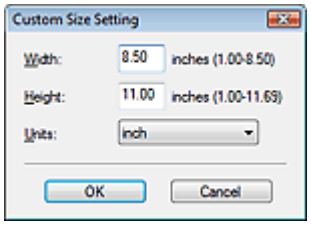
    This mode renders the image in black and white. The contrast in the image is divided at certain levels (threshold level) into black and white and is rendered in two colors.

  ## Note

  - Color Mode is not displayed in the Scan Settings dialog box opened from the Scanner Button Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Document Size**

Select the size of the document to be scanned.
When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Scanning Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  Resolution

- **Descreen**

  Select this checkbox to reduce moire patterns.
  Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Descreen.

- **Reduce Show-through**

  Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

Note

- Select this checkbox when Document Type is text document and show-through is apparent in the scanned image.

- **Unsharp Mask**

  Select this checkbox to emphasize the outline of the subjects and sharpen the image.

- **Remove gutter shadow**

  Select this checkbox to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Auto Detect, Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) or Stitch Assist.
- Align the document correctly with the alignment mark on the Platen.

Note

- Use ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size documents or when custom cropping frames are set.
  For details, see Gutter Shadow Correction in " Image Settings " (ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab).

- **Correct slanted document**

  Select this checkbox to detect the scanned text and correct the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
- The inclination of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.

- Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
- Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
- Documents with extremely large or small fonts
- Documents with small amount of text
- Documents containing figures/images or hand-written text
- Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Correct slanted document.

- **Enable Auto Photo Fix (When scanning with Auto Scan using the Operation Panel)**

  Select this checkbox to analyze the photo image and apply suitable corrections automatically.
  This function is available when Auto or JPEG/Exif is selected for Save as type in Save Settings on the Scanner Button Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Important

- When Save as type is Auto, the base color tone of the following types of documents may change from the source since they are corrected as photos. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.
  - Postcards and business cards
- Text documents may not be scanned correctly since they may be corrected as photos depending on how you place the document. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Note

- If you select a format other than JPEG/Exif for Save as type and then select this checkbox, a message appears and Save as type will be set to Auto.

- **Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images**

  Select this checkbox to detect the orientation of the document from the scanned text and rotate the scanned image to the correct orientation. Select the language of the document to be scanned in Document Language.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
- This function may not work properly depending on the document language. Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from Document Language are supported.
- The orientation of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
  - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
  - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
  - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
  - Documents with patterned backgrounds

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images.

- **Document Language**

  Select the language of the document to be scanned.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.

- **Defaults**

  Restores the default settings.

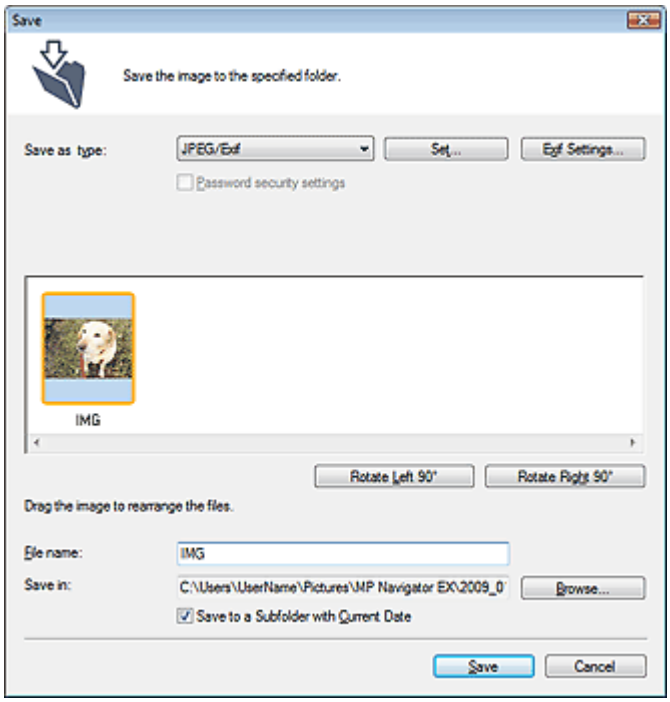
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Save Dialog Box

The Save dialog box opens when you scan from Save to PC on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or from Save in the One-click Mode screen after selecting Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information).

You can specify the file type and destination while viewing the thumbnails.



- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select JPEG/Exif, TIFF, BMP, PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

  - **PDF**

    Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

  - **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

    Save multiple images in one PDF file.

    Note

    - PDF(Multiple Pages) is displayed when multiple images are scanned.

  - **PDF(Add Page)**

    Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.

    Important

    - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.
    - If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
      ➡ Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Important

- PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) and PDF(Add Page) cannot be selected for images scanned using the Operation Panel of the machine.
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

- **Set...**

  When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

  When Save as type is PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page)

  Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "PDF Settings Dialog Box" for details.

- **Exif Settings...**

  When Save as type is JPEG/Exif, you can input Exif information into the file to be saved.
  Exif Settings Dialog Box

- **Password security settings**

  Select this checkbox to open the Password Security -Settings dialog box in which you can set passwords for opening, editing and printing created PDF files.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Note

- This function is available only when Save as type is PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

- **Add to**

  This is displayed when you select PDF(Add Page) for Save as type and specify the PDF file to which images are added. To change the file, click Browse... to specify another one.

Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- **Rotate Left 90°/Rotate Right 90°**

  Rotates scanned images 90 degrees counter-clockwise or clockwise.
  Select the image you want to rotate and click Rotate Left 90° or Rotate Right 90°.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

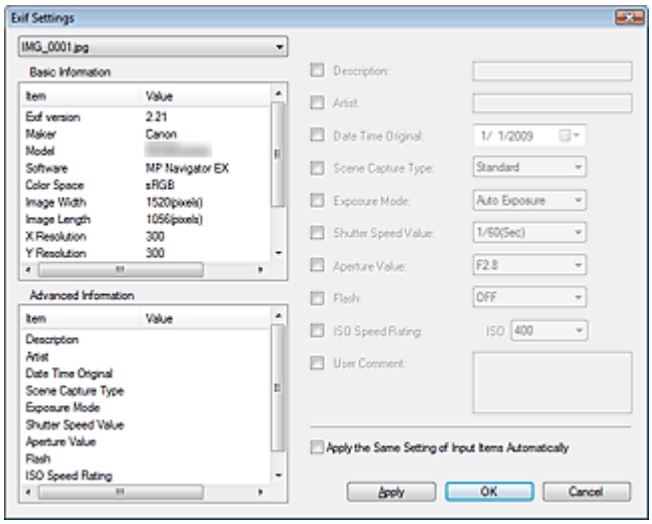
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Exif Settings Dialog Box

You can input Exif information into a file to be saved. Exif is a standard format for embedding various shooting data in digital camera images (JPEG). Embedding Exif information into scanned images allows you to organize and print them along with digital camera images.

The Exif Settings dialog box can be opened when Save as type is JPEG/Exif.



- **Basic Information**

  Displays the information obtained automatically from the machine or software.

- **Advanced Information**

  Displays the information specified on the right side of the screen.

- **Advanced Information Settings Area**

  You can input Exif information such as the title and shooting data. Select the checkbox of the items you want to specify, and select or enter information.

- **Apply the Same Setting of Input Items Automatically**

  Select this checkbox to automatically display the information you specified for the previous image.

- **Apply**

  After specifying all the information you need, click Apply to embed it into the image. The information appears in Advanced Information.

- **OK**

  Embeds the specified information into the image and closes the screen. The specified information is saved.

- **Cancel**

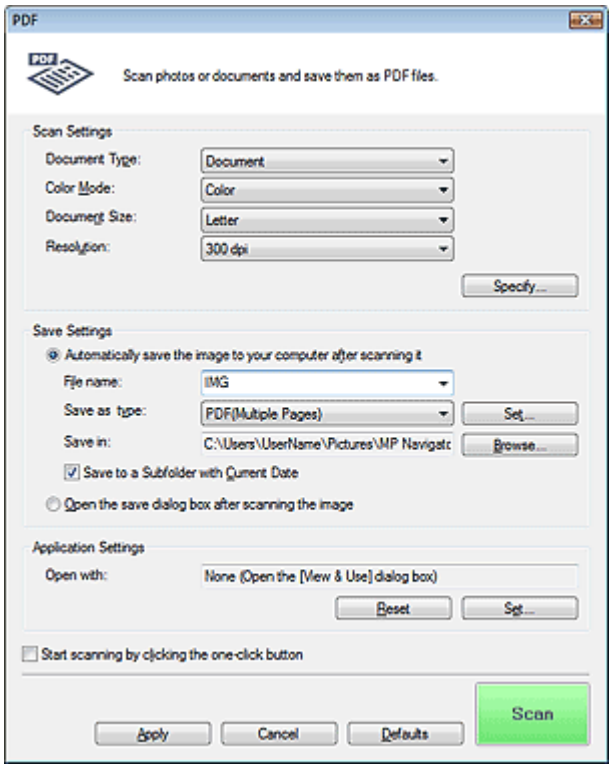
  Cancels the settings and closes the screen.
  Information is embedded when Cancel is clicked after clicking Apply.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

PDF Dialog Box

Click Save as PDF file on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click PDF in the One-click Mode screen to open the PDF dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

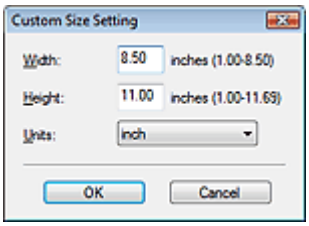
  Select the type of document to be scanned.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the

document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  ➡ Resolution

- **Specify...**

  Click to open the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  ➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

  Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.
  The File name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

  Important

  - If you select this function, you will not be able to set passwords for PDF files.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

  - **PDF**

    Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

  - **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

    Save multiple images in one PDF file.

  - **PDF(Add Page)**

    Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.

    Important

    - Images cannot be added to password-protected PDF files.

  Note

  - Click Set... to open the PDF Settings dialog box in which you can specify the PDF compression type and other advanced settings for creating PDF files.
    ➡ PDF Settings Dialog Box
  - See "Creating/Editing PDF Files " to delete or rearrange the pages of saved PDF files.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image**

  Select this to open the Save as PDF file dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save

settings such as destination folder and file name.
Save as PDF file Dialog Box

Note

- To set passwords for PDF files, select Open the save dialog box after scanning the image. After scanning, you can set the passwords in the Save as PDF file dialog box.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Application Settings

- **Open with**

  Specify an application with which to open scanned images. Drag and drop the icon of an application that supports the file format displayed in Save as type. The specified application starts after images are scanned.

  Important

  - Depending on the specified application, the images may not appear correctly or the application may not start.

- **Reset**

  Cancels the application setting.

- **Set...**

  Allows you to select an application to start.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

  Scans and saves documents as PDF files with the specified settings.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

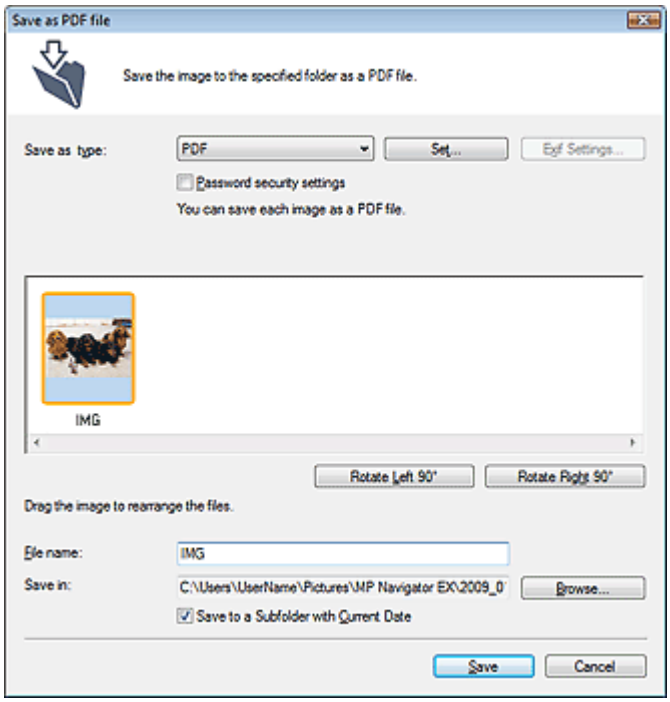
Save as PDF file Dialog Box

The Save as PDF file dialog box opens when you scan from Save as PDF file on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or from PDF in the One-click Mode screen after selecting Open the save dialog box after scanning the image.

In the Save as PDF file dialog box, you can make settings for saving images to a computer.

Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.



- **Save as type**

  Select a PDF file type to save the scanned images.

  - **PDF**

    Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

  - **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

    Save multiple images in one PDF file.

    ### Note

    - PDF(Multiple Pages) is displayed when multiple images are scanned.

  - **PDF(Add Page)**

    Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.

    ### Important

    - Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- PDF(Add Page) cannot be selected for images scanned using the Operation Panel of the machine.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

- **Set...**

  Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "PDF Settings Dialog Box" for details.

- **Password security settings**

  Select this checkbox to open the Password Security -Settings dialog box in which you can set passwords for opening, editing and printing created PDF files.
  Setting Passwords for PDF Files

- **Rotate Left 90°/Rotate Right 90°**

  Rotates scanned images 90 degrees counter-clockwise or clockwise.
  Select the image you want to rotate and click Rotate Left 90° or Rotate Right 90°.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the PDF files. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

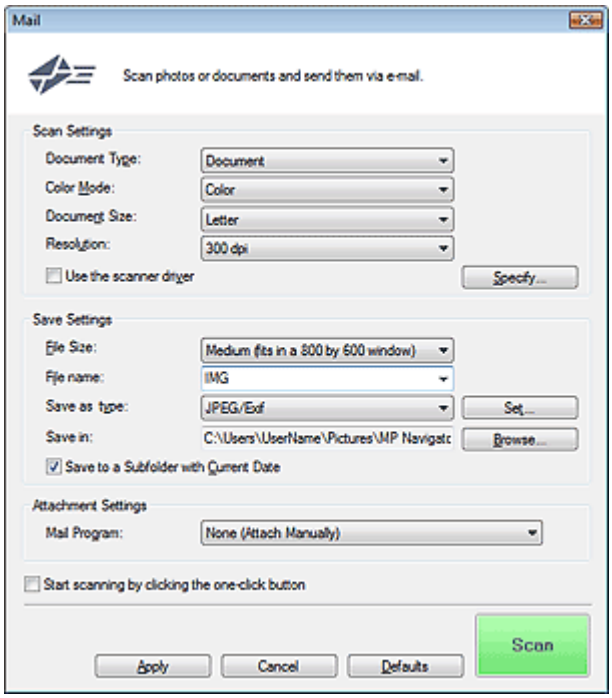
  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Mail Dialog Box

Click Attach to E-mail on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click Mail in the One-click Mode screen to open the Mail dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

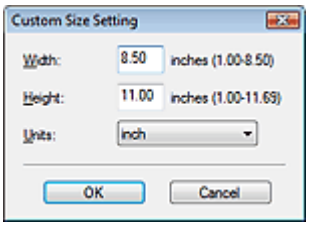
  Select the type of document to be scanned.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.
  Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the Mail dialog box will be disabled.
  Specify these settings in the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen.

- **Specify...**

  Click to open the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box

Save Settings

- **File Size**

  Select a size from Small (fits in a 640 by 480 window), Medium (fits in a 800 by 600 window), Large (fits in a 1024 by 768 window) and Original.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select JPEG/Exif, PDF or PDF(Multiple Pages).

  Important

  - You cannot set passwords for PDF files.
  - You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

- **Set...**

  When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

  When Save as type is PDF or PDF(Multiple Pages).

  Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "PDF Settings Dialog Box" for details.

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

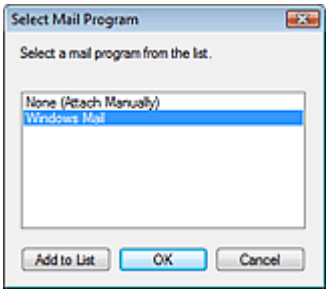
Attachment Settings

- **Mail Program**

  Specify an e-mail software program.

  Note

- Select Add... to open the Select Mail Program dialog box in which you can select an e-mail software program. If the e-mail software program you want to use is not listed, click Add to List and select it.



- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

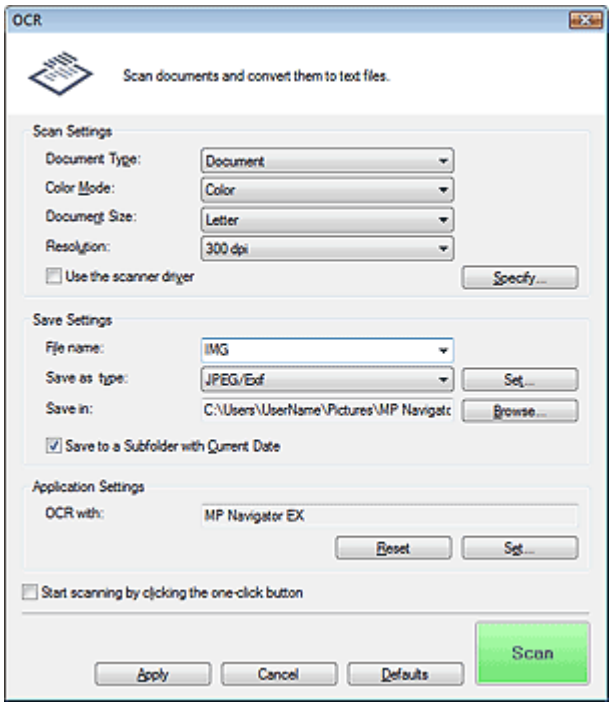
  Scans documents with the specified settings.
  When scanning is completed, the e-mail software program starts automatically and a new message screen appears with the image attached.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

OCR Dialog Box

Click OCR on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or in the One-click Mode screen to open the OCR dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

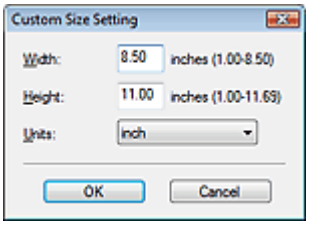
  Select the type of document to be scanned.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  ➡ Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan

settings.
Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the OCR dialog box will be disabled.
Specify these settings in the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen.

- **Specify...**

  Click to open the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  ➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box

Note

- When scanning slanted documents, select the Correct slanted document checkbox to improve the text recognition accuracy.

Save Settings

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP.

Important

- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

- **Set...**

  ### When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

  You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

- **Save in**

  Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Application Settings

- **OCR with**

  Specify an OCR application.
  When MP Navigator EX is specified, after the image is scanned, the text in the image is extracted and appears in Notepad (included with Windows).

Note

- Only text written in languages that can be selected on the General tab can be extracted to Notepad (included with Windows). Click Set... on the General tab and specify the language according to the language of the document to be scanned.
  When scanning multiple documents, you can collect the extracted text into one file.
  ➡ General Tab
- Text displayed in Notepad (included with Windows) is for guidance only. Text in the image of the following types of documents may not be detected correctly.
  - Documents containing text with font size outside the range of 8 points to 40 points (at 300 dpi)

- Slanted documents
- Documents placed upside down or documents with text in the wrong orientation (rotated characters)
- Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
- Documents with narrow line spacing
- Documents with colors in the background of text
- Documents containing multiple languages

- **Reset**

  Cancels the application setting.

- **Set...**

  Allows you to select an application.

Important

- Depending on the specified application, the text may not be extracted correctly or the application may not start.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

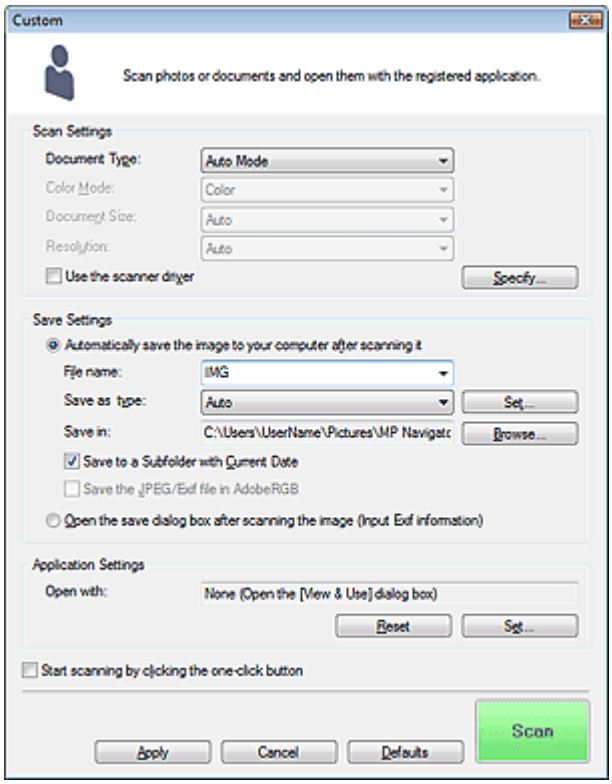
  Scans documents with the specified settings.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Custom Dialog Box

Click Custom on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or in the One-click Mode screen to open the Custom dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

  Select the type of document to be scanned. When Auto Mode is selected, the document type is automatically detected. In that case, Color Mode, Document Size and Resolution are automatically set as well.

Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly with Auto Mode. In that case, specify the document type or size.
  - Documents other than photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and CD/DVD
  - A4 size photos
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
  - Documents printed on thin white paper
  - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- Reflective CD/DVD labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
  See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.

Note

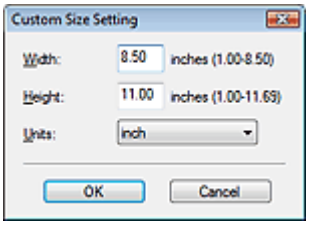
- To reduce moire, set Document Type to Magazine.

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned.
  When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

  Select the resolution at which to scan documents.
  ➡ Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

  Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.
  Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the Custom dialog box will be disabled. Specify these settings in the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen.

- **Specify...**

  Click to open the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  ➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

  Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.
  The File name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

Important

- If you select this function, you will not be able to set passwords for PDF files.

Note

- If an application to start is specified in Application Settings, the scanned image opens in the specified application.

- **File name**

  Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

  Select a file type to save the scanned images.
  Select Auto, JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP. Auto is displayed and selected by default when Document Type is Auto Mode.

Important

- When Document Type is Auto Mode and Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ

depending on how you place the document.
See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.
- Large documents (such as A4 size photos) that cannot be placed away from the edges/arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen may not be saved in the correct file format when Save as type is Auto. In that case, select a file format suitable for the document to be scanned.
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

Note

- When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
  Photos, postcards, CD/DVD and business cards: JPEG
  Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF
  You can change the file format from Set....
  Images saved as PDF files may not open depending on the application. In that case, select an option other than Auto in Save as type.
- If you select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is not Auto Mode , the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox will be selectable.

- **Set...**

When Save as type is Auto

You can specify the file format in which to save images. Select a file format for Document and Photo each.

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
The following folders are specified by default.
Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB**

Select this checkbox to save the images in colors that correspond to Adobe RGB.

Important

- This function is available only when Save as type is JPEG/Exif and Document Type is not Auto Mode.
- This function is not available if the Adobe RGB profile is not installed.

Note

- You cannot select this setting if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.
- When you save an image with the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox selected, an underscore is added to the beginning of the file name. (Example: _Image0001.jpg)

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information)**

Select this to open the Save dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder, file name and Exif information.
➡ Save Dialog Box

Application Settings

- **Open with**

  Specify an application with which to open scanned images. Drag and drop the icon of an application that supports the file format displayed in Save as type. The specified application starts after images are scanned.

  Important

  - Depending on the specified application, the images may not appear correctly or the application may not start.

- **Reset**

  Cancels the application setting.

- **Set...**

  Allows you to select an application to start.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

  Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon.

- **Apply**

  Saves and applies the specified settings.
  Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

  Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

  Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

  Scans and saves documents with the specified settings.
  When Save as type is Auto, a confirmation appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

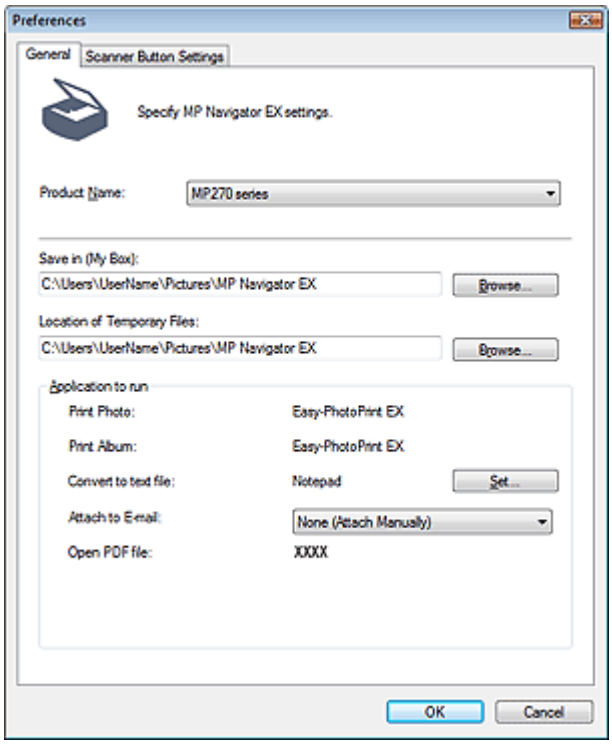
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Preferences Dialog Box

Click Preferences to open the Preferences dialog box.

In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions via the General and Scanner Button Settings tabs.



Note

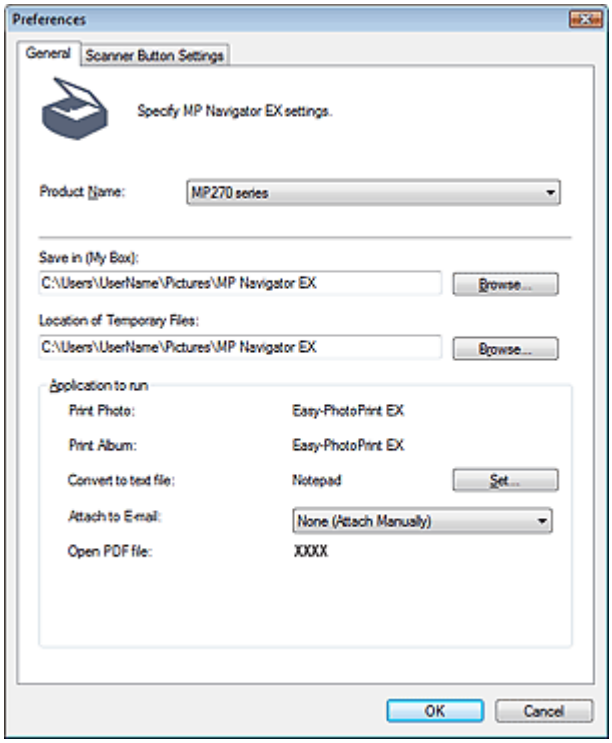
- See the corresponding sections below for details on each tab.
  - General Tab
  - Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save)

Page top

MP Navigator EX

General Tab

On the General tab, you can specify general MP Navigator EX settings.



- **Product Name**

  Displays the product name of the machine that MP Navigator EX is currently configured to use.
  If the displayed product is not the one you want to use, select the desired product from the list.

- **Save in (My Box)**

  Displays the folder in which to save scanned documents. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.
  The following folders are specified by default.
  Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
  Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
  Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Location of Temporary Files**

  Displays the folder in which to save images temporarily. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

Important

- An error may occur if you set the destination to the root directory of the drive on which the operating system is installed. Be sure to specify a folder.
- An error may occur if you set the destination to a network folder. Be sure to specify a local folder.

- **Application to run**

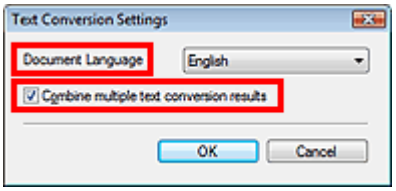
  Displays the applications that can be started via MP Navigator EX. Install the applications from the *Setup CD-ROM* that accompanies the machine.
  For Attach to E-mail, you can select an e-mail software program to start.
  For Open PDF file, the application associated with the .pdf file extension by the operating system is displayed.

Important

- You can change which items are installed during installation from the *Setup CD-ROM* by selecting Custom Install. If you choose not to install some applications with Custom Install, the corresponding MP Navigator EX functions will be unavailable. To use those functions, install the corresponding applications.

Note

- For Convert to text file, Notepad (included with Windows) is displayed. Click Set... to open a dialog box, then specify Document Language and how to scan multiple documents.



  - Document Language
    Specify the language according to the language of the document to be scanned. Only text written in languages that can be selected in the Document Language can be extracted to Notepad.
  - Combine multiple text conversion results
    When scanning multiple documents, select the checkbox to collect the conversion results (text) into one file. This checkbox is selected by default.
    When the checkbox is selected, you can scan up to 99 pages at one time.
    Deselect the checkbox to display each conversion result (text) in a separate file.
    When the checkbox is not selected, you can scan up to 10 pages at one time.

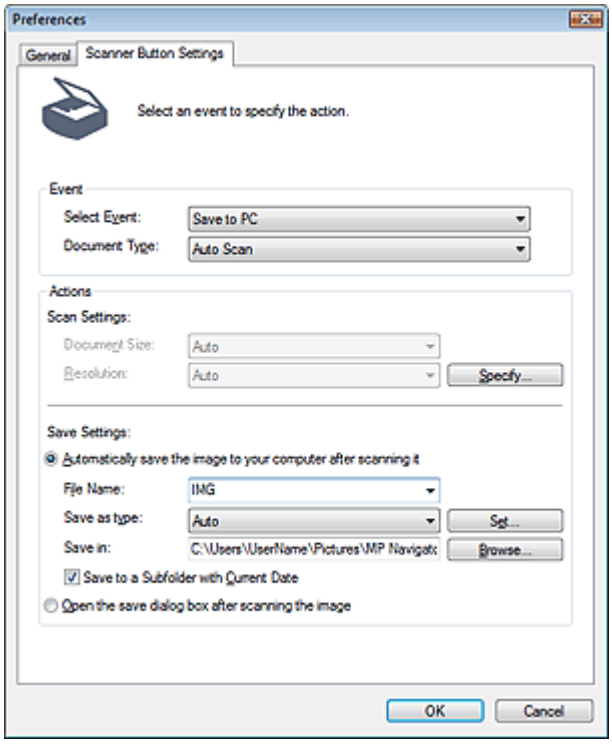
Page top

MP Navigator EX

Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save)

On the Scanner Button Settings tab, you can specify the following settings.

You can specify how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.



Event

- **Select Event**

  Save to PC is set.

- **Document Type**

  Auto Scan is set. The document type is automatically detected.

Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly with Auto Scan. In that case, specify the document type or size in MP Navigator EX.
  See "Scanning Photos and Documents" to scan images using MP Navigator EX.
  - Documents other than photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and CD/DVD
  - A4 size photos
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
  - Documents printed on thin white paper
  - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- Reflective CD/DVD labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
  See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.

Actions

Scan Settings

- **Document Size**

  This setting is automatically set.
- **Resolution**

  This setting is automatically set.
- **Specify...**

  Click to open the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.
  Scan Settings Dialog Box

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

  Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.
  The File Name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

  Important

  - If you select this function, you will not be able to set passwords for PDF files.

  - **File Name**

    Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters).
  - **Save as type**

    Select a file type to save the scanned images.
    Select Auto, JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP. Auto is displayed by default.

    Important

    - When Document Type is Auto Scan and Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ depending on how you place the document.
      See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.
    - Large documents (such as A4 size photos) that cannot be placed away from the edges/ arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen may not be saved in the correct file format when Save as type is Auto. In that case, select a file format suitable for the document to be scanned.

    Note

    - If you select the Enable Auto Photo Fix checkbox in the Scan Settings dialog box and then select a format other than JPEG/Exif for Save as type, a message appears and the Enable Auto Photo Fix checkbox will be deselected.
    - When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
      Photos, postcards, CD/DVD and business cards: JPEG
      Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF
      You can change the file format from Set....

  - **Set...**

    When Save as type is Auto

    You can specify the file format in which to save images. Select a file format for saving Document and Photo each.

    When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

    You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).
  - **Save in**

    Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse...

to specify another one.
The following folders are specified by default.
Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
Windows 2000: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

  Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2009_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.
  If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image**

  Select this to open the save dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder, file name and Exif information.

Note

- See "Save Dialog Box" for details.

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Appendix: Opening Files Other than Scanned Images

You can save or print data other than scanned images using MP Navigator EX.

- **Using images saved on a computer**

  Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Page top

MP Navigator EX

Opening Images Saved on a Computer

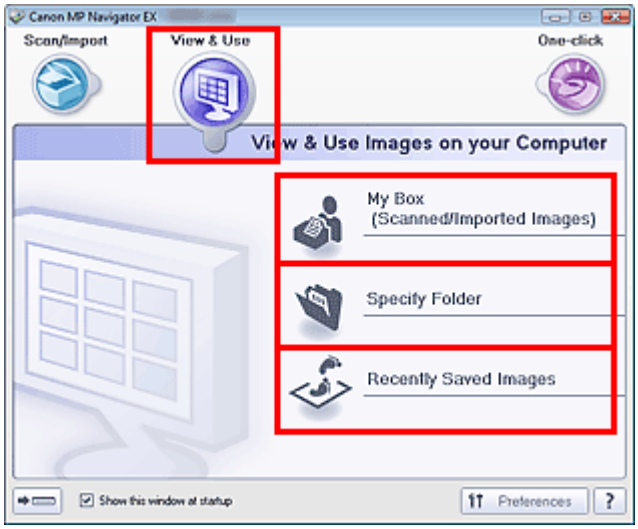
You can open images saved on a computer and print them or attach them to e-mail using MP Navigator EX. You can also edit them using an application that accompanies the machine.

1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

Starting MP Navigator EX

2. In the Navigation Mode screen, point to View & Use and click My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Specify Folder or Recently Saved Images.

Click My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) to open images saved in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), click Specify Folder to open images saved in a specific folder, or click Recently Saved Images to open recently saved images.

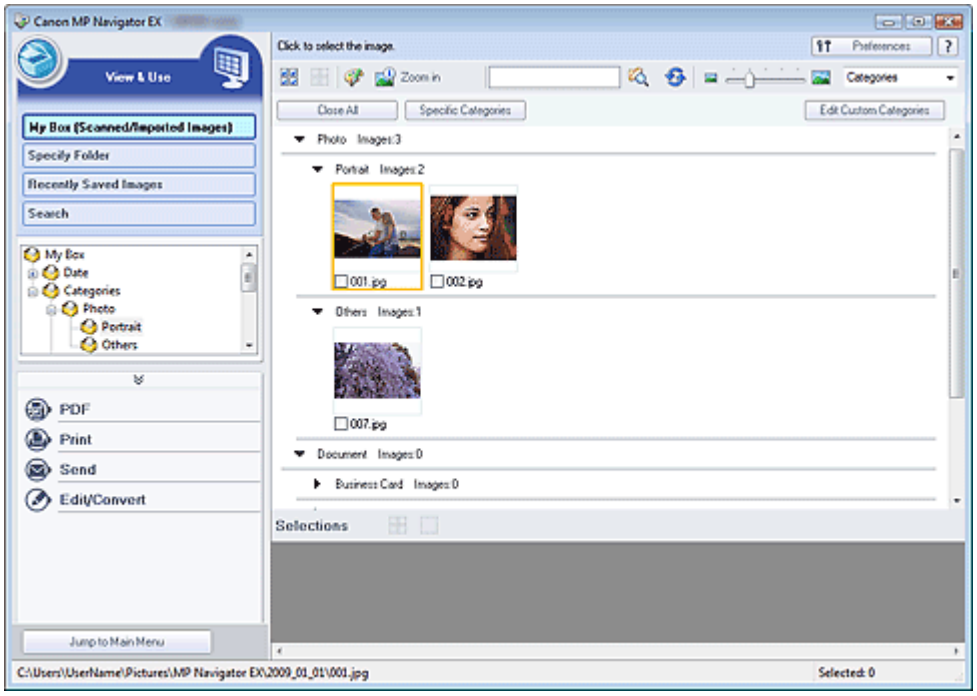


Note

- If the Show this window at startup checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears. If the Scan/Import window is displayed, click (View & Use) on the upper left of the screen. The View & Use window opens.
- See "View & Use Images on your Computer Tab " for details on the View & Use Images on your Computer tab.

3. Click the folder containing the images you want to open.

Images saved in the folder appear in the Thumbnail window.



4. Select the images you want to use, then select what you want to do with them.

See the corresponding sections below for details on using images.

- Creating/Editing PDF Files
- Printing Documents
- Printing Photos
- Sending via E-mail
- Editing Files

Page top

Scanarea cu alt software de aplicaţie

- Ce este ScanGear (driver de scaner)?
- Scanarea cu Setări avansate, utilizând ScanGear (driver de scaner)
- Corectarea imaginilor şi ajustarea culorilor cu ScanGear (driver de scaner)
- Ecrane ScanGear (driver de scaner)
- Anexă: Informaţii utile referitoare la scanare

În partea superioară a paginii

What Is ScanGear (Scanner Driver)?

ScanGear (scanner driver) is software required for scanning documents. It enables you to specify the output size and make image corrections when scanning.

ScanGear (scanner driver) can be started from MP Navigator EX or from other applications that are compatible with a standard interface called TWAIN. (ScanGear (scanner driver) is a TWAIN-compatible driver.)

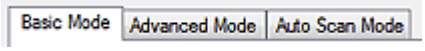
What You Can Do with This Software

This software enables you to preview scan results or set document type and output size, etc. when scanning documents. It is useful when you want to scan in a specific color tone, as it allows you to make various corrections and adjust brightness, contrast, etc.

Screens

There are three modes: Basic Mode, Advanced Mode and Auto Scan Mode.

Switch modes by clicking a tab on the upper right of the screen.

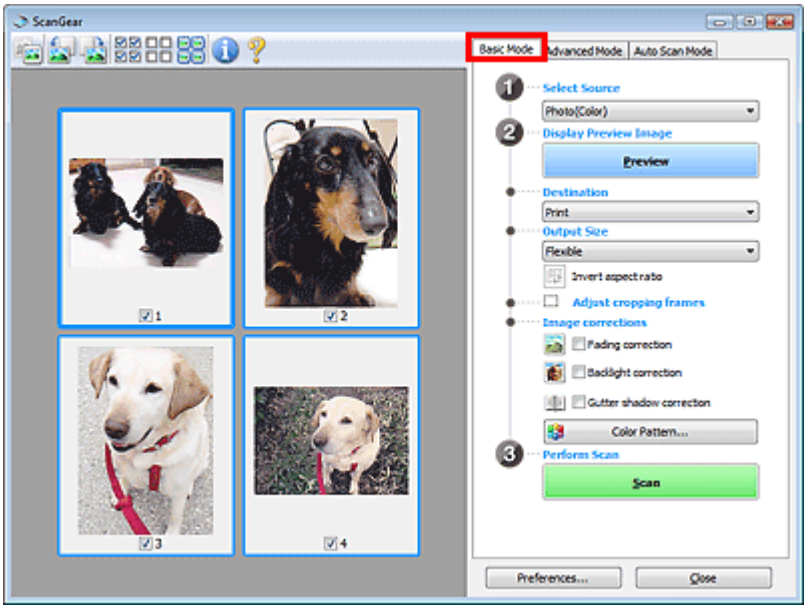


Note

- ScanGear (scanner driver) starts in the last used mode.
- Settings are not retained when you switch between modes.

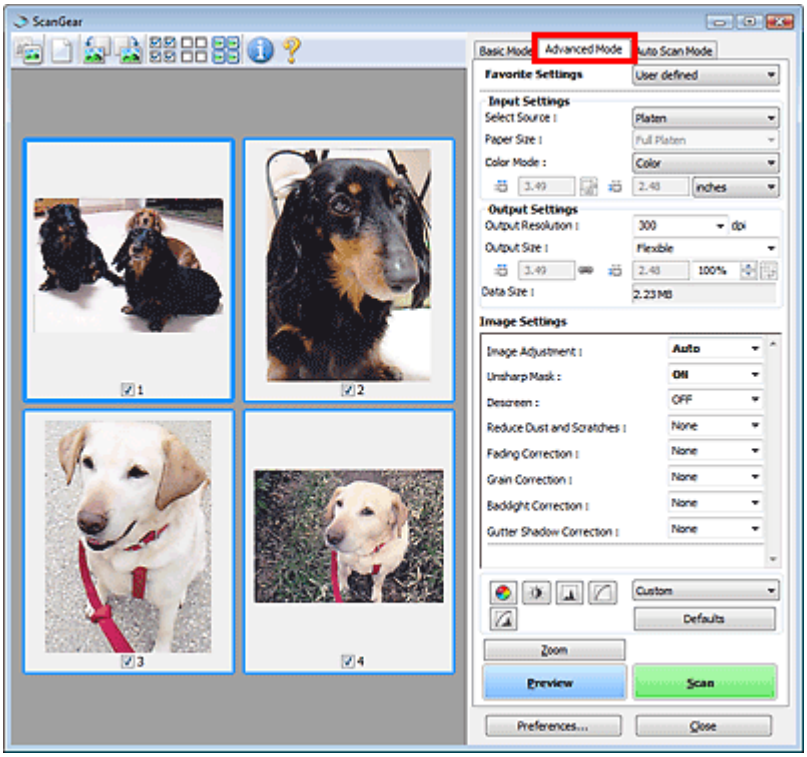
Basic Mode

Use Basic Mode to scan easily by following three simple on-screen steps (1 , 2 and 3).



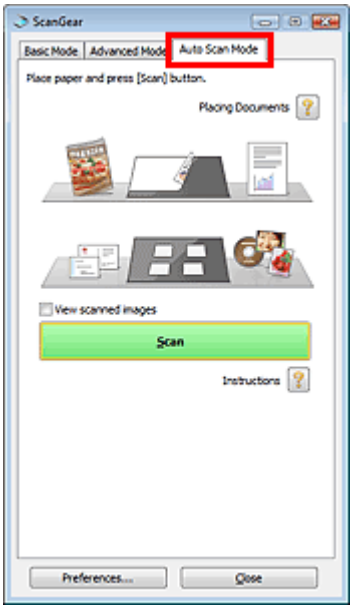
Advanced Mode

Use Advanced Mode to specify color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, etc. when scanning.



Auto Scan Mode

Use Auto Scan Mode to scan easily by simply placing the document on the Platen and clicking Scan.



Page top

Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

- **Starting ScanGear (scanner driver)**
  - Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)
- **Scanning documents after making simple image corrections**
  - Scanning in Basic Mode
- **Scanning documents after making advanced image corrections and brightness/color adjustments**
  - Scanning in Advanced Mode
- **Scanning with a simple operation**
  - Scanning in Auto Scan Mode
- **Scanning multiple documents at one time after making image corrections and color adjustments**
  - Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Page top

Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Use ScanGear (scanner driver) to make image corrections and color adjustments when scanning. ScanGear (scanner driver) can be started from MP Navigator EX or an application.

Starting from MP Navigator EX

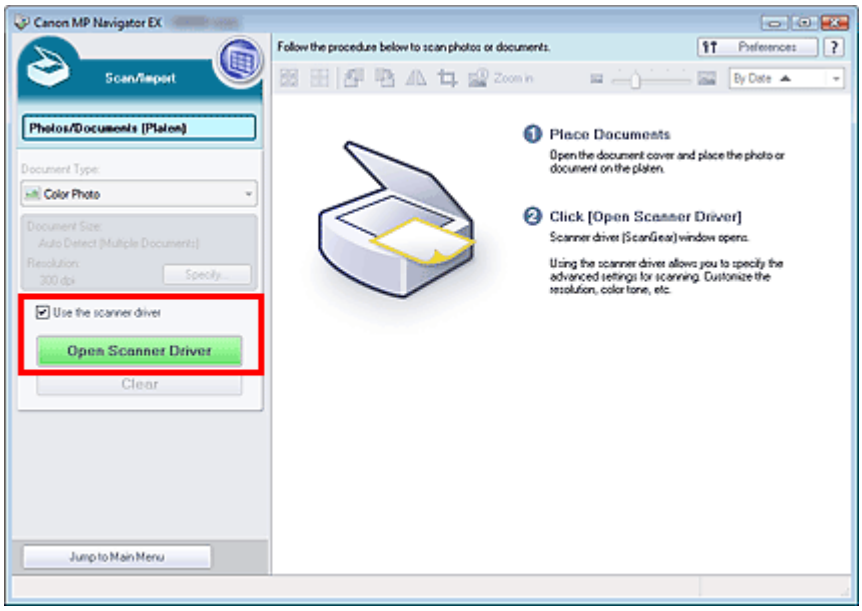
Navigation Mode Screen

Follow these steps to start ScanGear (scanner driver) from the Navigation Mode screen of MP Navigator EX.

1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.
   ➡ Starting MP Navigator EX

2. Point to Scan/Import and click Photos/Documents (Platen).
   The Scan/Import window opens.

3. Select the Use the scanner driver checkbox, then click Open Scanner Driver.



   The ScanGear (scanner driver) screen appears.

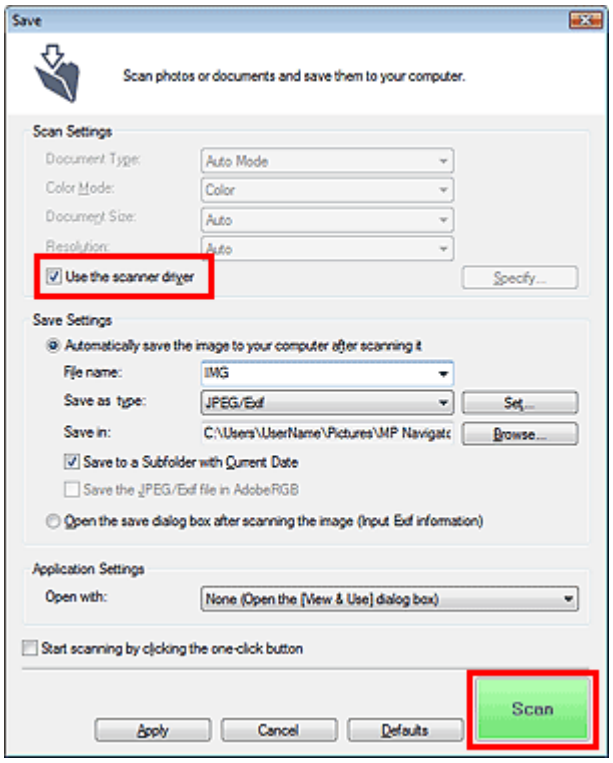
One-click Mode Screen

Follow these steps to start ScanGear (scanner driver) from the One-click Mode screen of MP Navigator EX.

1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the One-click Mode screen.
   ➡ Starting MP Navigator EX

2. Click the corresponding icon.
   The corresponding dialog box opens.

3. Select the Use the scanner driver checkbox in Scan Settings, then click Scan.



The ScanGear (scanner driver) screen appears.

Important

- Use the scanner driver is not displayed in the PDF dialog box or Auto Scan dialog box.

Starting from an Application

Follow these steps (example) to start ScanGear (scanner driver) from an application.

The procedure varies depending on the application. For details, refer to the application's manual.

1. Start the application.

2. On the File menu of the application, select Select Source and select the machine.

3. Select the command to scan a document (Scan/Import, Acquire image, etc.).

   The ScanGear (scanner driver) screen appears.

Page top

ScanGear

Scanning in Basic Mode

In Basic Mode, you can scan easily by following the on-screen steps.

This section explains how to scan a single document.

See "Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) " to scan multiple documents at one time.

Important

- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, click (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to switch to whole image view and scan.
  - Photos that have a whitish border
  - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
  - Thin documents
  - Thick documents
- The following types of documents cannot be cropped correctly.
  - Documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square
  - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

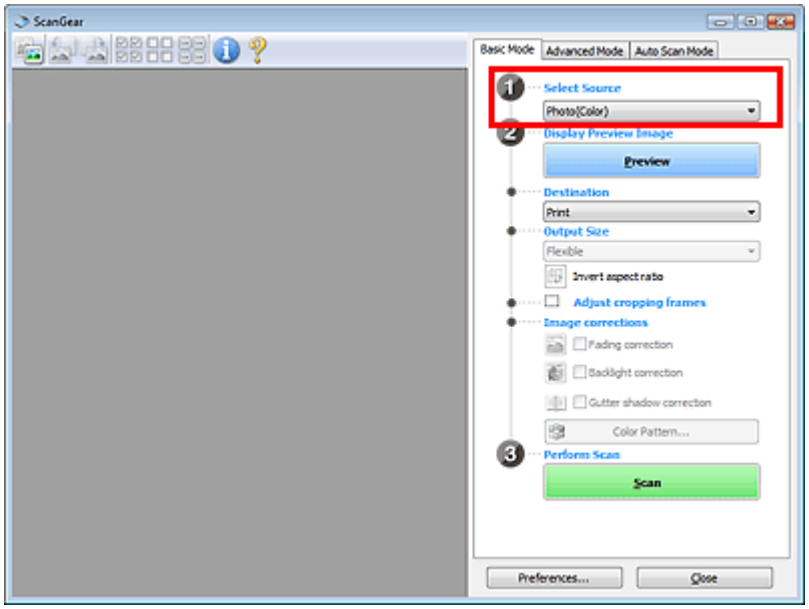
1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Important

- Place the document face-down on the Platen and align an upper corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

2. Set Select Source according to the document placed on the Platen.

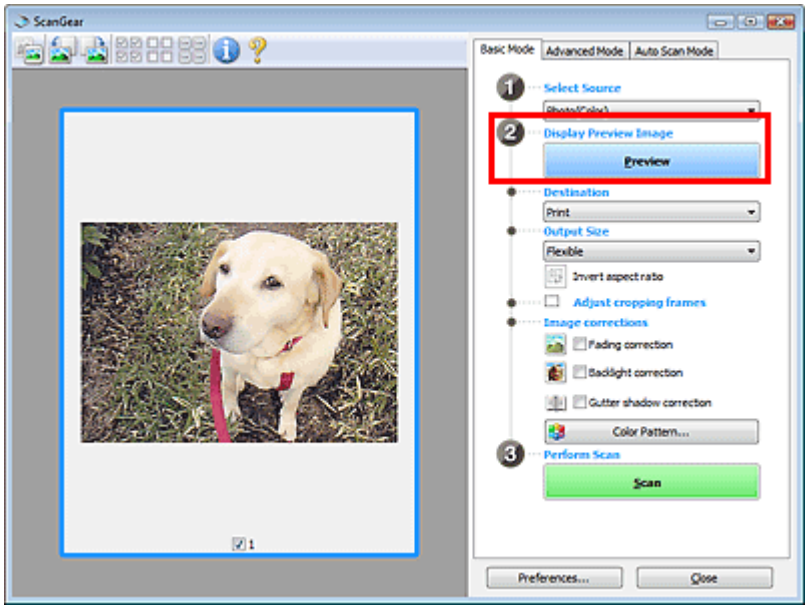


Note

- To scan magazines containing many color photos, select Magazine(Color).

3. Click Preview.

Preview image appears in the Preview area.



Note

- Colors are adjusted based on the document type selected in Select Source.

4. Set Destination.

5. Set Output Size.

Output size options vary by the items selected in Select Source and Destination.

6. Adjust the scan area (cropping frame) as required.

Adjust the size and position of the cropping frame (scan area) on the preview image.

➡ Adjusting Cropping Frames

7. Set Image corrections as required.

8. Click Scan.

Scanning starts.

Note

- Click (Information) to open a dialog box in which you can check the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  ➡ Scan Tab

Related Topic

▶ Basic Mode Tab

ScanGear

Scanning in Advanced Mode

In Advanced Mode, you can specify the color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, etc. when scanning.

This section explains how to scan a single document.

See "Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) " to scan multiple documents at one time.

Important

- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, click (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to switch to whole image view and scan.
  - Photos that have a whitish border
  - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
  - Thin documents
  - Thick documents
- The following types of documents cannot be cropped correctly.
  - Documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square
  - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

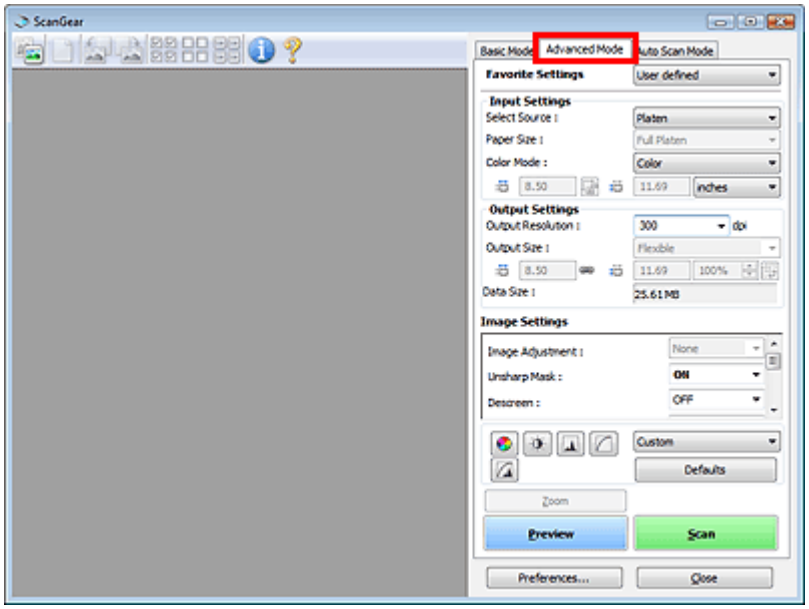
Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

Important

- Place the document face-down on the Platen and align an upper corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

2. Click Advanced Mode.

The Advanced Mode tab appears.



Note

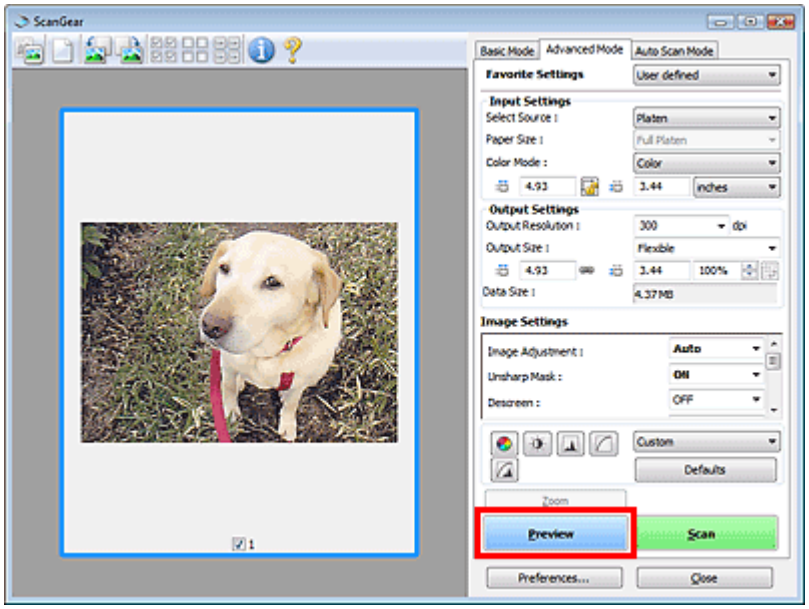
- Settings are not retained when you switch between modes.

3. Set Color Mode.

➡ Input Settings

4. Click Preview.

Preview image appears in the Preview area.



Note

- If you scan without preview, the show-through reduction function will be active. This function is useful when scanning magazines. However, when scanning photos, the color tone of the scanned image may differ from the source due to the show-through reduction function. In that case, use preview first.

5. Set Output Settings.

➡ Output Settings

6. Adjust the cropping frame (scan area), correct image and adjust colors as required.

➡ Adjusting Cropping Frames
➡ Image Settings
➡ Color Adjustment Buttons

7. Click Scan.

Scanning starts.

Note

- Click (Information) to open a dialog box in which you can check the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  ➡ Scan Tab

Related Topic

▶ Advanced Mode Tab

Page top

Scanning in Auto Scan Mode

You can scan easily in Auto Scan Mode of ScanGear (scanner driver) by letting it automatically determine the type of document placed on the Platen.

Note

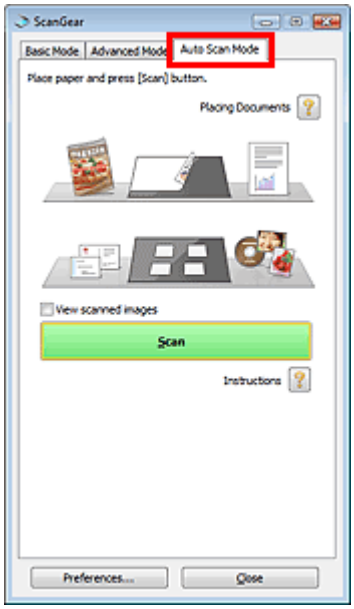
- Supported document types are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and CD/DVD. To scan other documents, specify the document type on the Basic Mode tab or the Advanced Mode tab.
  - Scanning in Basic Mode
  - Scanning in Advanced Mode

1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

- Placing Documents
- Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

2. Click Auto Scan Mode.

The Auto Scan Mode tab appears.



3. Click Scan.

Scanning starts.

Note

- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  - Scan Tab

Related Topic

- Auto Scan Mode Tab

Page top

Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

You can scan two or more photos (small documents) on the Platen at one time in Basic Mode and Advanced Mode of ScanGear (scanner driver).

This section explains how to scan multiple documents from the Basic Mode tab.

Important

- To scan multiple documents as a single image, scan in whole image view.
- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) in whole image view and scan.
  - Photos that have a whitish border
  - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
  - Thin documents
  - Thick documents

  ➡ Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View
- The following types of documents cannot be cropped correctly.
  - Documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square
  - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

Note

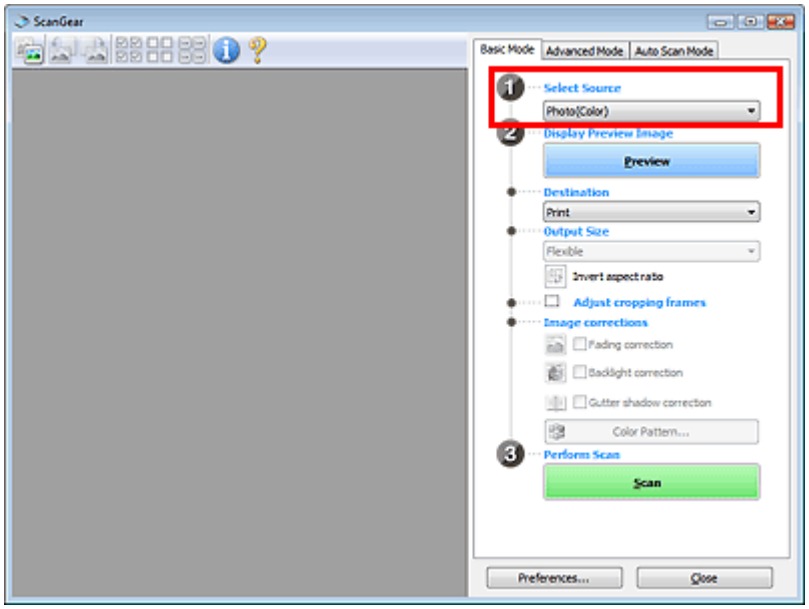
- See "Scanning in Auto Scan Mode " to scan easily by automatically detecting the document type.
- You can also scan multiple documents at one time from the Advanced Mode tab. Use the Advanced Mode tab to make advanced scan settings such as the color mode, output resolution, image brightness and color tone.
- See the corresponding sections below for details on the Basic Mode tab and Advanced Mode tab.

  ➡ Basic Mode Tab
  ➡ Advanced Mode Tab

1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

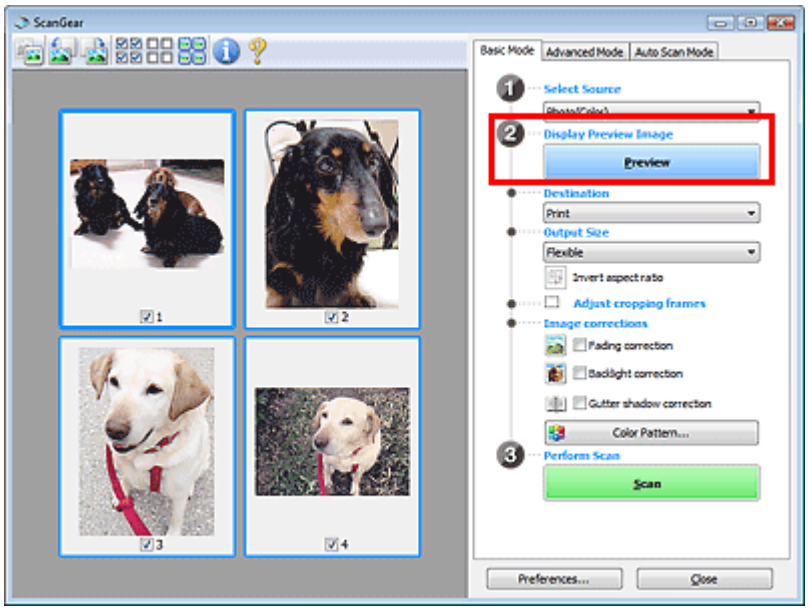
➡ Placing Documents
➡ Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

2. Set Select Source according to the document placed on the Platen.



3. Click Preview.

Thumbnails of the preview images appear in the Preview area. Images are cropped (scan areas are specified) automatically according to the document size.



4. Set Destination.

5. Set Output Size.

6. Adjust the scan areas (cropping frames) and set Image corrections as required.

Note

- You can correct each image separately. Select the frame you want to correct.
- In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame (scan area) per image.
  To create multiple cropping frames in an image, scan in whole image view.
  ➡ Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View

7. Select the images you want to scan.

Select the checkboxes of the images you want to scan.

8. Click Scan.

Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View

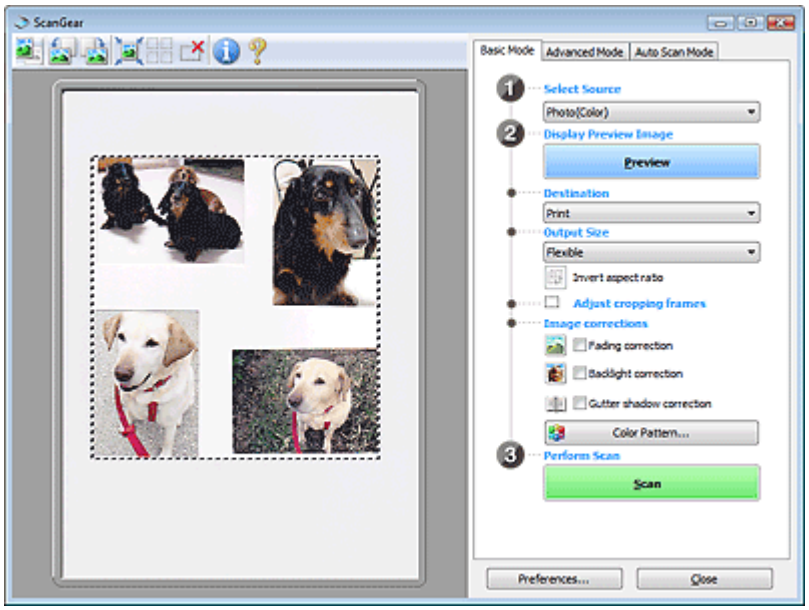
Follow these steps if thumbnails are not displayed correctly when previewed or if you want to scan multiple documents as a single image.

Note

- Positions of slanted documents are not corrected in whole image view.

1. After previewing images, click (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar.

Switch to whole image view.



Note

- When the whole image is displayed, the icon changes to (Whole Image).

2. Adjust the scan areas (cropping frames).

Adjust the size and position of the cropping frame (scan area) on the preview image. You can also create two or more cropping frames.

If an area is not specified, the document will be scanned at the document size (Auto Crop). If an area is specified, only the portion in the specified area will be scanned.

➡ Adjusting Cropping Frames

3. Set Destination.

4. Set Output Size.

5. Set Image corrections as required.

6. Click Scan.

Areas framed by broken lines are scanned.

Note

- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.
  Scan Tab

Page top

Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

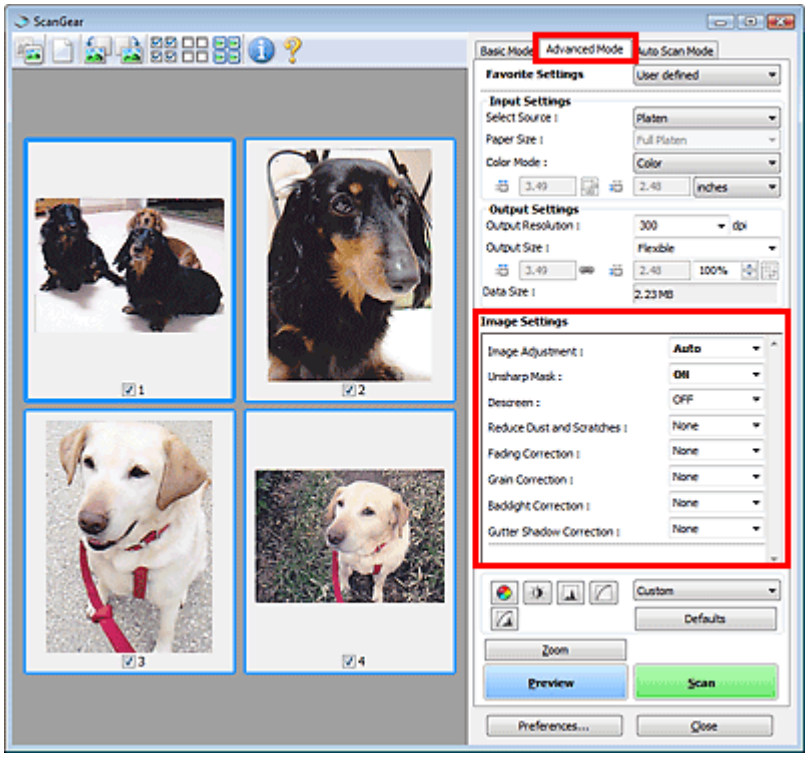
The following sections provide you with tips and know-how on advanced scanning techniques involving color/brightness adjustment, etc.

- **Sharpening out-of-focus photos, reducing dust and scratches, and correcting faded colors**
  - Correcting Images (Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.)
- **Previewing and changing the color tone of the entire image to scan**
  - Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern
- **Brightening colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast**
  - Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance
- **Adjusting images that are too dark or bright, or too flat due to lack of contrast**
  - Adjusting Brightness and Contrast
- **Adjusting the color tone using histogram (a graph showing brightness distribution)**
  - Adjusting Histogram
- **Adjusting the image brightness using tone curve (a graph of brightness balance)**
  - Adjusting Tone Curve
- **Sharpening characters in text documents or reducing show-through effects**
  - Setting Threshold

Page top

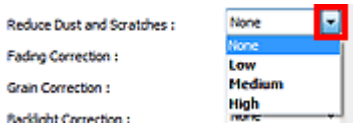
Correcting Images (Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.)

The Image Settings functions in Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver) allow you to enhance the outline of the subjects, reduce dust/scratches and correct faded colors when scanning images.



Setting Items

Click (Arrow) of a function and select an item from the pull-down menu.



Important

- Do not apply these functions to images without moire, dust/scratches or faded colors. The color tone may be adversely affected.
- See "Image Settings" for details and precautions on each function.

Note

- See "Scanning in Advanced Mode" to start ScanGear (scanner driver) in Advanced Mode tab and scan.

Adjusting the image brightness and color tone

Set Image Adjustment to Auto, Photo, Magazine, Newspaper or Document according to the document type.

None	Auto

Sharpening slightly out-of-focus images

Set Unsharp Mask to ON.

OFF	ON

Reducing gradations and stripe patterns

Set Descreen to ON.

OFF	ON

Note

- "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Reducing dust and scratches

Set Reduce Dust and Scratches to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of dust and scratches.

None	Medium

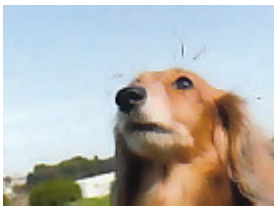
Correcting photos that have faded with time or due to colorcast

Set Fading Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of fading or colorcast.

None	Medium

Reducing graininess

Set Grain Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of graininess.

None	Medium
	

Correcting backlit images

Set Backlight Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of backlight.

None	Medium

Correcting shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets

Set Gutter Shadow Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of shadows.

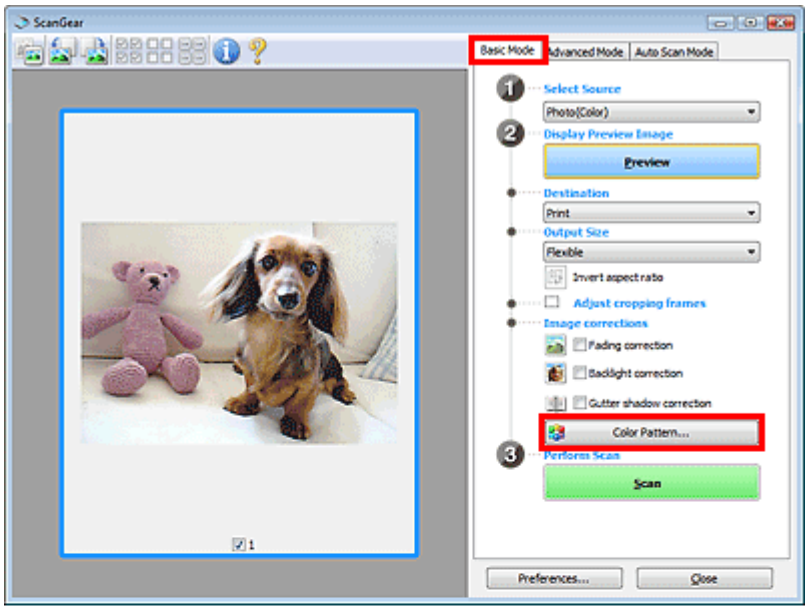
None	Medium

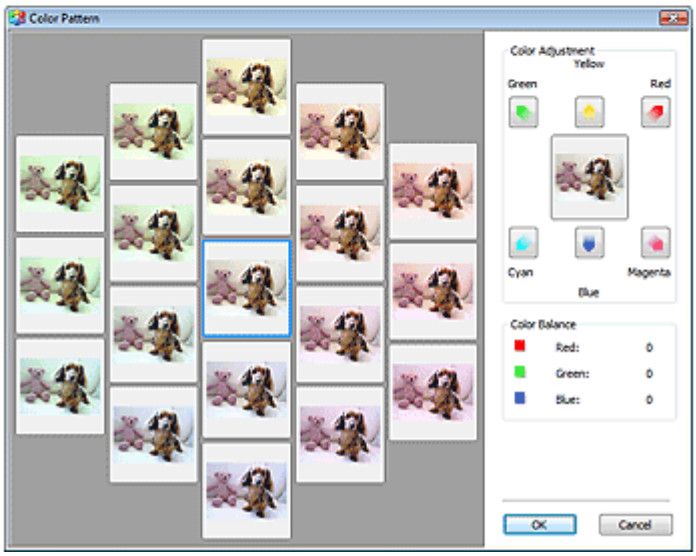
Page top

ScanGear

Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern

You can preview color changes and reproduce natural colors by using the Color Pattern function in ScanGear's Basic Mode tab.





Color Adjustment

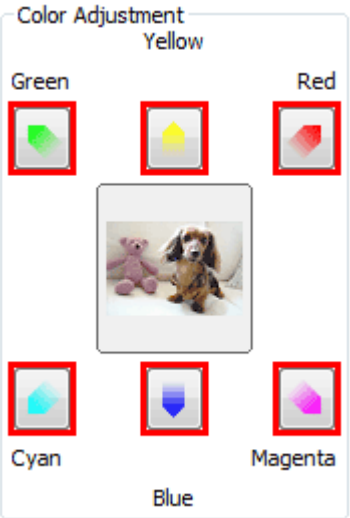
Correct colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast. Colorcast is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

Click an arrow in Color Adjustment to emphasize the corresponding color.

Cyan & red, magenta & green and yellow & blue are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color.

It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust the colors so that the portion turns white.

Preview image appears in the center. Preview image colors change as you adjust them.



Below is an example of correcting a bluish image.

Since Blue and Green are too strong, click the Yellow and Magenta arrows to correct.

Before	After

Note

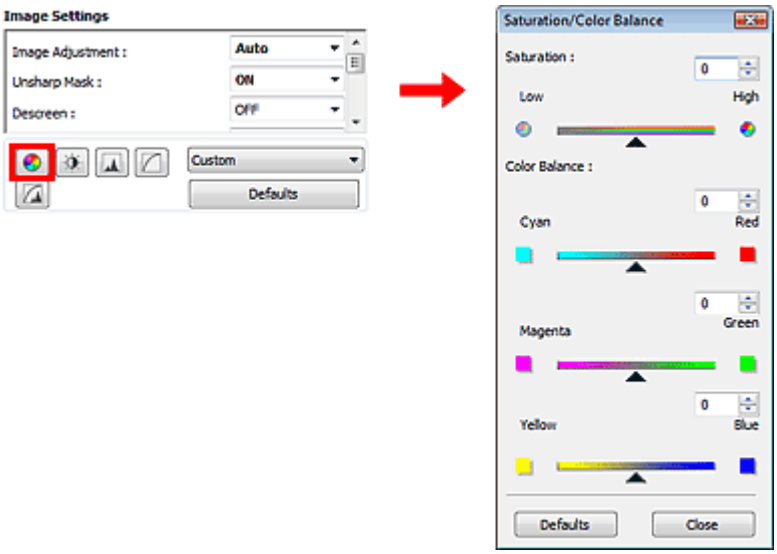
- Color adjustments are applied only to the scan area (cropping frame) or the frame selected in thumbnail view.
  You can select multiple frames or cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.
- You can also select a color tone from the color pattern displayed on the left of the Color Pattern screen.
- You can also use this function to add a specific tint to an image. Increase the magenta to add a warm tint, and increase the blue to add a cool tint.

Page top

ScanGear

Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance

In ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab, click (Saturation/Color Balance).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Saturation

Adjust the image's saturation (vividness). You can brighten colors that have faded with time, etc.

Move ▲ (slider) under Saturation to the left to decrease the saturation (darken the image), and to the right to increase the saturation (brighten the image). You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

Saturation decreased	Original image	Saturation increased

Note

- The natural color tone of the original image may be lost if you increase saturation too much.

Color Balance

Adjust images that have a colorcast. Colorcast is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

Move ▲ (slider) under Color Balance to the left or right to emphasize the corresponding color.

Cyan & Red

Magenta & Green

Yellow & Blue

These are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color.

It is usually difficult to correct the image completely by adjusting only one color pair. It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust all three color pairs so that the portion turns white.

You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

Below is an example of an image in which the "Cyan & Red" pair has been adjusted.

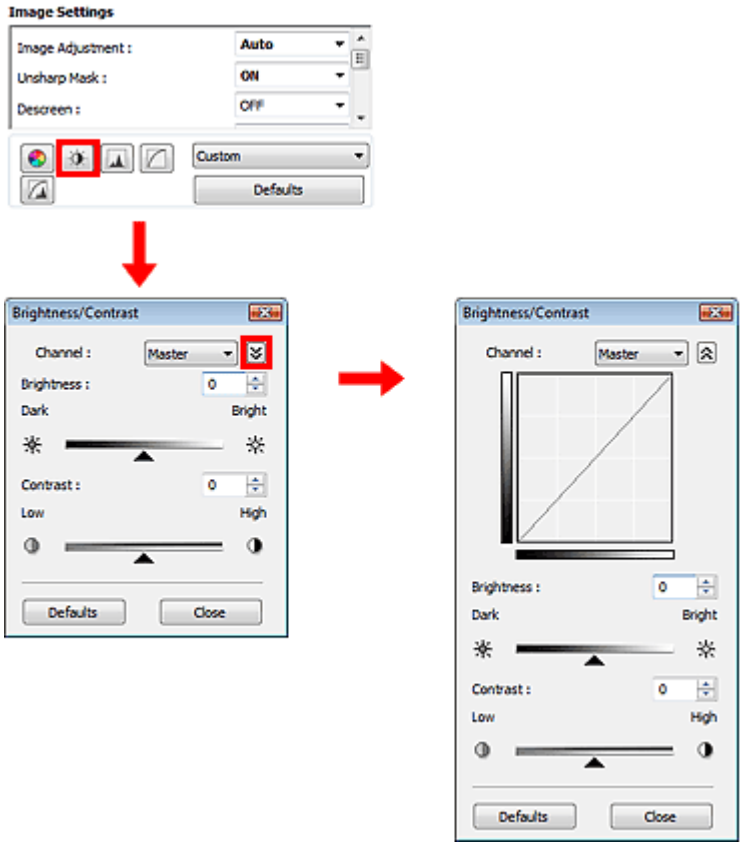
Cyan is increased	Red is increased

Page top

ScanGear

Adjusting Brightness and Contrast

In ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab, click (Brightness/Contrast).



Note

- Click (Down arrow) to switch to detailed view. Click (Up arrow) to return to the previous view.
- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- **Master**

  Adjust the Red, Green and Blue combined.

- **Red**

  Adjust the Red channel.

- **Green**

  Adjust the Green channel.

- **Blue**

  Adjust the Blue channel.

Note

- Only Grayscale will be displayed in Channel when Color Mode is Grayscale.

Brightness

Adjust the image brightness. Move ▲ (slider) under Brightness to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

Darkened	Original image	Brightened

Note

- Highlights may be lost if you brighten the image too much, and shadows may be lost if you darken the image too much.

Contrast

"Contrast" is the degree of difference between the brighter and darker parts of an image. Increasing contrast will increase the difference, thus sharpening the image. Decreasing contrast will decrease the difference, thus softening the image.

Move ▲ (slider) under Contrast to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

Decreased contrast	Original image	Increased contrast

Note

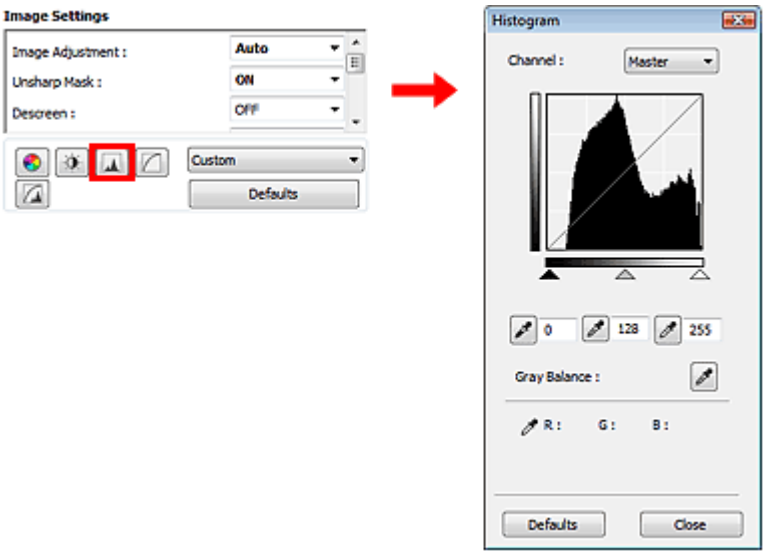
- Increasing the contrast is effective in adding a three-dimensional feel to soft images. However, shadows and highlights may be lost if you increase the contrast too much.

Page top

ScanGear

Adjusting Histogram

In ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab, click (Histogram).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- **Master**

  Adjust the Red, Green and Blue combined.

- **Red**

  Adjust the Red channel.

- **Green**

  Adjust the Green channel.

- **Blue**

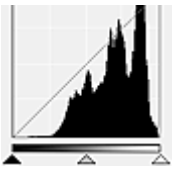
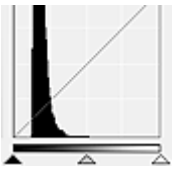
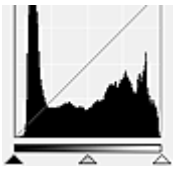
  Adjust the Blue channel.

Note

- Only Grayscale will be displayed in Channel when Color Mode is Grayscale.

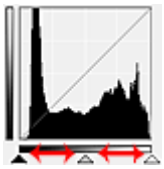
Reading Histograms

You can open Histogram of a specified area for each Channel. The higher the Histogram peak, the more data is distributed to that level.

(1) Bright area	(2) Dark area	(3) Whole image
		
More data is distributed to the highlight side.	More data is distributed to the shadow side.	Data is widely distributed between the highlight and shadow.

Adjusting Histograms (Using the Slider)

Select a Channel, then move ▲ (Black-point Slider) or △ (White-point Slider) to specify the level to be set as the shadow or highlight.



- All parts to the left of ▲ (Black-point Slider) will be black (level 0).
- The parts at △ (Mid-point Slider) will turn to the color exactly between the black-point and white-point.
- All parts to the right of △ (White-point Slider) will turn white (level 255).

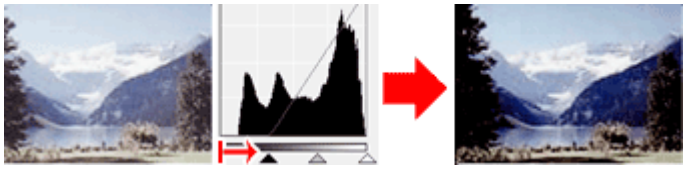
Image Adjustment is Auto by default. Adjustments shown below are automatically performed.

Moving the Black-point and White-point Sliders

Move the Black-point Slider or White-point Slider to adjust brightness.

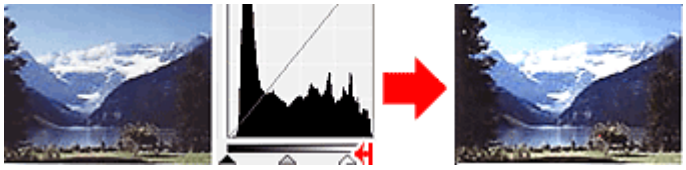
Images with more data distributed to the highlight side

Move the Black-point Slider toward the highlight side.



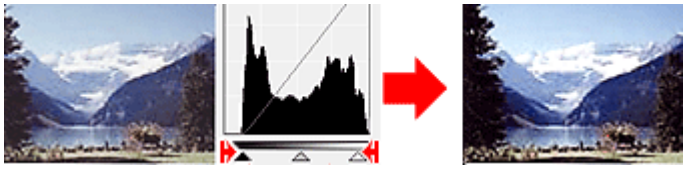
Images with more data distributed to the shadow side

Move the White-point Slider toward the shadow side.



Images with widely distributed data

Move the Black-point Slider toward the highlight side, and White-point Slider toward the shadow side.

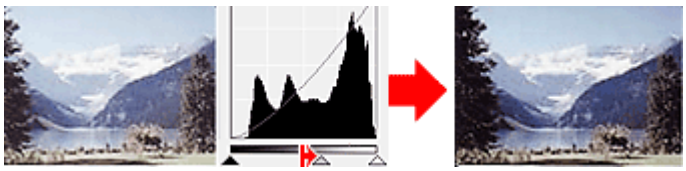


Moving the Mid-point Slider

Move the Mid-point Slider to specify the level to be set as the middle of the tonal range.

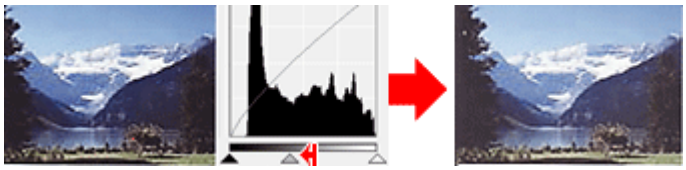
Images with more data distributed to the highlight side

Move the Mid-point Slider toward the highlight side.



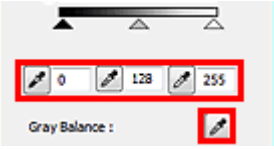
Images with more data distributed to the shadow side

Move the Mid-point Slider toward the shadow side.



Adjusting Histograms (Using the Droppers)

When you select a Channel and click the Black-point, Mid-point or White-point Dropper, the mouse pointer on the preview image changes to a dropper. Click a Dropper displayed below the histogram to change the setting.



- The point clicked with (Black-point Dropper) will be the darkest point. You can also enter a value (0 to 245).

- The point clicked with (Mid-point Dropper) will be the middle of the tonal range. You can also enter a value (5 to 250).

- The point clicked with (White-point Dropper) will be the brightest point. You can also enter a value (10 to 255).

- Click (Dropper) for Gray Balance and click the area you want to adjust the color in the preview image.

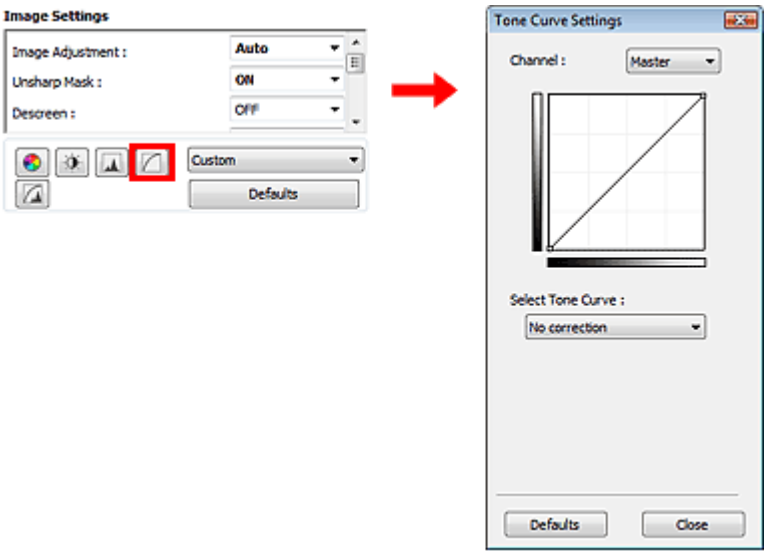
The clicked point will be set as the achromatic color reference, and the rest of the image is adjusted accordingly. For instance, if snow in a photo appears bluish, click the bluish part to adjust the whole image and reproduce natural colors.

Page top

ScanGear

Adjusting Tone Curve

In ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab, click (Tone Curve Settings).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- **Master**

  Adjust the Red, Green and Blue combined.

- **Red**

  Adjust the Red channel.

- **Green**

  Adjust the Green channel.

- **Blue**

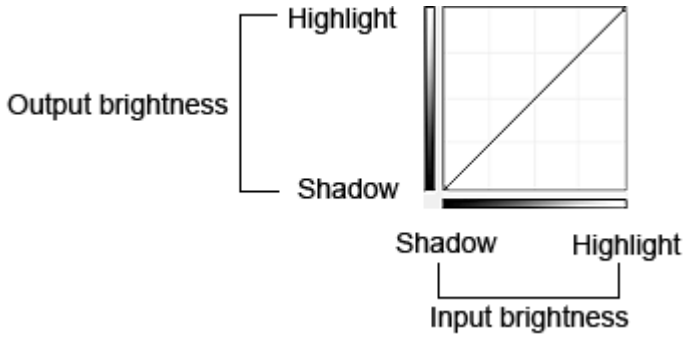
  Adjust the Blue channel.

Note

- Only Grayscale will be displayed in Channel when Color Mode is Grayscale.

Reading Tone Curves

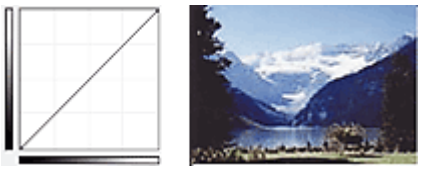
With ScanGear (scanner driver), scanning images via a scanner is the input, and displaying to a monitor is the output. "Tone Curve" shows the balance of tone input and output for each Channel.



Adjusting Tone Curve

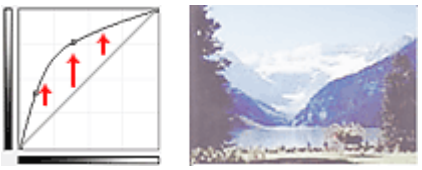
In Select Tone Curve, select a tone curve from No correction, Overexposure, Underexposure, High contrast, Reverse the negative/positive image and Edit custom curve.

No correction (No adjustment)



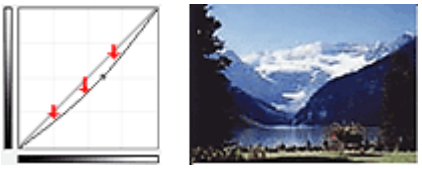
Overexposure (Convex curve)

The midtone data of the input side is stretched toward the highlight of the output side, resulting in a bright-toned image when viewed on a monitor.



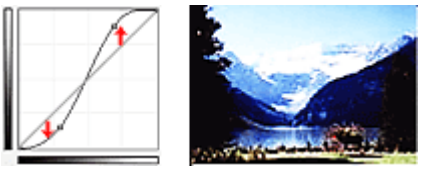
Underexposure (Concave curve)

The midtone data of the input side is stretched toward the shadow of the output side, resulting in a dark-toned image when viewed on a monitor.



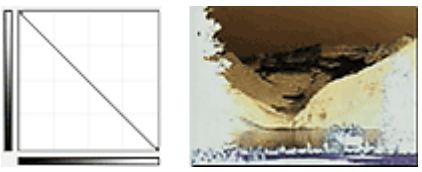
High contrast (S curve)

The highlight and shadow of the input side are enhanced, resulting in a high-contrast image.



Reverse the negative/positive image (Downward-sloping line)

The input and output sides are reversed, resulting in a negative-positive inverted image.



Edit custom curve

You can drag specific points on the Tone Curve to freely adjust the brightness of the corresponding areas.

Page top

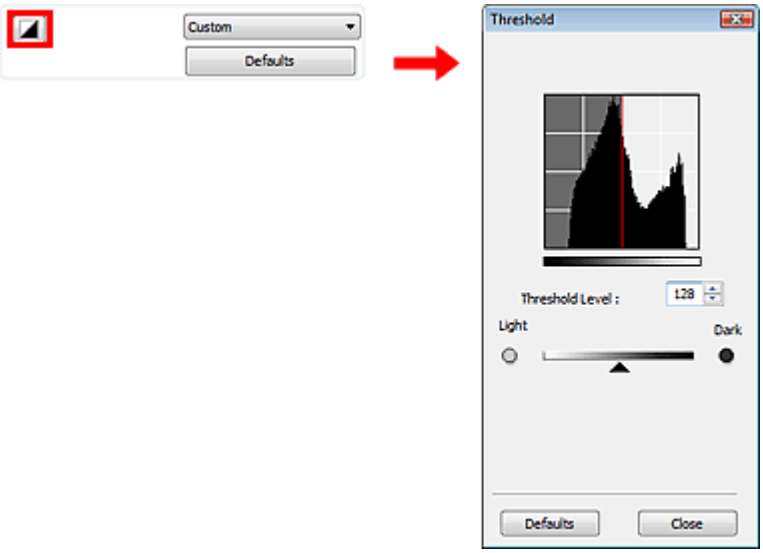
ScanGear

Setting Threshold

The brightness of color and grayscale images is expressed in a value between 0 and 255. However, in creating black and white images, all colors are mapped to either black (0) or white (255). "Threshold" is the borderline value that determines a color as black or white. By adjusting the threshold level, you can sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

This function is available when Color Mode is Black and White.

In ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab, click (Threshold).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Adjusting Threshold

Move (slider) to the right to increase the threshold value and thus increase the black areas. Move the slider to the left to decrease the value and thus increase the white areas. You can also enter a value (0 to 255).

Page top

ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens

The following sections describe ScanGear's screens and functions, and how to use ScanGear (scanner driver).

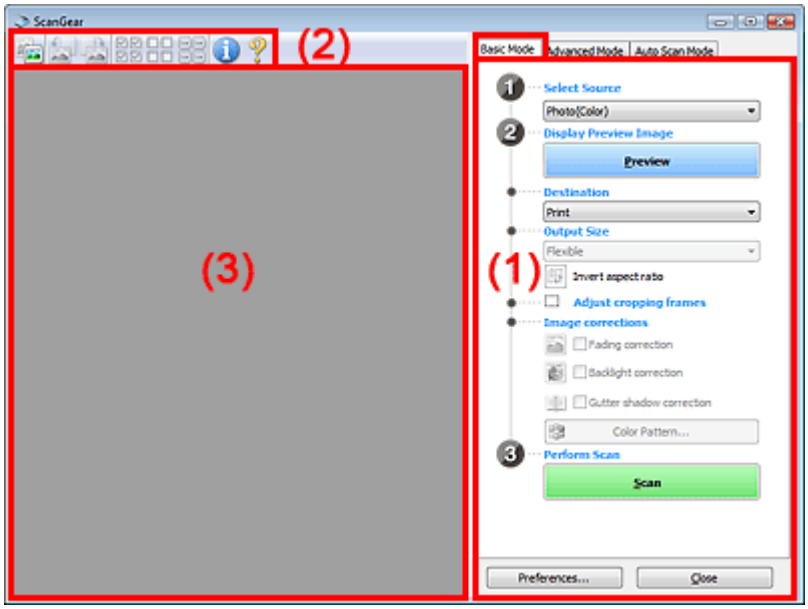
- Basic Mode Tab
- Advanced Mode Tab
  - Input Settings
  - Output Settings
  - Image Settings
  - Color Adjustment Buttons
- Auto Scan Mode Tab
- Preferences Dialog Box
  - Scanner Tab
  - Preview Tab
  - Scan Tab
  - Color Settings Tab

Page top

Basic Mode Tab

This mode allows you to scan easily by following the on-screen steps.

This section describes the settings and functions available in Basic Mode.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Preview Area

Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and how the screen was opened.

Settings and Operation Buttons

- **Select Source**
  - **Photo(Color)**

    Scan color photos.
  - **Magazine(Color)**

    Scan color magazines.
  - **Newspaper(Grayscale)**

    Scan text and line drawings in black and white.
  - **Document(Grayscale)**

    Scan documents and photos in black and white.
    Select this mode to create high-resolution black and white images.

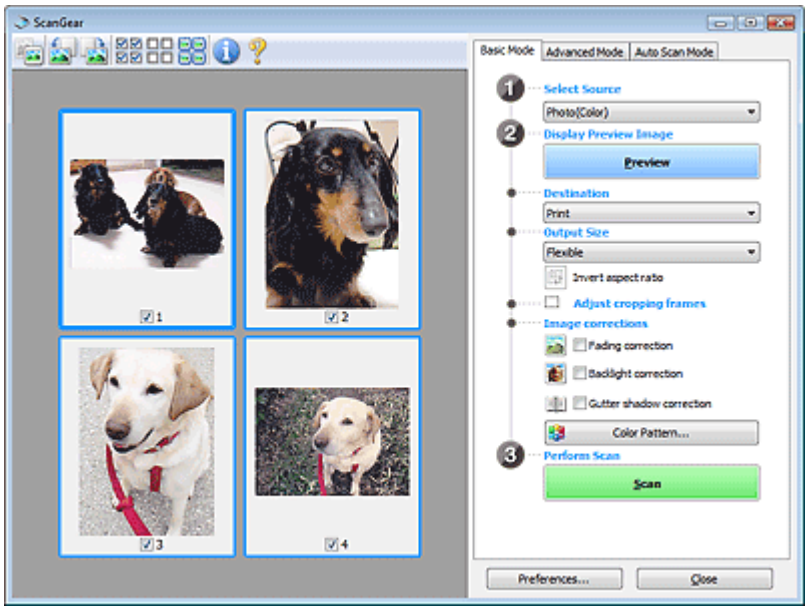
  ## Note

  - When you select a document type, colors are adjusted based on the Unsharp Mask function or document type.
  - If you select Magazine(Color), the Descreen function will be active.

- **Display Preview Image**

- **Preview**

  Performs a trial scan.



Note

- When using the machine for the first time, scanner calibration starts automatically. Wait a while until the preview image appears.

- **Destination**

  Select what you want to do with the scanned image.

  - **Print**

    Select this to print the scanned image on a printer.

  - **Image display**

    Select this to view the scanned image on a monitor.

  - **OCR**

    Select this to use the scanned image with OCR software.
    OCR software is software that converts text scanned as an image into text data that can be edited in word processors and other programs.

- **Output Size**

  Select an output size.
  Output size options vary by the item selected in Destination.

  - **Flexible**

    Allows you to freely adjust the cropping frames.

    ### In thumbnail view

    Drag the mouse over a thumbnail to display a cropping frame. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. When no cropping frame is displayed, each frame is scanned individually.

    ### In whole image view

    When no cropping frame is displayed, the entire Preview area will be scanned. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned.

  - **Paper Size (L, A4, etc.)**

    Select an output paper size. The portion within the cropping frame will be scanned at the size of the selected paper size. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge/reduce it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

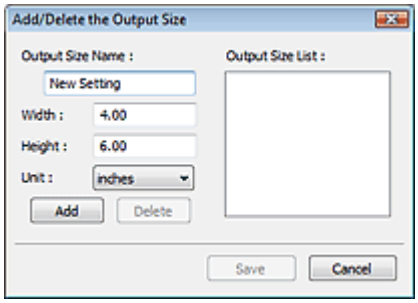
  - **Monitor Size (1024 x 768 pixels, etc.)**

    Select an output size in pixels.

A cropping frame of the selected monitor size will be displayed and the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge/reduce it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

- **Add/Delete...**

  Opens the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, in which you can specify custom output sizes. You can select this option when Destination is Print or Image display.



In the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, you can specify multiple output sizes and save them at one time. Saved items will be registered to the Output Size list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

Add

To add a size, enter Output Size Name, Width and Height, then click Add. For Unit, you can select mm or inches when Destination is Print but you can only select pixels when Destination is Image display. The name of the added size appears in Output Size List. Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Delete

To delete an item, select it in Output Size List and click Delete. Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Important

- You cannot delete predefined output sizes such as A4 and 1024 x 768 pixels.

Note

- Save up to 10 items.
- An error message appears when you enter a value outside the setting range. Enter a value within the setting range.

Note

- Whether or how the cropping frame is initially displayed on a preview image can be specified on the Preview tab of the Preferences dialog box. See Cropping Frame on Previewed Images in "Preview Tab."

- **Invert aspect ratio**

  This button is available when Output Size is set to anything but Flexible.
  Click this button to rotate the cropping frame. Click again to return it to the original orientation.

- **Adjust cropping frames**

  You can adjust the scan area within the Preview area.
  If an area is not specified, the document will be scanned at the document size (Auto Crop). If an area is specified, only the portion in the cropping frame will be scanned.
  ➡ Adjusting Cropping Frames

- **Image corrections**
  - **Fading correction**

    Corrects and scans photos that have faded with time or have a colorcast.
  - **Backlight correction**

    Corrects photos that have been shot against light.
  - **Gutter shadow correction**

    Corrects shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

    Important

    - For precautions on using this function, see Gutter Shadow Correction in " Image Settings " (Advanced Mode tab).
- **Color Pattern...**

  Allows you to adjust the image's overall color. You can correct colors that have faded due to colorcast, etc. and reproduce natural colors while previewing color changes.
  Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern
- **Perform Scan**
  - **Scan**

    Scanning starts.

    Note

    - When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click Cancel to cancel the scan.
- **Preferences...**

  The Preferences dialog box opens and you can make scan/preview settings.
  Preferences Dialog Box
- **Close**

  Closes ScanGear (scanner driver).

Toolbar

- **Toolbar**

  You can adjust or rotate preview images. The buttons displayed on the Toolbar vary by view.

  In thumbnail view

  In whole image view

- **(Thumbnail)/ (Whole image view)**

  Switches the view in the Preview area.
  Preview Area

- **(Rotate Left)**

  Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
  - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
  - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

- **(Rotate Right)**

  Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.
  - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
  - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

- **(Auto Crop)**

  Displays and adjusts the cropping frame automatically to the size of the document displayed in the Preview area. The scan area is reduced every time you click this button if there are cropping area within the cropping frame.

- **(Check All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Selects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.

- **(Uncheck All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Deselects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.

- **(Select All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Selects the image in thumbnail view and the image will be outlined in blue.

- **(Select All Cropping Frames)**

  This button is available when there are two or more cropping frames.
  All cropping frames will be displayed in thick broken lines. The settings will be applied to all the cropping frames.

- **(Remove Cropping Frame)**

  Removes the selected cropping frame.

- **(Information)**

  Displays the version of ScanGear (scanner driver) and the current scan settings (document type, etc.).

- **(Open Guide)**

  This page appears.

Preview Area

- **Preview Area**

  This is where a trial image is displayed after you click Preview. You can also check the results of the settings (image corrections, color adjustments, etc.) made in " Settings and Operation Buttons ."

When (Thumbnail) is displayed on the Toolbar

Thumbnails of images cropped to the document size are displayed. Only the images with the

checkbox selected will be scanned.

Note

- When multiple images are previewed, different outlines indicate different selection status.
  - Focus Frame (thick blue outline): The displayed settings will be applied.
  - Selected Frame (thin blue outline): The settings will be applied to the Focus Frame and Selected Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple images by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.
  - Unselected (no outline): The settings will not be applied.
- Double-click a frame to zoom in on the image. Click (Frame Advance) at the bottom of the screen to display the previous or next frame. Double-click the frame again to return the display to its non-magnified state.

When (Whole Image) is displayed on the Toolbar

Items on the Platen are displayed as a single image. All portions in the cropping frames will be scanned.

Note

- You can specify the scan area (cropping frame) on the displayed image. In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame per image. In whole image view, you can create multiple cropping frames.
  Adjusting Cropping Frames

Related Topic

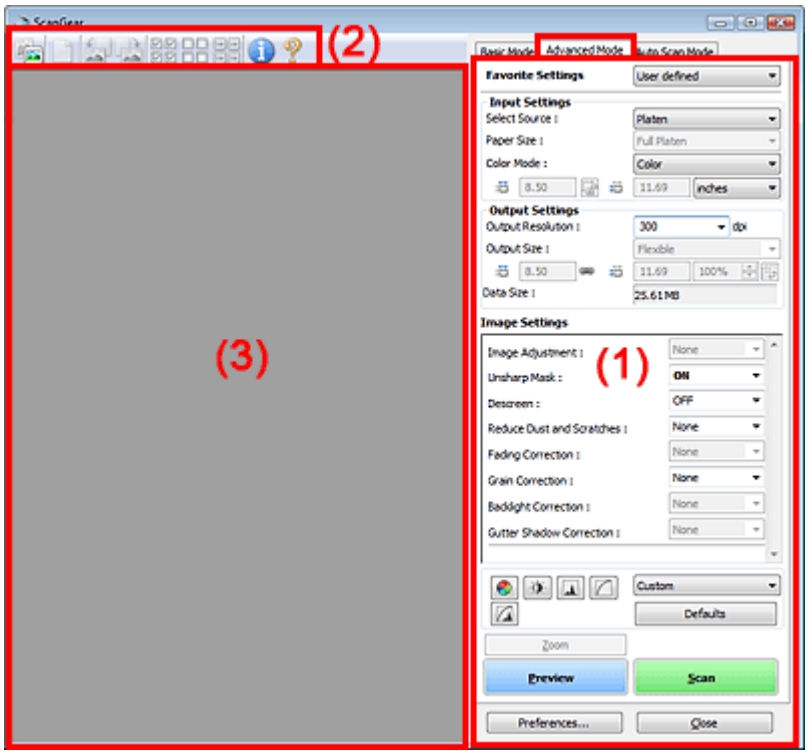
▶ Scanning in Basic Mode

Page top

Advanced Mode Tab

This mode allows you to make advanced scan settings such as the color mode, output resolution, image brightness and color tone.

This section describes the settings and functions available in Advanced Mode.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Preview Area

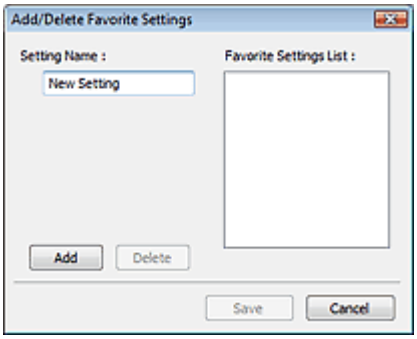
Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and how the screen was opened.

Settings and Operation Buttons

- **Favorite Settings**

  You can name and save a group of settings (Input Settings, Output Settings, Image Settings and Color Adjustment Buttons) on Advanced Mode tab, and load it as required. It is convenient to save a group of settings if you will be using it repeatedly. You can also use this to reload the default settings.
  Select Add/Delete... from the pull-down menu and the Add/Delete Favorite Settings dialog box opens.



Enter Setting Name and click Add. The name appears in Favorite Settings List.
When you click Save, the item appears in the Favorite Settings list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.
To delete an item, select it in Favorite Settings List and click Delete. Click Save to save settings displayed in Favorite Settings List.

Note

- You can set Add/Delete... in Favorite Settings after preview.
- Save up to 10 items.

- **Input Settings**

  Specify the input settings such as the document type and size.
  ➡ Input Settings

- **Output Settings**

  Specify the output settings such as the output resolution and size.
  ➡ Output Settings

- **Image Settings**

  Enable/disable various image correction functions.
  ➡ Image Settings

- **Color Adjustment Buttons**

  These buttons can be used to make fine corrections to the image brightness and color tones. You can adjust the image's overall brightness or contrast, and adjust its highlight and shadow values (histogram) or balance (tone curve).
  ➡ Color Adjustment Buttons

- **Zoom**

  Zooms in on an image or the portion within the cropping frame. When the image is zoomed in, Zoom changes to Undo. Click Undo to return the display to its non-magnified state.

  In thumbnail view

  Zooms in on the selected image. Click (Frame Advance) at the bottom of the screen to display the previous or next frame.

  Note

  - You can also zoom in on an image by double-clicking the frame. Double-click the frame again to return the display to its non-magnified state.

  In whole image view

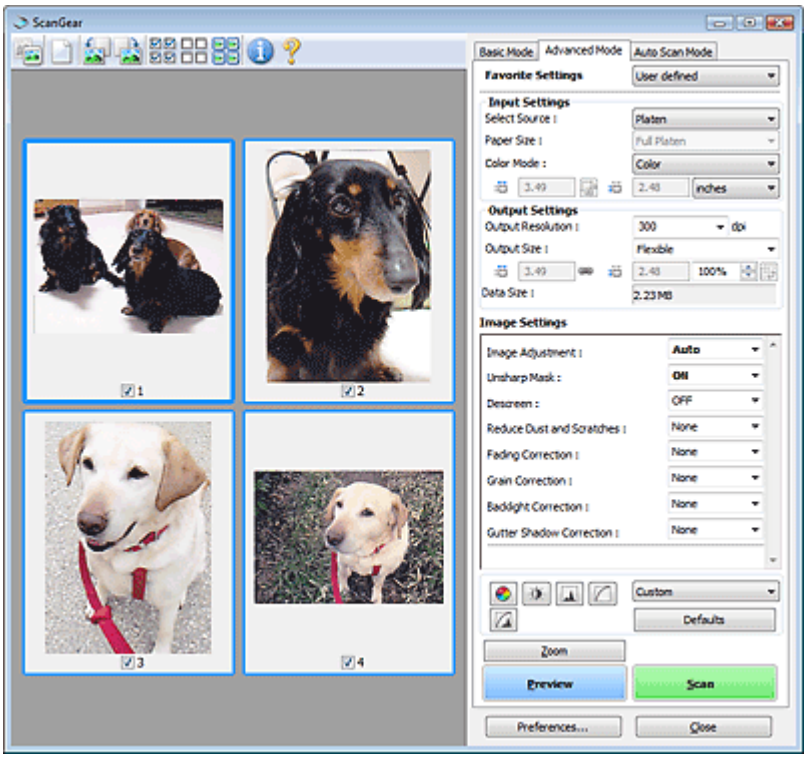
  Rescans the portion within the cropping frame at higher magnification.

  Note

  - Zoom rescans the image and displays high-resolution image in Preview.
  - (Enlarge/Reduce) on the Toolbar zooms in on the preview image quickly. However, the resolution of the displayed image will be low.

- **Preview**

Performs a trial scan.



- **Scan**

  Starts scanning.

  Note

  - When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click Cancel to cancel the scan.
  - When scanning is completed, a dialog box prompting you to select the next action may open. Follow the prompt to complete. For details, see Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning in " Scan Tab" (Preferences dialog box).
  - It will take time to process the images if the total size of the scanned images exceeds a certain size. In that case, a warning message appears. It is recommended that you reduce the total size. To continue, scan in whole image view.

- **Preferences...**

  The Preferences dialog box opens and you can make scan/preview settings.
  ➡ Preferences Dialog Box

- **Close**

  Closes ScanGear (scanner driver).

Toolbar

- **Toolbar**

  You can adjust or rotate preview images. The buttons displayed on the Toolbar vary by view.

  In thumbnail view

  In whole image view

  - **(Thumbnail)/ (Whole image view)**

Switches the view in the Preview area.
Preview Area

- **(Clear)**

  Click this button to delete the preview image.
  It also resets the Toolbar and color adjustment settings.

- **(Crop)**

  Allows you to specify the scan area by dragging the mouse.

- **(Move Image)**

  If an enlarged image is too large to fit in the Preview area, you can click this button and drag the image across the screen until the part you want to see is displayed. You can also move the image using the scroll bars.

- **(Enlarge/Reduce)**

  Click this button then click on the image to enlarge it (zoom in). Right-click on the image to reduce it (zoom out).

- **(Rotate Left)**

  Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
  - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
  - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

- **(Rotate Right)**

  Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.
  - The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
  - The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

- **(Auto Crop)**

  Displays and adjusts the cropping frame automatically to the size of the document displayed in the Preview area. The scan area is reduced every time you click this button if there are cropping area within the cropping frame.

- **(Check All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Selects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.

- **(Uncheck All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Deselects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.

- **(Select All Frames)**

  This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
  Selects the image in thumbnail view and the image will be outlined in blue.

- **(Select All Cropping Frames)**

  This button is available when there are two or more cropping frames.
  All cropping frames will be displayed in thick broken lines. The settings will be applied to all the cropping frames.

- **(Remove Cropping Frame)**

  Removes the selected cropping frame.

- **(Information)**

Displays the version of ScanGear (scanner driver) and the current scan settings (document type, etc.).

- **(Open Guide)**

  This page appears.

Preview Area

- **Preview Area**

  This is where a trial image is displayed after you click Preview. You can also check the results of the settings (image corrections, color adjustments, etc.) made in " Settings and Operation Buttons ."

When (Thumbnail) is displayed on the Toolbar

Thumbnails of images cropped to the document size are displayed. Only the images with the checkbox selected will be scanned.

Note

- When multiple images are previewed, different outlines indicate different selection status.
  - Focus Frame (thick blue outline): The displayed settings will be applied.
  - Selected Frame (thin blue outline): The settings will be applied to the Focus Frame and Selected Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple images by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.
  - Unselected (no outline): The settings will not be applied.

When (Whole Image) is displayed on the Toolbar

Items on the Platen are displayed as a single image. All portions in the cropping frames will be scanned.

Note

- You can specify the scan area (cropping frame) on the displayed image. In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame per image. In whole image view, you can create multiple cropping frames.
  Adjusting Cropping Frames

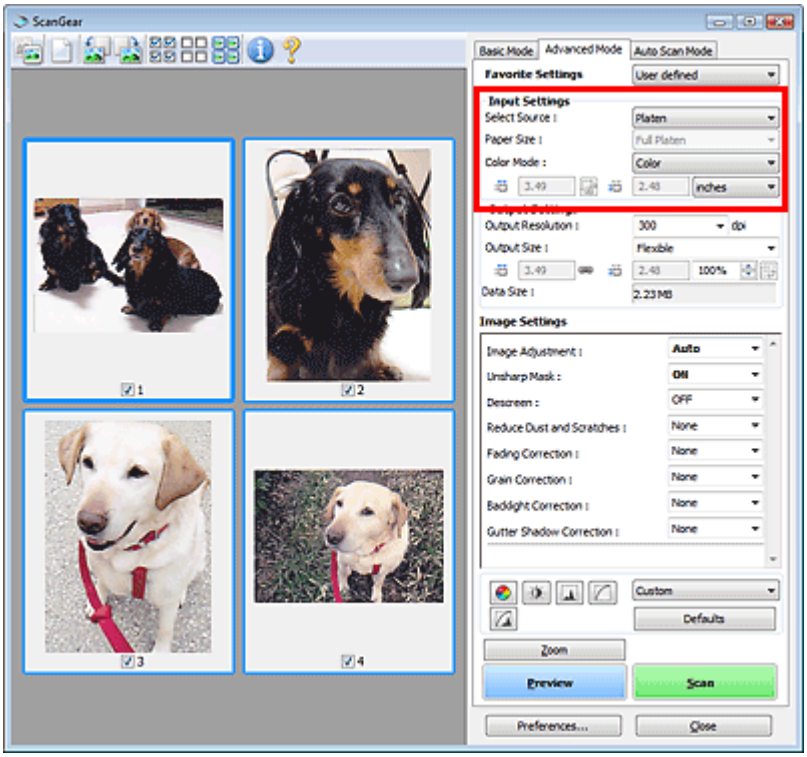
Related Topic

▶ Scanning in Advanced Mode

Page top

ScanGear

Input Settings



Input Settings allows you to set the following items:

- **Select Source**

  The type of document to be scanned is displayed.

- **Paper Size**

  Select the size of the document to be scanned. This setting is available in whole film image view only. When you select a size, the Preview area size changes accordingly.

Important

- Some applications have a limit to the amount of scan data they can receive. ScanGear (scanner driver) can scan data that is of:
  - 21000 pixels x 30000 pixels or less
- If you change Paper Size after previewing, the preview image will be deleted.

Note

- If you are not sure which size you should select for Paper Size, set Paper Size to Full Platen, then measure the size of the document and enter the values into (Width) and (Height).

- **Color Mode**

  Select how to scan the document.

  - **Color**

    Select this mode to scan color documents or to create color images. This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of R(ed), G(reen), and B(lue).

  - **Grayscale**

    Select this mode to scan black and white photos, or to create black and white images. This mode

renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of black and white.

- **Black and White**

  Select this mode to scan photos and documents in black and white. This mode renders the image in black and white. The contrast in the image is divided at certain levels (threshold level) into black and white and is rendered in two colors. The threshold level can be set with (Threshold).

- **Input Size**

  In thumbnail view, the cropped document size is displayed after preview.
  In whole image view, the Paper Size is displayed before preview, and the cropping frame (scan area) size is displayed after preview.

  You can adjust the cropping frame size by entering the values into (Width) and (Height).
  Click (Keep Aspect Ratio) and change it to (Locked) to maintain the aspect ratio when you specify the cropping frame size.

Important

- Input size settings are available only when Output Size in Output Settings is Flexible. If you select a size other than Flexible, a cropping frame calculated from Output Size and Output Resolution is displayed, and its aspect ratio is fixed.

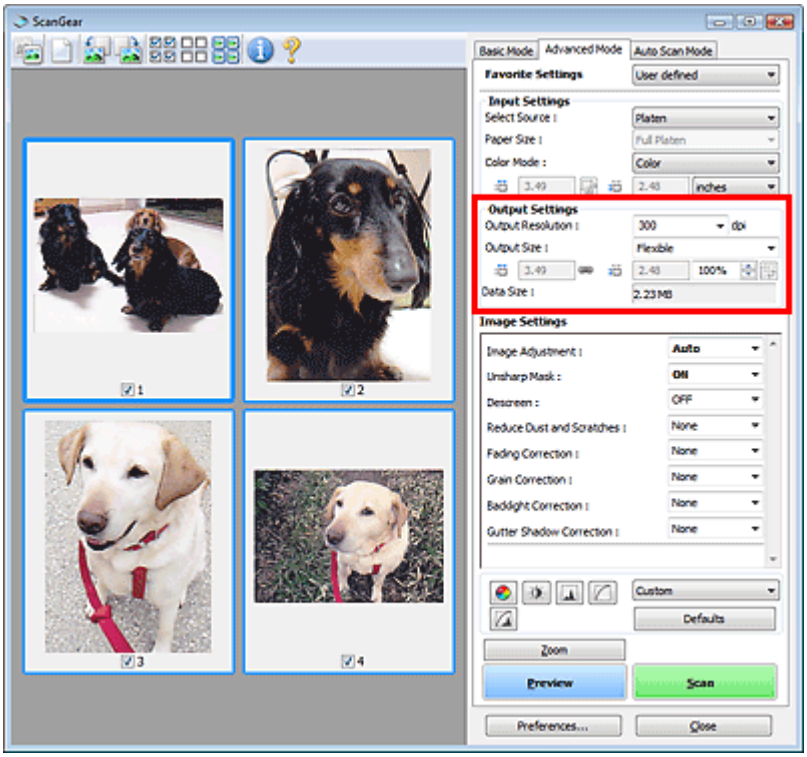
Note

- The values you can enter will be within the range of the selected document size. The minimum size is 96 pixels x 96 pixels when Output Resolution is 600 dpi, scaled at 100%.
- When Auto Crop is performed in whole image view, the aspect ratio will not be maintained since the size will be prioritized.
- See "Adjusting Cropping Frames" for details on cropping frames.

Page top

ScanGear

Output Settings



Output Settings allows you to set the following items:

- **Output Resolution**

  Select the resolution to scan at.
  The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.
  Select a resolution from the options displayed by clicking the button, or enter a value within the range of 25 dpi to 19200 dpi (in 1 dpi increments).
  ➡ Resolution

- **Output Size**

  Select an output size.
  Select Flexible to set custom sizes or select a size for printing or displaying. Select Add/Delete... to set custom size and save it as a new output size option.

  - **Flexible**

    You can specify the output resolution and scale, and adjust the cropping frame.

    ### In thumbnail view

    Drag the mouse over a thumbnail to display a cropping frame. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. When no cropping frame is displayed, each frame is scanned individually.

    ### In whole image view

    When no cropping frame is displayed, the entire Preview area will be scanned. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned.

    ### Note

    - To enlarge/reduce the scanned image, enter values into (Width) and (Height) in

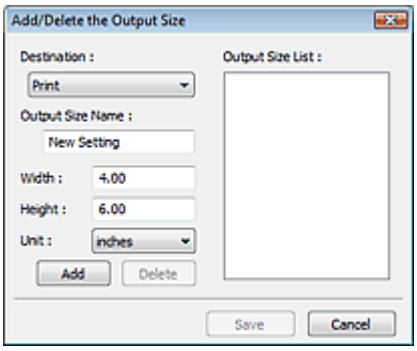
Output Settings or specify a value (by 1%) for %. The maximum value available for % depends on the Output Resolution. % can be specified for up to 19200 dpi (the maximum available output resolution).

- **Paper Size (L, etc.) & Monitor Size (1024 x 768 pixels, etc.)**

  Width, height and scale cannot be specified. The preview image will be cropped according to the selected output size and resolution. The portion within the cropping frame will be scanned at the size of the selected paper/monitor size. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge, reduce or move it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

- **Add/Delete...**

  Opens the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, in which you can specify custom output sizes.



In the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, you can specify multiple output sizes and save them at one time. Saved items will be registered to the Output Size list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

Add

To add a size, select Print or Image display for Destination, then enter Output Size Name, Width, and Height then click Add. The name of the added size appears in Output Size List.
Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Delete

To delete an item, select it in Output Size List and click Delete. Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Important

- You cannot delete predefined output sizes such as A4 and 1024 x 768 pixels.

Note

- Save up to 10 items for each destination.
- An error message appears when you enter a value outside the setting range. Enter a value within the range displayed in the message.
- Unit varies by Destination. For Print, select mm or inches. For Image display, the unit is pixels.

Note

- See "Adjusting Cropping Frames" for details on cropping frames.
- Whether or how the cropping frame is initially displayed on a preview image can be specified on the Preview tab of the Preferences dialog box. See Cropping Frame on Previewed Images in " Preview Tab."

- **(Switch Aspect Ratio)**

  Click this button to rotate the cropping frame. Click again to return it to the original orientation.

- **Data Size**

  An image file is created when the preview image is scanned. Its size when saved in BMP format is displayed.

Note

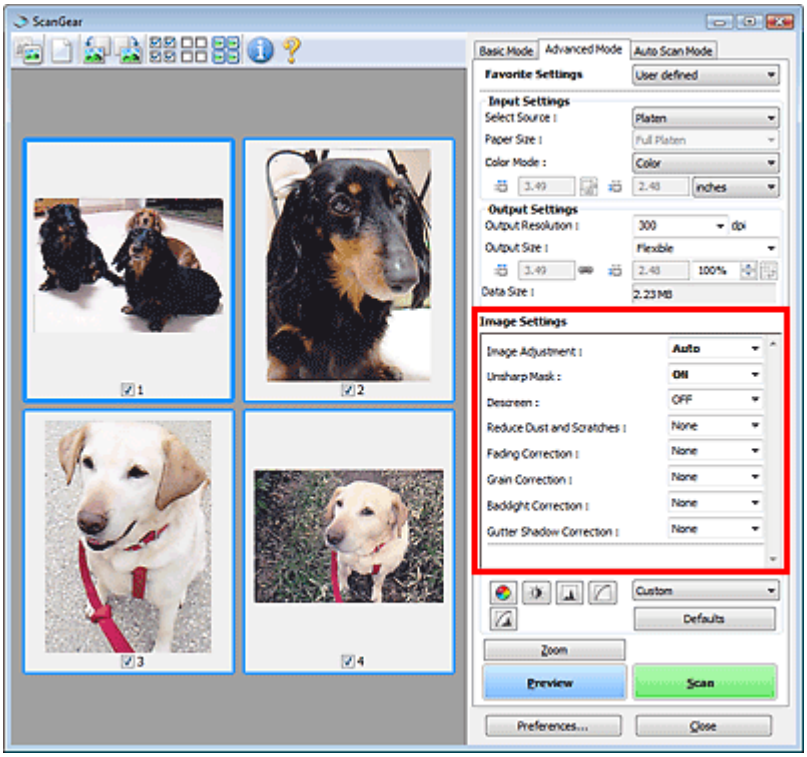
- When the file size exceeds a certain size, the value appears in red. In that case, a warning

message appears when you click Scan. It is recommended that you adjust the settings to reduce Data Size. To continue, scan in whole image view.

Page top

ScanGear

Image Settings



Important

- Do not apply these functions to images without moire, dust/scratches or faded colors. The color tone may be adversely affected.
- Image correction results may not be reflected in the preview image.

Note

- Selectable settings depend on color mode settings.
- Scanning may take longer when you use Image Settings.

Image Settings allows you to set the following items:

- **Image Adjustment**

  When Image Adjustment is set, the brightness of the specified portion of the image is optimized. Images can be adjusted according to the automatically detected document type or the specified document type. The result of the adjustment will be reflected in the entire image. This setting is Auto by default.

  - **None**

    Image Adjustment will not be applied.

  - **Auto**

    Applies Image Adjustment by automatically detecting the document type. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **Photo**

    Select this to apply Image Adjustment to photos.

  - **Magazine**

Select this to apply Image Adjustment to magazines.

- **Newspaper**

  Select this to apply Image Adjustment to newspapers.

- **Document**

  Select this to apply Image Adjustment to text documents.

Important

- You can set Image Adjustment after preview.
- You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- If the image is not adjusted properly with Auto, specify the document type.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to the Image Adjustment. In that case, set Image Adjustment to None.

- **Unsharp Mask**

  When this is set to ON, the outline of the subjects is emphasized to sharpen the image. This setting is ON by default.

- **Descreen**

  Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect. This setting is OFF by default.

Note

- Even if Descreen is set to ON, some moire effects may remain if Unsharp Mask is set to ON. In that case, set Unsharp Mask to OFF.
- Selecting Magazine(Color) in Select Source in Basic Mode tab has the same effect as setting Descreen to ON in Advanced Mode tab.

- **Reduce Dust and Scratches**

  Scanned photos may contain white dots caused by dust or scratches. Use this function to reduce such noise. This setting is None by default.

  - **None**

    Dust and scratches will not be reduced.

  - **Low**

    Select this to reduce small dust particles and scratches. Large ones may remain.

  - **Medium**

    It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **High**

    Select this to reduce small/large dust particles and scratches. Evidence of the reduction process may remain and may also remove delicate parts of the image.

Important

- This function may not be effective for some types of photos.

Note

- It is recommended that you select None when scanning printed materials.

- **Fading Correction**

  Use this function to correct photos that have faded with time or have a colorcast. Colorcast is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors. This setting is None by default.

  - **None**

Fading correction will not be applied.

- **Low**

  Select this to correct a small amount of fading and colorcast.

- **Medium**

  It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

  Select this to correct a large amount of fading and colorcast. This can affect the tone of the image.

Important

- You can set Fading Correction after preview.
- Fading Correction may not be effective if the scan area is too small.
- You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Grain Correction**

  Use this function to reduce graininess (roughness) in photos taken with high-speed or sensitized film.
  This setting is None by default.

  - **None**

    Graininess will not be reduced.

  - **Low**

    Select this when the photo is slightly grainy.

  - **Medium**

    It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **High**

    Select this when the photo is very grainy. This can affect the gradation and sharpness of the image.

Important

- Grain Correction may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

- **Backlight Correction**

  Use this function to correct photos that have been shot against light.
  When you change the Backlight Correction setting, the result will be reflected in the preview image.
  This setting is None by default.

  - **None**

    Backlight correction will not be applied.

  - **Low**

    Select this to correct slightly backlit photos. This will not affect the image contrast.

  - **Medium**

    It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **High**

    Select this to correct strongly backlit photos. This can affect the image contrast.

Important

- You can set Backlight Correction after preview.
- You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.
- Backlight Correction may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

Note

- Noise patterns may appear when Backlight Correction is applied. Applying Grain Correction and

setting Unsharp Mask to OFF may reduce the noise patterns.

- **Gutter Shadow Correction**

  Use this function to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.
  When you set the Gutter Shadow Correction setting in the preview image, the result will be reflected.
  Preview the effects before scanning, as results vary depending on the type of document and how it is pressed.
  Unclear or blurred text/lines caused by curved pages are not corrected. This setting is None by default.

  - **None**

    Gutter shadow will not be corrected.

  - **Low**

    Select this when the effect level is too strong with the medium setting.

  - **Medium**

    It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **High**

    Select this when the effect level is too weak with the medium setting.

Important

- Do not place items that weigh 4.4 lbs (2.0 kg) or more on the Platen. Also, do not press on the document with a force exceeding 4.4 lbs (2.0 kg). If you press heavily, the scanner may not work correctly or you might break the glass.
- Align the document with the edge of the Platen. If not, the shadow will not be corrected properly.

- Shadows may not be corrected properly depending on the document. If the page background is not white, shadows may not be detected correctly or may not be detected at all.
- While scanning, press down on the spine with the same amount of pressure you used to preview the scan. If the binding part is not even, the shadow will not be corrected properly.

- How to place the document depends on your model and the document to be scanned.

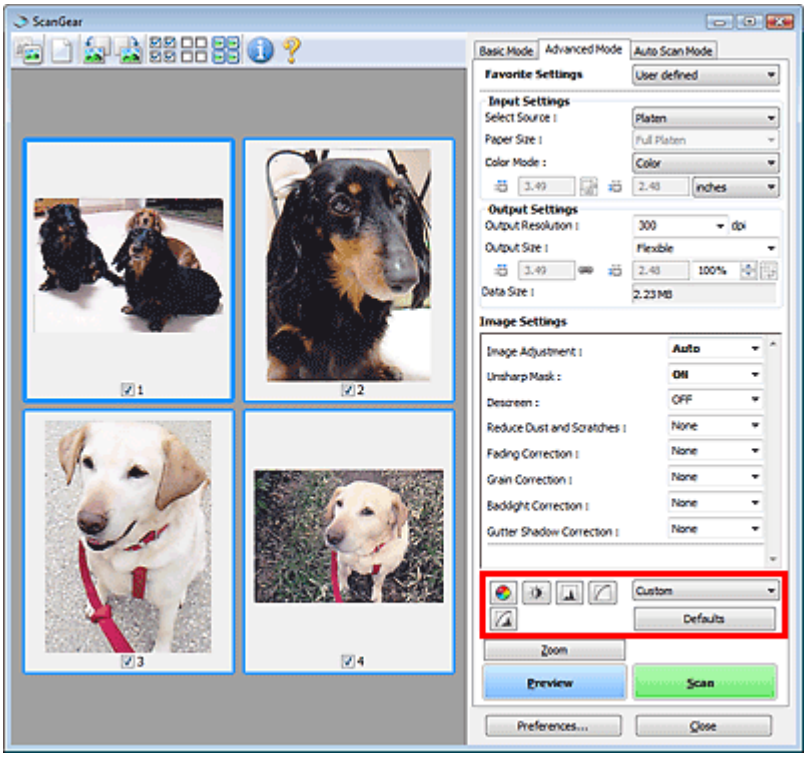
Note

- Cover the document with black cloth if white spots, streaks, or colored patterns appear in scan results due to ambient light entering between the document and the Platen.
- If the shadow is not corrected properly, adjust the cropping frame on the preview image.
  ➡ Adjusting Cropping Frames

Page top

ScanGear

Color Adjustment Buttons



The Color Adjustment Buttons allow you to make fine corrections to the image brightness and color tones. You can adjust the image's overall brightness or contrast, and adjust its highlight and shadow values (histogram) or balance (tone curve).

Important

- The Color Adjustment Buttons are not available when you select Color Matching on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- Selectable settings depend on color mode settings.
- When you adjust the image via the Color Adjustment Buttons, the results will be reflected in the preview image.

Click a Color Adjustment Button to set the following items:

- **(Saturation/Color Balance)**

  Adjust the vividness and color tone of the image. Use this function to brighten colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast. Colorcast is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

  ➡ Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance

- **(Brightness/Contrast)**

  Adjust the brightness and contrast of the image. If the image is too dark or too bright, or if the image quality is flat due to lack of contrast, you can adjust the levels of brightness and contrast.

  ➡ Adjusting Brightness and Contrast

- **(Histogram)**

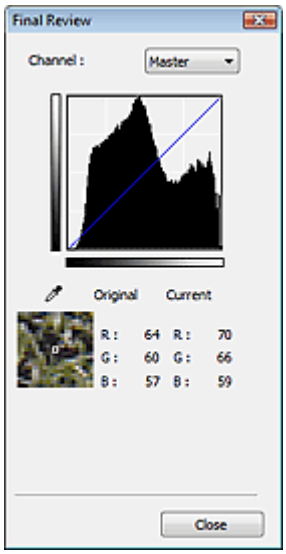
  A histogram allows you to see the data concentration at each brightness level of an image. You can specify the darkest level (shadow) and brightest level (highlight) within an image, cut the levels and expand the middle of the tonal range of the image.
  ➡ Adjusting Histogram

- **(Tone Curve Settings)**

  Adjust the brightness of an image by selecting the type of graph (tone curve) showing the balance of tone input and output. You can make fine adjustments to the brightness of a specific area.
  ➡ Adjusting Tone Curve

- **(Final Review)**

  Make a final check of color adjustments. The final synthesized tone curve and the histogram derived from the subsequent image processing will be displayed. There are no settings to make in this screen.



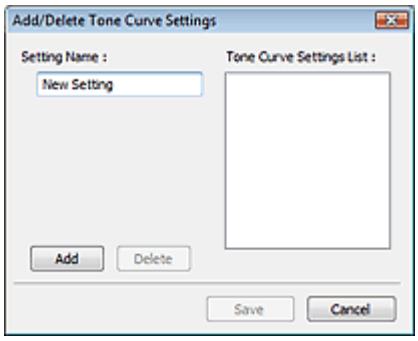
  - For a color image, select a color in Channel to check either Red, Green or Blue, or select Master to check three colors together.
  - If you place the cursor on the preview image, the portion will be enlarged and its RGB values (only K when Color Mode is Grayscale) before and after the adjustments will be displayed.

- **(Threshold)**

  Set the boundary (threshold) at which black and white are divided. By adjusting the threshold level, you can sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.
  ➡ Setting Threshold

- **Custom**

  You can name and save a set of tone curve and threshold settings of the Color Adjustment Buttons. Select Add/Delete... from the pull-down menu. When Color Mode is set to anything but Black and White, the Add/Delete Tone Curve Settings dialog box opens. When Color Mode is Black and White, the Add/Delete Threshold Settings dialog box opens.



Enter Setting Name and click Add. The name appears in Tone Curve Settings List or Threshold Settings List.

Click Save to save.

You can load and apply the saved tone curve/threshold settings to a preview image. To load the settings, select the saved item from the pull-down menu.

To delete an item, select it in Tone Curve Settings List or Threshold Settings List and click Delete. Click Save to save settings displayed in Tone Curve Settings List or Threshold Settings List.

Note

- Save up to 20 items.

- **Defaults**

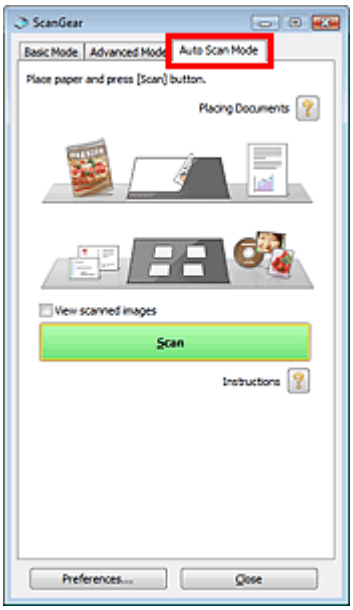
  Reset all adjustments (saturation/color balance, brightness/contrast, histogram and tone curve).

Page top

Auto Scan Mode Tab

This mode allows you to scan easily by simply placing documents on the Platen and clicking a button.

In Auto Scan Mode, documents are automatically detected. You do not need to specify cropping frames or make image corrections.



- **Supported Documents**

  Photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and CD/DVD.

Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly. In that case, specify the document type or size on the Basic Mode tab or the Advanced Mode tab and scan again.
  - Documents other than photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and CD/DVD
  - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
  - Documents printed on thin white paper
  - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos

  ➡ Scanning in Basic Mode
  ➡ Scanning in Advanced Mode
- Reflective CD/DVD labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
  See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.

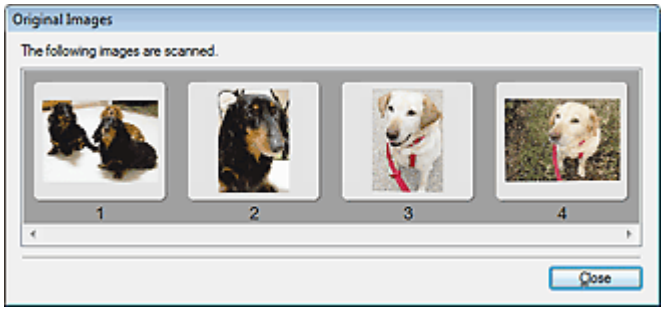
Note

- Scan from the "Basic Mode Tab" or "Advanced Mode Tab" to reduce moire.

- **Placing Documents**

  "Placing Documents" appears.
- **View scanned images**

  Select this checkbox to display the thumbnails of scanned images in a different window.



- **Scan**

  Scanning starts.

Note

- When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click Cancel to cancel the scan.
- When scanning is completed, a dialog box prompting you to select the next action may open. Follow the prompt to complete. For details, see Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning in " Scan Tab" (Preferences dialog box).

- **Instructions**

  This page appears.

- **Preferences...**

  The Preferences dialog box opens and you can make scan/preview settings.
  Preferences Dialog Box

- **Close**

  Closes ScanGear (scanner driver).

Related Topic

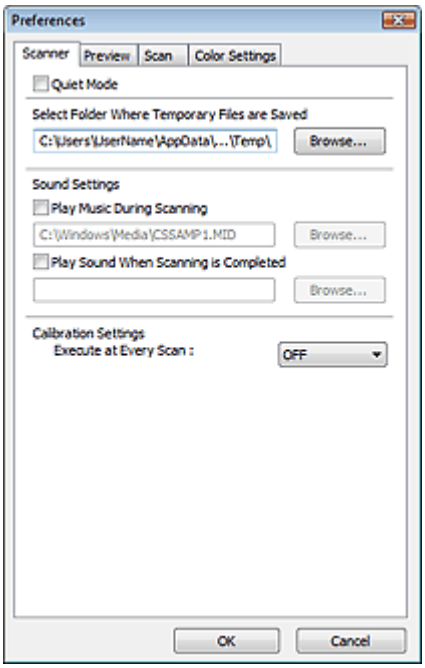
Scanning in Auto Scan Mode

Page top

Preferences Dialog Box

Click Preferences... in the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen to open Preferences dialog box.

In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to ScanGear (scanner driver) functions via the Scanner, Preview, Scan and Color Settings tabs.



Scanner Tab

Allows you to specify a folder to save images temporarily and a music file to play during or at the end of a scan.

➡ Scanner Tab

Preview Tab

Allows you to select what to do with Preview when ScanGear (scanner driver) is started and how to display cropping frames after previewing images. You can also select the cropping size for thumbnails of scanned documents.

➡ Preview Tab

Scan Tab

Allows you to select what to do with ScanGear (scanner driver) after scanning images.

➡ Scan Tab

Color Settings Tab

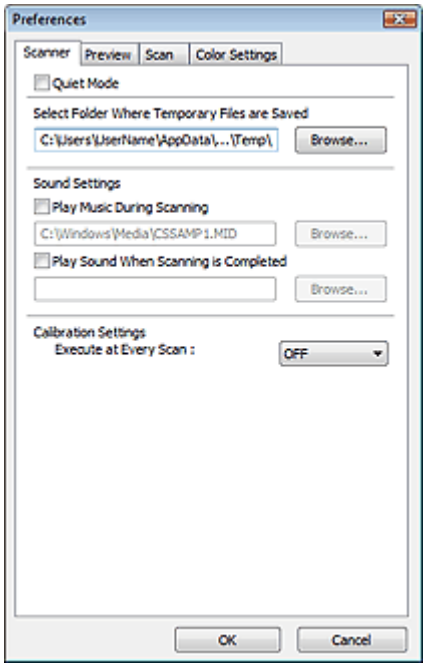
Allows you to select how to adjust color, and specify the monitor gamma value.

➡ Color Settings Tab

Page top

Scanner Tab

On the Scanner tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Quiet Mode**

  Select this checkbox to reduce scanner sound by slowing down the scanner head when previewing or scanning documents. This checkbox is not selected by default.

  Note

  - Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

- **Select Folder Where Temporary Files are Saved**

  Displays the folder in which to save images temporarily. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

- **Sound Settings**

  You can set the machine to play music during/at the end of a scan.
  Select the Play Music During Scanning or Play Sound When Scanning is Completed checkbox, then click Browse... and specify a sound file.
  You can specify the following files.
  - MIDI file (*.mid, *.rmi, *.midi)
  - Audio file (*.wav, *.aif, *.aiff)
  - MP3 file (*.mp3)

- **Calibration Settings**

  When you set Execute at Every Scan to ON, the scanner will be calibrated every time before previewing and scanning, to reproduce correct color tones in scanned images.

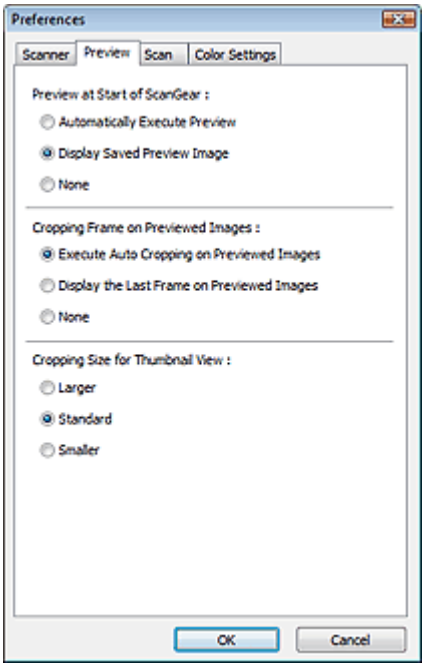
  Note

  - Even when Execute at Every Scan is set to OFF, the scanner may be calibrated automatically in some cases (such as immediately after you turn the machine on).
  - Calibration may take time depending on your computer.

Page top

Preview Tab

On the Preview tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Preview at Start of ScanGear**

  Select what to do with Preview when ScanGear (scanner driver) is started. Display Saved Preview Image is selected by default.

  - **Automatically Execute Preview**

    ScanGear (scanner driver) will automatically start previewing at startup.

  - **Display Saved Preview Image**

    The previously previewed image will be displayed.
    The Color Adjustment Button settings, the Toolbar settings, and the Advanced Mode tab settings are also saved.

  - **None**

    No preview image will be displayed at startup.

Note

- Select None if you do not want to save the preview image.

- **Cropping Frame on Previewed Images**

  Select how to display cropping frames after previewing images. Execute Auto Cropping on Previewed Images is selected by default.

  - **Execute Auto Cropping on Previewed Images**

    The cropping frame will automatically be displayed in the document size after previewing.

  - **Display the Last Frame on Previewed Images**

    A cropping frame of the same size as the last used cropping frame will be displayed after previewing.

  - **None**

No cropping frame will be displayed after previewing.

- **Cropping Size for Thumbnail View**

  Select the cropping size for thumbnails of scanned documents. Standard is selected by default.

  - **Larger**

    Displays 105% (in width and height) of the area displayed for the standard size.

  - **Standard**

    The standard size.

  - **Smaller**

    Displays 95% (in width and height) of the area displayed for the standard size.

Note

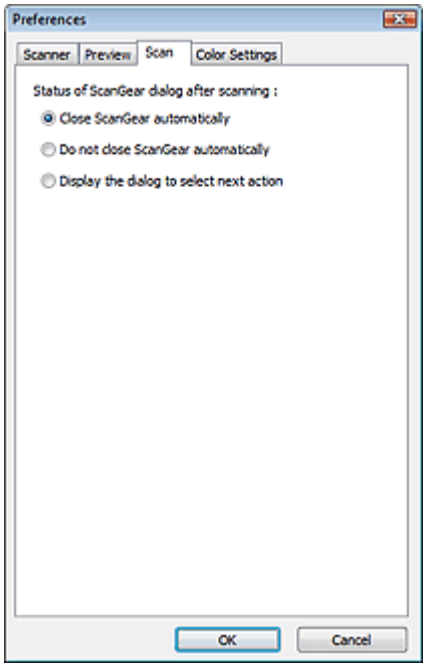
- When you change the Cropping Size for Thumbnail View setting, the preview images will be refreshed and cropped to the new size. As the preview images are refreshed, the color adjustments and other settings applied to them are reset.

Page top

ScanGear

Scan Tab

On the Scan tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning**

  Select what to do with ScanGear (scanner driver) after scanning images. Close ScanGear automatically is selected by default.

  - **Close ScanGear automatically**

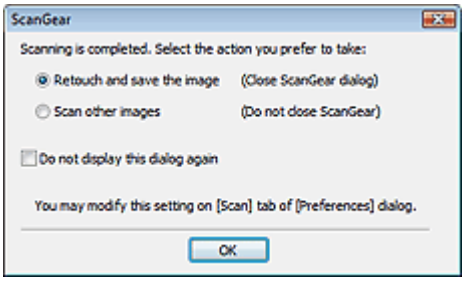
    Select this to return to the original application when scanning is completed.

  - **Do not close ScanGear automatically**

    Select this to return to the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen for another scan when scanning is completed.

  - **Display the dialog to select next action**

    Select this to open a screen and select what to do when scanning is completed.



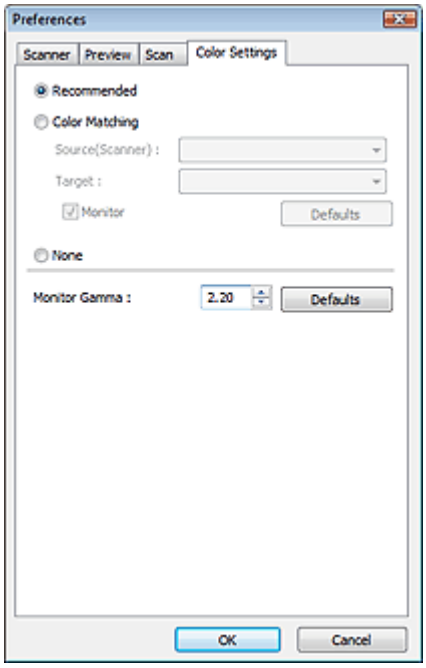
Note

- Even if Do not close ScanGear automatically or Display the dialog to select next action is set, some applications may not support it.

Page top

Color Settings Tab

On the Color Settings tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Color Adjustment**

  Select either of the following. Recommended is selected by default.
  This function is available when Color Mode is Color or Grayscale.

  - **Recommended**

    Select this to vividly reproduce the tone of a document on the screen. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

  - **Color Matching**

    Select this to automatically match the scanner, monitor and color printer colors, thus reducing time and trouble to manually match the monitor and printer colors.
    Color Adjustment Buttons will be disabled.
    This function is available when Color Mode is Color.
    - Source(Scanner): Select scanner profile.
    - Target: Select target profile.
    - Monitor: Select this to display preview image with optimum correction for monitor.
    - Defaults: Returns to the default Color Matching settings.

  - **None**

    Select this to disable color correction provided by ScanGear (scanner driver).

Note

- Color Matching is available when ScanGear (scanner driver), monitor, color management-compliant application (such as Adobe Photoshop) and printer are set up correctly.
  Refer to the corresponding manual for the monitor, printer and application settings.

- **Monitor Gamma**

  By setting the gamma value of a monitor, you can adjust the input data to the brightness characteristics of the monitor. Adjust the value if your monitor's gamma value does not match the

default value set in ScanGear (scanner driver), and the colors of the original image are not accurately reflected in the monitor.
Click Defaults to return to the default Monitor Gamma value (2.20).

Note

- Refer to the manual of your monitor to check its gamma value. If it is not written in the manual, contact the manufacturer.

Page top

Appendix: Useful Information on Scanning

- **Adjusting the cropping frame (scan area)**

  Adjusting Cropping Frames
- **Selecting the best resolution**

  Resolution
- **Learning about file formats**

  File Formats
- **Learning about Color Matching**

  Color Matching
- **Matching the colors between the document and monitor**

  See Monitor Gamma in the following section.
  Color Settings Tab

Page top

Adjusting Cropping Frames

You can specify the scan area by creating a cropping frame on the image displayed in the Preview area of the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen. When you click Scan, only the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned and passed to the application.

Cropping Frame Types

(1) Focus Cropping Frame (rotating thick broken lines)

The settings in Basic Mode or Advanced Mode will be applied.

(2) Selected Cropping Frame (stationary thick broken lines)

The settings will be applied to the Focus Cropping Frame and Selected Cropping Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.

(3) Unselected Cropping Frame (stationary thin broken lines)

The settings will not be applied.

Note

- Focus Cropping Frame and Selected Cropping Frames are displayed in whole image view.

Initial Cropping Frame

In thumbnail view

Cropping frame is not displayed initially. Drag the mouse over a frame to create a cropping frame.

In whole image view

A cropping frame (Focus Cropping Frame) is displayed automatically around the preview image according to the document size. You can also create a cropping frame by dragging the mouse in the Preview area.

Note

- Cropping frames are set according to the document size (Auto Crop) by default. For details, see Cropping Frame on Previewed Images in " Preview Tab" (Preferences dialog box).

Adjusting a Cropping Frame

The cursor will change into ⟷ ↕ ⤡ ⤢ (Arrow) when it is positioned over a cropping frame. If you click and drag the mouse in the direction of the arrow, the cropping frame will expand or contract accordingly.

The cursor will change into (Crosshair arrow) when it is positioned within a cropping frame. Click and drag the mouse to move the entire cropping frame.

Note

- In Advanced Mode, you can specify the cropping frame size by entering the values into Width and Height in Input Settings.
  Input Settings
- You can rotate a cropping frame 90 degrees by clicking (Switch Aspect Ratio). However, (Switch Aspect Ratio) is not available when Output Size is Flexible.

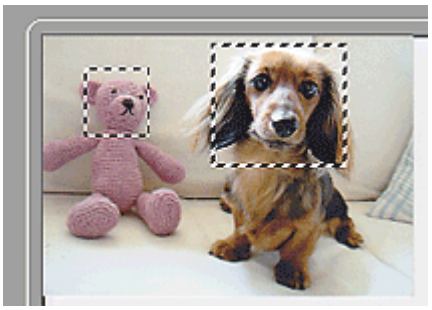
Creating Multiple Cropping Frames

In thumbnail view

You can only create one cropping frame per image.

In whole image view

Click and drag the mouse in a space outside the existing cropping frame to create a new cropping frame in the Preview area. The new cropping frame will be the Focus Cropping Frame, and the old cropping frame will be the Unselected Cropping Frame.



You can create multiple cropping frames and apply different scan settings to each cropping frame.

You can also select multiple cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.

If you select multiple cropping frames and change the settings on a tab at the right of ScanGear (scanner driver), the settings will be applied to all the selected cropping frames.

When you create a new cropping frame, it retains the settings of the latest cropping frame.

Note

- Create up to 12 cropping frames.
- Scanning takes longer than usual when multiple cropping frames are selected.

Deleting Cropping Frames

In thumbnail view

To delete a cropping frame, click an area outside the cropping frame on an image.

In whole image view

To delete a cropping frame, select it and click (Remove Cropping Frame) on the Toolbar. Alternatively, press the Delete key.

When there are multiple cropping frames, all the selected cropping frames (Focus Cropping Frame and Selected Cropping Frames) are deleted simultaneously.

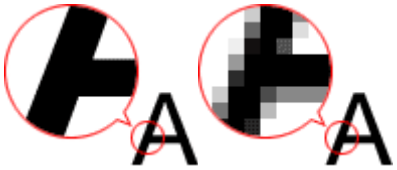
Page top

Resolution

What is Resolution?

The data in the image you have scanned is a collection of dots carrying information about brightness and color. The density of these dots is called "resolution", and resolution will determine the amount of detail your image contains. The unit of resolution is dots per inch (dpi). Dpi is the number of dots per square inch (2.54 cm square).

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image; the lower the resolution (value), the less detail.



Setting the Resolution in MP Navigator EX

In MP Navigator EX, you can specify the resolution with Scanning Resolution in the Scan Settings dialog box.

Images for Printing

Images to be printed should be scanned at a resolution that corresponds to the resolution of the printer.

For example, if you want to print using a 600 dpi black and white printer, you should set the resolution to 600 dpi.

With a color printer, specifying the resolution at half the resolution of the printer should be fine. For example, if you want to print scanned paper/photos using a 600 dpi color printer, you should set the resolution to 300 dpi. However, with a high-resolution printer, printing takes longer than usual if you set the resolution to half the resolution of the printer.

Example of Appropriate Resolution when Printing to Scale

If you print a document at twice the size both vertically and horizontally, the resolution of the document will be reduced by half. If the resolution of the original document is 300 dpi, the resolution of the enlarged document will be 150 dpi. If you print the document with a 600 dpi color printer, the lack of detail in the image may be obvious. In that case, if you scan at the Scanning Resolution of 600 dpi, the resolution will be 300 dpi even if you double the size of document and you can print the document with sufficient quality. Conversely, if you print a document at half scale, it should be sufficient to scan at half the resolution.

When Printing Color Photos at Twice the Size

Document resolution: 300 dpi Scanning resolution: 600 dpi Scale: 200%	Print at twice the size Scanning resolution/actual scanning resolution: 600 dpi	Printing resolution: 300 dpi

Setting the Resolution in ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

In ScanGear (scanner driver), you can specify the resolution with Output Resolution in Output Settings on

the Advanced Mode tab.

Example of Appropriate Resolution when Printing to Scale

The scanning resolution is automatically set so that the value set in Output Resolution will be the resolution of the scanned image. If you set Output Resolution to 300 dpi and scan at twice the size, the document will be automatically scanned at 600 dpi, and the resolution of the scanned image will be 300 dpi. You can print the document with sufficient quality using a 600 dpi color printer.

When Printing L Size (8.9 cm x 12.7 cm) Photos at Twice the Size

Document resolution: 300 dpi Output resolution: 300 dpi Scale: 200%	Scan at twice the size Actual scanning resolution: 600 dpi	Image resolution/printing resolution: 300 dpi

Appropriate Resolution Settings

Set the resolution according to the use of the scanned image.

For displaying on a monitor: 150 dpi

For printing: 300 dpi

When Output Size is set to Flexible in ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab (Select Source is Platen and the scale is 100%):

Document	Use	Color Mode	Output Resolution
Color photo	Copying (Printing)	Color	300 dpi
	Creating a postcard	Color	300 dpi
	Saving to a computer	Color	75 dpi - 300 dpi
	Using on a website or attaching to e-mail	Color	75 dpi - 150 dpi
Black and white photo	Saving to a computer	Grayscale	75 dpi - 300 dpi
	Using on a website or attaching to e-mail	Grayscale	75 dpi - 300 dpi
Text document	Copying	Color, Grayscale or Black and White	300 dpi
	Attaching to e-mail	Color, Grayscale or Black and White	300 dpi

Important

- If you double the resolution, the file size quadruples. If the file is too large, the processing speed will slow down significantly, and you will experience inconvenience such as lack of memory. Set the minimum required resolution according to the use of the image.

Note

- Although you can change Output Resolution in ScanGear (scanner driver), it is recommended that you scan at the default value.

Page top

File Formats

You can select a file format when saving scanned images. You should specify the most suitable format according to how you want to use the image on which application.

Available file formats vary by application and computer (Windows or Macintosh).

See below for the characteristics of each image file format.

BMP (Standard File Extension: .bmp)

A standard file format for Windows.

BMP is often selected for images that are used only on Windows.

JPEG (Standard File Extension: .jpg)

A file format often used on websites and for digital camera images.

JPEG features high compression rates. JPEG images slightly degrade every time they are saved, and cannot be returned to their original state.

JPEG is not available for black and white images.

Exif (Standard File Extension: .jpg)

A file format supported by many digital cameras.

It adds information such as the date of image capture, camera model, shutter speed, shooting mode and comments to JPEG files.

The file format version must be Exif 2.2 or later in order to print on a Direct Print compatible printer.

TIFF (Standard File Extension: .tif)

A file format featuring a relatively high compatibility between various computers and applications. (Some TIFF files are incompatible.) TIFF is suitable for editing saved images.

Note

- MP Navigator EX supports the following TIFF file formats.
  - Uncompressed, black and white binary
  - Uncompressed, RGB (8 bits per channel)
  - Uncompressed, YCC (8 bits per component)
  - Uncompressed, RGB (16 bits per channel)
  - Uncompressed, YCC (16 bits per component)
  - Uncompressed, Grayscale

PDF (Standard File Extension: .pdf)

A file format developed by Adobe Systems. It can be used on various computers and operating systems. Therefore, PDF files can be exchanged between people who use different operating systems, fonts, etc. regardless of the differences.

Important

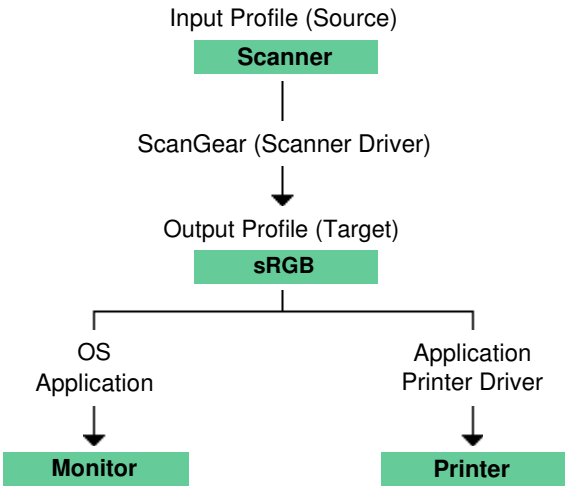
- Only PDF files created with MP Navigator EX are supported. PDF files created or edited in other applications are not supported.

Page top

Color Matching

Color Matching adjusts devices as shown below to match the colors of an image displayed on a monitor or a printed image with the colors of the original document.

Example: When sRGB is selected as the output profile (target)



ScanGear (scanner driver) converts the image's color space from the scanner's color space to sRGB.

When displaying on a monitor, the image's color space is converted from sRGB to the monitor's color space based on the operating system's monitor settings and the application's working space settings.

When printing, the image's color space is converted from sRGB to the printer's color space based on the application's print settings and the printer driver's settings.

Page top

Alte metode de scanare

- Scanarea cu driverul WIA
- Scanarea prin utilizarea panoului de control (numai pentru Windows XP)

În partea superioară a paginii

Scanning with WIA Driver

You can scan an image from a WIA-compliant application and use the image in that application.
The procedure varies depending on the application. The following procedures are examples only.
For details, refer to the application's manual.

Important

- In Windows 2000, you cannot scan using the WIA driver.

Scanning with WIA Driver 2.0

The following is an example of scanning using Windows Photo Gallery.

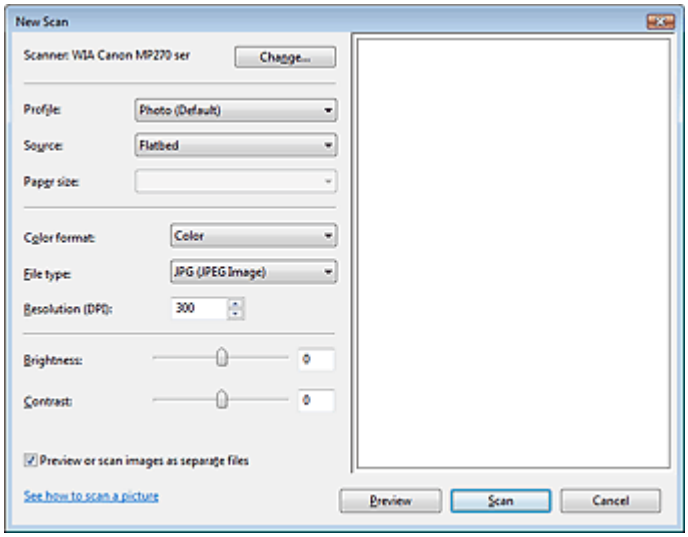
1. Place the document on the Platen.

   Placing Documents

2. In File, click Import from Camera or Scanner..., then double-click WIA Canon (model name).

   The scan setting screen appears.

3. Specify the settings.



- **Scanner**

  The currently set product name is displayed. To change the scanner, click Change... and select the product you want to use.

- **Profile**

  Select Photo (Default) or Documents according to the document to be scanned. To save a new Profile, select Add profile.... You can specify the details in the Add New Profile dialog box.

- **Source**

  Select a scanner type.

- **Paper size**

  This setting is not available for this machine.

- **Color format**

  Select how to scan the document.

- **File type**

  Select a file format from JPEG, BMP, PNG and TIFF.
- **Resolution (DPI)**

  Enter the resolution. Specify a value between 50 dpi and 600 dpi. 300 dpi is set by default.
  ➡ Resolution
- **Brightness**

  Move the slider to adjust the brightness. Move it to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-100 to 100).
- **Contrast**

  Move the slider to adjust the contrast. Moving it to the left will decrease the contrast of the image, thus softening the image. Moving it to the right will increase the contrast of the image, thus sharpening the image. You can also enter a value (-100 to 100).
- **Preview or scan images as separate files**

  Select this checkbox to preview or scan multiple images as separate files.
- **See how to scan a picture**

  Click to open Windows Help and Support.

4. Click Preview to preview the image.

The preview image appears on the right.

5. Click Scan.

When scanning is completed, the scanned image appears in the application.

Scanning with WIA Driver 1.0

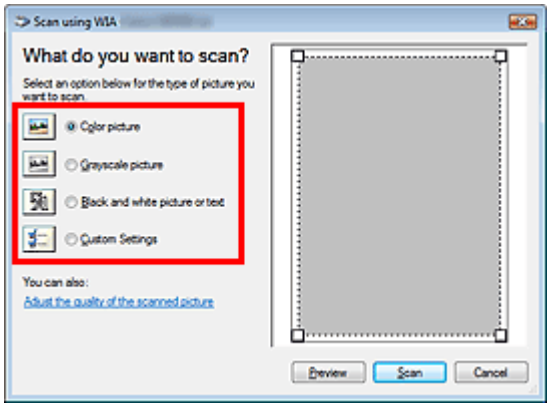
The following is an example of scanning using Paint.

1. Place the document on the Platen.

➡ Placing Documents

2. In File, click From Scanner or Camera.... (Select the command to scan a document in the application.)

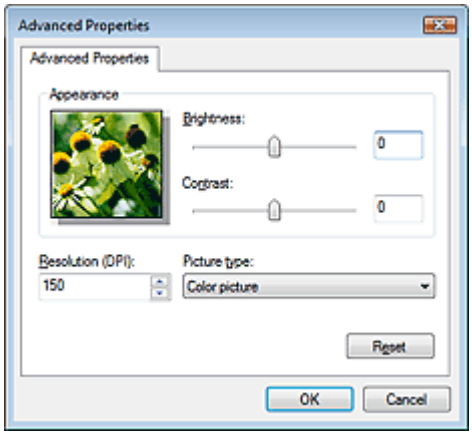
3. Select an image type according to the document to be scanned.



Note

- To scan with the values previously set in Adjust the quality of the scanned picture, select Custom Settings.

4. Click Adjust the quality of the scanned picture and set the preferences as required.



- **Brightness**

  Move the slider to adjust the brightness. Move it to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Contrast**

  Move the slider to adjust the contrast. Moving it to the left will decrease the contrast of the image, thus softening the image. Moving it to the right will increase the contrast of the image, thus sharpening the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Resolution (DPI)**

  Enter the resolution. Specify a value between 50 dpi and 600 dpi.
  ➡ Resolution

- **Picture type**

  Select the type of scan you want for your document.

- **Reset**

  Click to restore the original settings.

5. Click Preview to preview the image.

The preview image appears on the right. Drag ❑ to specify the scan area.

6. Click Scan.

When scanning is completed, the scanned image appears in the application.

Page top

Scanning Using the Control Panel (Windows XP Only)

You can scan images via the Control Panel of Windows XP using the WIA driver.

Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) is a driver model implemented in Windows XP. It allows you to scan documents without using an application. Scan documents from a TWAIN-compliant application to specify advanced settings for scanning.

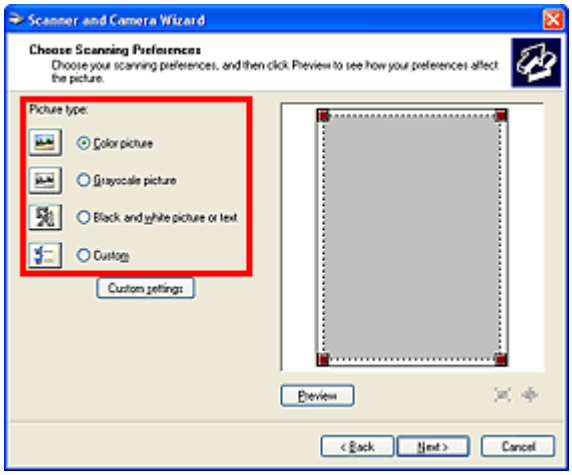
1. From the Start menu, select Control Panel.

2. Click Printers and Other Hardware > Scanners and Cameras, then double-click WIA Canon (model name).

   The Scanner and Camera Wizard dialog box opens.

3. Click Next.

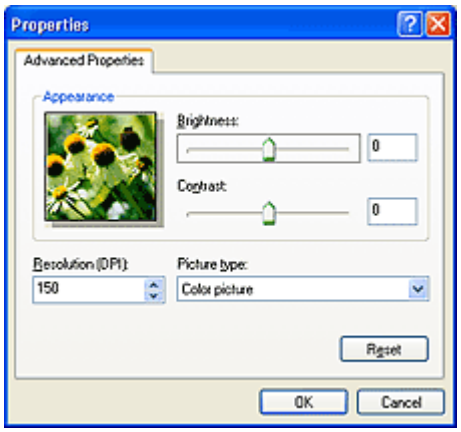
4. Select Picture type according to the document to be scanned.



Note

- To scan with the values previously set in Custom Settings, select Custom.

5. Click Custom Settings to set the preferences as required.



- **Brightness**

  Move the slider to adjust the brightness. Move it to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Contrast**

  Move the slider to adjust the contrast. Moving it to the left will decrease the contrast of the image, thus softening the image. Moving it to the right will increase the contrast of the image, thus sharpening the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Resolution (DPI)**

  Enter the resolution. Specify a value between 50 dpi and 600 dpi.
  ➡ Resolution

- **Picture type**

  Select the type of scan you want for your document.

- **Reset**

  Click to restore the original settings.

6. Click Preview to preview the image.

The preview image appears on the right. Drag to specify the scan area.

7. Click Next and follow the instructions.

Page top

Imprimarea fotografiilor direct de pe un dispozitiv compatibil (numai pentru MP270 series)

Imprimarea fotografiilor direct de pe un dispozitiv compatibil (numai pentru MP270 series)

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimarea fotografiilor direct de pe un dispozitiv compatibil (numai pentru MP270 series)

➡ Imprimarea fotografiilor direct de pe un dispozitiv compatibil (numai pentru MP270 series)
➡ Despre setările de imprimare PictBridge (numai pentru MP270 series)

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimarea fotografiilor direct de pe un dispozitiv compatibil (numai pentru MP270 series)

Puteţi conecta la aparat un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge, precum o cameră digitală, o cameră video sau un telefon mobil, utilizând un cablu USB recomandat de producătorul aparatului şi puteţi imprima imaginile înregistrate direct, fără a utiliza un computer.

Notă

- Atunci când se imprimă fotografii cu aparatul compatibil PictBridge conectat la dispozitiv, recomandăm utilizarea adaptorului CA furnizat împreună cu aparatul. Dacă utilizaţi un aparat cu baterii, asiguraţi-vă că este încărcat complet.
- În funcţie de modelul sau de marca dispozitivului dumneavoastră, este posibil să fie nevoie să selectaţi un mod de imprimare compatibil cu PictBridge înainte de a conecta dispozitivul. De asemenea, poate fi necesar să porniţi dispozitivul sau să selectaţi manual modul Play manual după ce conectaţi dispozitivul la aparat.
  Efectuaţi operaţiile necesare pe dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge înainte de a-l conecta la acest aparat, conform instrucţiunilor prezentate în manualul de instrucţiuni al dispozitivului.

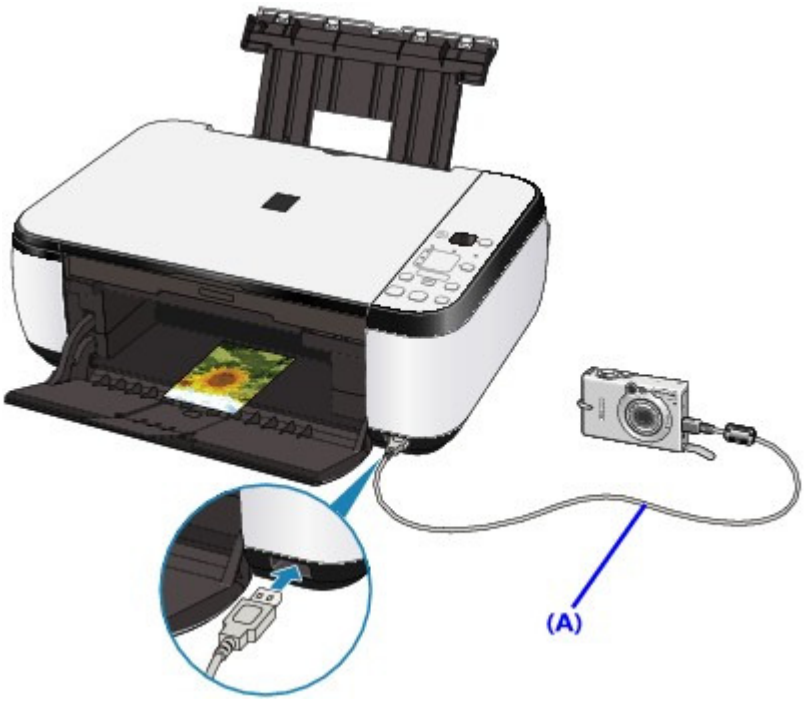
1. Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este pus în funcţiune.

2. Încărcaţi hârtie în tava din spate.

3. Asiguraţi-vă că dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge este oprit.

4. Conectaţi dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge la acest aparat utilizând un cablu USB (A) recomandat de producătorul dispozitivului.

   Dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge porneşte automat.
   Dacă dispozitivul nu porneşte automat, porniţi-l manual.
   Când aparatul este conectat corect la dispozitiv, pe LED va apărea c, iar pe ecranul LCD al dispozitivului se va afişa mesajul că aparatul este conectat. Consultaţi manualul de instrucţiuni al dispozitivului.



5. Specificaţi setările de imprimare, precum tipul hârtiei şi aspectul.

Puteţi efectua setări utilizând meniul de pe ecranul LCD al dispozitivului compatibil PictBridge.
Selectaţi dimensiunea şi tipul hârtiei pe care aţi încărcat-o în aparat.
➡ Setări pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge

6. Începeţi imprimarea de pe dispozitivul dumneavoastră compatibil PictBridge.

Important

- Nu deconectaţi niciodată cablul USB în timpul imprimării, în afara cazului în care acest lucru este permis în mod explicit de dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge. Atunci când deconectaţi cablul USB dintre dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge şi aparat, urmaţi instrucţiunile prezentate în manualul de instrucţiuni al dispozitivului.

În partea superioară a paginii

Despre setările de imprimare PictBridge (numai pentru MP270 series)

Setări pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge

Această secţiune descrie funcţia PictBridge a aparatului. Pentru setările de imprimare ale unui dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge, consultaţi instrucţiunile prezentate în manualul de instrucţiuni al dispozitivului.

Notă

- În descrierea următoare, numele elementelor de setare sunt date conform celor utilizate în dispozitivele compatibile PictBridge ale mărcii Canon. Este posibil ca numele setărilor să fie diferite, în funcţie de marca sau modelul dispozitivului dumneavoastră.
- Este posibil ca unele setări explicate mai jos să nu fie disponibile în cazul unor dispozitive. Când nu puteţi modifica setările de imprimare la un dispozitiv, aparatul imprimă imaginile după cum urmează:
  Dimensiune hârtie: 4" x 6"/101,6 x 152,4 mm
  Tip hârtie: Photo
  Cu chenar/Fără chenar: Respectă setarea camerei
  Aspect: 1-up
  Calitate imprimare: Standard
  Optimizarea imaginii: Pentru a optimiza imprimarea, va fi utilizată funcţia Photo optimizer pro.

Această secţiune descrie setările de imprimare pentru un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge. Când lucraţi cu , respectaţi instrucţiunile prezentate în manualul de instrucţiuni al dispozitivului.

Dimensiune hârtie	4" x 6"/10 x 15 cm, 5" x 7"*1, 8" x 10"/ 20 x 25 cm, A4, 8,5" x 11"(Letter), 4" x 7, 1"/ 10,1 x 18 cm*2 *1 Poate fi selectată doar pe anumite dispozitive Canon compatibile PictBridge. (Este posibil să nu poată fi selectată, în funcţie de dispozitiv.) *2 Este posibil ca pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge care nu face parte dintre produsele Canon să apară Hi Vision.
Tip hârtie	• Implicit: Photo Paper Plus Glossy II PP-201 • Photo: Photo Paper Plus Glossy II PP-201/Glossy Photo Paper „Everyday Use” GP-501/Photo Paper Glossy GP-502/Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss SG-201 • Fast Photo: Photo Paper Pro II PR-201 • Plain: A4/Letter Atunci când Paper type este setat la valoarea Plain, imprimarea fără chenar va fi dezactivată chiar dacă Layout este setat pe Borderless.
Aspect	Default (Borderless), Index, Bordered, Borderless, 4-up* * Aspect compatibil cu hârtia de dimensiune A4/Letter
Imprimare dată şi nr. fişier	Default (Off: Fără imprimare), Date, File No., Both, Off
Optimizare imagine	Default *1, On (Exif Print), Off, Face*2, Red-Eye*2 *1 Fotografiile sunt optimizate pentru imprimare utilizând funcţia de optimizare foto pro. *2 Poate fi selectată doar pe anumite dispozitive Canon compatibile PictBridge. (Este posibil să nu poată fi selectată, în funcţie de dispozitiv.)
Tăiere	Default (Off: Fără tăiere), On (respectă setarea camerei), Off

În partea superioară a paginii

Întreţinere

- Curăţarea aparatului
- Alinierea capului de imprimare
- Efectuarea întreţinerii de pe un computer

În partea superioară a paginii

Curăţarea aparatului

- Curăţare
- Curăţarea exteriorului aparatului
- Curăţarea suprafeţei de sticlă de scanare şi a capacului pentru documente

În partea superioară a paginii

Curăţare

Această secţiune descrie procedura de curăţare necesară pentru întreţinerea aparatului.

Important

- Nu utilizaţi şerveţele, prosoape de hârtie, cârpe aspre sau materiale similare la curăţare pentru a nu zgâria exteriorul aparatului. Aveţi grijă să utilizaţi o cârpă moale.
- Nu utilizaţi niciodată lichide volatile cum ar fi diluanţii, benzenul, acetona sau orice altă substanţă chimică de curăţare pentru curăţarea aparatului, deoarece acest lucru poate cauza o defecţiune sau poate deteriora suprafaţa aparatului.

Curăţarea exteriorului aparatului

Curăţarea suprafeţei de sticlă de scanare şi a capacului pentru documente

În partea superioară a paginii

Curăţarea exteriorului aparatului

Aveţi grijă să utilizaţi o cârpă moale ca şi cea pentru curăţarea ochelarilor şi îndepărtaţi uşor murdăria de pe suprafaţă. Dacă este nevoie, neteziţi cutele cârpei înainte de curăţare.

Important

- Asiguraţi-vă că aţi oprit aparatul şi că aţi întrerupt alimentarea înainte de a curăţa aparatul.
- Nu utilizaţi şerveţele, prosoape de hârtie, cârpe aspre sau materiale similare, deoarece acestea pot zgâria suprafaţa.

În partea superioară a paginii

Curăţarea suprafeţei de sticlă de scanare şi a capacului pentru documente

Important

- Asiguraţi-vă că aţi oprit aparatul şi că aţi întrerupt alimentarea înainte de a curăţa aparatul.

Cu o cârpă curată, moale, fără scame, ştergeţi uşor suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare (A) şi partea interioară a capacului pentru documente (partea albă) (B). Asiguraţi-vă că nu lăsaţi niciun reziduu, în special pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

Important

- Partea interioară a capacului pentru documente (partea albă) (B) se deteriorează cu uşurinţă, aşa că ştergeţi-o uşor.

În partea superioară a paginii

Alinierea capului de imprimare

Alinierea capului de imprimare

În partea superioară a paginii

Alinierea capului de imprimare

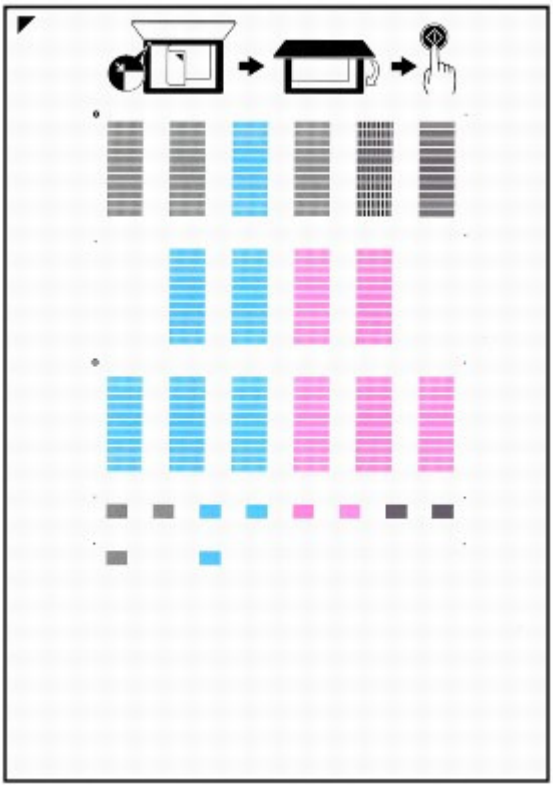
Dacă liniile regulate imprimate nu sunt aliniate sau rezultatele imprimării sunt nesatisfăcătoare în alt mod, reglaţi poziţia capului de imprimare.

Notă

- Dacă nivelul cernelii rămase este scăzut, foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare nu va fi imprimată corect. Înlocuiţi cartuşul FINE cu nivel scăzut de cerneală.
  ➡ Întreţinere de rutină

1. Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este pus în funcţiune.
2. Încărcaţi o foaie de hârtie simplă de format A4 sau Letter în tava din spate.
3. Deschideţi uşor tava de ieşire a hârtiei şi deschideţi extensia tăvii de ieşire.
4. Imprimaţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare.
   1. Apăsaţi în mod repetat butonul **Întreţinere (Maintenance)** până când apare u („u” mic).
   2. Apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)**.

      Se va imprima foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare.



Important

- Nu atingeţi nicio parte imprimată de pe foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare.
- Nu murdăriţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare. Dacă foaia este pătată sau încreţită, este posibil ca modelul să nu poată fi scanat corect.

5. Scanaţi foaia pentru a regla poziţia capului de imprimare.

1. Plasaţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare, apoi închideţi cu grijă capacul pentru documente.

   Aşezaţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare cu partea imprimată ÎN JOS şi aliniaţi marcajul ◤ sau colţul din stânga-sus al foii cu marcajul de aliniere (↘).

2. Asiguraţi-vă că pe LED apare U („U” mare) şi apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)**.

   Foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare este scanată şi poziţia capului de imprimare este reglată automat.
   La finalizarea reglării poziţiei capului de imprimare, LED-ul revine la modul standby pentru copiere. Luaţi foaia de pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

Important

- Nu deschideţi capacul pentru documente şi nu deplasaţi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare încărcată până la terminarea scanării.
- Dacă nu s-a reuşit reglarea automată a poziţiei capului de imprimare, codul de eroare apare pe LED.
  ➡ Pe LED apare un cod de eroare

Notă

- Dacă rezultatele imprimării sunt tot nesatisfăcătoare după reglarea poziţiei capului de imprimare conform descrierii de mai sus, reglaţi manual poziţia capului de imprimare, de la computer.
  ➡ Alinierea poziţiei capului de imprimare
- Pentru a imprima valorile curente de reglare a poziţiei capului de imprimare, afişaţi L pe LED, apoi apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)**.

În partea superioară a paginii ⇧

Efectuarea întreţinerii de pe un computer

- Curăţarea capetelor de imprimare
- Curăţarea rolelor de alimentare a hârtiei
- Alinierea poziţiei capului de imprimare
- Verificarea duzelor capului de imprimare
- Curăţarea interiorului aparatului

În partea superioară a paginii

Cleaning the Print Heads

The print head cleaning function allows you to unclog clogged nozzles in the print head. Perform print head cleaning if printing is faint or a specific color fails to print, even though there is enough ink.

The procedure for cleaning the print heads is as follows:

Cleaning

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

   The Print Head Cleaning dialog box opens. Follow the instruction shown in the dialog box.
   Click Initial Check Items to display the items you need to check before performing Cleaning.

3. Execute cleaning

   Make sure that the machine is on and then click Execute.

   Print head cleaning starts.

4. Complete cleaning

   The Nozzle Check dialog box opens after the confirmation message.

5. Check the results

   To check whether the print quality has improved, click Print Check Pattern. To cancel the check process, click Cancel.

   If cleaning the head once does not resolve the print head problem, clean it once more.

Deep Cleaning

Deep Cleaning is more thorough than cleaning. Perform deep cleaning when two Cleaning attempts do not resolve the print head problem.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Deep Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

   The Deep Cleaning dialog box opens. Follow the instruction shown in the dialog box.
   Click Initial Check Items to display the items you need to check before performing Deep Cleaning.

3. Execute deep cleaning

   Make sure that the machine is on and then click Execute.
   Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

   Print head deep cleaning starts.

4. Complete deep cleaning

   The Nozzle Check dialog box opens after the confirmation message.

5. Check the results

To check whether the print quality has improved, click Print Check Pattern. To cancel the check process, click Cancel.

Important

- Cleaning consumes a small amount of ink. Deep Cleaning consumes a larger amount of ink than Cleaning.
  Cleaning the print heads frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Consequently, perform cleaning only when necessary.

Note

- If there is no sign of improvement after Deep Cleaning, switch off the machine, wait 24 hours, and then perform Deep Cleaning again. If there is still no sign of improvement, refer to " Machine Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected."

Related Topic

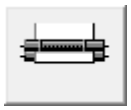
Checking the Print Head Nozzles

Page top

Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers

Cleans the paper feed roller. Perform feed roller cleaning when there are paper particles sticking to the paper feed roller and paper is not fed properly.

The procedure for performing the feed roller cleaning is as follows:



Roller Cleaning

1. Prepare the machine

   Remove all sheets of paper from the rear tray.

2. Open the printer driver setup window

3. Click Roller Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

   The confirmation message appears.

4. Execute paper feed roller cleaning

   Make sure that the machine is on and click OK.
   Paper feed roller cleaning starts.

5. Complete paper feed roller cleaning

   After the rollers have stopped, follow the instruction in the message, load three sheets of plain paper into the rear tray, and click OK.

   Paper will be ejected and feed roller cleaning will be completed.

Page top

Aligning the Print Head Position

Print head alignment corrects the installation positions of the print head and improves deviated colors and lines.

This machine supports two head alignment methods: automatic head alignment and manual head alignment.
To perform automatic head alignment, refer to "Aligning the Print Head" in the manual: Basic Guide and then execute the function from the operation panel of the machine.

The procedure for performing manual print head alignment is as follows:

Print Head Alignment

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab

   The Custom Settings dialog box opens.

3. Switch head alignment to manual

   Check the Align heads manually check box.

4. Transmit the settings

   Click Send, and click OK when the confirmation message appears.

5. Click Print Head Alignment on the Maintenance tab

   The Start Print Head Alignment dialog box opens.

6. Load paper in the machine

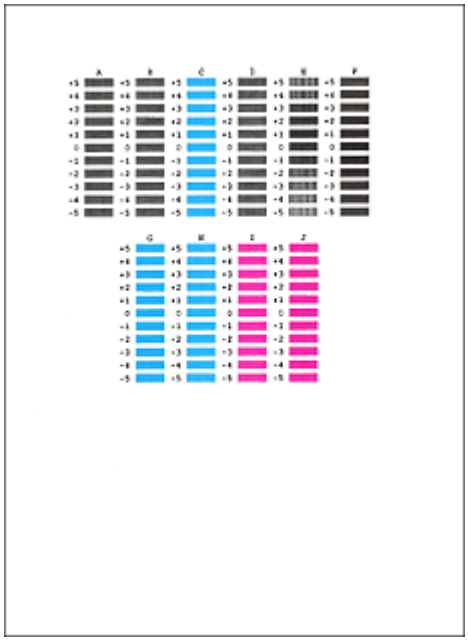
   Load three sheets of A4 size or Letter size plain paper into the rear tray.

7. Execute head alignment

   Make sure that the machine is on and click Align Print Head.
   Follow the instruction in the message.

8. Check the printed pattern

   Enter the numbers of the patterns with the least amount of streaks in the associated boxes.
   Clicking the patterns with the least amount of streaks in the preview window, will automatically set their numbers in the associated boxes.



When you have entered all the necessary values, click OK.

Note

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable vertical white streaks.

(A) Less noticeable vertical white streaks
(B) More noticeable vertical white streaks

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal white streaks.

(A) Less noticeable horizontal white streaks
(B) More noticeable horizontal white streaks

9. Confirm the displayed message and click OK

The second pattern is printed.

Important

- Do not open the Scanning Unit (Cover) while printing is in progress.

10. Check the printed pattern

Enter the numbers of the patterns with the least amount of streaks in the associated boxes.
Clicking the patterns with the least amount of streaks in the preview window, will automatically set their numbers in the associated boxes.

When you have entered all the necessary values, click OK.

Note

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable vertical white streaks.

(A) Less noticeable vertical white streaks
(B) More noticeable vertical white streaks

11. Confirm the displayed message and click OK

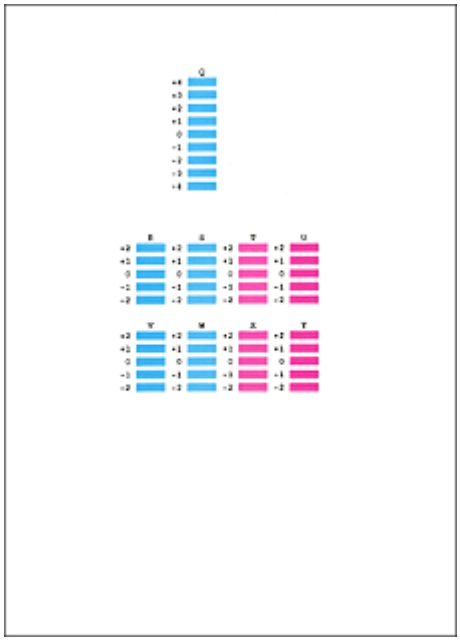
The third pattern is printed.

Important

- Do not open the Scanning Unit (Cover) while printing is in progress.

12. Check the printed pattern

Enter the numbers of the patterns with the least noticeable horizontal stripes in the associated boxes.
Clicking the patterns with the least noticeable horizontal stripes in the preview window, will automatically set their numbers in the associated boxes.



When you have entered all the necessary values, click OK.

Note

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal white stripes.

(A) Less noticeable horizontal white stripes
(B) More noticeable horizontal white stripes

Note

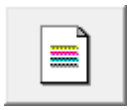
- To print and check the current setting, open the Start Print Head Alignment dialog box, and click Print Alignment Value.

Page top

Checking the Print Head Nozzles

The nozzle check function allows you to check whether the print heads are working properly by printing a nozzle check pattern. Print the pattern if printing becomes faint, or if a specific color fails to print.

The procedure for printing a nozzle check pattern is as follows:



Nozzle Check

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Nozzle Check on the Maintenance tab

   The Nozzle Check dialog box opens.
   To display a list of items that you should check before printing the check pattern, click Initial Check Items.

3. Load paper in the machine

   Load a sheet of A4 size or Letter size plain paper into the rear tray.

4. Print a nozzle check pattern

   Make sure that the machine is on and click Print Check Pattern.
   The nozzle check pattern is printed.

   Click OK when the confirmation message appears.
   The Pattern Check dialog box opens.

5. Check the print result

   Check the print result. When the print result is normal, click Exit.
   If the print result is smudged or if there are any unprinted sections, click Cleaning to clean the print head.

Related Topic

Cleaning the Print Heads

Page top

Cleaning Inside the Machine

Perform bottom plate cleaning before you execute duplex printing to prevent smudges on the back side of the paper.
Also perform bottom plate cleaning if ink smudges caused by something other than print data appear on the printed page.

The procedure for performing bottom plate cleaning is as follows:

Bottom Plate Cleaning

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Bottom Plate Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

   The Bottom Plate Cleaning dialog box opens.

3. Load paper in the machine

   As instructed in the dialog box, fold the A4 size or Letter size plain paper in half horizontally, and then unfold the sheet.
   Load the paper into the rear tray in the portrait orientation with the crest of the crease facing down.

4. Perform the bottom plate cleaning

   Make sure that the machine is on and click Execute.
   Bottom plate cleaning starts.

Page top

Modificarea setărilor aparatului

Modificarea setărilor aparatului de la computer

În partea superioară a paginii

Modificarea setărilor aparatului de la computer

- Schimbarea opţiunilor de imprimare
- Înregistrarea unui profil de imprimare utilizat frecvent
- Setarea cartuşului cu cerneală
- Gestionarea consumului de energie al aparatului
- Reducerea zgomotului aparatului
- Schimbarea modului de funcţionare a aparatului

În partea superioară a paginii

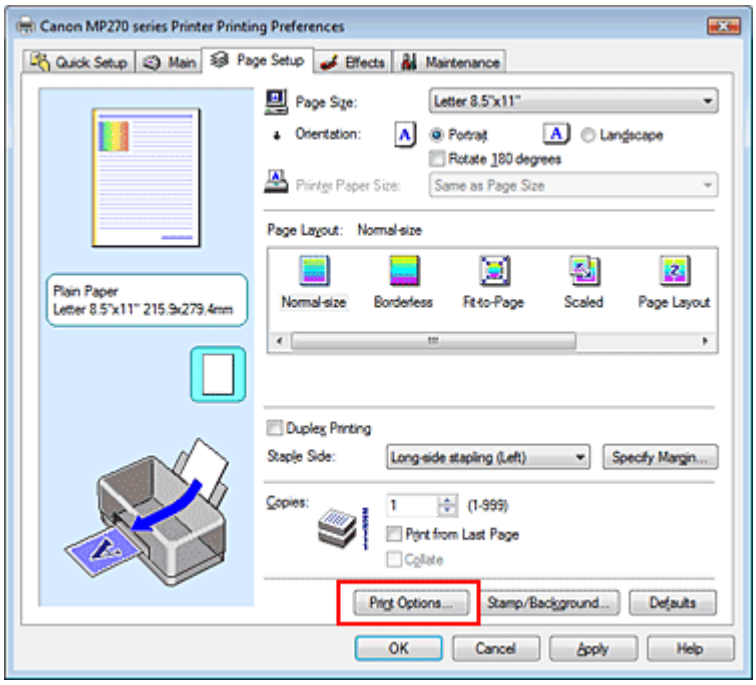
Changing the Print Options

You change the detailed print driver settings for print data that is sent from an application software.
Specify this option if you encounter print failures such as part of an image data being cut off.

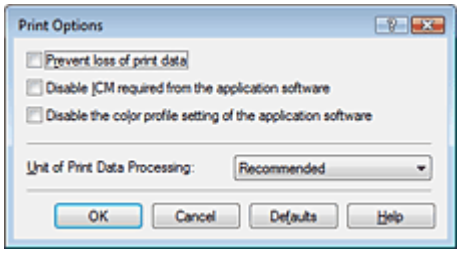
The procedure for changing the print options is as follows:

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Print Options... on the Page Setup tab



The Print Options dialog box opens.



3. Change the individual settings

If necessary, change the setting of each item, and then click OK.
The Page Setup tab is displayed again.

Page top

Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile

You can register the frequently used printing profile to Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab. Unnecessary printing profiles can be deleted at any time.

The procedure for registering a printing profile is as follows:

Registering a Printing Profile

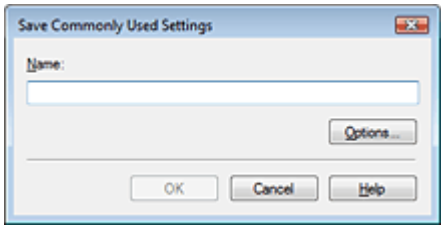
1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set the necessary items

   From Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab, select the printing profile to be used and if necessary, change the settings after Additional Features.
   You can also set necessary items on the Main, Page Setup, and Effects tab.

3. Click Save...

   The Save Commonly Used Settings dialog box opens.



4. Save the settings

   Set Name, then click OK. If necessary, set the items in Options.... The printing profile is saved, and the Quick Setup tab is displayed again.
   The name and icon are added to the Commonly Used Settings list.

Important

- To save the page size, orientation, and number of copies that was set in each sheet, click Options..., and check each item.

Note

- When you install the printer driver again or upgrade the version of the printer driver, the print settings you registered will be deleted from Commonly Used Settings.
  Registered print settings cannot be saved and preserved. If a profile is deleted, register the print settings again.

Deleting Unnecessary Printing Profile

1. Select the printing profile to be deleted

Select the printing profile you want to delete from the Commonly Used Settings list on the Quick Setup tab.

2. Delete the printing profile

Click Delete. When the confirmation message appears, click OK.
The selected printing profile is deleted from the Commonly Used Settings list.

Note

- Printing profiles that are registered in the initial settings cannot be deleted.

Page top

Setting the Ink Cartridge

This feature enables you to specify the most appropriate ink cartridge among installed cartridges according to an intended use.
When one of the ink cartridges becomes empty and cannot be replaced immediately by a new one, you can specify the other ink cartridge that still has ink and continue printing.

The procedure for specifying the ink cartridge is as follows:

Ink Cartridge Settings

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Ink Cartridge Settings on the Maintenance tab

   The Ink Cartridge Settings dialog box appears.

3. Select the ink cartridge to be used

   Select the ink cartridge to be used for printing and click OK.
   The specified ink cartridge will be used from the next printing.

Important

- When the following settings are specified, Black Only does not function because the machine uses the color ink cartridge to print documents.
  - Other than Plain Paper, Hagaki A, Hagaki, or Envelope is selected for Media Type on the Main tab
  - Borderless is selected from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab
- Do not detach an ink cartridge that is not in use. Printing cannot be performed while either ink cartridge is detached.

Page top

Managing the Machine Power

This function allows you to manage the machine power from the printer driver.

The procedure for managing the printer power is as follows:

Power Off

The Power Off function turns off the machine. When you use this function, you will not be able to turn the machine on from the printer driver.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Execute power off

   Click Power Off on the Maintenance tab. When the confirmation message appears, click OK.

   The machine power switches off, and the Maintenance tab is displayed again.

Page top

Reducing the Machine Noise

This function allows you to reduce the operating noise of the machine. Select when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer at night, etc.
Using this function may lower the print speed.

The procedure for using the quiet mode is as follows:

Quiet Mode

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Click Quiet Mode on the Maintenance tab

   The Quiet Mode dialog box opens.

3. Set the quiet mode

   If necessary, specify one of the following items:

   Do not use quiet mode
   The operating noise of the machine is at normal volume.

   Always use quiet mode
   Select this option when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the machine.

   Use quiet mode within specified time
   The operating noise of the machine can be reduced during a specified period of time.
   Set the Start time and End time when you wish the quiet mode to be activated.

   Important

   - The time specified in Start time and in End time must be different.

4. Transmit the settings

   Make sure that the machine is on and click Send.
   Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

   The settings are enabled hereafter.

Note

- Depending on print quality settings, effects of the quiet mode may be less.

Page top

Changing the Machine Operation Mode

If necessary, switch between various modes of machine operation.

The procedure for configuring settings is as follows:

Custom Settings

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Make sure that the machine is on, and then click Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab

   The Custom Settings dialog box opens.

   Note

   - If the machine is off or bi-directional communication is disabled, a message may appear because the computer cannot collect the machine status.
     If this happens, click OK to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. If necessary, complete the following settings:

   Prevent paper abrasion
   The printer can increase the gap between the print head and the paper during high-density printing to prevent paper abrasion.
   Check this check box to use this function.

   Align heads manually
   The Print Head Alignment function on the Maintenance tab is normally set to automatic head alignment, but you can change it to manual head alignment. If the printing results are unsatisfactory even after you execute automatic head alignment, see " Aligning the Print Head Position ," and execute manual head alignment.
   Check this check box to perform the manual head alignment.

   Ink Drying Wait Time
   You can set the length of the machine rest time until printing of the next page begins. Moving the slider to the right increases the pause time and moving the slider to the left decreases the time.
   If the paper gets stained because the next page is ejected before the ink on the printed page dries, increase the ink drying wait time.
   Reducing the ink drying wait time speeds up printing.

4. Transmit the settings

   Click Send, and click OK when the confirmation message appears.

   The machine operates with the modified settings hereafter.

Page top

Depanare

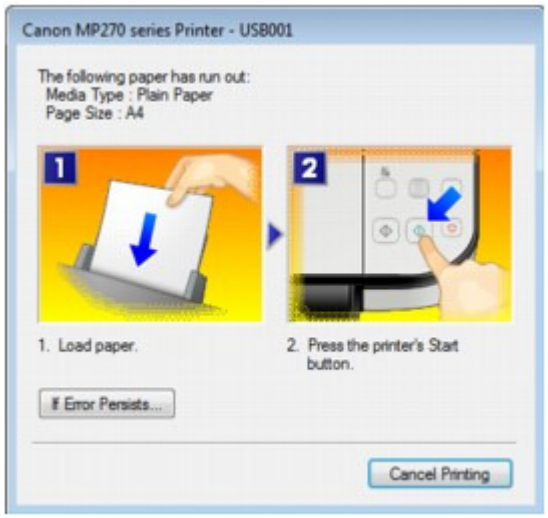
- Dacă apare o eroare
- Aparatul nu poate fi pornit
- Pe LED apare un cod de eroare
- LED-ul nu se poate vedea deloc
- Nu se poate face instalarea pentru MP Drivers
- Conectarea la computer nu se realizează corespunzător
- Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare
- Imprimarea nu începe
- Copierea/Imprimarea se opreşte înainte de a fi finalizată
- Aparatul funcţionează, dar nu este eliminată cerneală
- Viteza de imprimare este mai mică decât cea aşteptată
- Suportul de cartuş FINE nu se mută în poziţia pentru înlocuire
- Alimentarea cu hârtie nu se realizează corect
- Blocaje de hârtie
- Un mesaj apare pe ecranul computerului
- Pentru utilizatorii Windows
- Apare un mesaj de eroare pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge (numai pentru MP270 series)
- Probleme cu scanarea
- Probleme de software
- Probleme cu MP Navigator EX
- Dacă nu puteţi rezolva problema
- Întrebări frecvente
- Instrucţiuni de utilizare (driver de imprimantă)
- Note generale (driver de scaner)

În partea superioară a paginii

Dacă apare o eroare

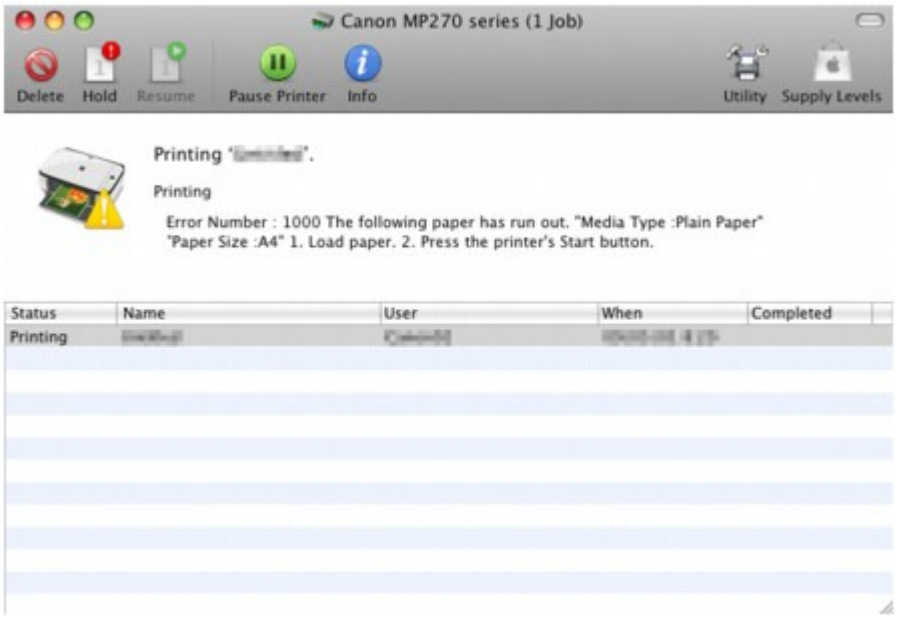
Când apare o eroare la imprimare, de exemplu dispozitivul nu mai are hârtie sau hârtia este blocată, se va afişa automat un mesaj de depanare. Efectuaţi acţiunea corespunzătoare, descrisă în mesaj. Mesajul poate varia în funcţie de versiunea sistemului de operare.

Windows

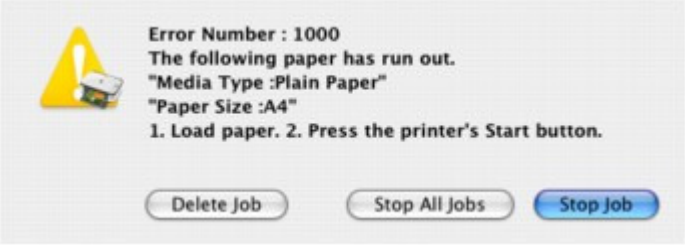


Macintosh

- **În Mac OS X v.10.5.x:**



- **În Mac OS X v.10.4.x sau Mac OS X v 10.3.9:**



În partea superioară a paginii

Aparatul nu poate fi pornit

- **Verificarea 1: Apăsaţi butonul ACTIVARE (ON).**
- **Verificarea 2: Asiguraţi-vă că fişa de alimentare este bine introdusă în conectorul cablului de alimentare al aparatului, apoi reporniţi aparatul.**
- **Verificarea 3: Deconectaţi aparatul de la sursa de alimentare, apoi reconectaţi şi reporniţi aparatul după cel puţin 2 minute.**
  Dacă problema persistă, contactaţi centrul de service.

În partea superioară a paginii

Pe LED apare un cod de eroare

Lampa de alarmă este aprinsă în portocaliu

Când survine o eroare la aparat, lampa **Alarmă (Alarm)** se aprinde în portocaliu şi pe LED sunt afişate alternativ E şi un număr (codul erorii). Verificaţi codul de eroare afişat pe LED şi luaţi măsurile corespunzătoare pentru a corecta eroarea.

* În funcţie de eroarea apărută, lampa **Alarmă (Alarm)** poate să nu fie aprinsă.

Cod de eroare	Cauză	Acţiune
E, 0, 2	Aparatul nu mai are hârtie. / Nu se realizează alimentarea cu hârtie.	Reîncărcaţi corect hârtia în tava din spate şi apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)**.
E, 0, 3	Tava de ieşire a hârtiei este închisă./Blocaj de hârtie.	Dacă tava de ieşire a hârtiei este închisă, deschideţi-o. Aparatul reia imprimarea. Dacă problema nu se rezolvă prin deschiderea tăvii de ieşire a hârtiei sau dacă la început tava a fost deschisă, este posibil ca hârtia să fie blocată. Eliminaţi blocajul de hârtie, reîncărcaţi corect hârtia în imprimantă, apoi apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)**. ➡ Blocaje de hârtie
E, 0, 4 E, 0, 5	Cartuşul FINE nu poate fi recunoscut.	Cartuşul FINE nu este instalat corespunzător sau cartuşul nu este compatibil cu acest aparat. Deschideţi Unitatea de scanare (capacul) şi instalaţi Cartuşul FINE corespunzător. Dacă eroarea persistă, contactaţi centrul de service.
E, 0, 7	Cartuşul FINE nu este instalat în poziţia corectă.	Asiguraţi-vă că fiecare cartuş FINE este instalat în poziţia corectă. ➡ Întreţinere de rutină
E, 0, 8	Absorbantul de cerneală este aproape plin.	Apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)** al aparatului pentru a continua imprimarea. Contactaţi centrul de service.
E, 0, 9 (numai pentru MP270 series)	Aparatul nu a primit răspuns de la camera digitală. Camera digitală sau camera video digitală conectată nu este compatibilă cu acest aparat.	• Verificaţi dispozitivul conectat la aparat. Imprimarea directă a fotografiilor este posibilă numai cu un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge. • Timpul de comunicare expiră dacă o operaţie sau transmisia datelor durează prea mult. Această situaţie poate duce la revocarea imprimării. În astfel de cazuri, deconectaţi şi reconectaţi cablul USB. Atunci când imprimaţi de pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge, în funcţie de modelul

		sau de marca dispozitivului dumneavoastră, este posibil să fie nevoie să selectaţi pe dispozitiv un mod de imprimare compatibil cu PictBridge înainte de a-l conecta la aparat. De asemenea, este posibil să fie nevoie să porniţi dispozitivul sau să selectaţi modul Play manual după ce conectaţi dispozitivul la aparat. Efectuaţi operaţiile necesare înainte de a conecta dispozitivul, consultând manualul de instrucţiuni al acestuia. Dacă eroarea persistă, verificaţi dacă puteţi imprima o altă fotografie.
E, 1, 3	Nu se poate detecta nivelul de cerneală.	Este posibil ca cerneala să se fi terminat. Funcţia pentru detectarea nivelului de cerneală rămasă va fi dezactivată, având ín vedere că nivelul de cerneală nu poate fi detectat în mod corect. Dacă doriţi să continuaţi imprimarea fără această funcţie apăsaţi pe butonul **[Stop/Reset] (Oprire/Reiniţializare)** timp de cel puţin 5 secunde. Canon recomandă utilizarea cartuşelor originale Canon pentru a obţine calităţi optime. Vă rugăm să reţineţi, Canon nu va răspunde pentru nicio defecţiune sau problemă cauzate de continuarea imprimării fără cerneală.
E, 1, 4	Cartuşul FINE nu poate fi recunoscut.	Cartuşul FINE nu este compatibil cu acest aparat. Instalaţi cartuşul FINE corespunzător. ➡ Întreţinere de rutină
E, 1, 5	Cartuşul FINE nu poate fi recunoscut.	Cartuşul FINE nu este instalat corespunzător. Deschideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul) şi instalaţi corect cartuşul FINE. ➡ Întreţinere de rutină
E, 1, 6	S-a terminat cerneala.	S-a terminat cerneala. Înlocuiţi cartuşul de cerneală şi închideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul). Dacă imprimarea este in curs de desfăşurare şi doriţi să continuaţi, apăsaţi butonul **[Stop/Reset] (Oprire/Reiniţializare)** pentru cel puţin 5 secunde cu cartuşul de cerneală instalat. Apoi imprimarea poate continua fără cerneală. Funcţia de detectare a nivelului de cerneală rămasă va fi dezactivată. Înlocuiţi cartuşul de cerneală gol imediat după imprimare. Calitatea imprimării rezultate nu este satisfăcătoare, dacă se continuă imprimarea fără cerneală.
E, 1, 9 (numai pentru MP270 series)	Dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge este conectat prin intermediul unui hub USB.	Dacă un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge este conectat printr-un hub USB, îndepărtaţi acest hub şi conectaţi-l direct la aparat .
E, 3, 0	Dimensiunea documentului original nu poate fi detectată corect sau documentul este prea mic atunci când este selectată copierea cu	• Asiguraţi-vă că documentul original îndeplineşte cerinţele şi că este încărcat corect pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare. • Verificaţi poziţia şi orientarea documentului original încărcat pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

	încadrare în pagină (Fit-to-Page).	
E, 3, 1	Aparatul nu este conectat la computer.	Conectaţi aparatul şi computerul cu ajutorul unui cablu USB.
E, 5, 0	Scanarea foii de aliniere a capului de imprimare a eşuat.	Apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/ Reset)** pentru a anula eroarea, apoi efectuaţi acţiunile descrise mai jos. • Asiguraţi-vă că foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare este aşezată în poziţia şi orientarea corectă pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare. • Asiguraţi-vă că suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare şi foaia de aliniere a capului de imprimare nu sunt murdare. • Asiguraţi-vă că tipul şi dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate sunt adecvate pentru alinierea automată a capului de imprimare. Pentru alinierea automată a capului de imprimare, încărcaţi întotdeauna o coală de hârtie simplă de format A4 sau Letter. • Asiguraţi-vă că duzele capului de imprimare nu sunt înfundate. Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei pentru a verifica starea capului de imprimare. ➡ Întreţinere de rutină Dacă eroarea persistă, conectaţi aparatul la computer şi aliniaţi capul de imprimare folosind opţiunile driverului de imprimantă. ➡ Alinierea poziţiei capului de imprimare

Lampa Alimentare (Power) clipeşte în verde şi lampa Alarmă (Alarm) clipeşte în portocaliu, alternativ

Când lămpile **Alimentare (Power)** şi **Alarmă (Alarm)** clipesc în mod alternativ, după cum se arată mai jos şi pe LED sunt afişate alternativ P şi un număr (cod de eroare), este posibil să fi apărut o eroare care necesită o intervenţie de service.

Cod de eroare	Acţiune
P, 0, 2	Revocaţi imprimarea, opriţi aparatul. Apoi îndepărtaţi hârtia blocată sau materialul de protejare care împiedică suportul cartuşului FINE să se deplaseze şi porniţi din nou aparatul. **Important** ▪ Aveţi grijă să nu atingeţi componentele din interiorul aparatului. Este posibil ca aparatul să nu imprime corect dacă îl atingeţi. ▪ Dacă problema persistă, contactaţi centrul de service.
P, *, *	„*, *” depinde de eroarea care a survenit.

	• Se afişează „P, 1, 0”: Opriţi aparatul şi scoateţi cablul de alimentare al aparatului din sursa de curent. Contactaţi centrul de service. • Se afişează „P, 0, 3”: Dacă în faţa aparatului se află un obiect, îndepărtaţi-l. Deschideţi cu grijă tava de ieşire a hârtiei, apoi opriţi şi porniţi din nou alimentarea. • În alte cazuri: Opriţi aparatul şi scoateţi cablul de alimentare al aparatului din sursa de curent. Reconectaţi aparatul şi porniţi-l din nou. Dacă problema persistă, contactaţi centrul de service.

În partea superioară a paginii

LED-ul nu se poate vedea deloc

- **Dacă lampa Alimentare este stinsă:**

  Aparatul nu este alimentat cu curent. Conectaţi cablul de alimentare şi apăsaţi butonul **ACTIVARE (ON)**.

- **Dacă lampa Alimentare este aprinsă:**

  Este posibil ca LED-ul să se afle în modul economizor de ecran. Pe panoul de operare, apăsaţi un buton diferit de **ACTIVARE (ON)**.

În partea superioară a paginii

Nu se poate face instalarea pentru MP Drivers

- **Dacă instalarea nu porneşte nici după ce *CD-ROM-ul de instalare (Setup CD-ROM)* este introdus în unitatea de disc a computerului:**

Windows

Începeţi instalarea urmând procedura de mai jos.

1. Faceţi clic pe Start apoi pe Computer.

   În Windows XP, faceţi clic pe Start apoi pe Computerul meu (My Computer).

   În Windows 2000, faceţi dublu clic pe pictograma My Computer de pe desktop.

2. Faceţi dublu clic pe pictograma CD-ROM din fereastra afişată.

   Dacă este afişat conţinutul CD-ROM-ului, faceţi dublu clic pe MSETUP4.EXE.

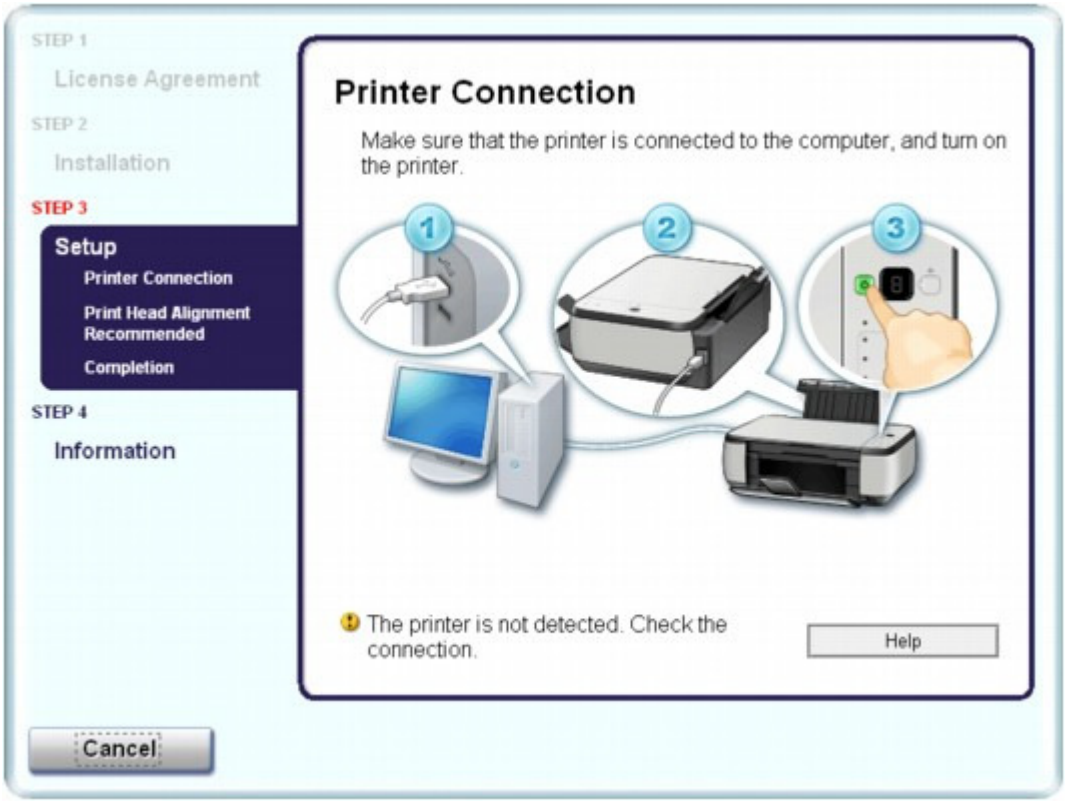
Macintosh

Faceţi dublu clic pe pictograma CD-ROM de pe desktop pentru a începe instalarea.

Notă

- Dacă pictograma CD-ROM nu este afişată, încercaţi următoarele:
  - Scoateţi CD-ROM-ul din computer, apoi introduceţi-l din nou.
  - Reporniţi computerul.
- Dacă pictograma nu este afişată nici acum, încercaţi diferite discuri şi vedeţi dacă acestea sunt afişate. Dacă sunt afişate alte discuri, înseamnă că este o problemă cu *CD-ROM-ul de instalare (Setup CD-ROM)*. În acest caz, contactaţi centrul de service.

- **Dacă nu puteţi continua dincolo de ecranul Printer Connection:**



Dacă nu puteţi trece de ecranul Printer Connection, asiguraţi-vă că aţi introdus bine cablul USB în portul USB al aparatului şi în computer, apoi urmaţi procedura de mai jos pentru a reinstala driverele MP.

Notă

- În Windows Vista, mesajul The printer is not detected. Check the connection. poate fi afişat, în funcţie de computerul pe care îl utilizaţi. În acest caz, aşteptaţi câteva momente. Dacă nici acum nu puteţi trece la pasul următor, urmaţi procedura de mai jos pentru a reinstala MP Drivers.

1. Faceţi clic pe Cancel pe ecranul Printer Connection.
2. Faceţi clic pe Start Over pe ecranul Instalation Failure.
3. Faceţi clic pe Back pe următorul ecran care apare.
4. Faceţi clic pe Exit pe ecranul PIXMA XXX şi apoi scoateţi CD-ROM-ul.
5. Opriţi aparatul.
6. Reporniţi computerul.
7. Asiguraţi-vă că nu rulează nicio aplicaţie software.
8. Introduceţi din nou CD-ROM-ul, apoi executaţi Easy Install pentru a face instalarea pentru MP Drivers.

- **În alte cazuri:**

Urmaţi procedura descrisă în manualul de instalare pentru a reinstala driverele MP.

Dacă driverele MP nu au fost instalate corect, dezinstalaţi driverele MP, reporniţi computerul şi apoi reinstalaţi driverele MP.

Ştergerea driverelor MP Drivers inutile

Dacă reinstalaţi driverele MP Drivers, executaţi Custom Install pentru *CD-ROM-ul de instalare (Setup CD-ROM)*, apoi selectaţi MP Drivers.

Windows

Notă

- Dacă programul de instalare a fost forţat să se oprească din cauza unei erori Windows, este posibil ca sistemul să fie într-o stare instabilă şi este posibil să nu puteţi instala driverele. Reporniţi computerul înainte de reinstalare.

În partea superioară a paginii

Conectarea la computer nu se realizează corespunzător

Viteza de imprimare sau de scanare este scăzută/Conexiunea USB de viteză ridicată nu funcţionează/ Windows Este afişat mesajul „This device can perform faster”

Dacă mediul sistemului dumneavoastră nu este complet compatibil cu USB de viteză ridicată, aparatul va funcţiona la o viteză mai redusă prin USB 1.1. În acest caz, aparatul funcţionează corespunzător, însă este posibil ca viteza de imprimare să se micşoreze datorită vitezei de comunicaţie.

- **Verificaţi: Verificaţi următoarele pentru a vă asigura că mediul sistemului dumneavoastră acceptă conexiunea USB de viteză ridicată.**
  - Portul USB de pe computer acceptă conexiunea USB de viteză ridicată?
  - Cablul USB şi hub-ul USB, dacă le folosiţi, suportă o conexiune USB de viteză ridicată?
    Asiguraţi-vă că utilizaţi un cablu USB de viteză ridicată certificat. Recomandăm ca lungimea cablului să nu fie mai mare de aproximativ 3 metri / 10 picioare.
  - Sistemul de operare al computerului suportă o conexiune USB de viteză ridicată?
    Obţineţi şi instalaţi cea mai recentă actualizare pentru computerul dumneavoastră.
  - Driverul de USB de viteză ridicată funcţionează corespunzător?
    Obţineţi cea mai recentă versiune a driverului de USB de viteză ridicată compatibil cu echipamentele hardware de care dispuneţi şi instalaţi-l pe computer.

Important

- Pentru detalii cu privire la USB de mare viteză în mediul sistemului dumneavoastră, contactaţi producătorul computerului, al cablului USB sau al hub-ului USB.

În partea superioară a paginii

Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare

Dacă rezultatul imprimării nu este satisfăcător din cauza liniilor albe, liniilor aliniate greşit sau a culorilor neuniforme, verificaţi mai întâi hârtia şi setările de calitate a imprimării.

- **Verificarea 1: Dimensiunea paginii şi setările tipului de suport se potrivesc cu dimensiunea şi tipul hârtiei încărcate?**

  Când aceste setări sunt incorecte, nu puteţi obţine un rezultat corect al imprimării.

  La imprimarea unei fotografii sau a unei ilustraţii, setarea incorectă a tipului de hârtie poate reduce calitatea culorii imprimării.

  De asemenea, imprimarea cu o setare incorectă a tipului de hârtie poate duce la zgârierea suprafeţei imprimate.

  La imprimarea fără chenar, culorile neuniforme pot apărea în funcţie de combinaţia setării tipului de hârtie şi hârtia încărcată.

  - **Numai pentru MP270 series**

Pentru a copia operând aparatul	Confirmaţi utilizând panoul de operare al aparatului. ➡ Copierea
Pentru a imprima pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge	Confirmaţi utilizând dispozitivul dumneavoastră compatibil PictBridge. ➡ Imprimarea fotografiilor direct de pe un dispozitiv compatibil (numai pentru MP270 series)
Pentru a imprima de pe un computer	Confirmaţi utilizând driverul de imprimantă. ➡ Imprimarea cu Configurare uşoară

  - **Numai pentru MP250 series**

Pentru a copia operând aparatul	Confirmaţi utilizând panoul de operare al aparatului. ➡ Copierea
Pentru a imprima de pe un computer	Confirmaţi utilizând driverul de imprimantă. ➡ Imprimarea cu Configurare uşoară

- **Verificarea 2: Asiguraţi-vă că este selectată calitatea imprimării corespunzătoare în funcţie de tipul de suport şi de datele de imprimare, utilizând driverul de imprimantă.**

  Selectaţi o opţiune de calitate a imprimării potrivită pentru hârtia şi imaginea de imprimat. Dacă observaţi zone neclare sau culori neuniforme, măriţi setarea calităţii imprimării şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou.
  Confirmaţi setarea calităţii imprimării utilizând driverul de imprimantă.

  ➡ Modificarea calităţii imprimării şi corectarea datelor de imagine

  Notă

  - Numai pentru MP270 series:
    Nu puteţi modifica setarea calităţii de imprimare de pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge.

- **Verificarea 3: Dacă problema persistă, pot exista alte cauze.**

  Consultaţi şi secţiunile de mai jos:

  ➡ Nu se efectuează imprimarea completă

  ➡ Rezultate imprimare inexistente/Imprimarea este neclară/Culorile sunt greşite/Linii albe

  ➡ Culorile nu sunt clare

- Liniile sunt aliniate greşit
- Hârtia imprimată se ondulează sau prezintă pete de cerneală
- Hârtia este pătată/Suprafaţa imprimată este zgâriată
- Hârtia este pătată pe verso
- Linii verticale sunt imprimate pe marginile paginii imprimate
- Culorile sunt neuniforme sau prezintă dungi

În partea superioară a paginii

Nu se efectuează imprimarea completă

- **Verificarea 1: Dimensiunea datelor imprimate este extrem de mare?**

  Windows

  Faceţi clic pe Print Options în foaia Page Setup. Apoi, bifaţi caseta de selectare Prevent loss of print data din caseta de dialog afişată.

- **Verificarea 2: Aveţi suficient spaţiu pe hard diskul computerului?**

  Ştergeţi fişierele inutile pentru a elibera spaţiu pe disc.

În partea superioară a paginii

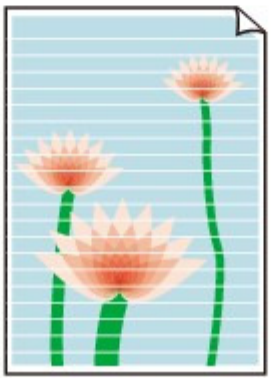
Rezultate imprimare inexistente/Imprimarea este neclară/ Culorile sunt greşite/Linii albe

No Printing Results

Printing Is Blurred

Colors Are Wrong

White Streaks



- **Verificarea 1: Aţi confirmat setările de hârtie şi de calitate a imprimării?**

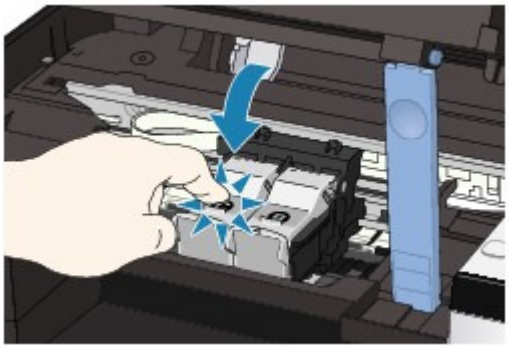
  ➡ Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare

- **Verificarea 2: Cartuşul FINE este instalat corect?**

  În cazul în care capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală nu este închis bine, este posibil ca cerneala să nu fie eliberată corect.

  Deschideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul), deschideţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală, apoi închideţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală.

  Când închideţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală, împingeţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală până când se fixează cu un clic.



- **Verificarea 3: Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei şi realizaţi orice operaţiune de întreţinere necesară, cum ar fi curăţarea capului de imprimare.**

  Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei pentru a stabili dacă cerneala iese corespunzător din duzele capului de imprimare.
  Consultaţi Întreţinere de rutină pentru imprimarea modelului de verificare a duzei, curăţarea capului de imprimare şi curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare.

  - Dacă modelul de verificare a duzei nu este imprimat corect:
    După curăţarea capului de imprimare, imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei şi analizaţi modelul.
  - Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea capului de imprimare de două ori:
    Curăţaţi capul de imprimare în profunzime.
    Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare, opriţi aparatul şi efectuaţi o altă curăţare în profunzime după 24 de ore.
  - Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare de două ori:
    Este posibil ca cerneala să se fi terminat. Înlocuiţi cartuşul FINE.

- **Verificarea 4: Atunci când cartuşul FINE rămâne fără cerneală, înlocuiţi-l cu unul nou.**

- **Verificarea 5: La folosirea hârtiei cu o suprafaţă imprimabilă, asiguraţi-vă că hârtia este încărcată cu suprafaţa imprimabilă orientată în sus.**

  Imprimarea pe partea greşită a unei astfel de hârtii poate cauza imprimări neclare sau imprimări de calitate redusă.

  Pentru informaţii detaliate despre partea imprimabilă, consultaţi manualul de instrucţiuni furnizat împreună cu hârtia.

- **Verificarea 6: Suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare este murdară?**

  Curăţaţi suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

  ➡ Curăţarea suprafeţei de sticlă de scanare şi a capacului pentru documente

- **Pentru copiere, consultaţi şi secţiunile de mai jos:**

- **Verificarea 7: Asiguraţi-vă că documentul original este încărcat corect pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.**

  Încărcarea hârtiei/documentelor originale

- **Verificarea 8: Documentul original este încărcat pe suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare cu partea de copiat orientată în jos?**

- **Verificarea 9: Aţi copiat o imprimare realizată de acest aparat?**

  Numai pentru MP270 series, imprimaţi direct de pe camera digitală sau imprimaţi din nou de pe computer.

  Numai pentru MP250 series, imprimaţi din nou de pe computer.

  În cazul în care copiaţi o imprimare realizată de acest aparat, este posibil să se reducă nivelul de calitate al imprimării.

În partea superioară a paginii

Culorile nu sunt clare

- **Verificarea 1: Activare corecţie culoare.**

  La imprimarea fotografiilor sau a altor grafice, activarea corecţiei de culoare în driverul de imprimantă poate îmbunătăţi culoarea.

  Windows

  Selectaţi Vivid photo în ecranul Effects din caseta de dialog cu proprietăţile imprimantei.

  Macintosh

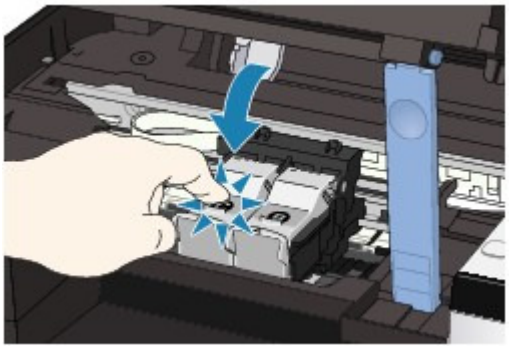
  Selectaţi Color options în meniul pop-up din caseta de dialog Print, apoi selectaţi Vivid Photo în Color Mode.
  În Mac OS X v 10.4.x sau Mac OS X v 10.3.9, selectaţi Special Effects în caseta de dialog Print, apoi selectaţi Vivid Photo.

- **Verificarea 2: Cartuşul FINE este instalat corect?**

  În cazul în care capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală nu este închis bine, este posibil ca cerneala să nu fie eliberată corect.

  Deschideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul), deschideţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală, apoi închideţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală.

  Când închideţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală, împingeţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală până când se fixează cu un clic.



- **Verificarea 3: Atunci când cartuşul FINE rămâne fără cerneală, înlocuiţi-l cu unul nou.**

- **Verificarea 4: Modelul de verificare a duzei este imprimat corect?**

  Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei pentru a stabili dacă cerneala iese corespunzător din duzele capului de imprimare.

  Consultaţi Întreţinere de rutină pentru imprimarea modelului de verificare a duzei, curăţarea capului de imprimare şi curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare.

  - Dacă modelul de verificare a duzei nu este imprimat corect:
    După curăţarea capului de imprimare, imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei şi analizaţi modelul.
  - Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea capului de imprimare de două ori:
    Curăţaţi capul de imprimare în profunzime.
    Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare, opriţi aparatul şi efectuaţi o altă curăţare în profunzime după 24 de ore.
  - Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare de două ori:
    Este posibil ca cerneala să se fi terminat. Înlocuiţi cartuşul FINE.

Notă

- Culorile imprimate pot să nu corespundă culorilor de pe ecran din cauza diferenţelor de bază între metodele utilizate pentru producerea culorilor. De asemenea, setările de control al culorii şi diferenţele de mediu pot afecta modul de afişare a culorilor pe ecran.

În partea superioară a paginii

Liniile sunt aliniate greşit

- **Verificarea 1: Aţi confirmat setările de hârtie şi de calitate a imprimării?**

  Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare

- **Verificarea 2: Efectuaţi alinierea capului de imprimare.**

  Dacă nu aţi aliniat capul de imprimare după instalare, liniile drepte pot fi imprimate nealiniat.

  Alinierea capului de imprimare

  Notă

  - Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după alinierea capului de imprimare, aliniaţi capul de imprimare manual conform indicaţiilor din Alinierea poziţiei capului de imprimare.

  Windows

- **Verificarea 3: Dimensiunea datelor imprimate este extrem de mare?**

  Faceţi clic pe Print Options în foaia Page Setup. Apoi, bifaţi caseta de selectare Prevent loss of print data din caseta de dialog afişată.

- **Verificarea 4: Se foloseşte funcţia Page Layout Printing sau Binding margin?**

  Când se foloseşte funcţia Page Layout Printing sau Binding margin, există posibilitatea ca liniile subţiri să nu fie imprimate. Încercaţi să îngroşaţi liniile din document.

În partea superioară a paginii

Hârtia imprimată se ondulează sau prezintă pete de cerneală

Printed Paper Curls

Printed Paper Has Ink Blots

- **Verificarea 1: Aţi confirmat setările de hârtie şi de calitate a imprimării?**

  Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare

- **Verificarea 2: Dacă intensitatea e setată la o valoare mare, reduceţi setarea Intensity din driverul de imprimantă şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou.**

  Dacă folosiţi hârtie simplă pentru a imprima imagini cu intensitate mare, hârtia poate absorbi prea multă cerneală şi poate deveni ondulată, cauzând abraziunea hârtiei.

  Confirmaţi intensitatea utilizând driverul de imprimantă.

  Ajustarea intensităţii

- **Verificarea 3: Se foloseşte hârtie fotografică la imprimarea fotografiilor?**

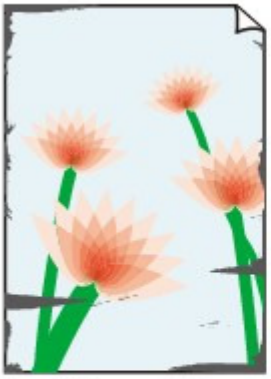
  La imprimarea de date cu o saturaţie mare a culorii, precum fotografiile sau imaginile cu culori intense, recomandăm folosirea Photo Paper Plus Glossy II sau a altei hârtii speciale Canon.

  Încărcarea hârtiei/documentelor originale

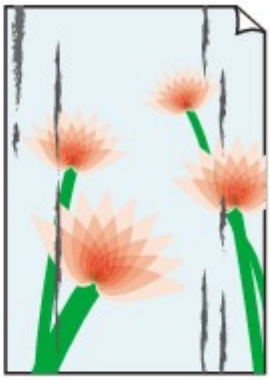
În partea superioară a paginii

Hârtia este pătată/Suprafaţa imprimată este zgâriată

Paper Is Smudged



The Edges of Paper Are Smudged



Printed Surface Is Smudged

Printed Surface Is Scratched

- **Verificarea 1: Aţi confirmat setările de hârtie şi de calitate a imprimării?**

  ➡ Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare

- **Verificarea 2: Se foloseşte tipul potrivit de hârtie? Verificaţi următoarele:**
  - Verificaţi dacă hârtia pe care imprimaţi este potrivită pentru scopul imprimării.
    ➡ Încărcarea hârtiei/documentelor originale
  - Când efectuaţi Imprimare fără margini, asiguraţi-vă că hârtia folosită este potrivită pentru imprimare fără margini.
    Dacă hârtia folosită nu este potrivită pentru imprimarea fără margini, calitatea imprimării se poate reduce la marginile de sus şi de jos ale hârtiei .
    ➡ Zonă de imprimare

- **Verificarea 3: Încărcaţi hârtia după corectarea ondulaţiei.**
  - **Pentru hârtia simplă**

    Întoarceţi hârtia şi reîncărcaţi-o pentru a imprima pe cealaltă parte.

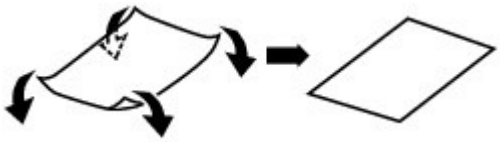
    Dacă lăsaţi hârtia în tava din spate pentru un timp îndelungat, hârtia se poate ondula. În acest caz, încărcaţi hârtia cu cealaltă parte orientată în sus. Astfel, problema ar putea fi rezolvată.

    Recomandăm aşezarea hârtiei nefolosite înapoi în pachet şi păstrarea ei pe o suprafaţă plană.

  - **Pentru altă hârtie**

    Dacă ondulaţia de la cele patru colţuri ale hârtiei are o înălţime mai mare de 0,1 inch/3 mm (A), hârtia poate fi pătată sau poate fi alimentată incorect. În astfel de cazuri, urmaţi procedura descrisă mai jos pentru a corecta ondulaţia hârtiei.

1. Rulaţi hârtia în direcţia opusă ondulaţiei hârtiei, aşa cum este prezentat mai jos.

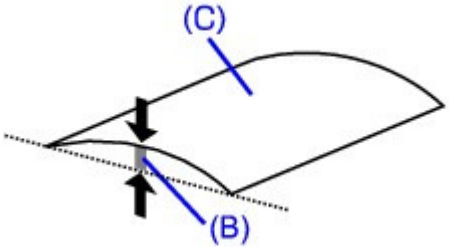


2. Verificaţi dacă acum hârtia este întinsă.

   Recomandăm imprimarea hârtiei cu ondulaţie corectată câte o coală pe rând.

Notă

- În funcţie de tipul suportului, hârtia poate fi pătată sau poate fi alimentată incorect chiar dacă nu este ondulată în interior. În astfel de cazuri, urmaţi procedura descrisă mai jos pentru a ondula hârtia în exterior pentru înălţimi mai mici de 0,1 inch/3 mm (B) înainte de imprimare. Astfel, este posibilă o îmbunătăţire a rezultatului imprimării.



(C) Latura de imprimare
Recomandăm imprimarea hârtiei care a fost ondulată în exterior câte o coală pe rând.

- **Verificarea 4: Dacă imprimaţi pe hârtie groasă, selectaţi setarea Prevent paper abrasion.**

Selectând setarea Prevent paper abrasion se va mări spaţiul liber dintre capul de imprimare şi hârtia încărcată. Dacă observaţi semne de abraziune chiar şi când tipul de suport este setat corect pentru a se potrivi hârtiei încărcate, setaţi aparatul pentru a preveni abraziunea hârtiei utilizând Panoul de operare sau driverul de imprimantă.

Viteza de imprimare se va reduce dacă selectaţi setarea Prevent paper abrasion.

* Dezactivaţi setarea Prevent paper abrasion după ce se finalizează imprimarea. În caz contrar, această setare rămâne activată pentru toate lucrările de imprimare ulterioare.

- **Pentru setare de pe panoul de operare**

  Apăsaţi repetat butonul **Întreţinere (Maintenance)**, până când pe LED apare r, apoi apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** pentru a activa funcţia Prevent paper abrasion.
  Pentru a dezactiva funcţia Prevent paper abrasion, apăsaţi butonul **Întreţinere (Maintenance)**, până când pe LED apare r, apoi apăsaţi butonul **Culoare (Color)**.

- **Pentru setare cu ajutorul driverului de imprimantă**

  Windows

  Deschideţi caseta de dialog cu proprietăţile imprimantei şi, în Custom Settings din fişa Maintenance, selectaţi caseta Prevent paper abrasion şi apoi faceţi clic pe Send.
  Pentru a deschide caseta de dialog cu proprietăţile imprimantei, consultaţi Deschiderea casetei de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties) (Windows) .

  Macintosh

  În Utilitarul imprimantei Canon IJ, selectaţi Custom Settings din meniul pop-up, selectaţi caseta Prevent paper abrasion şi apoi faceţi clic pe Send.
  Pentru a deschide Canon IJ Printer Utility, consultaţi Deschiderea utilitarului Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh) .

- **Verificarea 5: Dacă intensitatea e setată la o valoare mare, reduceţi setarea Intensity din driverul de imprimantă şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou.**

Dacă folosiţi hârtie simplă pentru a imprima imagini cu intensitate mare, hârtia poate absorbi prea multă cerneală şi poate deveni ondulată, cauzând abraziunea hârtiei.

Reduceţi setarea Intensity din driverul pentru imprimantă şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou.

Windows

1. Deschideţi caseta de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties).

   Deschiderea casetei de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties) (Windows)

   Faceţi clic aici pentru MP270 series: Driver de imprimantă

   Faceţi clic aici pentru MP250 series: Driver de imprimantă

   * Înainte de a face clic aici pentru a deschide caseta de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties), părăsiţi software-ul de aplicaţie care rulează în prezent.

2. În foaia Main, selectaţi Manual pentru Color/Intensity, apoi faceţi clic pe Set.

3. Trageţi bara cursorului Intensity pe foaia Color adjustment pentru ajustarea intensităţii.

Macintosh

1. Deschideţi caseta de dialog Print.

   Deschiderea casetelor de dialog Page Setup şi Print (Macintosh)

2. Selectaţi Color options din meniul pop-up.

3. Trageţi bara glisantă Intensity pentru a seta intensitatea.

- **Verificarea 6: Imprimarea se efectuează dincolo de zona de imprimare recomandată?**

  Dacă imprimarea se efectuează dincolo de zona de imprimare recomandată a hârtiei de imprimat, marginea de jos a hârtiei se poate păta cu cerneală.

  Redimensionaţi documentul original în software-ul aplicaţiei.

  Zonă de imprimare

- **Verificarea 7: Suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare este murdară?**

  Curăţaţi suprafaţa de sticlă de scanare.

  Curăţarea suprafeţei de sticlă de scanare şi a capacului pentru documente

- **Verificarea 8: Interiorul aparatului este murdar?**

  Când imprimaţi faţă-verso, interiorul aparatului se poate păta cu cerneală, cauzând pătarea paginii imprimate.

  Curăţaţi placa de la bază pentru a curăţa interiorul aparatului.

  Întreţinere de rutină

Notă

- Pentru a preveni pătarea interiorului aparatului, setaţi corect dimensiunea hârtiei.

- **Verificarea 9: Setaţi Ink Drying Wait Time la o valoare mai mare.**

  Astfel, suprafaţa imprimată are suficient timp să se usuce pentru a preveni pătarea şi zgârierea hârtiei.

Windows

1. Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este pus în funcţiune.

2. Deschideţi caseta de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties).

   Deschiderea casetei de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties) (Windows)

3. Faceţi clic pe fila Maintenance, apoi pe Custom Settings.

4. Trageţi bara glisantă Ink Drying Wait Time pentru a seta timpul de aşteptare, apoi faceţi clic pe Send.

5. Confirmaţi mesajul şi faceţi clic pe OK.

Macintosh

1. Asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este pus în funcţiune.

2. Deschideţi Canon IJ Printer Utility.

   Deschiderea utilitarului Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh)

3. Selectaţi Custom Settings din meniul pop-up.

4. Trageţi bara glisantă Ink Drying Wait Time pentru a seta timpul de aşteptare, apoi faceţi clic pe Send.

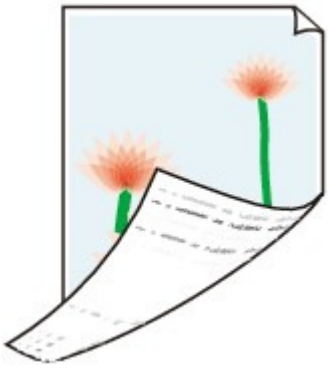
5. Confirmaţi mesajul şi faceţi clic pe OK.

- **Verificarea 10: Este hârtia zgâriată de altă hârtie încărcată?**

  În funcţie de tipul suportului, hârtia poate fi zgâriată de altă hârtie încărcată, atunci când se alimentează din tava din spate. În acest caz, încărcaţi câte o coală pe rând.

În partea superioară a paginii

Hârtia este pătată pe verso



- **Verificarea 1: Aţi confirmat setările de hârtie şi de calitate a imprimării?**

  Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare

- **Verificarea 2: Curăţaţi placa de la bază pentru a curăţa interiorul aparatului.**

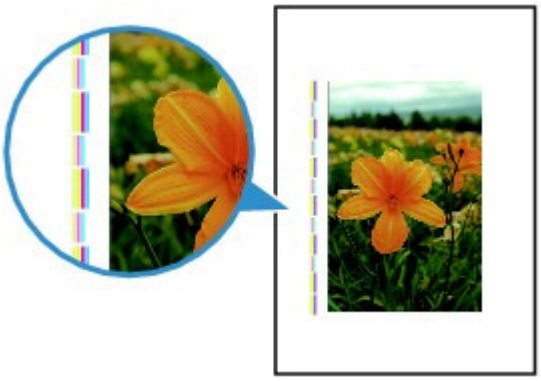
  Întreţinere de rutină

Notă

- Când efectuaţi imprimare fără chenar, imprimare faţă-verso sau când imprimaţi prea mult, interiorul se poate păta cu cerneală.

În partea superioară a paginii

Linii verticale sunt imprimate pe marginile paginii imprimate



- **Verificarea 1: Aţi confirmat setările tipului de hârtie şi de calitate a imprimării?**

  Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare

- **Verificarea 2: Dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate este corectă?**

  Este posibil ca liniile verticale să se imprime pe margine dacă dimensiunea hârtiei încărcate este mai mare decât cea specificată în driverul de imprimantă.

  Setaţi corect dimensiunea hârtiei, în conformitate cu hârtia încărcată.

  Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare

Notă

- Direcţia modelului liniilor verticale poate varia în funcţie de datele imagine sau de setarea de imprimare.
- Acest aparat efectuează o curăţare automată, atunci când este necesar, pentru a menţine imprimările curate. Pentru curăţare este eliberată o cantitate mică de cerneală.
  Deşi, de obicei, cerneala este eliberată pe absorbantul de cerneală, aceasta poate fi eliberată şi pe hârtie dacă încărcaţi hârtie mai mare decât cea specificată în driverul de imprimantă.

În partea superioară a paginii

Culorile sunt neuniforme sau prezintă dungi

Colors Are Uneven

Colors Are Streaked

- **Verificarea 1: Aţi confirmat setările de hârtie şi de calitate a imprimării?**

  ➡ Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare

- **Verificarea 2: Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei şi realizaţi orice operaţiune de întreţinere necesară, cum ar fi curăţarea capului de imprimare.**

  Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei pentru a stabili dacă cerneala iese corespunzător din duzele capului de imprimare.
  Consultaţi Întreţinere de rutină pentru imprimarea modelului de verificare a duzei, curăţarea capului de imprimare şi curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare.

  - Dacă modelul de verificare a duzei nu este imprimat corect:
    După curăţarea capului de imprimare, imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei şi analizaţi modelul.
  - Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea capului de imprimare de două ori:
    Curăţaţi capul de imprimare în profunzime.
    Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare, opriţi aparatul şi efectuaţi o altă curăţare în profunzime după 24 de ore.
  - Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare de două ori:
    Este posibil ca cerneala să se fi terminat. Înlocuiţi cartuşul FINE.

- **Verificarea 3: Efectuaţi alinierea capului de imprimare.**

Alinierea capului de imprimare

Notă

- Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după alinierea capului de imprimare, aliniaţi capul de imprimare manual conform indicaţiilor din Alinierea poziţiei capului de imprimare.

În partea superioară a paginii

Imprimarea nu începe

- **Verificarea 1: Asiguraţi-vă că fişa de alimentare este conectată bine, apoi porniţi aparatul.**

  În timp ce lampa **Alimentare (Power)** clipeşte în verde, dispozitivul se iniţializează. Aşteptaţi până când lampa **Alimentare (Power)** se opreşte din clipit şi rămâne aprinsă în verde.

  Notă

  - Când se imprimă un volum mare de date, precum fotografii sau grafice, este posibil ca începerea imprimării să dureze mai mult. În timp ce lampa **Alimentare (Power)** clipeşte în verde, computerul procesează datele şi le trimite către aparat. Aşteptaţi până începe imprimarea.

- **Verificarea 2: Asiguraţi-vă de conectarea corespunzătoare a cablului USB la aparat şi la computer, apoi verificaţi următoarele:**
  - Dacă folosiţi un dispozitiv de retransmisie, precum un hub USB, deconectaţi-l, conectaţi dispozitivul direct la computer şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou. Dacă imprimarea porneşte normal, există o problemă la dispozitivul de retransmisie. Consultaţi vânzătorul dispozitivului de retransmisie pentru detalii.
  - Ar putea fi şi o problemă cu cablul USB. Înlocuiţi cablul USB şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou.

- **Verificarea 3: Reporniţi computerul dacă imprimaţi de la computer.**

  Dacă există lucrări de imprimare inutile, ştergeţi-le.

  ➡ Ştergerea unei operaţiuni de imprimare nedorite

- **Verificarea 4: Asiguraţi-vă că numele aparatului este selectat în caseta de dialog Imprimare (Print).**

  Aparatul nu va imprima corect dacă folosiţi un driver pentru o altă imprimantă.

  În Windows, asiguraţi-vă că numele aparatului este selectat în caseta de dialog Imprimare (Print).

  În Macintosh, asiguraţi-vă că numele aparatului este selectat în Printer din caseta de dialog Print.

  Notă

  - Pentru ca aparatul să fie cel selectat implicit, selectaţi Se stabileşte ca imprimantă implicită (Set as Default Printer) (Windows), Default Printer sau Make default (Macintosh).

Windows

- **Verificarea 5: Configuraţi corespunzător portul imprimantei.**

  Configuraţi „USBnnn” (unde „n” este un număr) ca port al imprimantei.

  1. Autentificaţi-vă într-un cont de utilizator cu drepturi de administrator.

  2. Faceţi clic pe Panou de control (Control Panel), apoi pe Imprimantă (Printer) în Hardware şi sunet (Hardware and Sound).

     În Windows XP, faceţi clic pe Panou de control (Control Panel), Imprimante şi alte echipamente hardware (Printers and Other Hardware), apoi pe Imprimante şi faxuri (Printers and Faxes).
     În Windows 2000, faceţi clic pe Control Panel, apoi pe Printers.

  3. Faceţi clic dreapta pe pictograma Imprimantă Canon XXX (Canon XXX Printer),

apoi selectaţi Proprietăţi (Properties).

4. Faceţi clic pe fila Porturi (Ports) pentru a confirma setările portului.

   Asiguraţi-vă că un port denumit USBnnn (unde „n” este un număr) cu Canon XXX Printer în coloana Imprimantă (Printer) este selectat pentru Se imprimă la următoarele port-uri (Print to the following port(s)).
   Dacă setarea este incorectă, reinstalaţi driverele MP sau schimbaţi portul de imprimantă cu cel corect.

- **Verificarea 6: Dimensiunea datelor imprimate este extrem de mare?**

  Faceţi clic pe Print Options în foaia Page Setup. Apoi, bifaţi caseta de selectare Prevent loss of print data din caseta de dialog afişată.

În partea superioară a paginii

Copierea/Imprimarea se opreşte înainte de a fi finalizată

- **Verificarea 1: Aparatul a imprimat continuu pentru o perioadă îndelungată?**

  Dacă aparatul a imprimat în continuu pentru o perioadă îndelungată, capul de imprimare poate fi supraîncălzit. Pentru a proteja capul de imprimare, aparatul se poate opri din imprimat la un sfârşit de linie pentru o perioadă de timp şi apoi poate relua imprimarea.

  În acest caz, întrerupeţi sesiunea de imprimare la un moment convenabil şi opriţi aparatul pentru cel puţin 15 minute.

  În plus, dacă aparatul a imprimat grafice sau fotografii cu culori intense în continuu într-un interval de timp, aparatul se poate opri din imprimare pentru a proteja capul de imprimare. În acest caz, imprimarea nu se va relua automat. Opriţi aparatul pentru cel puţin 15 minute.

  Atenţie

  - Capul de imprimare şi zona adiacentă pot deveni extrem de fierbinţi în interiorul aparatului. Nu atingeţi niciodată capul de imprimare sau componentele din apropiere.

- **Verificarea 2: Hârtia este încărcată?**

  Asiguraţi-vă că hârtia este încărcată în tava din spate.

  Dacă dispozitivul a rămas fără hârtie, încărcaţi hârtie.

- **Verificarea 3: Documentele imprimate conţin multe fotografii sau ilustraţii?**

  Imprimarea de fişiere mari, cum ar fi fotografii sau grafice, necesită un timp mai mare de procesare pentru aparat şi computer, în timpul căruia aparatul poate părea că s-a oprit din funcţionare.

  În plus, la imprimarea de date în continuu pe hârtie simplă, pentru care se foloseşte o cantitate mare de cerneală, aparatul poate face o pauză temporară. Oricare ar fi situaţia, aşteptaţi până la finalizarea procesului.

  Notă

  - Dacă imprimaţi un document cu o zonă de imprimare mare sau imprimaţi mai multe copii ale unui document, imprimarea poate face o pauză pentru a permite cernelii să se usuce.

- **Verificarea 4: În cazul în care copierea se opreşte înainte de finalizare, încercaţi să copiaţi din nou.**

  Dacă trece un anumit timp după ce au apărut unele erori în timpul copierii, dispozitivul se opreşte din funcţionare.

În partea superioară a paginii

Aparatul funcţionează, dar nu este eliminată cerneală

- **Verificarea 1: Sunt înfundate duzele capului de imprimare?**

  Imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei pentru a stabili dacă cerneala iese corespunzător din duzele capului de imprimare.

  Consultaţi Întreţinere de rutină pentru imprimarea modelului de verificare a duzei, curăţarea capului de imprimare şi curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare.

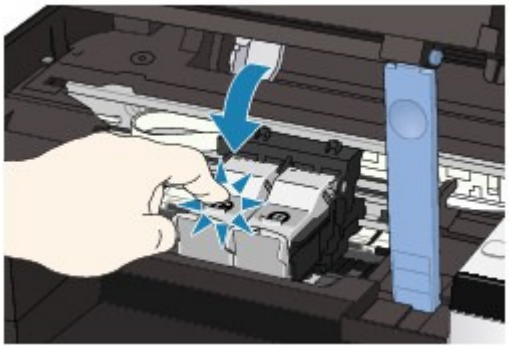
  - Dacă modelul de verificare a duzei nu este imprimat corect:
    După curăţarea capului de imprimare, imprimaţi modelul de verificare a duzei şi analizaţi modelul.
  - Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea capului de imprimare de două ori:
    Curăţaţi capul de imprimare în profunzime.
    Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare, opriţi aparatul şi efectuaţi o altă curăţare în profunzime după 24 de ore.
  - Dacă problema nu se rezolvă după curăţarea în profunzime a capului de imprimare de două ori:
    Este posibil ca cerneala să se fi terminat. Înlocuiţi cartuşul FINE.

- **Verificarea 2: Cartuşul FINE este instalat corect?**

  În cazul în care capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală nu este închis bine, este posibil ca cerneala să nu fie eliberată corect.

  Deschideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul), deschideţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală, apoi închideţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală.

  Când închideţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală, împingeţi capacul de blocare a cartuşelor cu cerneală până când se fixează cu un clic.



- **Verificarea 3: Atunci când cartuşul FINE rămâne fără cerneală, înlocuiţi-l cu unul nou.**

În partea superioară a paginii

Viteza de imprimare este mai mică decât cea aşteptată

- **Verificarea 1: Imprimarea se face în Quiet Mode?**

  Viteza de imprimare se reduce dacă specificaţi să se imprime în Quiet mode în driverul de imprimantă. Pentru o imprimare mai rapidă, nu imprimaţi în Quiet mode.

  ➡ Reducerea zgomotului aparatului

- **Verificarea 2: Calitatea imprimării este setată la o valoare prea mare?**

  Măriţi valoarea setării vitezei de imprimare în driverul de imprimantă. Setarea de prioritizare a vitezei face imprimarea mai rapidă.

  Windows

  1. Deschideţi caseta de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties).

     ➡ Deschiderea casetei de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties) (Windows)

     Faceţi clic aici pentru MP270 series: Driver de imprimantă

     Faceţi clic aici pentru MP250 series: Driver de imprimantă

     * Înainte de a face clic aici pentru a deschide caseta de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties), părăsiţi software-ul de aplicaţie care rulează în prezent.

  2. În fila Main, selectaţi Fast pentru a seta Print quality.

     În funcţie de tipul de suport, este posibil ca opţiunea Fast să nu fie disponibilă.

  Macintosh

  1. Deschideţi caseta de dialog Print.

     ➡ Deschiderea casetelor de dialog Page Setup şi Print (Macintosh)

  2. Selectaţi Quality & Media în meniul pop-up după care selectaţi Fast pentru setarea Print quality.

     În funcţie de tipul de suport, este posibil ca opţiunea Fast să nu fie disponibilă.

Notă

- Este posibil ca viteza de imprimare să nu se îmbunătăţească remarcabil urmând instrucţiunile de mai sus, în funcţie de mediul sistemului.

În partea superioară a paginii

Suportul de cartuş FINE nu se mută în poziţia pentru înlocuire

- **Verificarea 1: Este lampa Alimentare (Power) stinsă?**

  Verificaţi dacă lampa **Alimentare (Power)** este aprinsă verde.

  Suportul de cartuş FINE nu se va muta decât atunci când alimentarea funcţionează. Dacă lampa **Alimentare (Power)** este stinsă, închideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul) şi porniţi aparatul.

  În timp ce lampa **Alimentare (Power)** clipeşte verde, dispozitivul se iniţializează. Aşteptaţi până când lampa **Alimentare (Power)** nu mai clipeşte şi rămâne aprinsă verde şi apoi deschideţi din nou unitatea de scanare (capacul).

- **Verificarea 2: Este afişat un cod de eroare pe LED?**

  Închideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul), confirmaţi codul de eroare afişat, efectuaţi acţiunea corespunzătoare pentru a rezolva eroarea, apoi redeschideţi unitatea de scanare. Pentru detalii privind rezolvarea acestei erori, consultaţi Pe LED apare un cod de eroare.

- **Verificarea 3: Unitatea de scanare (capacul) a fost lăsat deschisă cel puţin 10 minute?**

  Dacă unitatea de scanare (capacul) este lăsată deschisă mai mult de 10 minute, suportul de cartuş FINE se mută către dreapta pentru a preveni uscarea capului de imprimare. Închideţi şi redeschideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul) pentru a întoarce suportul de cartuş FINE spre stânga.

- **Verificarea 4: Aparatul a imprimat în continuu pentru o perioadă îndelungată?**

  Închideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul), aşteptaţi un timp şi apoi deschideţi-o din nou.

  Dacă aparatul a imprimat în continuu pentru un timp îndelungat, este posibil ca suportul cartuşului FINE să nu se deplaseze către mijloc deoarece capul de imprimare se poate supraîncălzi.

Notă

- Deschiderea unităţii de scanare (capacul) în timpul imprimării mută suportul de cartuş FINE spre dreapta. Închideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul) şi redeschideţi-o după finalizarea imprimării.

În partea superioară a paginii

Alimentarea cu hârtie nu se realizează corect

- **Verificarea 1: Asiguraţi-vă de următoarele când încărcaţi hârtia.**
  - Când încărcaţi două sau mai multe coli de hârtie, răsfoiţi-le înainte de încărcare.

  - Când încărcaţi două sau mai multe coli de hârtie, asiguraţi-vă că teancul de hârtie nu depăşeşte limita de încărcare a hârtiei.
    Totuşi, este posibil ca alimentarea corespunzătoare să nu fie posibilă la capacitatea maximă, în funcţie de tipul de hârtie sau de condiţiile de mediu (fie temperaturi foarte ridicate sau joase şi umiditate). În astfel de cazuri, reduceţi numărul colilor de hârtie pe care le încărcaţi o dată la mai puţin de jumătate din limita de încărcare a hârtiei.
  - Întotdeauna încărcaţi hârtia orientată tip portret, indiferent de orientarea imprimării.
  - Atunci când încărcaţi hârtia în tava din spate, încărcaţi hârtia cu faţa de imprimare orientată în SUS şi glisaţi ghidajele de hârtie pentru a le alinia cu ambele laturi ale hârtiei.

    ➡ Încărcarea hârtiei/documentelor originale

- **Verificarea 2: Verificaţi ca hârtia pe care imprimaţi să nu fie prea groasă sau ondulată.**

  ➡ Încărcarea hârtiei/documentelor originale

- **Verificarea 3: Asiguraţi-vă de următoarele când încărcaţi plicuri.**

  Când imprimaţi pe plicuri, consultaţi Încărcarea hârtiei/documentelor originale şi pregătiţi plicurile înainte de imprimare.
  După ce aţi pregătit plicurile, încărcaţi-le în orientare tip portret. Dacă plicurile sunt puse în orientare tip vedere, nu se vor alimenta corespunzător.

- **Verificarea 4: Asiguraţi-vă că nu există obiecte străine în tava din spate.**

Dacă hârtia se rupe în tava din spate, consultaţi Blocaje de hârtie pentru a o îndepărta.

Dacă există obiecte străine în tava din spate, asiguraţi-vă că opriţi aparatul, deconectaţi-l de la sursa de alimentare, apoi îndepărtaţi obiectul străin.

În partea superioară a paginii

Blocaje de hârtie

Notă

- Dacă trebuie să opriţi aparatul pentru a înlătura hârtia blocată în timpul imprimării, apăsaţi butonul **Oprire/Reiniţializare (Stop/Reset)** pentru a revoca lucrările de imprimare înainte de a opri aparatul.

Hârtia este blocată în fanta de ieşire a hârtiei sau în tava din spate

În alte cazuri

În partea superioară a paginii

Hârtia este blocată în fanta de ieşire a hârtiei sau în tava din spate

Înlăturaţi hârtia urmând procedura de mai jos.

1. Trageţi uşor hârtia în afară, fie din tava din spate, fie din fanta de ieşire a hârtiei, de unde vă este mai uşor.

Notă

- Dacă hârtia se rupe şi o bucată rămâne în interiorul aparatului, opriţi aparatul, deschideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul) şi înlăturaţi hârtia.
  Aveţi grijă să nu atingeţi componentele din interiorul aparatului.
  După înlăturarea în întregime a hârtiei, închideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul) şi reporniţi aparatul.
- Dacă nu puteţi trage hârtia, opriţi aparatul şi porniţi-l din nou. Este posibil ca hârtia să fie scoasă afară automat.

2. Încărcaţi din nou hârtia şi apăsaţi butonul **Stop/Reset (Oprire/Reiniţializare)** de pe aparat.

Dacă aţi oprit aparatul la pasul 1, toate lucrările de imprimare în aşteptare sunt revocate. Reimprimaţi dacă este necesar.

Notă

- Când reîncărcaţi hârtia, confirmaţi că utilizaţi hârtia corectă şi că o încărcaţi în mod corect.
  ➡ Încărcarea hârtiei/documentelor originale
- Hârtia de dimensiune A5 este potrivită pentru imprimarea documentelor care constau, în principal, din text. Nu recomandăm utilizarea unei astfel de hârtii pentru a imprima documente cu fotografii sau grafice, având în vedere că pagina imprimată se poate ondula şi poate cauza blocaje de hârtie la ieşire.

Dacă nu puteţi înlătura hârtia sau dacă hârtia se rupe în interiorul aparatului sau dacă eroarea de blocaj continuă după înlăturarea hârtiei, contactaţi centrul de service.

În partea superioară a paginii

În alte cazuri

Asiguraţi-vă de următoarele:

- **Verificarea 1: Există vreun obiect străin în jurul fantei de ieşire a hârtiei?**
- **Verificarea 2: Există vreun obiect străin în tava din spate?**

Dacă există obiecte străine în tava din spate, asiguraţi-vă că opriţi aparatul, deconectaţi-l de la sursa de alimentare, apoi îndepărtaţi obiectul străin.

- **Verificarea 3: Este hârtia ondulată?**

➡ Verificarea 3: Încărcaţi hârtia după corectarea ondulaţiei.

În partea superioară a paginii

Un mesaj apare pe ecranul computerului

➡ Se afişează „Număr de eroare: B200 A intervenit o eroare de imprimantă. Opriţi imprimanta şi deconectaţi cablul de alimentare al imprimantei de la sursa de curent. Apoi contactaţi centrul de service.”

➡ Se afişează „Număr de eroare: **** A intervenit o eroare de imprimantă. Închideţi imprimanta şi încercaţi din nou. Dacă problema nu este rezolvată, consultaţi ghidul utilizatorului pentru mai multe informaţii.”

➡ Windows Eroare de scriere/Eroare de ieşire/Eroare de comunicare

➡ Macintosh Numărul de eroare: 300 este afişat

➡ Macintosh Numărul de eroare: 1700 este afişat

➡ Macintosh Numărul de informaţii cu privire la cerneală: 1688 este afişat

➡ Macintosh Numărul de informaţii cu privire la cerneală: 1686 este afişat”

➡ Macintosh Numărul de eroare: 2001 este afişat (numai pentru MP270 series)

➡ Macintosh Numărul de eroare: 2002 este afişat (numai pentru MP270 series)

➡ Windows Alte mesaje de eroare

➡ Windows Este afişat ecranul The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program

➡ Macintosh Apare pictograma The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program

Se afişează „Număr de eroare: B200 A intervenit o eroare de imprimantă. Opriţi imprimanta şi deconectaţi cablul de alimentare al imprimantei de la sursa de curent. Apoi contactaţi centrul de service.”

Opriţi aparatul şi scoateţi cablul de alimentare al aparatului din sursa de curent.

Contactaţi centrul de service.

Se afişează „Număr de eroare: **** A intervenit o eroare de imprimantă. Închideţi imprimanta şi încercaţi din nou. Dacă problema nu este rezolvată, consultaţi ghidul utilizatorului pentru mai multe informaţii.”

"****" este afişat cu caractere alfanumerice şi depinde de eroarea care a intervenit.

- **5100 este afişat**

  Confirmaţi: Deplasarea suportului cartuşului FINE este blocată.

  Revocaţi imprimarea de pe computer, opriţi dispozitivul. Apoi îndepărtaţi hârtia blocată sau materialul de protejare care împiedică suportul cartuşului FINE să se deplaseze şi porniţi din nou aparatul.

  Important

  - Aveţi grijă să nu atingeţi componentele din interiorul aparatului. Este posibil ca aparatul să nu imprime corect dacă îl atingeţi.
  - Dacă problema persistă, contactaţi centrul de service.

- **6000 este afişat**

  Dacă în faţa aparatului se află un obiect, îndepărtaţi-l.

  Deschideţi cu grijă tava de ieşire a hârtiei, apoi opriţi şi porniţi din nou alimentarea.

- **O valoare alfanumerică de patru cifre şi mesajul “A intervenit o eroare de imprimantă.” se afişează**

Opriţi aparatul şi scoateţi cablul de alimentare al aparatului din sursa de curent.

Reconectaţi aparatul şi porniţi-l din nou.

Dacă problema persistă, contactaţi centrul de service.

Windows Eroare de scriere/Eroare de ieşire/Eroare de comunicare

- **Verificarea 1: Dacă lampa Alimentare (Power) este stinsă, asiguraţi-vă că fişa de alimentare este conectată, apoi porniţi aparatul.**

  În timp ce lampa **Alimentare (Power)** clipeşte în verde, dispozitivul se iniţializează. Aşteptaţi până când lampa **Alimentare (Power)** se opreşte din clipit şi rămâne aprinsă în verde.

- **Verificarea 2: Asiguraţi-vă că portul de imprimantă este configurat corespunzător în driverul de imprimantă.**

  * În următoarele instrucţiuni, „**XXX**” semnifică numele aparatului dumneavoastră.

  1. **Autentificaţi-vă într-un cont de utilizator cu drepturi de administrator.**

  2. **Faceţi clic pe Panou de control (Control Panel), apoi pe Imprimantă (Printer) în Hardware şi sunet (Hardware and Sound).**

     În Windows XP, faceţi clic pe Panou de control (Control Panel), Imprimante şi alte dispozitive hardware (Printers and Other Hardware), apoi pe Imprimante şi faxuri (Printers and Faxes).
     În Windows 2000, faceţi clic pe Panou de control (Control Panel), apoi pe Printers.

  3. **Faceţi clic dreapta pe pictograma Imprimantă Canon XXX (Canon XXX Printer), apoi selectaţi Properties.**

  4. **Faceţi clic pe fila Porturi (Ports) pentru a confirma setările portului.**

     Asiguraţi-vă că un port denumit USBnnn (unde „n” este un număr) cu Canon XXX Printer în coloana Imprimantă (Printer) este selectat pentru Se imprimă la următoarele port-uri (Print to the following port(s)).
     Dacă setarea portului nu este corectă, reinstalaţi driverele MP sau schimbaţi setarea portului de imprimantă în funcţie de interfaţa pe care o folosiţi.

- **Verificarea 3: Asiguraţi-vă de conectarea corespunzătoare a cablului USB la aparat şi la computer.**
  - Dacă folosiţi un dispozitiv de retransmisie, precum un hub USB, deconectaţi-l, conectaţi dispozitivul direct la computer şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou. Dacă imprimarea porneşte normal, există o problemă la dispozitivul de retransmisie. Consultaţi vânzătorul dispozitivului de retransmisie pentru detalii.
  - Ar putea fi şi o problemă cu cablul USB. Înlocuiţi cablul USB şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou.

- **Verificarea 4: Asiguraţi-vă că driverele MP sunt instalate corect.**

  Dezinstalaţi driverele MP Drivers urmând procedura descrisă în Ştergerea driverelor MP Drivers inutile, introduceţi *CD-ROM-ul de instalare (Setup CD-ROM)* în unitatea de disc a computerului, apoi executaţi Custom Install şi selectaţi MP Drivers pentru reinstalare.

- **Verificarea 5: Verificaţi starea dispozitivului pe computer.**

  Urmaţi procedura de mai jos pentru a verifica starea dispozitivului.

  1. **Faceţi clic pe Panou de control (Control Panel), Hardware şi sunet (Hardware and Sound), apoi Manager dispozitive (Device Manager).**

     Dacă ecranul Control cont utilizator (User Account Control) este afişat, urmaţi instrucţiunile de pe ecran.
     În Windows XP, faceţi clic pe Panou de control (Control Panel), Performanţă şi întreţinere

(Performance and Maintenance), Sistem (System), apoi pe Manager dispozitive (Device Manager) pe fila Hardware.
În Windows 2000, faceţi clic pe Control Panel, Sistem (System), apoi pe Manager dispozitive (Device Manager) pe fila Hardware.

2. **Faceţi dublu clic pe Controlere magistrală serială universală (Universal Serial Bus controllers), apoi pe Asistenţă imprimare USB (USB Printing Support).**

   Dacă nu se afişează Asistenţă imprimare USB (USB Printing Support), asiguraţi-vă că aparatul este bine conectat la computer.
   ➡ Verificarea 3: Asiguraţi-vă de conectarea corespunzătoare a cablului USB la aparat şi la computer.

3. **Faceţi clic pe fila General şi asiguraţi-vă că nu este niciun indiciu privind o problemă cu dispozitivul.**

   Dacă este afişată o eroare de dispozitiv, consultaţi ajutorul Windows pentru a rezolva eroarea.

Macintosh Numărul de eroare: 300 este afişat

- **Verificarea 1: Dacă lampa Alimentare (Power) este stinsă, asiguraţi-vă că fişa de alimentare este conectată, apoi porniţi aparatul.**

  În timp ce lampa **Alimentare (Power)** clipeşte în verde, dispozitivul se iniţializează. Aşteptaţi până când lampa **Alimentare (Power)** se opreşte din clipit şi rămâne aprinsă în verde.

- **Verificarea 2: Asiguraţi-vă de conectarea corespunzătoare a cablului USB la aparat şi la computer.**
  - Dacă folosiţi un dispozitiv de retransmisie, precum un hub USB, deconectaţi-l, conectaţi dispozitivul direct la computer şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou. Dacă imprimarea porneşte normal, există o problemă la dispozitivul de retransmisie. Consultaţi vânzătorul dispozitivului de retransmisie pentru detalii.
  - Ar putea fi şi o problemă cu cablul USB. Înlocuiţi cablul USB şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou.

- **Verificarea 3: Asiguraţi-vă că numele aparatului este selectat în caseta de dialog Print (Imprimare).**

  ➡ Deschiderea casetelor de dialog Page Setup şi Print (Macintosh)

Macintosh Numărul de eroare: 1700 este afişat

- **Consultaţi E, 0, 8 din Pe LED apare un cod de eroare şi luaţi măsurile corespunzătoare.**

Macintosh Număr de informaţii referitoare la cerneală: 1688 este afişat

- **Consultaţi E, 1, 6 din Pe LED apare un cod de eroare şi luaţi măsurile corespunzătoare.**

Macintosh Număr de informaţii referitoare la cerneală: 1686 este afişat

- **Consultaţi E, 1, 3 din Pe LED apare un cod de eroare şi luaţi măsurile corespunzătoare.**

Macintosh Numărul de eroare: 2001 este afişat (numai pentru MP270 series)

- **Consultaţi E, 0, 9 din Pe LED apare un cod de eroare şi luaţi măsurile corespunzătoare.**

Macintosh Numărul de eroare: 2002 este afişat (numai pentru MP270 series)

- **Consultaţi E, 1, 9 din Pe LED apare un cod de eroare şi luaţi măsurile corespunzătoare.**

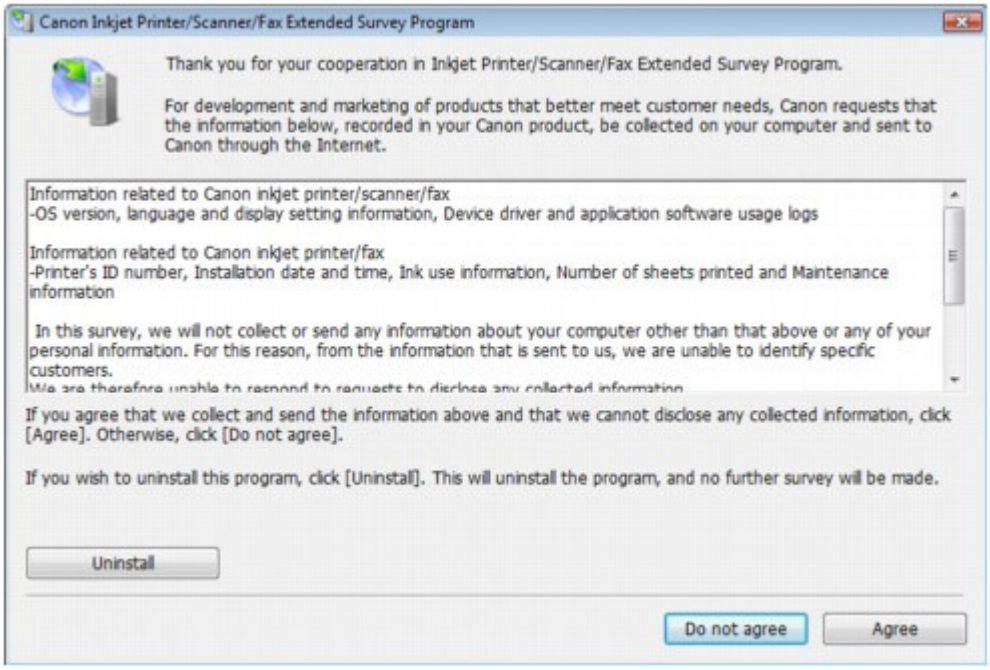
Windows Alte mesaje de eroare

- **Verificaţi: Dacă este afişat un mesaj de eroare în afara monitorului de stare a imprimantei, verificaţi următoarele:**
  - „Derularea nu s-a făcut cu succes din cauza unui spaţiu insuficient pe disc” ("Could not spool successfully due to insufficient disk space")
    Ştergeţi orice fişier inutil pentru a mări spaţiul liber de pe disc.
  - „Derularea nu s-a făcut cu succes din cauza memoriei insuficiente” ("Could not spool successfully due to insufficient memory")
    Anulaţi alte aplicaţii în curs pentru a mări memoria disponibilă.
    Dacă tot nu puteţi imprima, reporniţi computerul şi încercaţi din nou să imprimaţi.
  - „Driverul de imprimantă nu a putut fi găsit” ("Printer driver could not be found")
    Dezinstalaţi driverul de imprimantă conform procedurii descrise în Ştergerea driverelor MP Drivers inutile , apoi reinstalaţi.
  - „Nu s-a putut imprima numele aplicaţiei – numele fişierului” ("Could not print Application name - File name")
    Încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou după ce lucrarea actuală este finalizată.

Windows Este afişat ecranul The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program

Dacă este instalat Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program, atunci un ecran de confirmare care solicită permisiunea de trimitere de informaţii privind utilizarea imprimantei va fi afişat timp de trei luni şi apoi şase luni după instalare. Ulterior, va fi afişat la fiecare şase luni, timp de aproape patru ani.

Citiţi instrucţiunile de pe ecran şi urmaţi procedura de mai jos.



- **Dacă sunteţi de acord cu participarea la programul de studiu:**

  Faceţi clic pe Agree, apoi urmaţi instrucţiunile pe ecran. Informaţiile despre utilizarea imprimantei vor fi trimise prin Internet. Dacă aţi urmat instrucţiunile de pe ecran, informaţiile vor fi trimise automat în continuare, iar ecranul de confirmare nu va mai fi afişat.

  Notă

  - Când se trimit informaţiile, este posibil să apară un ecran de avertizare, precum un ecran de securitate Internet. În acest caz, confirmaţi numele programului ca fiind "IJPLMUI.exe", apoi acceptaţi-l.
  - Dacă debifaţi caseta de selectare Send automatically from the next time informaţiile nu vor fi trimise automat pe viitor şi un ecran de confirmare va fi afişat la următorul studiu. Pentru a trimite informaţiile automat, consultaţi Modificarea setării ecranului de confirmare:.

- **Dacă nu sunteţi de acord cu participarea la programul de studiu:**

  Faceţi clic pe Do not agree. Ecranul de confirmare se va închide, iar studiul va fi ignorat din acel moment. Ecranul de confirmare va fi afişat din nou, trei luni mai târziu.

- **Pentru a dezinstala Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program:**

  Pentru a dezinstala Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program, faceţi clic pe Dezinstalare (Uninstall) şi urmaţi instrucţiunile de pe ecran.

- **Modificarea setării ecranului de confirmare:**

  1. Selectaţi elemente din meniul Start după cum se arată mai jos.
     - În Windows Vista, selectaţi meniul Pornire (Start) > Panou de control (Control Panel) > Dezinstalare program (Uninstall a program).
     - În Windows XP, selectaţi meniul Start > Panou de control (Control Panel) > Adăugare sau eliminare programe (Add or Remove Programs).
     - În Windows 2000, selectaţi meniul Start > Setări (Settings) > Panou de control (Control Panel) > Adăugare/Eliminare programe (Add/Remove Programs).

     Notă

     - În Windows Vista, o casetă de confirmare/avertizare poate apărea în timpul instalării, dezinstalării sau pornirii software.
       Această casetă de dialog apare atunci când se solicită drepturi de administrator pentru efectuarea unei operaţii.
       Dacă sunteţi conectat pe un cont de administrator, faceţi clic pe Continuare (Continue) sau Se permite (Allow) pentru a continua.

  2. Selectaţi Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.
  3. Selectaţi Change.

     Dacă selectaţi Yes după ce aţi urmat instrucţiunile de pe ecran, ecranul de confirmare va fi afişat la momentul următorului studiu.
     Dacă selectaţi No, informaţiile vor fi trimise automat.

     Notă

     - Dacă selectaţi Dezinstalare (Uninstall) (sau Eliminare (Remove)), atunci Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program este dezinstalat. Urmaţi instrucţiunile de pe ecran.

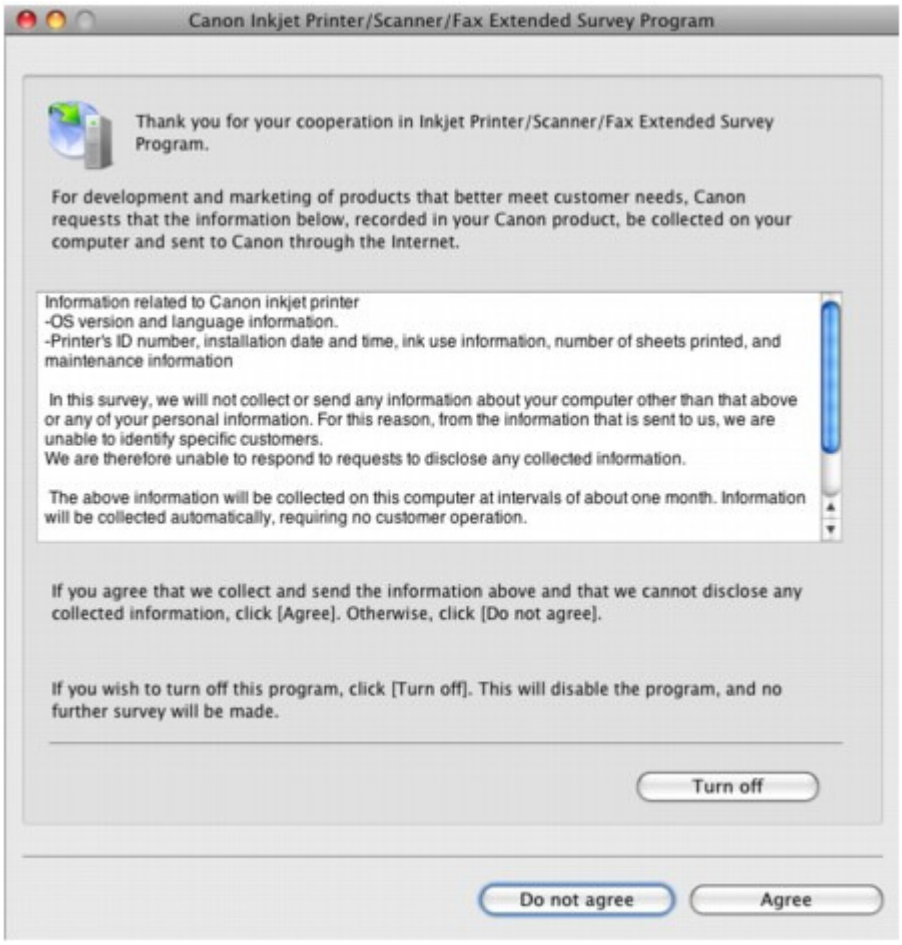
Macintosh Apare pictograma The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program

Dacă este instalat Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program, informaţiile despre utilizarea imprimantei sunt programate să fie trimise la trei luni şi apoi la şase luni după instalare. După aceea, sunt programate să fie trimise la fiecare şase luni timp de aproximativ patru ani. Pictograma Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program apare în staţia de andocare atunci când este timpul să fie trimise informaţiile despre utilizarea imprimantei.

În Mac OS X v.10.3.9, Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program nu este instalat.

Citiţi instrucţiunile de pe ecran după ce faceţi clic pe pictogramă, apoi urmaţi procedura de mai

jos.



- **Dacă sunteţi de acord cu participarea la programul de studiu:**

  Faceţi clic pe Agree, apoi urmaţi instrucţiunile pe ecran. Informaţiile despre utilizarea imprimantei vor fi trimise prin Internet. Dacă aţi urmat instrucţiunile de pe ecran, informaţiile vor fi trimise automat în continuare, iar ecranul de confirmare nu va mai fi afişat.

  Notă

  - Dacă debifaţi caseta de selectare Send automatically from the next time informaţiile nu vor fi trimise automat pe viitor şi pictograma Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program va apărea în staţia de andocare la momentul următorului studiu.

- **Dacă nu sunteţi de acord cu participarea la programul de studiu:**

  Faceţi clic pe Do not agree. Ecranul de confirmare se va închide, iar studiul va fi ignorat din acel moment. Ecranul de confirmare va fi afişat din nou, trei luni mai târziu.

- **Pentru a opri trimiterea de informaţii:**

  Faceţi clic pe Turn off. Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program este oprit şi informaţiile nu vor fi trimise. Pentru a reveni la studiu, consultaţi Modificarea setării:.

- **Pentru a dezinstala Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program:**

  1. Opriţi The Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.

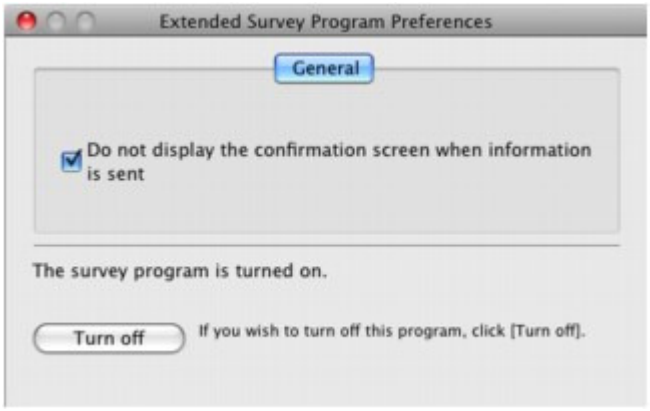
     Modificarea setării:
  2. Selectaţi Applications din meniul Go şi faceţi dublu clic pe folderul Canon Utilities, apoi pe folderul Inkjet Extended Survey Program.
  3. Puneţi fişierul Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.app la Trash.
  4. Reporniţi computerul.

     Goliţi Trash şi reporniţi computerul.

- **Modificarea setării:**

  Pentru a afişa ecranul de confirmare la fiecare trimitere de informaţii despre utilizarea imprimantei sau pentru a continua studiul, urmaţi procedura de mai jos.

  1. Selectaţi Applications din meniul Go şi faceţi dublu clic pe folderul Canon Utilities, apoi pe folderul Inkjet Extended Survey Program.
  2. Faceţi dublu clic pe pictograma Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.



  - Do not display the confirmation screen when information is sent:
    Dacă bifaţi caseta de selectare, informaţiile vor fi trimise automat.
    Dacă nu este bifată caseta de selectare, pictograma Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program va apărea în staţia de andocare la momentul următorului studiu. Faceţi clic pe pictogramă, apoi urmaţi instrucţiunile de pe ecran.
  - Buton Turn off/Turn on:
    Faceţi clic pe butonul Turn off pentru a opri Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.
    Faceţi clic pe butonul Turn on pentru a reporni Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.

În partea superioară a paginii

Pentru utilizatorii Windows

Monitorul de stare a imprimantei nu este afişat

- **Verificaţi: Este activat programul de monitorizare a stării imprimantei?**

  Asiguraţi-vă că Enable Status Monitor este selectat în meniul Option din monitorul de stare a imprimantei.

  1. **Deschideţi caseta de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties).**

     Deschiderea casetei de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties) (Windows)

  2. **Pe foaia Maintenance, faceţi clic pe View Printer Status.**

  3. **Selectaţi Enable Status Monitor în meniul Option dacă nu este selectat.**

- **Dacă utilizaţi Windows Vista:**

Lansarea MP Navigator EX oricând este apăsat butonul SCANARE (SCAN) de la aparat

- **Verificare: Specificaţi răspunsul rezultat în urma apăsării butonului SCANARE (SCAN) de la aparat.**

  Urmaţi procedura de mai jos pentru a specifica răspunsul de la computer.

  1. **Autentificaţi-vă într-un cont de utilizator cu drepturi de administrator.**

  2. **Faceţi clic pe Panou de control (Control Panel), Hardware şi sunet (Hardware and Sound), apoi Scanere şi aparate foto (Scanners and Cameras).**

  3. **Selectaţi WIA Canon XXX ser, apoi faceţi clic pe butonul Properties.**

     Dacă apare ecranul Control cont utilizator (User Account Control), faceţi clic pe Continuare (Continue).

  4. **Faceţi clic pe fila Events din ecranul WIA Canon XXX ser Properties.**

  5. **Selectaţi Start this program pentru Actions, apoi selectaţi MP Navigator EX Ver3.0 din meniul derulant.**

     Alegeţi un eveniment din meniul derulant Select an event, apoi selectaţi MP Navigator EX Ver3.0 pentru lansare la fiecare eveniment. Dacă MP Navigator EX Ver3.0 este deja selectat pentru fiecare eveniment, faceţi clic pe Cancel.

  6. **Faceţi clic pe OK.**

În partea superioară a paginii

Apare un mesaj de eroare pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge (numai pentru MP270 series)

În continuare sunt prezentate erorile posibile ce pot apărea în timpul imprimării directe de pe un dispozitiv compatibil PictBridge şi măsurile ce pot fi luate pentru a le elimina.

Notă

- Această secţiune descrie erorile ce sunt indicate pe un aparat compatibil PictBridge, marca Canon. Mesajele de eroare şi operaţiile pot varia în funcţie de aparatul pe care îl utilizaţi. Pentru erori privind dispozitivele compatibile PictBridge, care nu aparţin gamei de produse Canon, verificaţi codul de eroare afişat pe LED şi luaţi măsurile corespunzătoare pentru a elimina eroarea. Pentru detalii, consultaţi Pe LED apare un cod de eroare .
- Pentru erorile indicate pe dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge şi soluţiile aferente acestora, consultaţi, de asemenea, manualul de instrucţiuni al dispozitivului. Pentru alte probleme ale dispozitivului, contactaţi producătorul.

Mesaj de eroare pe dispozitivul compatibil PictBridge	Acţiune
„Printer in use”	Dacă aparatul imprimă de pe computer sau dacă se încălzeşte, aşteptaţi până se termină lucrarea. Când este gata, aparatul începe să imprime automat.
„No paper”	Încărcaţi hârtie în tava din spate şi selectaţi Continue* pe ecranul dispozitivului compatibil PictBridge. * Pentru a relua imprimarea, puteţi, de asemenea, să apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)** de pe aparat în loc să selectaţi Continue la dispozitiv.
„Paper Error”	Tava de ieşire a hârtiei este închisă. Deschideţi tava de ieşire a hârtiei, apoi apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)** de pe aparat.
„Paper jam”	Selectaţi Stop pe ecranul dispozitivului compatibil PictBridge pentru a opri imprimarea. Îndepărtaţi hârtia blocată, încărcaţi hârtie nouă, apăsaţi butonul **Negru (Black)** sau **Culoare (Color)** de pe aparat şi încercaţi să imprimaţi din nou.
„Printer cover open”	Închideţi unitatea de scanare (capacul) de pe aparat.
„No print head”	Cartuşul FINE nu este instalat sau cartuşul este posibil să nu fie compatibil cu acest dispozitiv. Consultaţi E, 0, 4 / E, 0, 5 din Pe LED apare un cod de eroare şi luaţi măsurile corespunzătoare.
„Waste tank full”/„Ink absorber full”	Absorbantul de cerneală este aproape plin. Consultaţi E, 0, 9 din Pe LED apare un cod de eroare şi luaţi măsurile corespunzătoare.
„No ink”/„Ink cassette error”	• Cartuşul FINE a rămas fără cerneală sau este posibil să fi rămas fără cerneală. • Cartuşul FINE este posibil să nu fie instalat corespunzător sau să nu fie compatibil cu acest dispozitiv. Verificaţi codul erorii de pe LED şi efectuaţi acţiunea corespunzătoare pentru a rezolva eroarea. ➡ Pe LED apare un cod de eroare
„Hardware Error”	Au apărut erori ale cartuşului FINE.

	Înlocuiţi cartuşul FINE. ➡ Întreţinere de rutină

În partea superioară a paginii

Problems with Scanning

- Scanner Does Not Work
- ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start
- Error Message Appears and the ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screen Does Not Appear
- Scan Quality (Image Displayed on the Monitor) Is Poor
- Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas
- Cannot Scan Multiple Documents at One Time
- Cannot Scan Properly in Auto Scan Mode
- Slow Scanning Speed
- "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed
- Computer Stops Operating during Scanning
- Scanner Does Not Work After Upgrading Windows

Page top

Scanner Does Not Work

Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.

Check 2: Connect the USB cable to a different USB port on the computer.

Check 3: If the USB cable is connected to a hub, remove it from the hub and connect it to a USB port on the computer.

Check 4: Restart the computer.

Page top

ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start

Check 1: Make sure that the MP Drivers are installed.

If it is not installed, insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then select Custom Install and install MP Drivers.

Check 2: On the File menu of the application, select Select Source and select the machine.

Important

- Do not select the model name that includes WIA in it.

Note

- The operation may differ depending on the application.

Check 3: Start from a TWAIN-compliant application.

Page top

Error Message Appears and the ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screen Does Not Appear

Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.

Check 2: Connect the USB cable to a different USB port on the computer.

Check 3: If the USB cable is connected to a hub, remove it from the hub and connect it to a USB port on the computer.

Check 4: Make sure that the MP Drivers are installed.

If it is not installed, insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then select Custom Install and install MP Drivers.

Check 5: On the File menu of the application, select Select Source and select the machine.

Note

- The operation may differ depending on the application.

Check 6: Make sure that the application is TWAIN-compliant.

You cannot open ScanGear (scanner driver) from applications not supporting TWAIN.

Check 7: Exit ScanGear (scanner driver) if it is running on another application.

Page top

Scan Quality (Image Displayed on the Monitor) Is Poor

Check 1: Increase the scanning resolution.

➡ Resolution

Check 2: Set the scale to 100%.

Some applications do not display images clearly if the image is too small.

Check 3: If moire (stripe pattern) appears, take the following measures and scan again.

- On the Basic Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver), select Magazine(Color) in Select Source.
- On the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver), set Descreen in Image Settings to ON.
  ➡ Image Settings

  Note

  - If moire appears when you scan a digital print photo, take the above measures and scan again.

- If you use MP Navigator EX, set Document Type to Magazine(Color) or enable Descreen in the Scan Settings dialog box and scan again.
  ➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

Check 4: Check the monitor's color depth.

From the Start menu, select Control Panel > Appearance and Personalization > Adjust screen resolution to open the Display Settings dialog box. Set the color depth to Medium (16 bit) or Highest (32 bit).

- **Windows XP:**

  From the Start menu, select Control Panel > Display to open the Display Properties dialog box. On the Settings tab, set Colors to Medium (16 bit) or Highest (32 bit).

- **Windows 2000:**

  From the Start menu, select Settings > Control Panel > Display to open the Display Properties dialog box. On the Settings tab, set Colors to High Color (16 bit) or True Color (32 bit).

Check 5: Clean the Platen and Document Cover.

➡ Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover

Check 6: If the document is in poor condition (dirty, faded, etc.), use Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, Grain Correction, etc. in Image Settings on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).

➡ Image Settings

Check 7: If the color tone of images is different from the original document, take the following measures and scan again.

- On the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver), set Image Adjustment in Image Settings to None.

  ➡ Image Settings

- Open the Preferences dialog box from the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver) and set Color Matching on the Color Settings tab.

  ➡ Color Settings Tab

Page top

Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas

Check: Specify the scan area.

Click (Auto Crop) in ScanGear (scanner driver) to automatically display the cropping frame (scan area) according to the document size. You can also manually specify the scan area, for example when there are white margins along the document or when you want to create custom cropping frames.

Adjusting Cropping Frames

Page top

Cannot Scan Multiple Documents at One Time

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

Placing Documents

Check 2: Scan each item individually.

Some applications do not support multiple image scanning.

Page top

Cannot Scan Properly in Auto Scan Mode

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

Placing Documents

Check 2: Multiple image scanning may not be supported.

Some applications do not support multiple image scanning. In that case, scan each item individually.

Page top

Slow Scanning Speed

Check 1: To view the image on a monitor, set the output resolution to around 150 dpi. To print, set it to around 300 dpi.

Resolution

Check 2: Set Fading Correction, Grain Correction, etc. to None.

Image Settings

Check 3: In MP Navigator EX, deselect the Correct slanted document checkbox and scan again.

Scan Settings Dialog Box

Check 4: In MP Navigator EX, deselect the Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images checkbox and scan again.

Scan Settings Dialog Box

Page top

"There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed

Check 1: Exit other applications and try again.

Check 2: Reduce the resolution or output size and scan again.

Resolution

Page top

Computer Stops Operating during Scanning

Check 1: Restart the computer, reduce the output resolution in ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan again.

Check 2: Delete unnecessary files to obtain sufficient free hard disk space, then scan again.

Error message may appear if there is not enough hard disk space to scan and save, when the image size is too large (such as when scanning a large document at high resolution.)

Check 3: For Location of Temporary Files in MP Navigator EX, specify a folder on a drive with sufficient free space.

General Tab

Check 4: Multiple devices may be connected to USB ports.

Disconnect other devices.

Page top

Scanner Does Not Work After Upgrading Windows

Check: Disconnect the machine from the computer, then uninstall and reinstall the MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX.

- **Step 1: Uninstall the MP Drivers.**

  See "Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers " for details.

- **Step 2: Uninstall MP Navigator EX.**

  1. From the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > MP Navigator EX 3.0 > MP Navigator EX Uninstall.
  2. When a confirmation appears, click Yes.
  3. When uninstallation is complete, click OK.

     MP Navigator EX is uninstalled.

- **Step 3: Reinstall the MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX.**

  Insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then select Custom Install and reinstall the MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX.

Page top

Software Problems

E-mail Software Program You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Software Program

Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged (Reduced)

Scanned Image Is Enlarged (Reduced) on the Computer Monitor

Scanned Image Does Not Open

Page top

E-mail Software Program You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Software Program

Check 1: MP Navigator EX may not support the e-mail software program.

The following e-mail software programs are supported. (Image are attached to the mail message automatically.)

- Windows Mail (Windows Vista)
- Outlook Express (Windows XP/Windows 2000)
- Microsoft Outlook

Check 2: If an e-mail software program does not operate properly, check that the program's MAPI is enabled.

To enable MAPI, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.

Check 3: If using an e-mail software program other than the ones listed above, select None (Attach Manually) when prompted to select a program and attach the scanned image manually.

Page top

Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged (Reduced)

Check: Set the printing size in the application.

Page top

Scanned Image Is Enlarged (Reduced) on the Computer Monitor

Check 1: Change the display setting in the application.

You cannot reduce the display size in "Paint." To reduce the display size, open the images in an application.

For details, refer to the application's manual. If you have any questions, contact the manufacturer of the application.

Check 2: Change the resolution setting in ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan again.

The higher the resolution, the larger the resulting image will be.

➡ Resolution

Page top

Scanned Image Does Not Open

Check: If the file format is not supported by the application, scan the image again and save it in a popular file format such as JPEG.

For details, refer to the application's manual. If you have any questions, contact the manufacturer of the application.

Page top

MP Navigator EX Problems

- Cannot Scan at the Correct Size
- Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Operation Panel
- Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted
- Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Orientation Changes in the Scanned Image

Page top

Cannot Scan at the Correct Size

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

Placing Documents

Check 2: Set Document Size to the actual document size and scan again.

If the matching size is not found, scan at a larger size and trim the image.

See the Toolbar (Trimming) in " Correct/Enhance Images Window " for details.

Page top

Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Operation Panel

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

Placing Documents

Check 2: Check that the MP Navigator EX settings are correctly set according to the document.

If you cannot scan properly with Auto Scan using the Operation Panel, specify the document type or size in MP Navigator EX.

Scanning Photos and Documents

Page top

Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted

Check: In MP Navigator EX, deselect the Correct slanted document checkbox and scan again.

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

Page top

Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Orientation Changes in the Scanned Image

Check: In MP Navigator EX, deselect the Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images checkbox and scan again.

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

Page top

Dacă nu puteţi rezolva problema

Dacă nu puteţi rezolva problema cu niciuna dintre soluţiile din acest capitol, vă rugăm să contactaţi vânzătorul aparatului sau centrul de service.

Personalul de asistenţă al Canon este instruit pentru a putea oferi asistenţă tehnică pentru satisfacerea clienţilor.

Atenţie

- Dacă aparatul scoate vreun zgomot neobişnuit, fum sau miros, opriţi-l imediat. Deconectaţi cablul de alimentare din borna de ieşire şi contactaţi vânzătorul sau centrul de service. Nu încercaţi niciodată să reparaţi sau să demontaţi singuri aparatul.
- Încercările din partea clienţilor de a repara sau demonta aparatul vor duce la pierderea valabilităţii oricărei garanţii, indiferent dacă garanţia a expirat sau nu.

Înainte de contactarea centrului de service, verificaţi următoarele:

- Denumirea produsului:
  * Denumirea aparatului se află pe prima copertă a manualului de configurare.
- Număr de serie: consultaţi manualul de configurare
- Detalii ale problemei
- Ce aţi încercat pentru a soluţiona problema şi ce s-a întâmplat

În partea superioară a paginii

Întrebări frecvente

- Rezultate imprimare inexistente/Imprimarea este neclară/Culorile sunt greşite/Linii albe
- Aparatul funcţionează, dar nu este eliminată cerneală
- Nu se poate face instalarea pentru MP Drivers
- Imprimarea nu începe
- Copierea/Imprimarea se opreşte înainte de a fi finalizată
- Windows Eroare de scriere/Eroare de ieşire/Eroare de comunicare
- Rezultatele imprimării nu sunt satisfăcătoare
- Blocaje de hârtie
- Alimentarea cu hârtie nu se realizează corect

În partea superioară a paginii

Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

This printer driver is subject to the following restrictions. Keep the following points in mind when using the printer driver.

Restrictions on the Printer Driver

- With some applications, the Copies setting in the Page Setup tab of the printer driver may not be enabled.
  In this case, use the copies setting in the Print dialog box of the application software.
- If the selected Language in the About dialog box does not match the operating system interface language, the driver screen may not be displayed properly.
- Do not change the Advanced tab items of the printer properties. If you change any of the items, you will not be able to use the following functions correctly.
  Also, if Print to file is selected in the Print dialog box of the application software and with applications that prohibit EMF spooling, such as Adobe Photoshop LE and MS Photo Editor, the following functions will not operate.
  - Preview before printing on the Main tab
  - Prevent loss of print data in the Print Options dialog box
  - Page Layout, Poster, Booklet, Duplex Printing, Specify Margin..., Print from Last Page, Collate, and Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab
- Since the resolution in the preview display differs from the printing resolution, text and lines in the preview display may appear different from the actual print result.
- With some applications, the printing is divided into multiple print jobs.
  To cancel printing, delete all divided print jobs.
- If image data is not printed correctly, display the Print Options dialog box and change the setting of Disable ICM required from the application software. This may solve the problem.
- Software windows may not appear correctly on Windows Vista when fonts are set to Larger scale.
  When you want to display the windows with Larger scale fonts, set the desktop theme to Windows Classic as follows:
  1. Select Control Panel from the Start menu.
  2. Select Appearance and Personalization -> Personalization -> Theme.
     The Theme Settings dialog box opens.
  3. At the Theme Settings dialog box, click the Themes tab, and select Windows Classic from Theme.
  4. Click OK.
     Desktop changes to Windows Classic display.

Points to Note with Applications

- There are following restrictions in Microsoft Word (Microsoft Corporation).
  - When Microsoft Word has the same printing functions as the printer driver, use Word to specify them.
  - When selecting Scaled, Fit-to-Page, or Page Layout from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab, the selected printing function may not be effective, depending on the version of Word.
    If this happens, follow the procedure below.

1. Open Word's Print dialog box.
2. Open the printer driver setup window, specify Page Layout on the Page Setup tab, and click OK.
3. Without starting printing, close the Print dialog box.
4. Open Word's Print dialog box again.
5. Open the printer driver setup window again and click OK.
6. Start printing.

- Illustrator/Adobe Systems Inc.
  If bitmap printing takes effect, printing may take time or some data may not be printed. Print after unchecking the Bitmap Printing check box in the Print dialog box.

Page top

General Notes (Scanner Driver)

ScanGear (scanner driver) is subject to the following restrictions. Keep these points in mind when using it.

Scanner Driver Restrictions

- When using the NTFS file system, the TWAIN data source may not be invoked. This is because the TWAIN module cannot be written to the winnt folder for security reasons. Contact the computer's administrator for help.
- Some computers (including laptops) connected to the machine may not resume correctly from standby mode. In that case, restart the computer.
- Do not connect two or more machines or multifunction printers with scanner function to the same computer simultaneously. If multiple scanning devices are connected, you cannot scan from the Operation Panel of the machine and also may experience errors while accessing the devices.
- Software screens may not appear correctly on Windows Vista when font size is set to Larger scale. If you want to display the screens with Larger scale fonts, change the theme in Appearance and Personalization to Windows Classic as follows:
  1. From the Start menu, select Control Panel.
  2. Select Appearance and Personalization > Personalization > Theme.
  The Theme Settings dialog box opens.
  3. On the Theme tab of the Theme Settings dialog box, select Windows Classic under Theme.
  4. Click OK.
  Desktop changes to Windows Classic view.
- Use the default display font size of the OS. Otherwise, software screens may not appear correctly.
- Scanning may fail if the computer has resumed from sleep or standby mode. In that case, follow these steps and scan again.
  1. Turn off the machine.
  2. Exit ScanGear (scanner driver), then disconnect the USB cable from the computer and reconnect it.
  3. Turn on the machine.
- ScanGear (scanner driver) cannot be opened in multiple applications at the same time. Within an application, ScanGear (scanner driver) cannot be opened for the second time when it is already open.
- Be sure to close the ScanGear (scanner driver) window before closing the application.
- Make sure that you have adequate disk space available when scanning large images at high resolutions. For example, at least 300 MB of free space is required to scan an A4 document at 600 dpi in full-color.
- ScanGear (scanner driver) and WIA driver cannot be used at the same time.
- Do not enter the computer into sleep or hibernate state during scanning.
- Calibration may take time if the machine is connected via USB 1.1.

Applications with Restrictions on Use

- If you start Media Center included in Windows XP Media Center Edition 2005, you may not be able to scan using the Operation Panel of the machine. In that case, restart the computer.
- You cannot scan images with Media Center included in Windows Vista™ and Windows XP Media Center Edition 2005. Scan with other applications such as MP Navigator EX.
- In some applications, you may encounter a problem when you switch to thumbnail view in the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver). In that case, scan each document individually,

changing Paper Size according to the document.

- In some applications, if you select the View scanned images checkbox in the Auto Scan Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver), the window displaying the thumbnails of the scanned images may close automatically.
- Some applications may not display the TWAIN user interface. In that case, refer to the application's manual and change the settings accordingly.
- Some applications do not support continuous scanning of multiple documents. In some cases, only the first scanned image is accepted, or multiple images are scanned as one image.
- When scanning platen size images into a Microsoft Office application (such as Word, Excel or PowerPoint), click Custom Insert in the Insert Picture from Scanner or Camera screen. Otherwise, images may not be scanned correctly.
- Images may not be scanned correctly in some applications. In that case, increase the operating system's virtual memory and retry.
- When image size is too large (such as when scanning large images at high resolution), your computer may not respond or the progress bar may remain at 0% depending on the application. In that case, cancel the action (for example by clicking Cancel on the progress bar), then increase the operating system's virtual memory or reduce the image size/resolution and retry. Alternatively, scan the image via MP Navigator EX first, then save and import it into the application.

Page top

Anexă

- Zonă de imprimare
- Cum se demontează/montează capacul pentru documente
- Ştergerea unei operaţiuni de imprimare nedorite
- Actualizare MP Drivers
- Dezinstalarea manualelor On-Screen Manual
- Transportul aparatului
- Deschiderea casetei de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer Properties) (Windows)
- Deschiderea casetelor de dialog Page Setup şi Print (Macintosh)
- Deschiderea utilitarului Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh)
- Partajarea imprimantei într-o reţea

În partea superioară a paginii

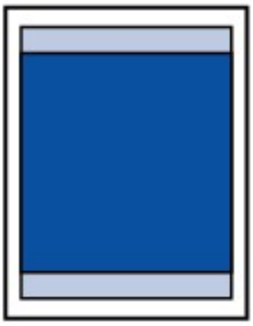
Zonă de imprimare

Pentru a asigura cea mai bună calitate de imprimare, aparatul alocă o margine de-a lungul fiecărei laturi a suportului. Zona efectivă de imprimare va fi zona din interiorul acestor margini.

Zonă de imprimare recomandată : Canon recomandă imprimarea în interiorul acestei zone.

Zonă de imprimare : Zona unde este posibilă imprimarea.

Totuşi, imprimarea în această zonă poate afecta calitatea de imprimare sau precizia alimentării cu hârtie.



Notă

- **Imprimarea fără chenar**
  - Selectând opţiunea Imprimare fără chenar, puteţi imprima fără margini.
  - Atunci când efectuaţi o Imprimare fără chenar, este posibil să apară o uşoară trunchiere la margini, deoarece imaginea imprimată este mărită pentru a acoperi întreaga pagină.
  - Pentru Imprimare fără chenar, folosiţi următoarea hârtie:
    - Glossy Photo Paper „Everyday Use” GP-501
    - Photo Paper Glossy GP-502
    - Photo Paper Plus Semi-Gloss SG-201
    - Photo Paper Pro Platinum PT-101*
    - Photo Paper Plus Glossy II PP-201
    - Photo Paper Pro II PR-201
    - Matte Photo Paper MP-101

    * Pentru MP270 series, această hârtie poate fi utilizată doar atunci când se imprimă de la computer.

    Efectuarea unei Imprimări fără chenar pe orice alt tip de hârtie poate reduce substanţial calitatea imprimării şi/sau poate avea ca rezultat imprimări cu nuanţe de culoare modificate. Imprimarea fără chenar pe hârtie simplă poate avea ca rezultat imprimări de calitate redusă. Folosiţi-le doar pentru imprimarea de test. Puteţi imprima fără chenar pe hârtie simplă doar atunci când se imprimă de pe computer.
  - Imprimarea fără chenar nu este disponibilă pentru hârtie de dimensiune Legal, A5, B5 sau pentru plicuri.
  - În funcţie de tipul hârtiei, Imprimarea fără chenar poate reduce calitatea imprimării la marginile de sus şi de jos ale hârtiei sau poate face ca aceste părţi să se păteze.

Letter, Legal

Plicuri

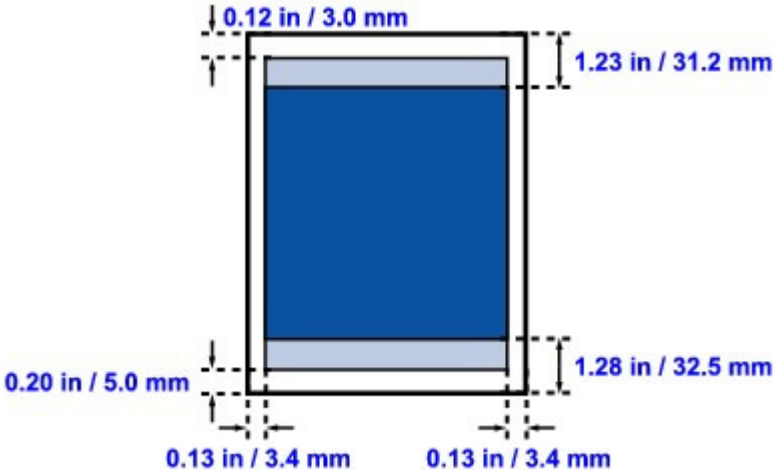
Alte dimensiuni pe lângă Letter, Legal, Plicuri

În partea superioară a paginii

Alte dimensiuni pe lângă Letter, Legal, Plicuri

Dimensiune	Zonă de imprimare (lăţime x înălţime)
A5*	5,56 x 7,95 inchi / 141,2 x 202,0 mm
A4	8,00 x 11,38 inchi / 203,2 x 289,0 mm
B5*	6,90 x 9,80 inchi / 175,2 x 249,0 mm
4" x 6" / 10 x 15 cm	3,73 x 5,69 inchi / 94,8 x 144,4 mm
4" x 8" / 10 x 20 cm*	3,73 x 7,69 inchi / 94,8 x 195,2 mm
5" x 7" / 13 x 18 cm	4,73 x 6,69 inchi / 120,2 x 169,8 mm
8" x 10" / 20 x 25 cm	7,73 x 9,69 inchi / 196,4 x 246,0 mm
Wide	3,73 x 6,80 inchi / 94,8 x 172,6 mm

* Pentru MP270 series, această dimensiune de pagină poate fi utilizată doar atunci când se imprimă de la computer.



Zonă de imprimare recomandată

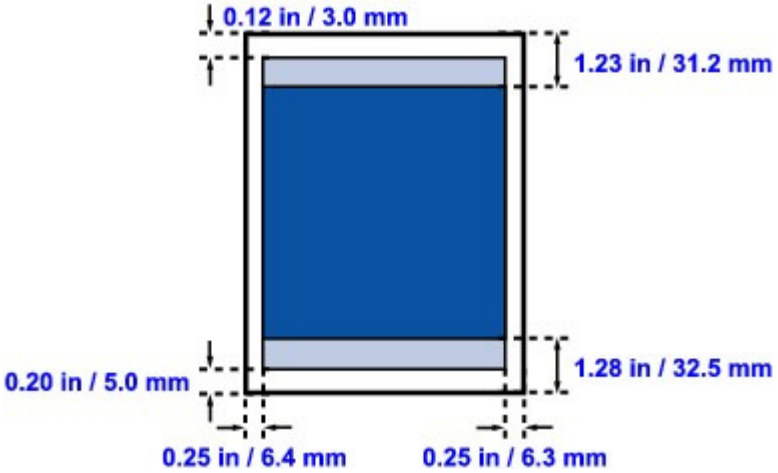
Zonă de imprimare

În partea superioară a paginii

Letter, Legal

Dimensiune	Zonă de imprimare (lăţime x înălţime)
Letter	8,00 x 10,69 inchi / 203,2 x 271,4 mm
Legal*	8,00 x 13,69 inchi / 203,2 x 347,6 mm

* Această dimensiune de pagină poate fi utilizată doar atunci când se imprimă de la computer.



Zonă de imprimare recomandată

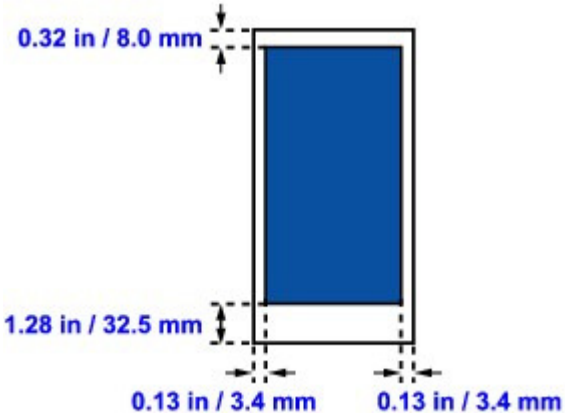
Zonă de imprimare

În partea superioară a paginii

Plicuri

Dimensiune	Zonă de imprimare recomandată (lăţime x înălţime)
European DL*	4,06 x 7,07 inchi / 103,2 x 179,5 mm
US Comm. Env. #10*	3,86 x 7,91 inchi / 98,0 x 200,8 mm

* Această dimensiune de pagină poate fi utilizată doar atunci când se imprimă de la computer.



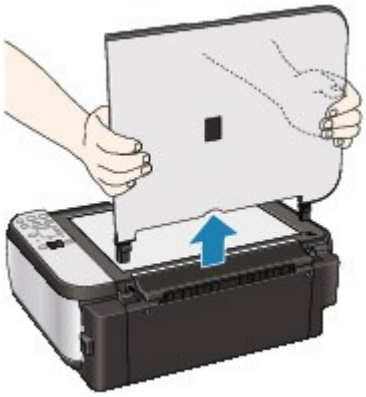
Zonă de imprimare recomandată

În partea superioară a paginii

Cum se demontează/montează capacul pentru documente

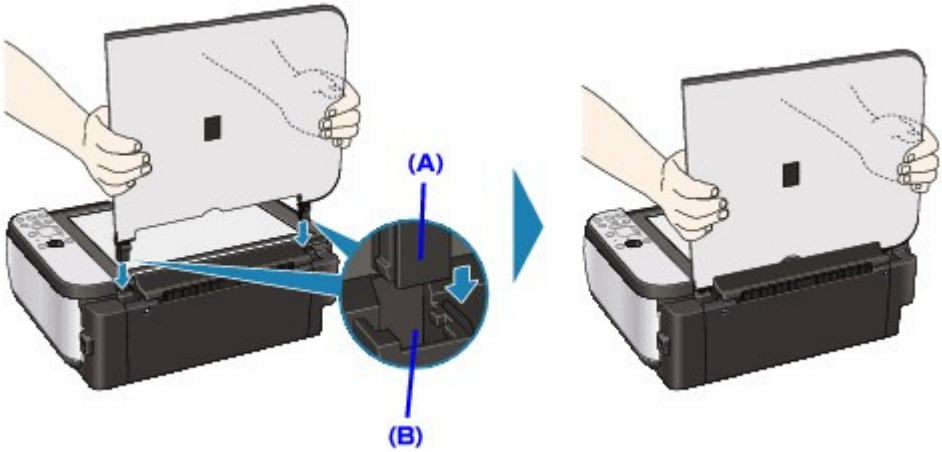
- **Demontarea capacului pentru documente:**

  Ţineţi capacul pentru documente în poziţie verticală.



- **Montarea capacului pentru documente:**

  Introduceţi ambele balamale (A) ale capacului pentru documente vertical în suport (B) pentru a monta capacul pentru documente conform imaginii de mai jos.



În partea superioară a paginii

Deleting the Undesired Print Job

If the printer does not start printing, the print job data cancelled or failed may be remaining.
Delete the undesired print job by using the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

1. Display the Canon IJ Status Monitor

Click the status monitor button displayed on the task bar.
The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.

2. Display the print jobs

Click Display Print Queue....
The print queue window opens.

3. Delete the print jobs

Select Cancel All Documents from the Printer menu.
When the confirmation message appears, click Yes.

The deletion of the print job is complete.

Important

- Users who have not been granted access permission for printer management cannot delete the print job of another user.

Note

- When you perform this operation, all print jobs are deleted. If the print queue list contained a necessary print job, start the printing process over from the beginning.

Page top

Actualizare MP Drivers

- Obţinerea celor mai recente drivere MP Drivers
- Ştergerea driverelor MP Drivers inutile
- Înainte de instalarea driverelor MP Drivers
- Instalarea driverelor MP Drivers

În partea superioară a paginii

Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers

The MP Drivers include a printer driver and scanner driver (ScanGear).

By updating the MP Drivers to the latest version of the MP Drivers, unresolved problems may be solved.

Access our web site through the Internet and download the latest MP Drivers for your model.

Important

- You can download the MP Drivers for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.
- Before installing the latest MP Drivers, delete the previously installed version.
  For information on how to delete the MP Drivers, refer to Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers .

Related Topics

Before Installing the MP Drivers

Installing the MP Drivers

Page top

Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers

The MP Drivers you no longer use can be deleted.
When deleting the MP Drivers, first exit all programs that are running.

The procedure to delete the unnecessary MP Drivers is as follows:

When There is an Uninstaller

1. Start the uninstaller

- In Windows Vista or Windows XP, select the Start menu -> All Programs -> "Your model name" -> MP Drivers Uninstaller.
- In Windows 2000, select the Start menu -> Programs -> "Your model name" -> MP Drivers Uninstaller.

The MP Drivers Uninstaller dialog box is displayed.

Important

- In Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when installing, uninstalling or starting software.
  This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
  When you are logged on to an administrator account, click Continue or Allow to continue.
  Some applications require an administrator account to continue. When you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

2. Execute the uninstaller

Click Execute. When the confirmation message appears, click Yes.
When all the files have been deleted, click Complete.

The deletion of the MP Drivers is complete.

Important

- Printer driver and scanner driver (ScanGear) will be deleted when you uninstall the MP Drivers.

When There is No Uninstaller

When there is no uninstaller in the Start menu of Windows Vista, follow these steps:

1. Select the printer to be deleted

Select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
Click the model to delete, then press the Alt key on your keyboard. On the File menu, click Delete.

2. Delete the printer

When the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Continue. Then when the confirmation message appears, click Yes.
The icon is deleted.

3. Select the printer driver to be deleted

Press the Alt key. On the File menu, select Run as administrator, and then click Server Properties....
When the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Continue.

Click the Drivers tab. In the Installed printer drivers list, click the printer to delete.

4. Delete the printer driver

When you click Remove..., Remove Driver And Package dialog box is displayed.
Select Remove driver and driver package, and then click OK.
In the confirmation dialog box, click Yes.

When data collection is completed in the Remove Driver Package dialog box, click Delete.

5. Click OK

The deletion of the printer driver is complete.

Important

- You may not be able to delete the printer driver properly from the Installed printer drivers list.
  If this happens, restart your computer, and try again.

Page top

Before Installing the MP Drivers

This section describes the items that you should check before installing the MP Drivers. You should also refer to this section if the MP Drivers cannot be installed.

Checking the Machine Status

- Properly connect the personal computer and the machine. For details on connection instructions, refer to the "Install the Software" in the manual: Getting Started.
- Turn off the machine.

Checking the Personal Computer Settings

- Terminate all running applications.
- In Windows Vista, log on as a user who has the administrator rights.
  In Windows XP, log on as the computer administrator.
  In Windows 2000, log on as a member of the Administrators group.

Note

- When an old version of the MP Drivers is already installed, first delete (uninstall) that version. For instructions on deleting the MP Drivers, see Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers .

Related Topics

Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers

Installing the MP Drivers

Page top

Installing the MP Drivers

You can access our web site through the Internet and download the latest MP Drivers for your model.

The procedure for installing the downloaded MP Drivers is as follows:

1. Turn off the machine

Important

- When you turn on the computer while the machine is on, the Windows Plug and Play function is executed automatically, and the Found New Hardware window (Windows Vista) or Found New Hardware Wizard window (Windows XP, Windows 2000) is displayed. In this case, click Cancel.

2. Start the installer

Double-click the icon of the downloaded file.
The installation program starts.

Important

- In Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when installing, uninstalling or starting software.
  This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
  When you are logged on to an administrator account, click Continue or Allow to continue.
  Some applications require an administrator account to continue. When you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

3. Install the driver

At the Welcome window, click Next.
Read the contents of the License Agreement window. After checking the contents, click Yes.
Installation of the MP Drivers begins.

After the Installation Complete window is displayed, check that the machine and the computer are connected through a cable.

To select the connection port for your machine manually, check the Select printer port check box, and click Manual selection. At the Select printer port window, select the connection destination, and then click OK.

4. Complete the installation

Click Complete.
Turn on the machine, and wait awhile until the connection is recognized.

This procedure installs the MP Drivers is complete.

Depending on the environment you are using, a message prompting you to restart the computer may be displayed. To complete the installation properly, restart the computer.

Important

- You can download the MP Drivers for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.

Related Topics

Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers

Before Installing the MP Drivers

Page top

Dezinstalarea manualelor On-Screen Manual

Urmaţi procedura de mai jos pentru a dezinstala toate manualele on-screen instalate de pe computerul dumneavoastră.

Înainte de a dezinstala manualele on-screen, părăsiţi toate manualele on-screen care sunt în curs de deschidere.

Windows

Toate manualele on-screen instalate vor fi şterse simultan.

1. Faceţi clic pe Start > Toate programele (All Programs) (Programs în Windows 2000) > Canon XXX Manual (unde „**XXX**” reprezintă denumirea aparatului) > Dezinstalare (Uninstall).

2. Faceţi clic pe OK la afişarea mesajului de confirmare.

Notă

- Când apare mesajul care vă solicită repornirea computerului, faceţi clic pe OK pentru a reporni computerul.

Macintosh

Manualele on-screen în afara ajutorului driverului de imprimantă şi a ajutorului driverului de scaner sunt dezinstalate simultan.

1. Selectaţi Applications din meniul Go.

2. Faceţi dublu clic pe folderul Canon Utilities, apoi pe folderul IJ Manual.

3. Trageţi folderul cu numele aparatului în coşul de gunoi.

4. Trageţi pictograma Canon XXX On-screen Manual (unde „**XXX**” reprezintă denumirea aparatului) de pe desktop în coş.

În partea superioară a paginii

Transportul aparatului

Când schimbaţi locul aparatului, împachetaţi-l în ambalajul original.

Dacă nu aveţi ambalajul original, împachetaţi aparatul cu atenţie, folosind materiale de protecţie şi aşezaţi-l într-o cutie solidă.

Important

- Nu transportaţi şi nu depozitaţi aparatul în poziţie înclinată, verticală sau inversă, deoarece poate să curgă cerneala şi să deterioreze aparatul.

1. Opriţi aparatul.
2. Asiguraţi-vă că lampa **Alimentare (Power)** este stinsă şi deconectaţi aparatul.

   Important

   - Nu deconectaţi aparatul în timp ce lampa **Alimentare (Power)** este aprinsă sau clipeşte de culoare verde, deoarece poate cauza o defecţiune sau o deteriorare a dispozitivului, aducând dispozitivul în imposibilitatea de a imprima.

3. Retrageţi suportul pentru hârtie, apoi închideţi tava de ieşire a hârtiei.
4. Deconectaţi cablul imprimantei de la computer şi de la aparat şi apoi deconectaţi alimentarea de la aparat.
5. Prindeţi cu bandă adezivă toate capacele aparatului pentru a le împiedica să se deschidă în timpul transportului. Apoi împachetaţi aparatul într-o pungă de plastic.
6. Ataşaţi materialul de protecţie de aparat atunci când îl împachetaţi.

   Important

   - Împachetaţi dispozitivul cu cartuşele FINE rămase instalate în aparat.

   Notă

   - Puneţi etichete clare pe cutie cu „FRAGIL” sau „A SE MANIPULA CU GRIJĂ”.

În partea superioară a paginii

Deschiderea casetei de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer properties) (Windows)

Fereastra de configurare a driverului de imprimantă poate fi afişată din software-ul aplicaţiei în uz sau din meniul Start din Windows.

Deschideţi caseta de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer Properties) cu ajutorul aplicaţiei software

Urmaţi procedura de mai jos pentru a configura setările de imprimare atunci când se imprimă.

1. **Selectaţi comanda de imprimare din software-ul aplicaţiei în uz.**

   În general, selectaţi Imprimare (Print) din meniul Fişier (File) pentru a deschide caseta de dialog Imprimare (Print).

2. **Selectaţi numele modelului dumneavoastră şi faceţi clic pe Preferinţe (Preferences) (sau Proprietăţi (Properties)).**

   Se deschide caseta de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer Properties).

   Notă

   - În funcţie de software-ul aplicaţiei utilizate, numele comenzilor sau numele meniurilor pot diferi şi pot exista mai mulţi paşi. Pentru detalii, consultaţi manualul de utilizare al aplicaţiei dumneavoastră software.

Deschideţi caseta de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer Properties) din meniul Start

Urmaţi procedura de mai jos pentru a efectua operaţii de întreţinere, precum curăţarea capului de imprimare sau pentru a configura setările de imprimare comune tuturor aplicaţiilor software.

1. **Selectaţi elemente din meniul Start după cum se arată mai jos.**

   - În Windows Vista, selectaţi meniul Start > Panou de control (Control Panel) > Hardware şi sunet (Hardware and Sound) > Imprimante (Printers).
   - În Windows XP, selectaţi meniul Start > Panou de control (Control Panel) > Imprimante şi alte dispozitive hardware (Printers and Other Hardware) > Imprimante şi faxuri (Printers and Faxes).
   - În Windows 2000, selectaţi meniul Start > Settings > Printers.

2. **Faceţi clic dreapta pe pictograma numelui modelului dumneavoastră şi selectaţi Printing Preferences din meniul afişat.**

   Se deschide caseta de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer Properties).

   Important

   - Deschiderea casetei de dialog Proprietăţi imprimantă (Printer Properties) din Proprietăţi (Properties) afişează file ce se referă la funcţii Windows, precum fila Porturi (Ports) (sau Complex (Advanced)). Aceste file nu apar la deschiderea cu ajutorul Preferinţe imprimare (Printing Preferences) sau cu software-ul de aplicaţie. Cu privire la filele ce se referă la funcţiile Windows, consultaţi manualul de utilizare pentru Windows.

În partea superioară a paginii

Deschiderea casetelor de dialog Page Setup şi Print (Macintosh)

Puteţi deschide casetele de dialog Page Setup şi Print din programul de aplicaţie pe care îl folosiţi.

Deschiderea casetei de dialog Page Setup

Deschideţi caseta de dialog Page Setup pentru a specifica setările pentru pagină (hârtie) înainte de imprimare.

1. **Selectaţi Page Setup... din meniul File din programul dvs. de aplicaţie.**

   Se va deschide caseta de dialog Page Setup.

Deschiderea casetei de dialog Print

Deschideţi caseta de dialog Print pentru a specifica setările de imprimare înainte de operaţia de imprimare.

1. **Selectaţi Print... din meniul File din programul dvs. de aplicaţie.**

   Se deschide caseta de dialog Print.

În partea superioară a paginii

Deschiderea utilitarului Canon IJ Printer Utility (Macintosh)

Pentru a deschide Canon IJ Printer Utility, urmaţi procedura de mai jos.

În Mac OS X v.10.5.x

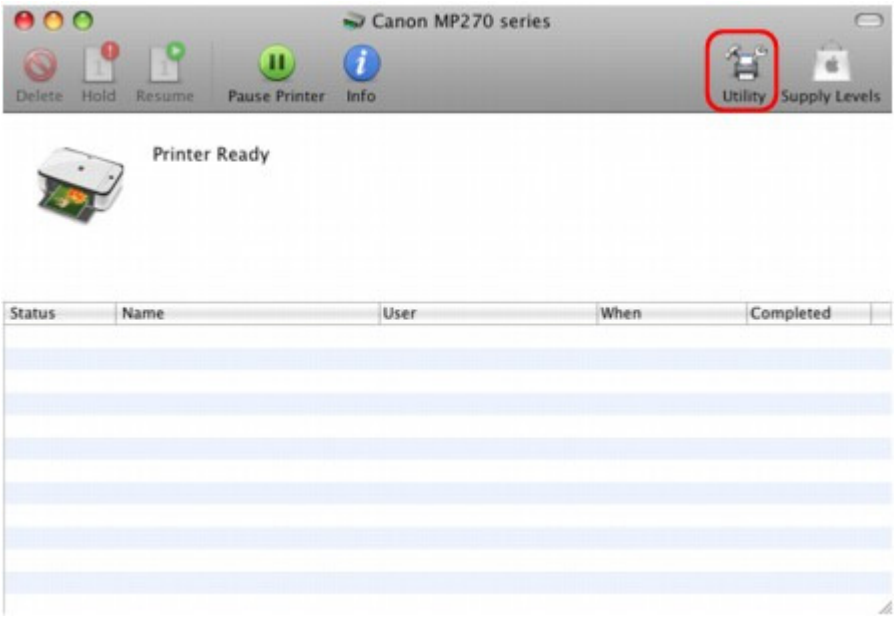
1. **Selectaţi System Preferences din meniul Apple.**

2. **Faceţi clic pe Print & Fax.**

3. **Selectaţi denumirea aparatului din Printers şi faceţi clic pe Open Print Queue...**

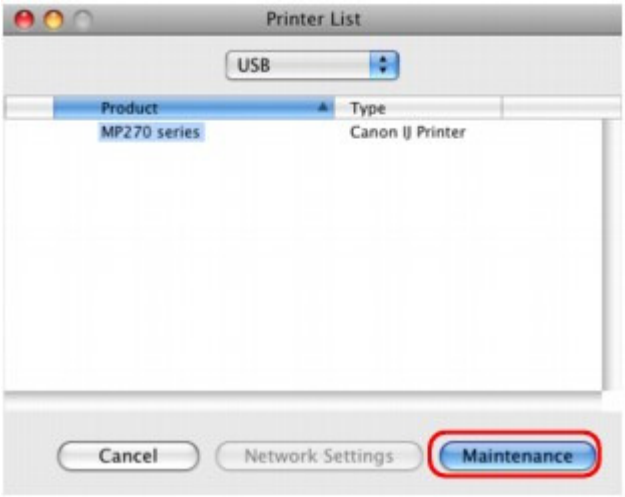
   Este afişată lista de lucrări ale aparatului.

4. **Faceţi clic pe Utility.**



Se deschide Printer List.

5. **Selectaţi denumirea aparatului din lista Product şi faceţi clic pe Maintenance.**



Porneşte Canon IJ Printer Utility.

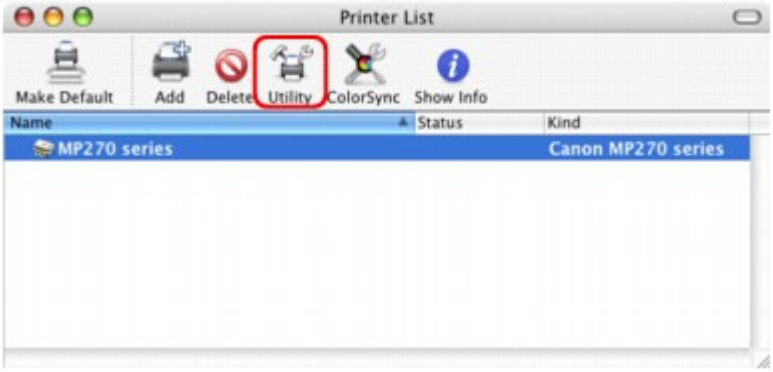
În Mac OS X v.10.4.x sau Mac OS X v 10.3.9

1. **Selectaţi Applications din meniul Go.**

2. **Faceţi dublu clic pe folderul Utilities, iar apoi faceţi dublu clic pe pictograma Printer Setup Utility.**

   Se deschide Printer List.

3. **Selectaţi denumirea aparatului din lista Name şi faceţi clic pe Utility.**



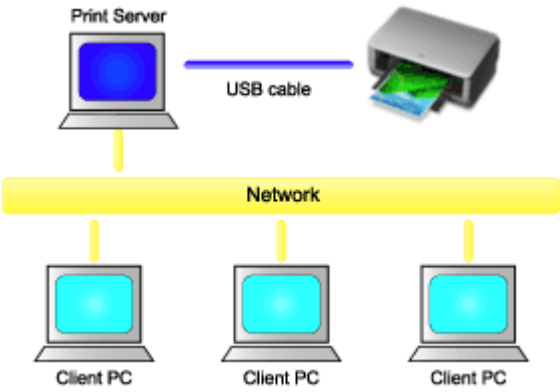
4. **Selectaţi denumirea aparatului din lista Product şi faceţi clic pe Maintenance.**

Porneşte Canon IJ Printer Utility.

În partea superioară a paginii

Sharing the Printer on a Network

When multiple computers are being used in the network environment, you can share the printer connected to one computer with the other computers.
The Windows versions of the computers connected to the network do not necessarily have to be the same.



- **Settings on Print Server**

  The procedure for setting up a computer directly connected to a printer with a USB cable is as follows:

- **Settings on Client PC**

  The procedure for setting up those computers that will use this printer through the network is as follows:
  When you execute print, the data is sent through the print server system to the printer.

Important

- In case an error occurred when a document is printed by the client system to a shared printer, the error message of Canon IJ Status Monitor will be displayed both on the client system and the print server system. For regular printing, Canon IJ Status Monitor will be displayed only on the client system.

Note

- Install the printer driver from the Setup CD-ROM that accompanies the machine on the print server system and each of the client systems according to the OS of each system.
- You cannot share this printer with Macintosh computers.

Related Topic

Restrictions on Printer Sharing

Settings on Print Server

When you use the printer on a network, set up the printer driver for sharing on the server system.

The procedure for setting up the print server systems is as follows:

1. Install the printer driver on the print server system

For details on installation instructions, refer to the "Install the Software" in the manual: Getting Started.

2. Select items from the Start menu as shown below:

- In Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
- In Windows XP, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Printers and Other Hardware -> Printers and Faxes.
- In Windows 2000, select the Start menu -> Settings -> Printers.

The Printers window (Windows Vista, Windows 2000) or Printers and Faxes window (Windows XP) is displayed.

3. Click the icon for the model name of printer to be shared

- In Windows Vista, press the Alt key on your keyboard and then select Run as administrator -> Sharing... from the displayed File menu.
- In Windows XP or Windows 2000, select Sharing... from the File menu.

Important

- In Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when installing, uninstalling, or starting software.
  This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
  When you are logged on to an administrator account, click Continue or Allow to continue.
  Some applications require an administrator account to continue. When you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

Note

- Windows XP may display a message recommending the user to use the Network Setup Wizard to set up sharing.
  When this message appears, choose not to use the wizard and then set up sharing.

4. Set sharing

Select Share this printer (Windows Vista, Windows XP) or Shared as (Windows 2000) on the Sharing tab to set a shared name if necessary, and click OK.

The setup on the print server system is complete. Next, set up the client systems.

Page top

Settings on Client PC

After setting up the print server system, set up the client system.

The procedure for setting up the client systems is as follows:

In Windows Vista

1. Install the printer driver on the client systems

To install the driver, load the Setup CD-ROM that comes with the machine, and select Custom Install.
For details on connection instructions, refer to the "Install the Software" in the manual: Getting Started.

Note

- During the installation, a screen prompting you to turn the printer on appears. Click Manual Selection and then select an appropriate port to complete your installation.

2. Start the wizard

Select the Start menu -> Network -> Add a printer.
The Add Printer window appears.

3. Add a printer

Select Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer, and click the icon for the printer that you have configured on the print server system to be shared, and then click Next.

Note

- If the icon for the printer is not displayed, check that the printer is actually connected to the print server.
- It may take some time for the icon for the printer to appear.

4. Complete the setup

Take the appropriate action as described on the screen and then click Finish.
The icon for the shared printer will be created in the Printers window.

The setup on the client systems is complete. You can now share the printer in the network.

In Windows XP/Windows 2000

1. Install the printer driver on the client systems

To install the driver, load the Setup CD-ROM that comes with the machine, and select Custom Install.
For details on connection instructions, refer to the "Install the Software" in the manual: Getting Started.

Note

- During the installation, a screen prompting you to turn the printer on appears. Click Manual Selection and then select an appropriate port to complete your installation.

2. Start the wizard

- In Windows XP, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Printers and Other Hardware ->

Printers and Faxes -> Add a printer.

- In Windows 2000, select the Start menu -> Settings -> Printers -> Add a printer.

When Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard screen appears, click Next.

3. Add a printer

Select A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer (Windows XP) or Network printer (Windows 2000), then click Next.

On the Specify a Printer window (Windows XP) or Locate Your Printer window (Windows 2000), click Next and then search for the print server system.

Click the icon for the printer that you have configured on the print server system to be shared, and then click Next.

Note

- If the icon for the printer is not displayed, check that the printer is actually connected to the print server.

4. Complete the setup

Take the appropriate action as described on the screen and then click Finish.
The icon for the shared printer will be created in the Printers and Faxes window (Windows XP) or Printers window (Windows 2000).

The setup on the client systems is complete. You can now share the printer in the network.

Page top

Restrictions on Printer Sharing

These are restrictions that apply when you are using a printer in a network environment. Check the restrictions for the environment you are using.

When You Are Sharing a Printer in a Network

- A print completion message may be displayed. To disable the message display, follow the procedure below.
  - **In Windows Vista:**

    Press the Alt key from the Printers window on the client system. Open Run as administrator -> Server Properties... from the displayed File menu.

    Uncheck Show informational notifications for network printers on the Advanced tab, and then restart the computer.
  - **In Windows XP or Windows 2000:**

    Open Server Properties from the File menu of the Printer and Faxes window (Windows XP) or the Printers window (Windows 2000) on the print server system.

    Uncheck Notify when remote documents are printed on the Advanced tab, and then restart the computer.
- The bi-directional communication function is disabled and the correct printer status may not be recognized.

  When a client user opens the printer driver properties and then clicks OK with the Enable bidirectional support check box on the Ports tab unchecked, the bi-directional function of the printer server system may also be disabled.
  In this case, check Enable bidirectional support check box on both the print server system and the client system.
- When you print from a client system, you cannot use Canon IJ Preview.
- When the functions on the Maintenance tab cannot be set properly from a client system, they may be grayed out. In this case, change the settings from the print server.

  When you change the settings of the print server, you should delete the icon of the shared printer from the client system, and then specify the shared settings again in the client system.

When the Same Printer Driver is Installed in the Print Server System and the Client System as the Local Printer

- The net crawl function may automatically create a network printer icon on the client system.

Page top

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

--- Transforming Your Photos into Creative Works of Art ---

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create albums, calendars and stickers easily using photos taken with digital cameras.

You can also print borderless photos easily.

Start Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Click Here: Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Note

- See the section below for details on how to use Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
  ➡ Printing with the Bundled Application Software

Create a Personalized Photo Album

Creating a personalized photo album is an easy task if you use Easy-PhotoPrint EX!

All you need to do is select which photos to use, select a layout, then load paper into your printer and print. After you bind the printed sheets, you'll have the one and only album of your memories!

You can change the layout and background, and attach comments to photos.

You can also select the size and orientation.

You can arrange a photo across the left and right pages.

CHECK!

Select a theme (background design) to create a single-themed album.

Decorate Items with Text and Frames

You can add text and frames to photos. Attach a description of the photo in an album, and add a frame to enhance the photo's atmosphere.

CHECK!

Select Album to add text and frames. You cannot decorate photos with Photo Print.

Create a Calendar Using Your Favorite Photos

Create calendars easily with Easy-PhotoPrint EX. Create your own calendar using your favorite photos! It'll be exciting to turn the calendar pages.

You can use all kinds of photos.

You can also create 2-month, 6-month and 12-month calendars.

Create Stickers

Create stickers easily with Easy-PhotoPrint EX!

Create stickers of your favorite photos and share them with your friends!

CHECK!

You can add text to photos.

Page top

Using MP Navigator EX

MP Navigator EX is an application that enables you to easily scan photos and documents. It is suitable even for beginners.

Start MP Navigator EX

Click Here: MP Navigator EX

Note

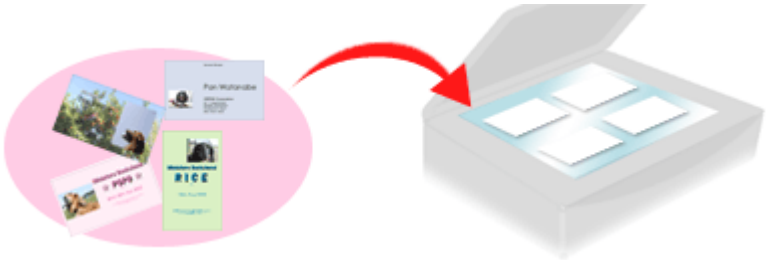
- See "Let's Try Scanning" for details on how to scan images using MP Navigator EX.

Scan Photos and Documents

You can scan easily by navigating through MP Navigator EX screens. You can also save/print scanned images using MP Navigator EX.

Scan Small Documents at One Time

You can scan multiple small documents (photos, cards, etc.) at one time. It is useful as you do not need to scan multiple times.

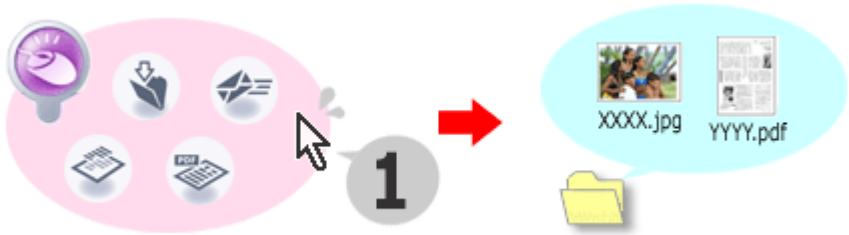


Scan Large Documents

You can easily scan documents that are larger than the Platen using MP Navigator EX. It allows you to scan the left and right halves of a document separately and combine them back into one image.

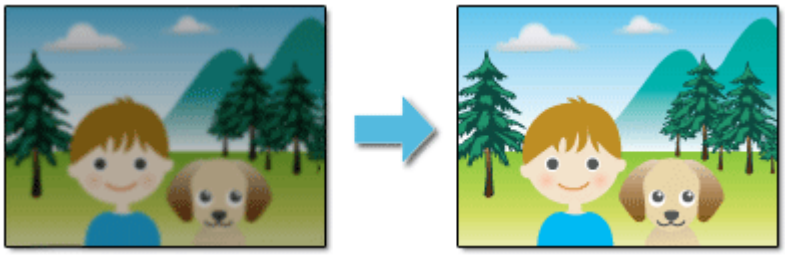
Scan with One-click

In One-click Mode, MP Navigator EX completes from scanning to saving, with a click of an icon. One-click Mode also allows you to scan and save images as PDF files or attach them to e-mail automatically.



Scan and Correct/Enhance Photos

You can easily correct/enhance scanned photos using MP Navigator EX. You do not need to use other applications.



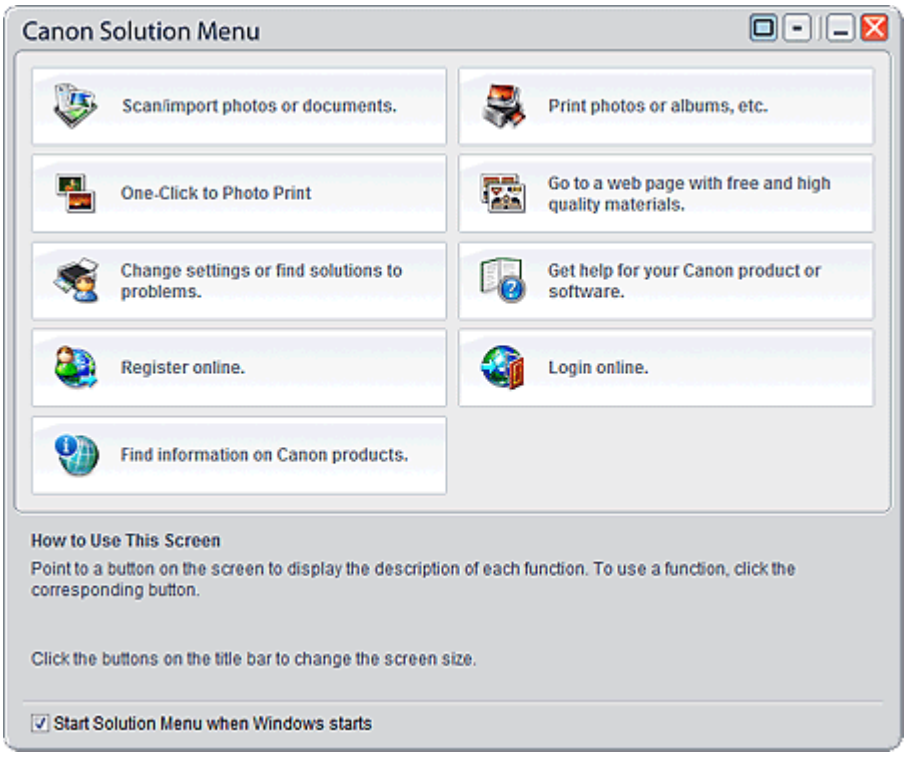
For details on how to use MP Navigator EX, refer to " Scanning with the Bundled Application Software ."

Page top

About Solution Menu

Quick Shortcut!! Solution Menu

Solution Menu is a menu window that provides quick access from your desktop to Canon applications, manuals, and online product information.



Important

- The number and types of buttons displayed in the window may vary depending on your printer and region.

Starting Solution Menu

Click Here: Solution Menu

To start from desktop, see below.

Double-click the Canon Solution Menu icon on the desktop. Alternatively, from the Start menu, select (All) Programs > Canon Utilities > Solution Menu > Solution Menu.

From the next time, Solution Menu starts when Windows starts.

If the Start Solution Menu when Windows starts checkbox at the bottom left of the window is not selected, Solution Menu does not start when Windows starts.

Note

- Solution Menu will start automatically when you install it using the *Setup CD-ROM* that accompanies the printer.

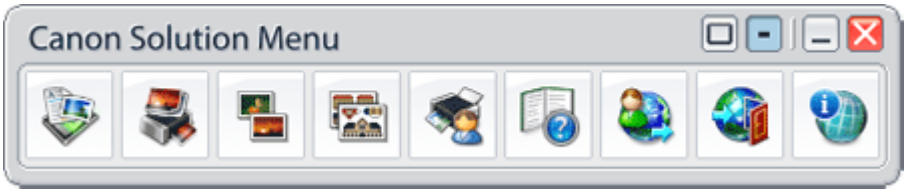
Changing the Window Size

Click (window size: large) or (window size: small) on the title bar to change the window size

(large or small).

Solution Menu opens with the last used window size next time it is started.

- When screen size is small



Starting an Application

1. Point to a button on the window to display the description of each application.
2. By clicking each button, the introduced application starts.

   Follow the same steps to view the manuals or online product information.

Important

- Internet connection is required to access the online information. Internet connection fees apply.

Exiting Solution Menu

Click (Close) on the title bar.

Restriction on Use of Solution Menu

This software is subject to the following restriction. Keep this point in mind when using it.

- All icons of the installed applications that support Solution Menu are displayed in the window. After the installation, you cannot rearrange the icons or delete only the icons.

Page top